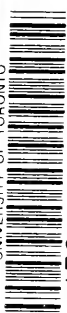


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 01627801 2

UNIV. OF  
TORONTO  
LIBRARY





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation







1840  
P. 102  
10/10

527 Har

# Shakspeare's

## DRAMATIC WORKS:

WITH

A LIFE OF THE AUTHOR,

AND A SELECTION OF

NOTES, CRITICAL, HISTORICAL, AND EXPLANATORY,

BY THE

REV. W. HARNESS, A.M.

OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

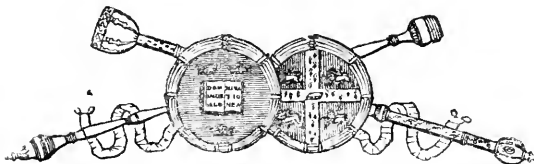
---

TO WHICH ARE ADDED, THE AUTHOR'S POEMS.

---

IN EIGHT VOLUMES.

VOL. V.



LONDON:

PRINTED AND SOLD BY J. F. DOVE,

ST. JOHN'S SQUARE.

1830. /

140079-  
10/10/16

PR  
2753  
H3  
V5

SHAKSPEARE'S  
DRAMATIC WORKS.

---

VOL. V.

## CONTENTS.

	Page
KING HENRY IV.—PART II. . . . .	1
KING HENRY V. . . . .	111
KING HENRY VI.—PART I. . . . .	217
KING HENRY VI.—PART II. . . . .	307
KING HENRY VI.—PART III. . . . .	409





F. Searles R. A.

**KING HENRY IV<sup>th</sup>**

**FALSTAFF** This clout shall be my gage

FORWARD FOR J. F. DOTE ST. JOHN'S SQUARE.

of Hand



SECOND PART OF  
KING HENRY IV.

---

THE first edition of this play was the quarto of 1600, in which year it was twice reprinted in the same form. As it is mentioned in Nares' Wits' Treasury, 1598, and contains an allusion to the murder of the sons of Amurath the Third by their brother Mahomet, which took place Feb. 1596; the tragedy must have been written in the intervening period. It was entered at Stationers' Hall, August 23, 1600.

The transactions comprised in the history take up almost nine years. The action commences with the account of Hotspur's being defeated and killed, 1403; and closes with the death of Henry the Fourth, and the coronation of Henry the Fifth, 1412—13.

PERSONS REPRESENTED.

*King* HENRY the Fourth.

HENRY, *prince of Wales, afterwards King* }  
     Henry V. ; }  
 THOMAS, *duke of Clarence* ; }  
 Prince JOHN of Lancaster,<sup>a</sup> *afterwards* } *his sons.*  
     (2 Henry V.) *duke of Bedford* ; }  
 Prince HUMPHREY of Gloster, *afterwards* }  
     (2 Henry V.) *duke of Gloster* ; }

Earl of WARWICK ; }  
 Earl of WESTMORELAND ; } *of the king's party.*  
 GOWER ; HARCOURT ; }

*Lord Chief Justice of the King's Bench.*

*A Gentleman attending on the Chief Justice.*

Earl of NORTHUMBERLAND ; }  
 SCROOP, *archbishop of York* ; } *enemies to*  
 Lord MOWBRAY ; Lord HASTINGS ; } *the king.*  
 Lord BARDOLPH ; Sir JOHN COLVILLE ; }

TRAVERS and MORTON, *domesticks of Northumberland.*

FALSTAFF, BARDOLPH, PISTOL, *and Page.*

POINS and PETO, *attendants on Prince Henry.*

SHALLOW and SILENCE, *country justices.*

DAVY, *servant to Shallow.*

MOULDY, SHADOW, WART, FEEBLE, and BULLCALF,  
*recruits.*

FANG and SNARE, *sheriff's officers.*

RUMOUR. *A Porter.*

*A Dancer, speaker of the epilogue.*

*Lady* NORTHUMBERLAND. *Lady* PERCY.

*Hostess* QUICKLY. DOLL TEAR-SHEET.

*Lords and other attendants ; Officers, Soldiers, Messenger,  
 Drawers, Beadles, Grooms, &c.*

*Scene, England.*

<sup>a</sup> See note under the *Personæ Dramatis* of the First Part of this Play.—  
 STEEVENS.

## INDUCTION.

---

Warkworth. *Before Northumberland's Castle.*

*Enter RUMOUR,<sup>a</sup> painted full of tongues.*

*Rum.* Open your ears ; For which of you will stop  
The vent of hearing, when loud Rumour speaks ?  
I, from the orient to the drooping west,  
Making the wind my post-horse, still unfold  
The acts commenced on this ball of earth :  
Upon my tongues continual slanders ride ;  
The which in every language I pronounce,  
Stuffing the ears of men with false reports.  
I speak of peace, while covert enmity,  
Under the smile of safety, wounds the world :  
And who but Rumour, who but only I,  
Make fearful musters, and prepar'd defence ;  
Whilst the big year, swol'n with some other grief,  
Is thought with child by the stern tyrant war,  
And no such matter ! Rumour is a pipe  
Blown by surmises, jealousies, conjectures ;  
And of so easy and so plain a stop,<sup>b</sup>  
That the blunt monster with uncounted heads,  
The still-discordant wavering multitude,  
Can play upon it. But what need I thus  
My well-known body to anatomize  
Among my household ? Why is Rumour here ?  
I run before king Harry's victory ;  
Who, in a bloody field by Shrewsbury,  
Hath beaten down young Hotspur, and his troops,

<sup>a</sup> *Enter RUMOUR,*] This speech of Rumour is not inellegant or unpoetical, but it is wholly useless, since we are told nothing which the first scene does not clearly and naturally discover. The only end of such prologues is to inform the audience of some facts previous to the action, of which they can have no knowledge from the persons of the drama.—JOHNSON.

<sup>b</sup> ——— *stop,*] The *stops* are the *holes* of the flute or pipe.—STEEVENS.



SECOND PART OF  
KING HENRY IV.

---

ACT I.

SCENE I.—*The same.*

*The Porter before the Gate; Enter Lord BARDOLPH.*

*Bard.* WHO keeps the gate here, ho?—Where is the earl?

*Port.* What shall I say you are?

*Bard.* Tell thou the earl,  
That the lord Bardolph doth attend him here.

*Port.* His Lordship is walk'd forth into the orchard;  
Please it your honour, knock but at the gate,  
And he himself will answer.

*Enter NORTHUMBERLAND.*

*Bard.* Here comes the earl.

*North.* What news, lord Bardolph? every minute now  
Should be the father of some stratagem:<sup>c</sup>  
The times are wild; contention, like a horse  
Full of high feeding, madly hath broke loose,  
And bears down all before him.

*Bard.* Noble earl,  
I bring you certain news from Shrewsbury.

*North.* Good, an heaven will!

*Bard.* As good as heart can wish:—  
The king is almost wounded to the death;  
And, in the fortune of my lord your son,  
Prince Harry slain outright; and both the Blunts  
Kill'd by the hand of Douglas: young prince John,  
And Westmoreland, and Stafford, fled the field;

<sup>c</sup> — some stratagem:] Some *stratagem* means here some great, important, or dreadful event.—M. MASON.

And Harry Monmouth's brawn, the hulk sir John,  
Is prisoner to your son : O, such a day,  
So fought, so follow'd, and so fairly won,  
Came not, till now, to dignify the times,  
Since Cæsar's fortunes !

*North.* How is this deriv'd ?  
Saw you the field ? came you from Shrewsbury ?

*Bard.* I spake with one, my lord, that came from thence ;  
A gentleman well bred, and of good name,  
That freely render'd me these news for true.

*North.* Here comes my servant, Travers, whom I sent  
On Tuesday last to listen after news.

*Bard.* My lord, I over-rode him on the way ;  
And he is furnish'd with no certainties,  
More than he haply may retail from me.

*Enter TRAVERS.*

*North.* Now, Travers, what good tidings come with you ?

*Tra.* My lord, sir John Umfrevile turn'd me back  
With joyful tidings ; and, being better hors'd,  
Out-rode me. After him, came, spurring hard,  
A gentleman almost forspent<sup>d</sup> with speed,  
That stopp'd by me to breathe his bloodied horse :  
He ask'd the way to Chester ; and of him  
I did demand what news from Shrewsbury.  
He told me, that rebellion had bad luck,  
And that young Harry Percy's spur was cold :  
With that he gave his able horse the head,  
And, bending forward, struck his armed heels  
Against the panting sides of his poor jade  
Up to the rowel-head ; and starting so,  
He seem'd in running to devour the way,  
Staying no longer question.

*North.* Ha !——Again.  
Said he, young Harry Percy's spur was cold ?  
Of Hotspur, coldspur ? that rebellion  
Had met ill luck !

*Bard.* My lord, I'll tell you what ;—  
If my young lord your son have not the day,

<sup>d</sup> ——— forspent—] i. e. Wasted, exhausted.

Upon mine honour, for a silken point<sup>e</sup>  
I'll give my barony : never talk of it.

*North.* Why should the gentleman that rode by Tra-  
Give then such instances of loss ? [vers,

*Bard.* Who, he ?

He was some hilding<sup>f</sup> fellow, that had stol'n  
The horse he rode on ; and, upon my life,  
Spoke at a venture. Look, here comes more news.

*Enter MORTON.*

*North.* Yea, this man's brow, like to a title-leaf,<sup>g</sup>  
Foretells the nature of a tragick volume :  
So looks the strond, whereon the imperious flood  
Hath left a witness'd usurpation,<sup>h</sup>—  
Say, Morton, didst thou come from Shrewsbury ?

*Mor.* I ran from Shrewsbury, my noble lord ;  
Where hateful death put on his ugliest mask,  
To fright our party.

*North.* How doth my son and brother ?  
Thou tremblest ; and the whiteness in thy cheek  
Is apter than thy tongue to tell thy errand.  
Even such a man, so faint, so spiritless,  
So dull, so dead in look, so woe-begone,  
Drew Priam's curtain in the dead of night,  
And would have told him, half his Troy was burn'd :  
But Priam found the fire, ere he his tongue,  
And I my Percy's death, ere thou report'st it,  
This thou would'st say,—Your son did thus and thus :  
Your brother thus : so fought the noble Douglas ;  
Stopping my greedy ear with their bold deeds :  
But in the end, to stop mine ear indeed,  
Thou hast a sigh to blow away this praise,  
Ending with—brother, son, and all are dead.

*Mor.* Douglas is living, and your brother, yet :  
But, for my lord your son,—

<sup>e</sup> — *point*] i. e. A string tagged, or lace.

<sup>f</sup> — *hilding*]—for *hilderling*, i. e. base, degenerate.

<sup>g</sup> — *like to a title-leaf,*] It may not be amiss to observe, that, in the time of our poet, the title-page to an elegy, as well as every intermediate leaf, was totally black. I have several in my possession, written by Chapman, the translator of Homer, and ornamented in this manner.—STEEVENS.

<sup>h</sup> — *a witness'd usurpation.*] i. e. An attestation of its ravage.—STEEVENS.

*North.* Why, he is dead.  
 See, what a ready tongue suspicion hath!  
 He, that but fears the thing he would not know,  
 Hath, by instinct, knowledge from others' eyes,  
 That what he fear'd is chanced. Yet speak, Morton;  
 Tell thou thy earl, his divination lies;  
 And I will take it as a sweet disgrace,  
 And make thee rich for doing me such wrong.

*Mor.* You are too great to be by me gainsaid:  
 Your spirit is too true, your fears too certain.

*North.* Yet, for all this, say not that Percy's dead.  
 I see a strange confession in thine eye:  
 Thou shak'st thy head; and hold'st it fear,<sup>i</sup> or sin,  
 To speak a truth. If he be slain, say so:  
 The tongue offends not, that reports his death:  
 And he doth sin, that doth belie the dead;  
 Not he, which says the dead is not alive.  
 Yet the first bringer of unwelcome news  
 Hath but a losing office; and his tongue  
 Sounds ever after as a sullen bell,  
 Remember'd knolling a departing friend.

*Bard.* I cannot think, my lord, your son is dead.

*Mor.* I am sorry, I should force you to believe  
 That, which I would to heaven I had not seen:  
 But these mine eyes saw him in bloody state,  
 Rend'ring faint quittance,<sup>k</sup> wearied and out-breath'd,  
 To Harry Monmouth; whose swift wrath beat down  
 The never-daunted Percy to the earth,  
 From whence with life he never more sprung up.  
 In few, his death (whose spirit lent a fire  
 Even to the dullest peasant in his camp,  
 Being bruited once, took fire and heat away  
 From the best-temper'd courage in his troops:  
 For from his metal was his party steel'd;  
 Which once in him abated,<sup>l</sup> all the rest

<sup>i</sup> — *fear,*] Here used for *danger*.

<sup>k</sup> — *quittance,*] i. e. *Return*. By "faint quittance" is meant, "a faint return of blows."—STEEVENS.

<sup>l</sup> — *abated,*] This word is not here put for the general idea of *diminished*, nor for the notion of *blunted* as applied to a single edge. *Abated* means *reduced to a lower temper*, or, as the workmen call it, *let down*.—JOHNSON.



Turn'd on themselves, like dull and heavy lead.  
 And as the thing that's heavy in itself,  
 Upon enforcement, flies with greatest speed ;  
 So did our men, heavy in Hotspur's loss,  
 Lend to this weight such lightness with their fear,  
 That arrows fled not swifter toward their aim,  
 Than did our soldiers, aiming at their safety,  
 Fly from the field : Then was that noble Worcester  
 Too soon ta'en prisoner : and that furious Scot,  
 The bloody Douglas, whose well-labouring sword  
 Had three times slain the appearance of the king,  
 'Gan veil his stomach,<sup>m</sup> and did grace the shame  
 Of those that turn'd their backs ; and, in his flight,  
 Stumbling in fear, was took. The sum of all  
 Is,—that the king hath won ; and hath sent out  
 A speedy power, to encounter you, my lord,  
 Under the conduct of young Lancaster,  
 And Westmoreland : this is the news at full.

*North.* For this I shall have time enough to mourn.  
 In poison there is physick ; and these news,  
 Having been well, that would have made me sick,  
 Being sick, have in some measure made me well :  
 And as the wretch, whose fever-weaken'd joints,  
 Like strengthless hinges, buckle<sup>n</sup> under life,  
 Impatient of his fit, breaks like a fire  
 Out of his keeper's arms ; even so my limbs,  
 Weaken'd with grief, being now enrag'd with grief  
 Are thrice themselves : hence therefore, thou nice<sup>o</sup> crutch ;  
 A scaly gauntlet now, with joints of steel,  
 Must glove this hand : and hence, thou sickly quouif ;  
 Thou art a guard too wanton for the head,  
 Which princes, flesh'd with conquest, aim to hit.  
 Now bind my brows with iron ; And approach  
 The ragged'st hour that time and spite dare bring,  
 To frown upon the enrag'd Northumberland !  
 Let heav'n kiss earth ! Now let not nature's hand

<sup>r</sup> <sup>m</sup> 'Gan veil his stomach,] Began to fall his courage, to let his spirits sink under his fortune.—JOHNSON. From *avaller*, Fr. to cast down, or to let fall down.

<sup>n</sup> — buckle—] i. e. Bend ; yield to pressure.

<sup>o</sup> — nice—] i. e. Trifling.

Keep the wild flood confin'd! let order die!  
 And let this world no longer be a stage,  
 To feed contention in a lingering act;  
 But let one spirit of the first-born Cain  
 Reign in all bosoms, that, each heart being set  
 On bloody courses, the rude scene may end,  
 And darkness be the burier of the dead!<sup>p</sup>

*Tra.* This strained passion doth you wrong, my lord.

*Bard.* Sweet earl, divorce not wisdom from your honour.

*Mor.* The lives of all your loving complices  
 Lean on your health; the which, if you give o'er  
 To stormy passion, must perforce decay.  
 You cast the event of war, my noble lord,<sup>q</sup>  
 And summ'd the account of chance, before you said,—  
 Let us make head. It was your presumise,  
 That, in the dole<sup>r</sup> of blows your son might drop:  
 You knew, he walk'd o'er perils, on an edge,  
 More likely to fall in, than to get o'er:  
 You were advis'd, his flesh was capable  
 Of wounds, and scars; and that his forward spirit  
 Would lift him where most trade of danger rang'd;  
 Yet did you say,—Go forth; and none of this,  
 Though strongly apprehended, could restrain  
 The stiff-borne action: What hath then befallen,  
 Or what hath this bold enterprize brought forth,  
 More than that being which was like to be?

*Bard.* We all, that are engaged to this loss,  
 Knew that we ventur'd on such dangerous seas,  
 That, if we wrought our life, 'twas ten to one:  
 And yet we ventur'd, for the gain propos'd  
 Chok'd the respect of likely peril fear'd;

<sup>p</sup> *And darkness be the burier of the dead!*] The conclusion of this noble speech is extremely striking. There is no need to suppose it exactly philosophical; *darkness*, in poetry, may be absence of eyes, as well as privation of light. Yet we may remark, that by an ancient opinion it has been held, that if the human race, for whom the world was made, were extirpated, the whole system of sublunary nature would cease.—JOHNSON.

<sup>q</sup> *You cast the event of war, &c.*] The fourteen lines from hence to Bardolph's next speech, are not to be found in the first editions, till that in the folio of 1623. A very great number of other lines in this play were inserted after the first edition in like manner, but of such spirit and mastery generally, that the insertions are plainly by Shakspeare himself.—POPE.

<sup>r</sup> — *dole*—] i. e. *Distribution*.

And, since we are o'erset, venture again.  
Come, we will all put forth ; body, and goods.

*Mor.* 'Tis more than time : And, my most noble lord,  
I hear for certain, and do speak the truth,—  
The gentle archbishop of York is up,  
With well-appointed powers ; he is a man,  
Who with a double surety binds his followers.  
My lord your son had only but the corps,  
But shadows, and the shows of men, to fight :  
For that same word, rebellion, did divide  
The action of their bodies from their souls ;  
And they did fight with queasiness,<sup>s</sup> constrain'd,  
As men drink potions ; that their weapons only  
Seem'd on our side, but, for their spirits and souls,  
This word, rebellion, it had froze them up,  
As fish are in a pond : But now the bishop  
Turns insurrection to religion :  
Suppos'd sincere and holy in his thoughts,  
He's follow'd both with body and with mind ;  
And doth enlarge his rising with the blood  
Of fair king Richard, scrap'd from Pomfret stones :  
Derives from heaven his quarrel, and his cause ;  
Tells them, he doth bestride a bleeding land,  
Gasping for life under great Bolingbroke ;  
And more, and less,<sup>t</sup> do flock to follow him.

*North.* I knew of this before ; but, to speak truth,  
This present grief had wip'd it from my mind.  
Go in with me ; and counsel every man  
The aptest way for safety, and revenge :  
Get posts and letters, and make friends with speed ;  
Never so few, and never yet more need.                    [*Exeunt.*]

<sup>s</sup> — queasiness,] i. e. Sickly distaste.

<sup>t</sup> — more, and less,] i. e. The greater and less.

## SCENE II.

London. A Street.

*Enter Sir JOHN FALSTAFF, with his Page bearing his sword and buckler.*

*Fal.* Sirrah, you giant, what says the doctor to my water?

*Page.* He said, sir, the water itself was a good healthy water: but, for the party that owed<sup>u</sup> it, he might have more diseases than he knew for.

*Fal.* Men of all sorts take a pride to gird<sup>x</sup> at me: The brain of this foolish-compound clay, man, is not able to vent any thing that tends to laughter, more than I invent, or is invented on me: I am not only witty in myself, but the cause that wit is in other men. I do here walk before thee, like a sow, that hath overwhelmed all her litter but one. If the prince put thee into my service for any other reason than to set me off, why then I have no judgment. Thou whoreson mandrake,<sup>y</sup> thou art fitter to be worn in my cap, than to wait at my heels. I was never manned with an agate till now;<sup>z</sup> but I will set you neither in gold nor silver, but in vile apparel, and send you back again to your master, for a jewel; the juvenal, the prince your master, whose chin is not yet fledged. I will sooner have a beard grow in the palm of my hand, than he shall get one on his cheek; and yet he will not stick to say, his face is a face-royal: God may finish it when he will, it is not a hair amiss yet: he may keep it still as a face-royal,<sup>a</sup> for a barber shall never earn sixpence out of it; and yet he will be crowing, as if he had writ man ever since his father

<sup>u</sup> ——— owed—] i. e. Owned.

<sup>x</sup> ——— gird—] i. e. Gibe.

<sup>y</sup> ——— mandrake,] Mandrake is a root supposed to have the shape of a man; it is now counterfeited with the root of briony.—JOHNSON.

<sup>z</sup> I was never manned with an agate till now:] That is, I never before had an agate for my man.—JOHNSON. Alluding to the little figures cut in agates, and other hard stones, for seals; and therefore he says, I will set you neither in gold nor silver.—WARBURTON.

<sup>a</sup> ——— a face-royal,] The real or royal was a piece of coin of the value of ten shillings; if nothing be taken out of a royal, it will remain a royal as it was. This appears to be Falstaff's conceit.—M. MASON.

was a bachelor. He may keep his own grace, but he is almost out of mine, I can assure him.—What said master Dumbleton about the satin for my short cloak, and slops?

*Page.* He said, sir, you should procure him better assurance than Bardolph: he would not take his bond and yours; he liked not the security.

*Fal.* Let him be damned like the glutton! may his tongue be hotter!—A whoreson Achitophel! a rascally yea-forsooth knave! to bear a gentleman in hand,<sup>b</sup> and then stand upon security!—The whoreson smoothpates do now wear nothing but high shoes, and bunches of keys at their girdles: and if a man is thorough with them in honest taking up,<sup>c</sup> then they must stand upon—security. I had as lief they would put ratsbane in my mouth, as offer to stop it with security. I looked he should have sent me two and twenty yards of satin, as I am a true knight, and he sends me security. Well, he may sleep in security; for he hath the horn of abundance, and the lightness of his wife shine through it: and yet cannot he see, though he have his own lantern to light him.—Where's Bardolph?

*Page.* He's gone into Smithfield, to buy your worship a horse.

*Fal.* I bought him in Paul's, and he'll buy me a horse in Smithfield:<sup>d</sup> an I could get me but a wife in the stews, I were manned, horsed, and wived.

*Enter the Lord Chief Justice,<sup>e</sup> and an Attendant.*

*Page.* Sir, here comes the nobleman that committed the prince for striking him about Bardolph.

<sup>b</sup> — to bear—in hand,] i. e. To keep in expectation.

<sup>c</sup> — if a man is thorough with them in honest taking up,] That is, if a man by taking up goods is in their debt. To be thorough seems to be the same with the present phrase,—to be in with a tradesman.—JOHNSON.

<sup>d</sup> I bought him in Paul's, &c.] The middle aisle of St. Paul's was in our poets days the common resort of bullies, knights of the post, and other of the like reputable professions, who carried on their various occupations here with great success: indeed, bargains of all kinds were made here, with as little feeling of impropriety, and as commonly as on the Royal Exchange. In the *Choice of Change*, 1598, quarto, it is said, "A man must not make choice of three things in three places: of a wife in Westminster, of a servant in Paule's, of a horse in Smithfield; least he chuse a queane, a knave, or a jade."—GIFFORD and REED.

<sup>e</sup> — Lord Chief Justice,] This judge was Sir Wm. Gascoigne, Chief Justice

*Fal.* Wait close, I will not see him.

*Ch. Just.* What's he that goes there?

*Atten.* Falstaff, an't please your worship.

*Ch. Just.* He that was in question for the robbery?

*Atten.* He, my lord: but he hath since done good service at Shrewsbury; and, as I hear, is now going with some charge to the lord John of Lancaster.

*Ch. Just.* What, to York? Call him back again.

*Atten.* Sir John Falstaff!

*Fal.* Boy, tell him, I am deaf.

*Page.* You must speak louder, my master is deaf.

*Ch. Just.* I am sure, he is, to the hearing of any thing good.—Go, pluck him by the elbow; I must speak with him.

*Atten.* Sir John,——

*Fal.* What! a young knave, and beg! Is there not wars? is there not employment? Doth not the king lack subjects? do not the rebels need soldiers? Though it be a shame to be on any side but one, it is worse shame to beg than to be on the worst side, were it worse than the name of rebellion can tell how to make it.

*Atten.* You mistake me, sir.

*Fal.* Why, sir, did I say you were an honest man? setting my knighthood and my soldiership aside, I had lied in my throat if I had said so.

*Atten.* I pray you, sir, then set your knighthood and your soldiership aside; and give me leave to tell you, you lie in your throat, if you say I am any other than an honest man.

*Fal.* I give thee leave to tell me so! I lay aside that which grows to me! If thou get'st any leave of me, hang me; if thou takest leave, thou wert better be hanged: You hunt counter,<sup>f</sup> hence! avaunt!

*Atten.* Sir, my lord would speak with you.

*Ch. Just.* Sir John Falstaff, a word with you.

*Fal.* My good lord!—God give your lordship good time

of the King's Bench. He died December 17, 1413, and was buried in Harwood church in Yorkshire. His effigy, in judicial robes, is on his monument.  
—STEEVENS.

<sup>f</sup> You hunt counter,] i. e. You hunt the wrong way, trace the scent backward.

of day. I am glad to see your lordship abroad: I heard say your lordship was sick: I hope your lordship goes abroad by advice. Your lordship, though not clean past your youth, hath yet some smack of age in you, some relish of the saltness of time; and I most humbly beseech your lordship, to have a reverend care of your health.

*Ch. Just.* Sir John, I sent for you before your expedition to Shrewsbury.

*Fal.* An't please your lordship, I hear, his majesty is returned with some discomfort from Wales.

*Ch. Just.* I talk not of his majesty:—You would not come when I sent for you.

*Fal.* And I hear moreover, his highness is fallen into this same whoreson apoplexy.

*Ch. Just.* Well, heaven mend him! I pray, let me speak with you.

*Fal.* This apoplexy is, as I take it, a kind of lethargy, an't please your lordship; a kind of sleeping in the blood, a whoreson tingling.

*Ch. Just.* What tell you me of it? be it as it is.

*Fal.* It hath its original from much grief; from study, and perturbation of the brain: I have read the cause of his effects in Galen; it is a kind of deafness.

*Ch. Just.* I think, you are fallen into the disease; for you hear not what I say to you.

*Fal.* Very well, my lord, very well: rather an't please you, it is the disease of not listening, the malady of not marking, that I am troubled withal.

*Ch. Just.* To punish you by the heels, would amend the attention of your ears; and I care not, if I do become your physician.

*Fal.* I am as poor as Job, my lord: but not so patient: your lordship may minister the potion of imprisonment to me, in respect of poverty; but how I should be your patient to follow your prescriptions, the wise may make some dram of a scruple, or, indeed, a scruple itself.

‡ *Fal.* *Very well, my lord, very well:*] In the quarto edition, printed in 1609 this speech stands thus:

*Old.* *Very well, my lord, very well.*

This almost amounts to a self-evident proof of the truth of Falstaff's character having been first called Old castle.—THEOBALD.

*Ch. Just.* I sent for you, when there were matters against you for your life, to come speak with me.

*Fal.* As I was then advised by my learned counsel in the laws of this land-service, I did not come.

*Ch. Just.* Well, the truth is, sir John, you live in great infamy.

*Fal.* He that buckles him in my belt, cannot live in less.

*Ch. Just.* Your means are very slender, and your waste is great.

*Fal.* I would it were otherwise; I would my means were greater, and my waist slenderer.

*Ch. Just.* You have misled the youthful prince.

*Fal.* The young prince hath misled me: I am the fellow with the great belly, and he my dog.<sup>b</sup>

*Ch. Just.* Well, I am loath to gall a new-healed wound; your day's service at Shrewsbury hath a little gilded over your night's exploit on Gad's-hill: you may thank the unquiet time for your quiet o'erposting that action.

*Fal.* My lord?

*Ch. Just.* But since all is well, keep it so: wake not a sleeping wolf.

*Fal.* To wake a wolf, is as bad as to smell a fox.

*Ch. Just.* What! you are as a candle, the better part burnt out.

*Fal.* A wassel candle, my lord;<sup>i</sup> all tallow: if I did say of wax, my growth would approve the truth.

*Ch. Just.* There is not a white hair on your face, but should have his effect of gravity.

*Fal.* His effect of gravy, gravy, gravy.

*Ch. Just.* You follow the young prince up and down, like his ill angel.<sup>k</sup>

*Fal.* Not so, my lord: your ill angel is light; but, I hope, he that looks upon me, will take me without weighing: and yet, in some respects, I grant, I cannot go, I

<sup>b</sup> — *I am the fellow with the great belly, and he my dog.*] If the fellow's great belly prevented him from seeing his way, he would want a dog as well as a blind man.—FARMER.

<sup>i</sup> *A wassel candle, &c.*] i. e. A large candle lighted up at a feast. There is a quibble upon the word *wax*, which signifies increase as well as the matter of the honey-comb.—JOHNSON.

<sup>k</sup> — *angel*—] A gold coin worth ten shillings.



cannot tell:<sup>1</sup> Virtue is of so little regard in these costermonger times,<sup>m</sup> that true valour is turned bearherd: Pregnancy<sup>n</sup> is made a tapster, and hath his quick wit wasted in giving reckonings: all the other gifts appertinent to man, as the malice of this age shapes them, are not worth a gooseberry. You, that are old, consider not the capacities of us that are young: you measure the heat of our livers with the bitterness of your gall; and we that are in the vaward<sup>o</sup> of our youth, I must confess, are wags too.

*Ch. Just.* Do you set down your name in the scroll of youth, that are written down old with all the characters of age? Have you not a moist eye? a dry hand? a yellow cheek? a white beard? a decreasing leg? an increasing belly? Is not your voice broken? your wind short? your chin double? your wit single?<sup>p</sup> and every part about you blasted with antiquity?<sup>q</sup> and will you yet call yourself young? Fye, fye, fye, sir John!

*Fal.* My lord, I was born about three of the clock in the afternoon, with a white head, and something a round belly. For my voice,—I have lost it with hollaing, and singing of anthems. To approve my youth further, I will not: the truth is, I am only old in judgment and understanding; and he that will caper with me for a thousand marks, let him lend me the money, and have at him. For the box o'the ear that the prince gave you,—he gave it like a rude prince, and you took it like a sensible lord. I have checked him for it; and the young lion repents: marry, not in ashes, and sackcloth; but in new silk, and old sack.

*Ch. Just.* Well, heaven send the prince a better companion!

<sup>1</sup> — *I cannot go, I cannot tell:*] I cannot be taken in a reckoning; I cannot pass current.—JOHNSON. Mr. Gifford objects to this explanation, and says the words mean nothing more, than *I know not what to say or think of it*. See *Ben Jonson*, vol. i. 125.

<sup>m</sup> — *in these costermonger times,*] In these times when the prevalence of trade has produced that meanness that rates the merit of every thing by money.—JOHNSON. *Costermonger*, means any thing *meanly* mercenary; in its original sense a *dealer in apples*.

<sup>n</sup> — *Pregnancy*—] i. e. *Readiness*.

<sup>o</sup> — *vaward*]—for *vanguard*, the first line or front of an army.

<sup>p</sup> — *single?*] i. e. *Weak, silly*.

<sup>q</sup> — *antiquity?*] To use the word *antiquity* for old age, is not peculiar to Shakspeare.—STEEVENS.

*Fal.* Heaven send the companion a better prince! I cannot rid my hands of him.

*Ch. Just.* Well, the king hath severed you and prince Harry: I hear, you are going with lord John of Lancaster, against the archbishop, and the earl of Northumberland.

*Fal.* Yea; I thank your pretty sweet wit for it. But look you pray, all you that kiss my lady peace at home, that our armies join not in a hot day! for, by the Lord, I take but two shirts out with me, and I mean not to sweat extraordinarily: if it be a hot day, an I brandish any thing but my bottle, I would I might never spit white again.<sup>r</sup> There is not a dangerous action can peep out his head, but I am thrust upon it: Well, I cannot last for ever: But it was always yet the trick of our English nation, if they have a good thing, to make it too common. If you will needs say, I am an old man, you should give me rest. I would to God, my name were not so terrible to the enemy as it is. I were better to be eaten to death with rust, than to be scoured to nothing with perpetual motion.

*Ch. Just.* Well, be honest, be honest; And God bless your expedition!

*Fal.* Will your lordship lend me a thousand pound, to furnish me forth?

*Ch. Just.* Not a penny, not a penny; you are too impatient to bear crosses.<sup>s</sup> Fare you well: Commend me to my cousin Westmoreland.

[*Exeunt* Chief Justice and Attendant.

*Fal.* If I do, fillip me with a three-man beetle.<sup>t</sup>—A man

<sup>r</sup> — *spit white again.*] *To spit white* is the consequence of inward heat, from the stomach's being inflamed with liquor.—STEEVENS.

<sup>s</sup> — *you are too impatient to bear crosses.*] A quibble seems here intended. Falstaff had just asked his lordship to lend him a *thousand pound*, and he tells him in return that he is not to be entrusted with money. A *cross* is a coin so called, because stamped with a cross.—STEEVENS.

<sup>t</sup> — *fillip me with a three-man beetle.*—] A diversion common with the boys in Warwickshire and the adjoining counties, on finding a toad, is to lay a board about two or three feet long at right angles, over a stick of about two or three inches in diameter. Then placing the toad on the end of the board which touches the ground, the other end is struck with a bat or large stick, which throws the creature forty or fifty feet perpendicular from the earth, and its return in general kills it. This is called *filliping the toad*.—A *three-man beetle*, is an implement used for driving piles; it is made of a log of wood about eighteen or twenty inches diameter, and fourteen or fifteen inches thick, with one short and two long handles. A man at each of the long handles manages the fall

can no more separate age and covetousness, than he can part young limbs and lechery: but the gout galls the one, and the pox pinches the other; and so both the degrees prevent<sup>u</sup> my curses.—Boy!—

*Page.* Sir?

*Fal.* What money is in my purse?

*Page.* Seven groats and two-pence.

*Fal.* I can get no remedy against this consumption of the purse: borrowing only lingers and lingers it out, but the disease is incurable.—Go bear this letter to my lord of Lancaster; this to the prince; this to the earl of Westmoreland; and this to old mistress Ursula, whom I have weekly sworn to marry since I perceived the first white hair on my chin: About it; you know where to find me. [*Exit Page.*] A pox of this gout! or, a gout of this pox! for the one, or the other, plays the rogue with my great toe. It is no matter, if I do halt; I have the wars for my colour, and my pension shall seem the more reasonable: a good wit will make use of any thing; I will turn diseases to commodity.<sup>x</sup> [*Exit.*]

## SCENE III.

*York.* *A Room in the Archbishop's Palace.*

*Enter the Archbishop of York, the Lords HASTINGS, MOWBRAY, and BARDOLPH.*

*Arch.* Thus have you heard our cause, and known our  
And, my most noble friends, I pray you all, [means;  
Speak plainly your opinions of our hopes:—  
And first, lord marshal, what say you to it?

*Mowb.* I well allow the occasion of our arms;  
But gladly would be better satisfied,  
How, in our means, we should advance ourselves  
To look with forehead bold and big enough  
Upon the power and puissance of the king.

of the beetle, and a third man, by the short handle, assists in raising it to strike the blow. Such an implement was, without doubt, very suitable for *filliping* so corpulent a being as Falstaff.—STEEVENS.

<sup>u</sup> — prevent]—means, in this place, to anticipate.

<sup>x</sup> — commodity.] i. e. Profit, self-interest.

*Hast.* Our present musters grow upon the file  
To five and twenty thousand men of choice ;  
And our supplies live largely in the hope  
Of great Northumberland, whose bosom burns  
With an incensed fire of injuries.

*Bard.* The question then, lord Hastings, standeth thus ;  
Whether our present five and twenty thousand  
May hold up head without Northumberland.

*Hast.* With him, we may.

*Bard.* Ay, marry, there's the point ;  
But if without him we be thought too feeble,  
My judgment is, we should not step too far  
Till we had his assistance by the hand :  
For, in a theme so bloody-fac'd as this,  
Conjecture, expectation, and surmise  
Of aids uncertain, should not be admitted.

*Arch.* 'Tis very true, lord Bardolph ; for, indeed,  
It was young Hotspur's case at Shrewsbury.

*Bard.* It was, my lord ; who lin'd<sup>1</sup> himself with hope,  
Eating the air on promise of supply,  
Flattering himself with project of a power  
Much smaller than the smallest of his thoughts :<sup>2</sup>  
And so, with great imagination,  
Proper to madmen, led his powers to death,  
And, winking, leap'd into destruction.

*Hast.* But, by your leave, it never yet did hurt,  
To lay down likelihoods, and forms of hope.

*Bard.* Yes, in this present quality of war ;<sup>3</sup>—  
Indeed the instant action, (a cause on foot,)  
Lives so in hope, as in an early spring  
We see the appearing buds ; which, to prove fruit,  
Hope gives not so much warrant, as despair,  
That frosts will bite them. When we mean to build,

<sup>1</sup> — lin'd—] That is, *strengthened, doubled.*

<sup>2</sup> Much smaller than the smallest—] i. e. Which turned out to be much smaller.  
—MUSGRAVE.

<sup>3</sup> Yes, in this present quality of war ;—] The original reading of this passage is :  
*Yes, if this present quality of war ;—*  
*Indeed the instant action, (a cause on foot,)*  
*Lives so in hope, &c.*

This passage is by all allowed to be corrupt. The emendation in the text is made by Dr. Johnson.

We first survey the plot, then draw the model ;  
 And when we see the figure of the house,  
 Then must we rate the cost of the erection :  
 Which if we find outweighs ability,  
 What do we then, but draw anew the model  
 In fewer offices ; or, at least, desist  
 To build at all ? Much more, in this great work,  
 (Which is, almost, to pluck a kingdom down,  
 And set another up,) should we survey  
 The plot of situation, and the model ;  
 Consent<sup>b</sup> upon a sure foundation ;  
 Question surveyors ; know our own estate,  
 How able such a work to undergo,  
 To weigh against his opposite ; or else,  
 We fortify in paper, and in figures,  
 Using the names of men, instead of men :  
 Like one, that draws the model of a house  
 Beyond his power to build it ; who, half through,  
 Gives o'er, and leaves his part-created cost  
 A naked subject to the weeping clouds,  
 And waste for churlish winter's tyranny.

*Hast.* Grant, that our hopes (yet likely of fair birth,)  
 Should be still-born, and that we now possess'd  
 The utmost man of expectation ;  
 I think, we are a body strong enough,  
 Even as we are, to equal with the king.

*Bard.* What ! is the king but five and twenty thousand ?

*Hast.* To us, no more ; nay, not so much, lord Bardolph.  
 For his divisions, as the times do brawl,  
 Are in three heads ; one power against the French,<sup>c</sup>  
 And one against Glendower ; perforce, a third  
 Must take up us : So is the unfirm king  
 In three divided ; and his coffers sound  
 With hollow poverty and emptiness.

*Arch.* That he should draw his several strengths to-  
 And come against us in full puissance, [gether,  
 Need not be dreaded.

<sup>b</sup> *Consent*—] i. e. *Agree*.

<sup>c</sup> — one power against the French,] During this rebellion of Northumberland and the archbishop, a French army of twelve thousand men landed at Milford Haven, in Wales, for the aid of Owen Glendower.—STEEVENS.

*Hast.* If he should do so,  
He leaves his back unarm'd, the French and Welsh  
Baying him at the heels : never fear that.

*Bard.* Who, is it like, should lead his forces hither ?

*Hast.* The duke of Lancaster,<sup>d</sup> and Westmoreland :  
Against the Welsh, himself, and Harry Monmouth :  
But who is substituted 'gainst the French,  
I have no certain notice.

*Arch.* Let us on ;  
And publish the occasion of our arms.  
The commonwealth is sick of their own choice,  
Their over-greedy love hath surfeited :—  
An habitation giddy and unsure  
Hath he, that buildeth on the vulgar heart.  
O thou fond many !<sup>e</sup> with what loud applause  
Didst thou beat heaven with blessing Bolingbroke,  
Before he was what thou would'st have him be ?  
And being now trimm'd in thine own desires,  
Thou, beastly feeder, art so full of him,  
That thou provok'st thyself to cast him up.  
So, so, thou common dog, didst thou disgorge  
Thy glutton bosom of the royal Richard ;  
And now thou would'st eat thy dead vomit up,  
And howl'st to find it. What trust is in these times ?  
They that, when Richard liv'd, would have him die,  
Are now become enamour'd on his grave :  
Thou, that threw'st dust upon his goodly head,  
When through proud London he came sighing on  
After the admired heels of Bolingbroke,  
Cry'st now, *O earth, yield us that king again,*  
*And take thou this !* O thoughts of men accurst !  
Past, and to come, seem best ; things present, worst.

*Mowb.* Shall we go draw our numbers, and set on ?

*Hast.* We are time's subjects, and time bids be gone.

[*Exeunt.*]

<sup>d</sup> *The duke of Lancaster,*] This is an anachronism. Prince John of Lancaster was not created a duke till the second year of his brother, King Henry the Fifth.—MALONE.

<sup>e</sup> — *many!*] From the French *mesnie*, a multitude.—DOUCE.

## ACT II.

SCENE I.—London. *A Street.*

*Enter Hostess; FANG, and his Boy, with her; and  
SNARE following.*

*Host.* Master Fang, have you entered the action?

*Fang.* It is entered.

*Host.* Where is your yeoman?<sup>f</sup> Is it a lusty yeoman?  
will a' stand to't?

*Fang.* Sirrah, where's Snare!

*Host.* O lord, ay: good master Snare.

*Snare.* Here, here.

*Fang.* Snare, we must arrest sir John Falstaff.

*Host.* Yea, good master Snare; I have entered him  
and all.

*Snare.* It may chance cost some of us our lives, for he  
will stab.

*Host.* Alas the day! take heed of him; he stabbed me  
in mine own house, and that most beastly: in good faith,  
a' cares not what mischief he doth, if his weapon be out:  
he will foin like any devil; he will spare neither man,  
woman, nor child.

*Fang.* If I can close with him, I care not for his  
thrust.

*Host.* No, nor I neither: I'll be at your elbow.

*Fang.* An I but fist him once; an a' come but within  
my vice;<sup>g</sup>—

*Host.* I am undone by his going; I warrant you, he's  
an infinitive thing upon my score:—Good master Fang,  
hold him sure;—good master Snare, let him not 'scape. He  
comes continually to Pie-corner, (saving your manhoods,)  
to buy a saddle; and he's indited to dinner to the lubbar's  
head<sup>h</sup> in Lumbert-street, to master Smooth's the silkman:

<sup>f</sup> *Where is your yeoman?*] A bailiff's follower was, in our author's time,  
called a serjeant's yeoman.—MALONE.

<sup>g</sup> — *vice*;—] i. e. *Crasp*; a metaphor taken from a smith's vice. There  
is another reading in the old edition, *view*.—POPE.

<sup>h</sup> — *lubbar's head*—] This is, I suppose, a colloquial corruption of the Lib-  
bard's head.—JOHNSON

I pray ye, since my exion is entered, and my case so openly known to the world, let him be brought in to his answer. A hundred mark is a long one<sup>i</sup> for a poor lone woman to bear: and I have borne, and borne, and borne; and have been fubbed off, and fubbed off, and fubbed off, from this day to that day, that it is a shame to be thought on. There is no honestý in such dealing; unless a woman should be made an ass, and a beast, to bear every knave's wrong.—

*Enter Sir JOHN FALSTAFF, Page, and BARDOLPH.*

Yonder he comes; and that arrant malmsey-nose knave, Bardolph, with him. Do your offices, do your offices, master Fang, and master Snare; do me, do me, do me your offices.

*Fal.* How now? whose mare's dead? what's the matter?

*Fang.* Sir John, I arrest you at the suit of mistress Quickly.

*Fal.* Away, varlets!—Draw, Bardolph; cut me off the villain's head: throw the quean in the channel.

*Host.* Throw me in the channel? I'll throw thee in the channel. Wilt thou? wilt thou? thou bastarding rogue!—Murder, murder! O thou honeysuckle villain! wilt thou kill God's officers, and the king's? O thou honey-seed rogue!<sup>k</sup> thou art a honey-seed; a man queller,<sup>l</sup> and a woman queller.

*Fal.* Keep them off, Bardolph.

*Fang.* A rescue! a rescue!

*Host.* Good people, bring a rescue or two.—Thou wo't, wo't thou? thou wo't, wo't thou? do, do, thou rogue! do, thou hemp-seed!

*Fal.* Away, you scullion! you rampallian! you fustilarian!<sup>m</sup> I'll tickle your catastrophe.

<sup>i</sup> A hundred mark is a long one—] i. e. A long mark or score. I have restored the reading of the old copies. Mr. Theobald and all the modern editors read *loan*. A hundred marks is sixty-six pounds thirteen shillings and four pence.

<sup>k</sup> — honey-suckle villain!—honey-seed rogue!—] The landlady's corruption of *homicidal* and *homicide*.—THEOBALD.

<sup>l</sup> — man queller,] i. e. A murderer.

<sup>m</sup> — rampallian, fustilarian,] Cant terms of abuse;—*rampallian*, from *ramp* an impudent woman; *fustilarian*, from *fusty*.



*Enter the Lord Chief Justice, attended.*

*Ch. Just.* What's the matter? keep the peace here, ho!

*Host.* Good my lord, be good to me! I beseech you, stand to me!

*Ch. Just.* How now, sir John? what, are you brawling here?

Doth this become your place, your time, and business? You should have been on your way to York.—

Stand from him, fellow; Wherefore hang'st thou on him?

*Host.* O my most worshipful lord, an't please your grace, I am a poor widow of Eastcheap, and he is arrested at my suit.

*Ch. Just.* For what sum?

*Host.* It is more than for some, my lord; it is for all, all I have; he hath eaten me out of house and home; he hath put all my substance into that fat belly of his:—but I will have some of it out again, or I'll ride thee o' nights, like the mare.

*Fal.* I think, I am as like to ride the mare, if I have any vantage of ground to get up.

*Ch. Just.* How comes this, sir John? Fye! what man of good temper would endure this tempest of exclamation? Are you not ashamed, to enforce a poor widow to so rough a course to come by her own?

*Fal.* What is the gross sum that I owe thee?

*Host.* Marry, if thou wert an honest man, thyself and the money too. Thou didst swear to me upon a parcel-gilt goblet,<sup>n</sup> sitting in my Dolphin-chamber, at the round table, by a sea-coal fire, upon Wednesday in Whitsun-week, when the prince broke thy head for liking his father to a singing-man of Windsor; thou didst swear to me then, as I was washing thy wound, to marry me, and make me my lady thy wife. Canst thou deny it? Did not goodwife Keech, the butcher's wife,<sup>o</sup> come in then, and call me

<sup>n</sup> — *parcel-gilt goblet,*] A parcel-gilt goblet is a goblet gilt only on such parts of it as are embossed.—STEEVENS.

<sup>o</sup> — *goodwife Keech, the butcher's wife,*] A *keech* is the fat of an ox rolled up by the butcher into a round lump.—STEEVENS.

gossip Quickly? coming in to borrow a mess of vinegar;<sup>p</sup> telling us, she had a good dish of prawns; whereby thou didst desire to eat some; whereby I told thee, they were ill for a green wound? And didst thou not, when she was gone down stairs, desire me to be no more so familiarity with such poor people; saying, that ere long they should call me madam? And didst thou not kiss me, and bid me fetch thee thirty shillings? I put thee now to thy book-oath; deny it if thou canst.

*Fal.* My lord, this is a poor mad soul: and she says, up and down the town, that her eldest son is like you: she hath been in good case, and, the truth is, poverty hath distracted her. But for these foolish officers, I beseech you, I may have redress against them.

*Ch. Just.* Sir John, sir John, I am well acquainted with your manner of wrenching the true cause the false way. It is not a confident brow, nor the throng of words that come with such more than impudent sauciness from you, can thirst me from a level consideration; you have, as it appears to me, practised upon the easy-yielding spirit of this woman, and made her serve your uses both in purse and person.

*Host.* Yea, in troth, my lord.

*Ch. Just.* Pr'ythee, peace:—Pay her the debt you owe her, and unpay the villainy you have done with her; the one you may do with the sterling money, and the other with current repentance.

*Fal.* My lord, I will not undergo this sneap<sup>q</sup> without reply. You call honourable boldness, impudent sauciness: if a man will make court'sy, and say nothing, he is virtuous: No, my lord, my humble duty remembered, I will not be your suitor; I say to you, I do desire deliverance from these officers, being upon hasty employment in the king's affairs.

*Ch. Just.* You speak as having power to do wrong: but

<sup>p</sup> — a mess of vinegar;] *Mess* seems to have been the common term for a small proportion of any thing belonging to the kitchen.—SEEEVENS.

<sup>q</sup> — *sneap*—] i. e. *Rebuke* or *check*.

answer in the effect of your reputation,<sup>r</sup> and satisfy the poor woman.

*Fal.* Come hither, hostess. [Taking her aside.

*Enter GOWER.*

*Ch. Just.* Now, master Gower: What news?

*Gow.* The king, my lord, and Harry prince of Wales  
Are near at hand: the rest the paper tells.

*Fal.* As I am a gentleman:—

*Host.* Nay, you said so before.

*Fal.* As I am a gentleman;—Come, no more words  
of it.

*Host.* By this heavenly ground I tread on, I must be  
fain to pawn both my plate, and the tapestry of my din-  
ing-chambers.

*Fal.* Glasses, glasses, is the only drinking; and for thy  
walls,—a pretty slight drollery, or the story of the prodi-  
gal, or the German hunting in water-work,<sup>s</sup> is worth a  
thousand of these bed-hangings, and these fly-bitten ta-  
pestries. Let it be ten pound, if thou canst. Come, an  
it were not for thy humours, there is not a better wench  
in England. Go, wash thy face, and draw<sup>t</sup> thy action:  
Come, thou must not be in this humour with me; dost  
not know me? Come, come, I know thou wast set on to  
this.

*Host.* Pray thee, sir John, let it be but twenty nobles;  
i'faith I am loath to pawn my plate, in good earnest, la.

*Fal.* Let it alone; I'll make other shift: you'll be a  
fool still.

*Host.* Well, you shall have it, though I pawn my gown.  
I hope, you'll come to supper: You'll pay me all together?

*Fal.* Will I live?—Go, with her, with her; [to BAR-  
DOLPH.] hook on, hook on.

*Host.* Will you have Doll Tear-sheet meet you at  
supper?

<sup>r</sup> — answer in the effect of your reputation,] That is, answer in a manner  
suitable to your character.—JOHNSON.

<sup>s</sup> — the German hunting in water-work,] The German hunting was, I suppose,  
hunting the wild boar.—FARMER. In water-work means in water colours.—  
WARBURTON.

<sup>t</sup> — draw—] i. e. Withdraw.

*Fal.* No more words ; let's have her.

[*Exeunt* Hostess, BARDOLPH, *Officers, and Page.*

*Ch. Just.* I have heard better news.

*Fal.* What's the news, my good lord ?

*Ch. Just.* Where lay the king last night ?

*Gow.* At Basingstoke, my lord.

*Fal.* I hope, my lord, all's well : What's the news, my lord ?

*Ch. Just.* Come all his forces back ?

*Gow.* No ; fifteen hundred foot, five hundred horse, Are march'd up to my lord of Lancaster, Against Northumberland, and the archbishop.

*Fal.* Comes the king back from Wales, my noble lord ?

*Ch. Just.* You shall have letters of me presently : Come, go along with me, good master Gower.

*Fal.* My lord !

*Ch. Just.* What's the matter ?

*Fal.* Master Gower, shall I entreat you with me to dinner ?

*Gow.* I must wait upon my good lord here : I thank you, good sir John.

*Ch. Just.* Sir John, you loiter here too long, being you are to take soldiers up in counties as you go.

*Fal.* Will you sup with me, master Gower ?

*Ch. Just.* What foolish master taught you these manners, sir John ?

*Fal.* Master Gower, if they become me not, he was a fool that taught them me.—This is the right fencing grace, my lord ; tap for tap, and so part fair.

*Ch. Just.* Now the Lord lighten thee ! thou art a great fool. [ *Exeunt.*

## SCENE II.

*The same. Another Street.*

*Enter* Prince HENRY and POINS.

*P. Hen.* Trust me, I am exceedingly weary.

*Poins.* Is it come to that ? I had thought, weariness durst not have attached one of so high blood.

*P. Hen.* 'Faith it does me; though it discolours the complexion of my greatness to acknowledge it. Doth it not show vilely in me, to desire small beer?

*Poins.* Why, a prince should not be so loosely studied, as to remember so weak a composition.

*P. Hen.* Belike then, my appetite was not princely got; for, by my troth, I do now remember the poor creature, small beer. But indeed, these humble considerations make me out of love with my greatness. What a disgrace is it to me, to remember thy name? or to know thy face to-morrow? or to take note how many pair of silk stockings thou hast; *viz.* these, and those that were the peach-colour'd ones? or to bear the inventory of thy shirts; as, one for superfluity, and one other for use?—but that, the tennis court-keeper knows better than I; for it is a low ebb of linen with thee, when thou keepest not racket there; as thou hast not done a great while, because the rest of thy low-countries have made a shift to eat up thy holland:<sup>u</sup> and God knows whether those that bawl out the ruins of thy linen, shall inherit his kingdom: but the midwives say, the children are not in the fault; whereupon the world increases, and kindreds are mightily strengthened.

*Poins.* How ill it follows, after you have laboured so hard, you should talk so idly? Tell me, how many good young princes would do so, their fathers being so sick as yours at this time is?

*P. Hen.* Shall I tell thee one thing, Poins?

*Poins.* Yes; and let it be an excellent good thing.

*P. Hen.* It shall serve among wits of no higher breeding than thine.

*Poins.* Go to; I stand the push of your one thing that you will tell.

*P. Hen.* Why, I tell thee,—it is not meet that I should be sad, now my father is sick: albeit I could tell to thee,

<sup>u</sup> — *eat up thy holland:*] i. e. He has sold his shirts to provide for his belly. The quibble is between *holland* and *low-countries*. With these words in the folio the prince's speech concludes. The passage that follows was adopted by Pope from the quarto of 1600. It is unintelligible and profane; it was very properly rejected by the author, and not wisely recalled by his late editors.

(as to one it pleases me, for fault of a better, to call my friend,) I could be sad, and sad indeed too.

*Poins.* Very hardly, upon such a subject.

*P. Hen.* By this hand, thou think'st me as far in the devil's book, as thou, and Falstaff, for obduracy and persistency: Let the end try the man. But I tell thee,—my heart bleeds inwardly, that my father is so sick: and keeping such vile company as thou art, hath in reason taken from me all ostentation of sorrow.\*

*Poins.* The reason?

*P. Hen.* What would'st thou think of me, if I should weep?

*Poins.* I would think thee a most princely hypocrite.

*P. Hen.* It would be every man's thought; and thou art a blessed fellow, to think as every man thinks; never a man's thought in the world keeps the road-way better than thine: every man would think me an hypocrite indeed. And what accites<sup>y</sup> your most worshipful thought, to think so?

*Poins.* Why, because you have been so lewd, and so much engrafted to Falstaff.

*P. Hen.* And to thee.

*Poins.* By this light, I am well spoken of, I can hear it with my own ears: the worst that they can say of me is, that I am a second brother, and that I am a proper fellow of my hands;<sup>z</sup> and those two things, I confess, I cannot help. By the mass, here comes Bardolph.

*P. Hen.* And the boy that I gave Falstaff: he had him from me christian: and look, if the fat villain have not transformed him ape.

*Enter* BARDOLPH *and* Page.

*Bard.* 'Save your grace!

*P. Hen.* And yours, most noble Bardolph!

*Bard.* Come, you virtuous ass, [*to the Page,*] you bashful fool, must you be blushing? wherefore blush you

\* — all ostentation of sorrow.] *Ostentation* is here not boastful show, but simply show.—JOHNSON.

<sup>y</sup> — accites—] i. e. *Instigates*.

<sup>z</sup> — proper fellow of my hands;] i. e. A handsome fellow for my size.

now? What a maidenly man at arms are you become? Is it such a matter, to get a pottlepot's<sup>a</sup> maiden-head?

*Page.* He called me even now, my lord, through a red lattice,<sup>b</sup> and I could discern no part of his face from the window; at last, I spied his eyes; and, methought, he had made two holes in the ale-wife's new petticoat, and peeped through.

*P. Hen.* Hath not the boy profited?

*Bard.* Away, you whoreson upright rabbit, away!

*Page.* Away, you rascally Althea's dream, away!

*P. Hen.* Instruct us, boy: What dream, boy?

*Page.* Marry, my lord, Althea dreamed she was delivered of a fire-brand;<sup>c</sup> and therefore I call him her dream.

*P. Hen.* A crown's worth of good interpretation.—  
There it is, boy. [Gives him money.]

*Poins.* O, that this good blossom could be kept from cankers!—Well, there is sixpence to preserve thee.

*Bard.* An you do not make him be hanged among you, the gallows shall have wrong.

*P. Hen.* And how doth thy master, Bardolph?

*Bard.* Well, my lord. He heard of your grace's coming to town; there's a letter for you.

*Poins.* Delivered with good respect.—And how doth the martlemas, your master?<sup>d</sup>

*Bard.* In bodily health, sir.

*Poins.* Marry, the immortal part needs a physician: but that moves not him; though that be sick, it dies not.

*P. Hen.* I do allow this wen<sup>e</sup> to be as familiar with me as my dog: and he holds his place; for look you, how he writes.

*Poins.* [*reads.*] John Falstaff, knight,—Every man must know that, as oft as he has occasion to name himself. Even like those that are kin to the king; for they

<sup>a</sup> — *pottle-pot*—] i. e. A pot holding a *pottle* or two quarts. The page appears to be ashamed of having been discovered at an ale-house.

<sup>b</sup> — *through a red lattice,*] i. e. From an ale-house window.

<sup>c</sup> — *Althea dreamed, &c.*] Shakspeare is here mistaken in his mythology, and has confounded Althea's fire-brand with Hecuba's. The fire-brand of Althea was real: but Hecuba, when she was big with Paris, dreamed that she was delivered of a fire-brand that consumed the kingdom.—JOHNSON.

<sup>d</sup> — *the martlemas, your master?*] That is, the autumn, or rather the latter spring. The old fellow with juvenile passions.—JOHNSON.

<sup>e</sup> — *this wen*—] i. e. This swollen excrescence of a man.—JOHNSON.

never prick their finger, but they say, *There is some of the king's blood spilt: How comes that?* says he, that takes upon him not to conceive: the answer is as ready as a borrower's cap;<sup>f</sup> *I am the king's poor cousin, sir.*

*P. Hen.* Nay, they will be kin to us, or they will fetch it from Japhet. But the letter:—

*Poins.* *Sir John Falstaff, knight to the son of the king, nearest his father, Harry, prince of Wales, greeting.*—Why, this is a certificate.

*P. Hen.* Peace!

*Poins.* *I will imitate the honourable Roman in brevity:*<sup>g</sup>—he sure means brevity in breath; shortwinded.—*I commend me to thee, I commend thee, and I leave thee. Be not too familiar with Poins: for he misuses thy favours so much, that he swears thou art to marry his sister Nell. Repent at idle times as thou may'st, and so farewell.*

*Thine, by yea and no, (which is as much as to say, as thou usest him,) Jack Falstaff, with my familiars: John, with my brothers and sisters: and sir John with all Europe.*

My lord, I will steep this letter in sack, and make him eat it.

*P. Hen.* That's to make him eat twenty of his words. But do you use me thus, Ned? must I marry your sister?

*Poins.* May the wench have no worse fortune! but I never said so.

*P. Hen.* Well, thus we play the fools with the time; and the spirits of the wise sit in the clouds, and mock us.—Is your master here in London?

*Bard.* Yes, my lord.

*P. Hen.* Where sups he? doth the old boar feed in the old frank?<sup>h</sup>

<sup>f</sup> — *the answer is as ready as a borrower's cap;*] A man that goes to borrow money, is of all others the most complaisant; his cap is always at hand.—WARBURTON. The old copy reads *borrowed cap.*

<sup>g</sup> *I will imitate the honourable Roman in brevity;*] I suppose by the *honourable Roman* is intended Julius Cæsar, whose *veni, vidi, vici*, seems to be alluded to in the beginning of the letter. *I commend me to thee, I commend thee, and I leave thee.* The very words of Cæsar are afterwards quoted by Falstaff.—HEATH.

<sup>h</sup> — *frank?*] i. e. Sty.



*Bard.* At the old place, my lord ; in Eastcheap.

*P. Hen.* What company ?

*Page.* Ephesians,<sup>i</sup> my lord ; of the old church.

*P. Hen.* Sup any women with him ?

*Page.* None, my lord, but old mistress Quickly, and mistress Doll Tear-sheet.

*P. Hen.* What pagan<sup>k</sup> may that be ?

*Page.* A proper gentlewoman, sir, and a kinswoman of my master's.

*P. Hen.* Even such kin, as the parish heifers are to the town-bull.—Shall we steal upon them, Ned, at supper ?

*Poins.* I am your shadow, my lord ; I'll follow you.

*P. Hen.* Sirrah, you boy,—and Bardolph :—no word to your master, that I am yet come to town : There's for your silence.

*Bard.* I have no tongue, sir.

*Page.* And for mine, sir,—I will govern it.

*P. Hen.* Fare ye well ; go. [*Exeunt* BARDOLPH and *Page.*] This Doll Tear-sheet should be some road.

*Poins.* I warrant you, as common<sup>as</sup> the way between Saint Alban's and London.

*P. Hen.* How might we see Falstaff bestow himself to-night in his true colours, and not ourselves be seen ?

*Poins.* Put on two leather jerkins, and aprons, and wait upon him at his table as drawers.

*P. Hen.* From a god to a bull ? a heavy descension ! it was Jove's case. From a prince to a prentice ? a low transformation ! that shall be mine : for in every thing, the purpose must weigh with the folly. Follow me, Ned.

[*Exeunt.*]

<sup>i</sup> *Ephesians,*] Ephesian was a term in the cant of these times, of which I know not the precise notion, perhaps a toper.—JOHNSON.

<sup>k</sup> — *pagan*—] This seems to have been a cant term, implying irregularity either of birth or manners.—STEEVENS.

## SCENE III.

Warkworth. *Before the Castle.*

*Enter* NORTHUMBERLAND, *Lady* NORTHUMBERLAND,  
*and Lady* PERCY.

*North.* I pray thee, loving wife, and gentle daughter,  
Give even way unto my rough affairs :  
Put not on you the visage of the times,  
And be, like them, to Percy troublesome.

*Lady N.* I have given over, I will speak no more :  
Do what you will ; your wisdom be your guide.

*North.* Alas, sweet wife, my honour is at pawn ;  
And, but by going, nothing can redeem it.

*Lady P.* O, yet, for God's sake, go not to these wars !  
The time was, father, that you broke your word,  
When you were more endear'd to it than now ;  
When your own Percy, when my heart's dear Harry  
Threw many a northward look, to see his father  
Bring up his powers ; but he did long in vain.  
Who then persuaded you to stay at home ?  
There were two honours lost ; yours, and your son's.  
For yours,—may heavenly glory brighten it !  
For his,—it stuck upon him, as the sun  
In the grey vault of heaven : and, by his light,  
Did all the chivalry of England move  
To do brave acts ; he was, indeed, the glass  
Wherein the noble youth did dress themselves.  
He had no legs, that practis'd not his gait :  
And speaking thick, which nature made his blemish,  
Became the accents of the valiant ;  
For those that could speak low, and tardily,  
Would turn their own perfection to abuse,  
To seem like him : So that, in speech, in gait,  
In diet, in affections of delight,  
In military rules, humours of blood,  
He was the mark and glass, copy and book,  
That fashion'd others. And him,—O wondrous him !  
O miracle of men !—him did you leave,

(Second to none, unseconded by you,  
 To look upon the hideous god of war  
 In disadvantage; to abide a field,  
 Where nothing but the sound of Hotspur's name  
 Did seem defensible:<sup>1</sup>—so you left him:  
 Never, O never, do his ghost the wrong,  
 To hold your honour more precise and nice  
 With others, than with him; let them alone;  
 The marshal, and the archbishop, are strong:  
 Had my sweet Harry had but half their numbers,  
 To-day might I, hanging on Hotspur's neck,  
 Have talk'd of Monmouth's grave.

*North.* Beshrew your heart,  
 Fair daughter! you do draw my spirits from me,  
 With new lamenting ancient oversights.  
 But I must go, and meet with danger there;  
 Or it will seek me in another place,  
 And find me worse provided.

*Lady N.* O, fly to Scotland,  
 Till that the nobles, and the armed commons,  
 Have of their puissance made a little taste.

*Lady P.* If they get ground and vantage of the king,  
 Then join you with them, like a rib of steel,  
 To make strength stronger; but, for all our loves,  
 First let them try themselves: So did your son;  
 He was so suffer'd; so came I a widow;  
 And never shall have length of life enough,  
 To rain upon remembrance<sup>m</sup> with mine eyes,  
 That it may grow and sprout as high as heaven,  
 For recordation to my noble husband.

*North.* Come, come, go in with me: 'tis with my mind,  
 As with the tide swell'd up unto its height,  
 That makes a still-stand, running neither way.  
 Fain would I go to meet the archbishop,  
 But many thousand reasons hold me back:—

<sup>1</sup> *Did seem defensible:—*] *Defensible* does not in this place mean *capable of defence*, but *bearing strength, furnishing the means of defence*;—the passive for the active participle.—MALONE.

<sup>m</sup> — *remembrance*—] The allusion is to the plant *rosemary*, the symbol of *remembrance*, and used at funerals and weddings.

I will resolve for Scotland ; there am I,  
Till time and vantage crave my company. [ *Exeunt.*

## SCENE IV.

London. *A Room in the Boar's Head Tavern, in Eastcheap.*

*Enter Two Drawers.*

1 *Draw.* What the devil hast thou brought there? apple-Johns? thou know'st, sir John cannot endure an apple-John.

2 *Draw.* Mass, thou sayest true: The prince once set a dish of apple-Johns before him, and told him, there were five more sir Johns: and, putting off his hat, said, *I will now take my leave of these six dry, round, old, withered knights.*<sup>n</sup> It angered him to the heart: but he hath forgot that.

1 *Draw.* Why then, cover, and set them down: And see if thou canst find out Sneak's noise; ° mistress Tear-sheet would fain hear some musick. Despatch:—The room where they supped, is too hot; they'll come in straight.

2 *Draw.* Sirrah, here will be the prince, and master Poin's anon: and they will put on two of our jerkins, and aprons; and sir John must not know of it: Bardolph hath brought word.

1 *Draw.* By the mass, here will be old utis: <sup>p</sup> It will be an excellent stratagem.

2 *Draw.* I'll see, if I can find out Sneak. [ *Exit.*

*Enter Hostess and DOLL TEAR-SHEET.*

*Host.* I'faith, sweet heart, methinks now you are in an excellent good temperality: your pulsidege beats as ex-

<sup>n</sup> — *old, withered knights.*] The apple-John will keep two years, but becomes very wrinkled and shrivelled.—STEVENS.

<sup>o</sup> — *Sneak's noise;*] *Sneak* was a street minstrel, and therefore the drawer goes out to listen if he can hear him in the neighbourhood.—JOHNSON.

<sup>p</sup> — *utis;*]—used for *festivity.* *Utis* or *utas* from the Fr. *huit*, is in its original sense the eighth day after any festival.

traordinarily as heart would desire; and your colour, I warrant you, is as red as any rose: But, i'faith, you have drunk too much canaries; and that's a marvellous searching wine, and it perfumes the blood ere one can say,—What's this? How do you now?

*Dol.* Better than I was. Hem.

*Host.* Why, that's well said; a good heart's worth gold. Look, here comes sir John.

*Enter FALSTAFF, singing.*

*Fal.* *When Arthur first in court*<sup>a</sup>—Empty the jordan.—*And was a worthy king:* [*Exit Drawer.*] How, now, mistress Doll?

*Host.* Sick of a calm:<sup>r</sup> yea, good sooth.

*Fal.* So is all her sect; an they be once in a calm, they are sick.

*Dol.* You muddy rascal, is that all the comfort you give me?

*Fal.* You make fat rascals,<sup>s</sup> mistress Doll.

*Dol.* I make them! gluttony and diseases make them; I make them not.

*Fal.* If the cook help to make the gluttony, you help to make the diseases, Doll; we catch of you, Doll, we catch of you; grant that, my poor virtue, grant that.

*Dol.* Ay, marry; our chains, and our jewels.

*Fal.* *Your brooches, pearls, and owches;*—for to serve bravely, is to come halting off, you know: To come off the breach with his pike bent bravely, and to surgery bravely; to venture upon the charged chambers<sup>t</sup> bravely:—

*Dol.* Hang yourself, you muddy conger, hang yourself!

*Host.* By my troth, this is the old fashion; you two never meet, but you fall to some discord: you are both,

<sup>a</sup> *When Arthur first in court*—] The entire ballad is published in the first volume of Dr. Percy's *Reliques of ancient English Poetry*.—STEEVENS.

<sup>r</sup> *Sick of a calm:*] I suppose she means to say of a *qualm*.—STEEVENS.

<sup>s</sup> — *fat rascals,*] Falstaff alludes to a phrase of the forest. *Lean* deer are called *rascal* deer. He tells her she calls him wrong, being *fat* he cannot be a *rascal*.—JOHNSON.

<sup>t</sup> — *charged chambers*—] To understand this quibble, it is necessary to say, that a *chamber* signifies not only an apartment, but a piece of ordnance.—STEEVENS.

in good troth, as rheumatick<sup>u</sup> as two dry toasts;<sup>x</sup> you cannot one bear with another's confirmities. What the good-year!<sup>y</sup> one must bear, and that must be you: [*to DOLL:*] you are the weaker vessel, as they say, the emptier vessel.

*Dol.* Can a weak empty vessel bear such a huge full hogshead? there's a whole merchant's venture of Bourdeaux stuff in him; you have not seen a hulk better stuffed in the hold.—Come, I'll be friends with thee, Jack: thou art going to the wars; and whether I shall ever see thee again, or no, there is nobody cares.

*Re-enter Drawer.*

*Draw.* Sir, ancient Pistol's<sup>z</sup> below, and would speak with you.

*Dol.* Hang him, swaggering rascal! let him not come hither: it is the foul mouth'dst rogue in England.

*Host.* If he swagger, let him not come here: no, by my faith; I must live amongst my neighbours; I'll no swaggerers: I am in good name and fame with the very best:—Shut the door;—there comes no swaggerers here; I have not lived all this while, to have swaggering now:—shut the door, I pray you.

*Fal.* Dost thou hear, hostess?—

*Host.* Pray you, pacify yourself, sir John; there comes no swaggerers here.<sup>a</sup>

*Fal.* Dost thou hear? it is mine ancient.

*Host.* Tilly-fally, sir John, never tell me; your ancient swaggerer comes not in my doors. I was before master Tisick, the deputy, the other day; and, as he said to me, —it was no longer ago than Wednesday last,—*Neighbour Quickly*, says he;—master Dumb, our minister, was by

<sup>u</sup> — *rheumatick*—] *Rheumatick*, in the cant language of the times, signified capricious, humoursome. In this sense it appears to be used in many other old plays.—STEEVENS.

<sup>x</sup> — *as two dry toasts*;] Which cannot meet but they grate one another.—JOHNSON.

<sup>y</sup> — *What the good year!*] This was a very common form of exclamation.

<sup>z</sup> — *ancient Pistol*—is the same as *ensign Pistol*. Falstaff was captain; Peto, lieutenant; and Pistol, ensign, or *ancient*.—JOHNSON.

<sup>a</sup> — *there comes no swaggerers here.*] A *swaggerer* was a roaring, bullying, blustering, fighting fellow.—RITSON.

then;—*Neighbour Quickly*, says he, *receive those that are civil; for, saith he, you are in an ill name;*—now he said so, I can tell whereupon; *for, says he, you are an honest woman, and well thought on; therefore take heed what guests you receive: Receive, says he, no swaggering companions.*—There comes none here;—you would bless you to hear what he said:—no, I'll no swaggerers.

*Fal.* He's no swaggerer, hostess; a tame cheater,<sup>b</sup> he; you may stroke him as gently as a puppy greyhound: he will not swagger with a Barbary hen, if her feathers turn back in any show of resistance.—Call him up, drawer.

*Host.* Cheater, call you him? I will bar no honest man my house, nor no cheater:<sup>c</sup> But I do not love swaggering; by my troth, I am the worse, when one says—swagger: feel, masters, how I shake; look you, I warrant you.

*Dol.* So you do, hostess.

*Host.* Do I? yea, in very truth, do I, an'twere an aspen leaf: I cannot abide swaggerers.

*Enter* PISTOL, BARDOLPH, and Page.

*Pist.* 'Save you, sir John!

*Fal.* Welcome, ancient Pistol. Here, Pistol, I charge you with a cup of sack: do you discharge upon mine hostess.

*Pist.* I will discharge upon her, sir John, with two bullets.

*Fal.* She is pistol-proof, sir; you shall hardly offend her.

*Host.* Come, I'll drink no proofs, nor no bullets: I'll drink no more than will do me good, for no man's pleasure, I.

*Pist.* Then to you, mistress Dorothy; I will charge you.

*Dol.* Charge me? I scorn you, scurvy companion. What! you poor, base, rascally, cheating, lack-linen mate! Away, you mouldy rogue, away! I am meat for your master.

<sup>b</sup> — a tame-cheater,] A cheater was not, as many modern notes assert, a mere gamester, but one who played with false dice; the name is said to have been originally assumed by those gentry themselves.—See NARES' Glossary.

<sup>c</sup> I will bar no honest man my house, nor no cheater:] The humour of this consists in the woman's mistaking the title of cheater, for that office of the exchequer called an *escheator*, well known to the common people of that time; and named, either corruptly or satirically, a *cheater*.—WARBURTON.

*Pist.* I know you, mistress Dorothy.

*Dol.* Away, you cut-purse rascal! you filthy bung,<sup>d</sup> away! by this wine, I'll thrust my knife in your mouldy chaps, an you play the saucy cuttle<sup>e</sup> with me. Away, you bottle-ale rascal! you basket-hilt stale juggler, you!—Since when, I pray you, sir?—What, with two points<sup>f</sup> on your shoulder? much!<sup>g</sup>

*Pist.* I will murder your ruff for this.

*Fal.* No more, Pistol; I would not have you go off here: discharge yourself of our company, Pistol.

*Host.* No, good captain Pistol; not here, sweet captain.

*Dol.* Captain! thou abominable damned cheater, art thou not ashamed to be called—captain? If captains were of my mind, they would truncheon you out, for taking their names upon you before you have earned them. You a captain, you slave! for what? for tearing a poor whore's ruff in a bawdy-house?—He a captain! Hang him, rogue! He lives upon mouldy stewed prunes, and dried cakes.<sup>h</sup> A captain! these villains will make the word captain as odious as the word occupy;<sup>i</sup> which was an excellent good word before it was ill sorted: therefore captains had need look to it.

*Bard.* Pray thee, go down, good ancient.

*Fal.* Hark thee hither, mistress Doll.

*Pist.* Not I: tell thee what, corporal Bardolph;—I could tear her:—I'll be revenged on her.

*Page.* Pray thee, go down.

*Pist.* I'll see her damned first;—to Pluto's damned lake, to the infernal deep, with Erebus and tortures vile also. Hold hook and line, say I. Down! down, dogs! down faitors!<sup>k</sup> Have we not Hiren here?<sup>l</sup>

<sup>d</sup> — *bung*,] A low-lived term of reproach for a sharper.—See NARES' *Glossary*.

<sup>e</sup> — *cuttle*—] Probably corrupted from *cutter*, the old cant word for a bully or sharper.—See NARES' *Glossary*.

<sup>f</sup> — *with two points*—] As a mark of commission.—JOHNSON.

<sup>g</sup> — *much!*] A common expression of disdain at that time, of the same sense with that more modern one, *Marry came up*.—WARBURTON.

<sup>h</sup> — *mouldy stewed prunes and dried cakes*.] i. e. The refuse provisions of brothels.—STEEVENS.

<sup>i</sup> — *occupy*;] “Many, out of their own obscene apprehensions, refuse proper and fit words; as, *occupy*, nature,” &c.—BEN JOHNSON'S *Discoveries*.

<sup>k</sup> — *faitors!*] i. e. *Traitors, rascals*.

<sup>l</sup> — *Hiren*—] A cant word for a *harlot*.



*Host.* Good captain Peesel, be quiet ; it is very late, i'faith : I beseech you now, aggravate your choler.

*Pist.* These be good humours, indeed ! Shall pack-horses,

And hollow pamper'd jades of Asia,<sup>m</sup>  
Which cannot go but thirty miles a day,  
Compare with Cæsars, and with Cannibals,<sup>n</sup>  
And Trojan Greeks ? nay, rather damn them with  
King Cerberus ; and let the welkin roar.  
Shall we fall foul for toys ?

*Host.* By my troth, captain, these are very bitter words.

*Bard.* Be gone, good ancient ; this will grow to a brawl anon.

*Pist.* Die men, like dogs ; give crowns like pins ;  
Have we not Hiren here ?

*Host.* O' my word, captain ; there's none such here. What the good-year ! do you think, I would deny her ? for God's sake, be quiet.

*Pist.* Then, feed and be fat, my fair Calypolis :<sup>o</sup>  
Come, give's some sack.

*Si fortuna me tormenta, sperato me contenta.*<sup>p</sup>—

Fear we broadsides ? no, let the fiend give fire :  
Give me some sack ;—and, sweetheart, lie thou there.

[*Laying down his sword.*

Come we to full points here ;<sup>q</sup> and are *et ceteras* nothing ?

*Fal.* Pistol, I would be quiet.

*Pist.* Sweet knight, kiss thy neif :<sup>r</sup> What ! we have seen the seven stars.

<sup>m</sup> *And hollow pamper'd jades of Asia,*] These lines are in part a quotation from Marlow's *Tamburlaine*. They are addressed by the hero of the play to the captive princes who draw his chariot.

<sup>n</sup> — *Cannibals,*] By a blunder for *Hannibal*.

<sup>o</sup> — *feed and be fat, my fair Calypolis :*] This is a burlesque on a line in an old play called *The battle Alcazar*, &c. printed in 1594, in which Muley Mahomet enters to his wife with the lion's flesh on his sword :

“ Feed then, and faint not, my fair *Calypolis*.”—STEEVENS.

<sup>p</sup> *Si fortuna me, &c.*] Pistol here quotes from Hannibal Gonsaga, who vaunted on yielding himself a prisoner, as you may read in an old collection of tales, called *wits, fits, and fancies* :

“ *Si fortuna me tormenta,*

“ *Il speranza me contenta.*”—FARMER.

<sup>q</sup> *Come we to full points here ;*] That is, shall we stop here, shall we have no further entertainment ?—JOHNSON.

<sup>r</sup> — *neif :*] i. e. *Fist*, the word is still used in this sense in the northern counties.

*Dol.* Thrust him down stairs; I cannot endure such a fustian rascal.

*Pist.* Thrust him down stairs! know we not Galloway nags?<sup>s</sup>

*Fal.* Quoit him down, Bardolph, like a shove-groat shilling:<sup>t</sup> nay, if he do nothing but speak nothing, he shall be nothing here.

*Bard.* Come, get you down stairs.

*Pist.* What! shall we have incision? shall we imbrue?— [Snatching up his sword.

Then death rock me asleep,<sup>u</sup> abridge my doleful days!

Why then, let grievous, ghastly, gaping wounds

Untwine the sisters three! Come, Atropos, I say!

*Host.* Here's goodly stuff toward!

*Fal.* Give me my rapier, boy.

*Dol.* I pray thee, Jack, I pray thee, do not draw.

*Fal.* Get you down stairs.

[Drawing, and driving PISTOL out.

*Host.* Here's a goodly tumult! I'll forswear keeping house, afore I'll be in these tiritts and frights. So; murder, I warrant now.—Alas, alas! put up your naked weapons, put up your naked weapons.

[Exeunt PISTOL and BARDOLPH.

*Dol.* I pray thee, Jack, be quiet; the rascal is gone. Ah, you whoreson little valiant villain, you.

*Host.* Are you not hurt i'the groin? methought, he made a shrewd thrust at your belly.

Re-enter BARDOLPH.

*Fal.* Have you turned him out of doors?

*Bard.* Yes, sir. The rascal's drunk: you have hurt him, sir, in the shoulder.

<sup>s</sup> — Galloway nags? i. e. Common hacknies.

<sup>t</sup> — a shove-groat shilling: i. e. A shilling worn smooth, and fit to play at shove-groat with. Shove-groat, shove-board, shovel-board, and shuffle-board, was a trivial game, which consisted in pushing or shaking pieces of money on a board, to reach certain marks. Mr. Gifford says, that, in playing this game, "the shilling is placed on the extreme edge of the table and propelled towards the mark, by a smart stroke with the palm of the hand."—Ben Jonson, vol. i. p. 86. It was called shove-groat, from its having been at one time played with silver groats.

<sup>u</sup> Then death rock me asleep,] This is a fragment of a song attributed to Anne Boleyn. The entire song is in Sir John Hawkins' *General History of Musick*, vol. iii. p. 30.—STEEVENS.

*Fal.* A rascal! to brave me!

*Dol.* Ah, you sweet little rogue, you! Alas, poor ape, how thou sweat'st! Come, let me wipe thy face;—come on, you whoreson chops:—Ah, rogue! i'faith, I love thee. Thou art as valourous as Hector of Troy, worth five of Agamemnon, and ten times better than the nine worthies.<sup>x</sup> Ah, villain!

*Fal.* A rascally slave! I will toss the rogue in a blanket.

*Dol.* Do, if thou darest for thy heart: if thou dost, I'll canvas thee between a pair of sheets.

*Enter Musick.*

*Page.* The musick is come, sir.

*Fal.* Let them play;—Play, sirs.—Sit on my knee, Doll. A rascal bragging slave! the rogue fled from me like quicksilver.

*Dol.* I'faith, and thou followedst him like a church. Thou whoreson little tidy Bartholomew boar-pig,<sup>y</sup> when wilt thou leave fighting o'days, and foining o'nights, and begin to patch up thine old body for heaven?

*Enter behind, Prince HENRY and POINS, disguised like Drawers.*

*Fal.* Peace, good Doll! do not speak like a death's head; do not bid me remember mine end.

*Dol.* Sirrah, what humour is the prince of?

*Fal.* A good shallow young fellow: he would have made a good pantler, he would have chipped bread well.

*Dol.* They say, Poins has a good wit.

*Fal.* He a good wit? hang him, baboon! his wit is as thick as Tewksbury mustard;<sup>z</sup> there is no more conceit in him, than is in a mallet.

<sup>x</sup> — *the nine worthies.*] Famous personages often alluded to and classed together, in rather an arbitrary manner. Three of them were Gentiles, three Jews, three Christian: viz. Hector, Alexander, and Julius Cæsar: Joshua, David, and Judas Maccabæus: King Arthur, Charlemagne, and Godfrey de Bouillon. They are often introduced in comparisons for bravery.

<sup>y</sup> — *tidy Bartholomew boar-pig.*] *Tidy* is here used in the sense of *fat*, which is not unusual. The custom of roasting pigs at *Bartholomew-fair* continued till the beginning of the last century, if not later.—REED.

<sup>z</sup> — *Tewksbury mustard.*] *Tewksbury* in Gloucestershire, was formerly noted for the mustard-balls made there and sent into other parts.—GREY.

*Dol.* Why does the prince love him so then ?

*Fal.* Because their legs are both of a bigness : and he plays at quoits well ; and eats conger and fennel ;<sup>a</sup> and drinks off candles' ends for flap-dragons ;<sup>b</sup> and rides the wild mare<sup>c</sup> with the boys ; and jumps upon joint-stools ; and swears with a good grace ; and wears his boot very smooth, like unto the sign of the leg ; and breeds no bate with telling of discreet stories, and such other gambol faculties he hath, that show a weak mind and an able body, for the which the prince admits him : for the prince himself is such another ; the weight of a hair will turn the scales between their avoirdupois.

*P. Hen.* Would not this nave of a wheel<sup>d</sup> have his ears cut off ?

*Poins.* Let's beat him before his whore.

*P. Hen.* Look, if the withered elder hath not his poll clawed like a parrot.

*Poins.* Is it not strange, that desire should so many years outlive performance ?

*Fal.* Kiss me, Doll.

*P. Hen.* Saturn and Venus this year in conjunction ! what says the almanack to that ?

*Poins.* And look, whether the fiery Trigon,<sup>e</sup> his man, be not lispng to his master's old tables,<sup>f</sup> his note-book, his counsel-keeper.

*Fal.* Thou dost give me flattering busses.

*Dol.* Nay, truly ; I kiss thee with a most constant heart.

<sup>a</sup> — *conger and fennel* ;] The conger eel and the herb fennel, were both considered as inflammatory. To eat them therefore together, was considered as an act of libertinism.

<sup>b</sup> — *flap-dragons* ;]—are small combustible bodies, fired at one end, and put afloat in a glass of liquor. It is an act of a toper's dexterity to toss off the glass in such a manner as to prevent the *flap-dragon* from doing mischief.—JOHNSON.

<sup>c</sup> — *rides the wild mare*—] i. e. Plays at see-saw.—DOUCE.

<sup>d</sup> — *nave of a wheel*—] *Nave* and *knave* are easily reconciled, but why *nave of a wheel* ? I suppose from his roundness. He was called *round man*, in contempt, before.—JOHNSON.

<sup>e</sup> — *the fiery Trigon, &c.*] *Trigonum igneum* is the astronomical term when the upper planets meet in a fiery sign. The *fiery Trigon*, I think, consists of *Aries, Leo, and Sagittarius*.—STEEVENS.

<sup>f</sup> — *lispng to his master's old tables*,] i. e. *Saying soft things to dame* Quickly. She is called *Falstaff's tables* or *table-book*, from being the depository of his secrets. The explanation is Malone's. Dr. Warburton thought the passage corrupt.

*Fal.* I am old, I am old.

*Dol.* I love thee better than I love e'er a scurvy young boy of them all.

*Fal.* What stuff wilt have a kirtle of?<sup>g</sup> I shall receive money on Thursday: thou shalt have a cap to-morrow. A merry song, come: it grows late, we'll to bed. Thou'lt forget me, when I am gone.

*Dol.* By my troth thou'lt set me a weeping, an thou sayest so: prove that ever I dress myself handsome till thy return.—Well, hearken the end.

*Fal.* Some sack, Francis.

*P. Hen. Poins.* Anon, anon, sir. [*Advancing.*]

*Fal.* Ha! a bastard son of the king's?—And art not thou Poins his brother?<sup>h</sup>

*P. Hen.* Why, thou globe of sinful continents, what a life dost thou lead?

*Fal.* A better than thou; I am a gentleman, thou art a drawer.

*P. Hen.* Very true, sir: and I come to draw you out by the ears.

*Host.* O, the Lord preserve thy good grace! by my troth, welcome to London.—Now the Lord bless that sweet face of thine! O Jesu, are you come from Wales?

*Fal.* Thou whoreson mad compound of majesty,—by this light flesh and corrupt blood, thou art welcome.

[*Leaning his hand upon DOLL.*]

*Dol.* How! you fat fool, I scorn you.

*Poins.* My lord, he will drive you out of your revenge, and turn all to a merriment, if you take not the heat.<sup>i</sup>

*P. Hen.* You whoreson candle-mine,<sup>k</sup> you, how vilely did you speak of me even now, before this honest, virtuous, civil gentlewoman?

<sup>g</sup> — a kirtle of?] A woman's kirtle, or rather, upper kirtle, (as distinguished from a petticoat, which was sometimes called a kirtle,) was a long mantle which reached to the ground, with a head to it that entirely covered the face; and it was, perhaps, usually red. A half-kirtle was a similar garment, reaching only somewhat lower than the waist.—MALONE.

<sup>h</sup> — Poins his brother?] i. e. Poins's brother.

<sup>i</sup> — if you take not the heat.] Alluding to the proverb, "Strike while the iron is hot."—STEVENS.

<sup>k</sup> — candle-mine.] i. e. Magazine of tallow.

*Host.* 'Blessing o'your good heart! and so she is, by my troth.

*Fal.* Didst you hear me?

*P. Hen.* Yes; and you knew me, as you did when you run away by Gads-hill: you knew, I was at your back; and spoke it on purpose, to try my patience.

*Fal.* No, no, no; not so; I did not think, thou wast within hearing.

*P. Hen.* I shall drive you then to confess the wilful abuse; and then I know how to handle you.

*Fal.* No abuse, Hal, on mine honour; no abuse.

*P. Hen.* Not! to dispraise me; and call me—pantler, and bread-chipper, and I know not what?

*Fal.* No abuse, Hal.

*Poins.* No abuse!

*Fal.* No abuse, Ned, in the world; honest Ned, none. I dispraised him before the wicked, that the wicked might not fall in love with him: in which doing, I have done the part of a careful friend, and a true subject, and thy father is to give me thanks for it. No abuse, Hal;—none, Ned, none;—no, boys, none.

*P. Hen.* See now, whether pure fear, and entire cowardice, doth not make thee wrong this virtuous gentlewoman to close with us? Is she of the wicked? Is thine hostess here of the wicked? or is the boy of the wicked? Or honest Bardolph, whose zeal burns in his nose, of the wicked?

*Poins.* Answer, thou dead elm, answer.

*Fal.* The fiend hath pricked down Bardolph, irrecoverable; and his face is Lucifer's privy-kitchen, where he doth nothing but roast malt-worms. For the boy,—there is a good angel about him; but the devil outbids him too.

*P. Hen.* For the women,——

*Fal.* For one of them,—she is in hell already, and burns, poor soul! For the other,—I owe her money; and whether she be damned for that, I know not.

<sup>1</sup> —— and burns, poor soul!] The venereal disease was called in those times, the *brennynge* or *burning*.—JOHNSON.

*Host.* No, I warrant you.

*Fal.* No, I think thou art not; I think, thou art quit for that: Marry, there is another indictment upon thee, for suffering flesh to be eaten in thy house,<sup>m</sup> contrary to the law; for the which, I think, thou wilt howl.

*Host.* All victuallers do so: What's a joint of mutton or two in a whole Lent?

*P. Hen.* You, gentlewoman,——

*Dol.* What says your grace?

*Fal.* His grace says that which his flesh rebels against.

*Host.* Who knocks so loud at door? look to the door there, Francis.

*Enter* Peto.

*P. Hen.* Peto, how now? what news?

*Peto.* The king your father is at Westminster; And there are twenty weak and wearied posts, Come from the north: and, as I came along, I met, and overtook, a dozen captains, Bare-headed, sweating, knocking at the taverns, And asking every one for sir John Falstaff.

*P. Hen.* By heaven, Poins, I feel me much to blame, So idly to profane the precious time; When tempest of commotion, like the south Borne with black vapour, doth begin to melt, And drop upon our bare unarmed heads. Give me my sword and cloak:—Falstaff, good night.

[*Exeunt* Prince HENRY, POINS, Peto, and BARDOLPH.]

*Fal.* Now comes in the sweetest morsel of the night, and we must hence, and leave it unpicked. [*Knocking heard.*] More knocking at the door?

*Re-enter* BARDOLPH.

How now? what's the matter?

*Bard.* You must away to court, sir, presently; a dozen captains stay at the door for you.

<sup>m</sup> — for suffering flesh to be eaten, &c.] By several statutes made in the reigns of Elizabeth and James I. for the regulation and observance of fish-days, victuallers were expressly forbidden to utter flesh in Lent. and to these Falstaff alludes.—Dover.

*Fal.* Pay the musicians, sirrah. [*To the Page.*]—Farewell, hostess:—farewell, Doll.—You see, my good wenches, how men of merit are sought after: the undeserver may sleep, when the man of action is called on. Farewell, good wenches: If I be not sent away post, I will see you again ere I go.

*Dol.* I cannot speak;—If my heart be not ready to burst:—well, sweet Jack, have a care of thyself.

*Fal.* Farewell, farewell.

[*Exeunt FALSTAFF and BARDOLPH.*]

*Host.* Well, fare thee well: I have known thee these twenty-nine years, come peascod time; but an honest and truer-hearted man,—Well, fare thee well.

*Bard.* [*within.*] Mistress Tear-sheet,—

*Host.* What's the matter?

*Bard.* [*within.*] Bid mistress Tear-sheet come to my master.

*Host.* O run, Doll, run; run, good Doll. [*Exeunt.*]

## ACT III.

### SCENE I. A Room in the Palace.

*Enter King HENRY in his Nightgown, with a Page.*

*K. Hen.* Go, call the earls of Surrey and of Warwick; But ere they come, bid them o'er-read these letters, And well consider of them: Make good speed.—

[*Exit Page.*]

How many thousand of my poorest subjects  
Are at this hour asleep!—O Sleep, O gentle sleep,  
Nature's soft nurse, how have I frighted thee,  
That thou no more wilt weigh my eyelids down,  
And steep my senses in forgetfulness?  
Why rather, sleep, liest thou in smoky cribs,  
Upon uneasy pallets stretching thee,  
And hush'd with buzzing night-flies to thy slumber;  
Than in the perfum'd chambers of the great,  
Under the canopies of costly state,  
And lull'd with sounds of sweetest melody?



O thou dull god, why liest thou with the vile,  
 In loathsome beds ; and leav'st the kingly couch,  
 A watch-case, or a common 'larum-bell ?<sup>a</sup>  
 Wilt thou upon the high and giddy mast  
 Seal up the ship-boy's eyes, and rock his brains  
 In cradle of the rude imperious surge ;  
 And in the visitation of the winds,  
 Who take the ruffian billows by the top,  
 Curling their monstrous heads, and hanging them  
 With deaf'ning clamours in the slippery clouds,  
 That, with the hurly,<sup>o</sup> death itself awakes ?  
 Can'st thou, O partial sleep ! give thy repose  
 To the wet sea-boy in an hour so rude ;  
 And in the calmest and most stillest night,  
 With all appliances and means to boot,  
 Deny it to a king ? Then, happy low, lie down !  
 Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.

*Enter WARWICK and SURREY.*

*War.* Many good morrows to your majesty !

*K. Hen.* Is it good morrow, lords ?

*War.* 'Tis one o'clock, and past.

*K. Hen.* Why then, good morrow to you all, my lords.  
 Have you read o'er the letters that I sent you ?

*War.* We have, my liege.

*K. Hen.* Then you perceive, the body of our kingdom  
 How foul it is ; what rank diseases grow,  
 And with what danger, near the heart of it.

*War.* It is but as a body, yet, distemper'd ;<sup>p</sup>  
 Which to his former strength may be restor'd,  
 With good advice and little medicine :—  
 My lord Northumberland will soon be cool'd.

<sup>a</sup> *A watch-case or a common 'larum-bell?*] This alludes to the watchman set in garrison towns upon some eminence, attending upon an alarum-bell, which was to ring in case of fire or any approaching danger. He had a case or box to shelter him from the weather, but at his utmost peril he was not to sleep whilst he was upon duty.—HAMMER.

<sup>o</sup> — *hurly,*] i. e. *Noise*, derived from the French *hurler*, to howl, as *hurly-burly* from *hurluberlu*, Fr.

<sup>p</sup> — *distemper'd;*] According to the old physick, *distemper* was less than actual *disease*, being only that inequality of innate heat and radical moisture that foreruns disease.—JOHNSON.

*K. Hen.* O heaven! that one might read the book of  
 And see the revolution of the times [fate;  
 Make mountains level, and the continent  
 (Weary of solid firmness,) melt itself  
 Into the sea! and, other times, to see  
 The beachy girdle of the ocean  
 Too wide for Neptune's hips; how chances mock,  
 And changes fill the cup of alteration  
 With divers liquors! O, if this were seen,  
 The happiest youth,—viewing his progress through,  
 What perils past, what crosses to ensue,<sup>y</sup>—  
 Would shut the book, and sit him down and die.  
 'Tis not ten years gone,  
 Since Richard, and Northumberland, great friends,  
 Did feast together, and, in two years after,  
 Were they at wars: It is but eight years, since  
 This Percy was the man nearest my soul;  
 Who like a brother toil'd in my affairs,  
 And laid his love and life under my foot;  
 Yea, for my sake, even to the eyes of Richard,  
 Gave him defiance. But which of you was by,<sup>r</sup>  
 (You, cousin Nevil, as I may remember,) [*to* WARWICK.  
 When Richard,—with his eye brimfull of tears,  
 Then check'd and rated by Northumberland,—  
 Did speak these words, now prov'd a prophecy?  
*Northumberland, thou ladder, by the which*  
*My cousin Bolingbroke ascends my throne;—*  
 Though then, heaven knows, I had no such intent,<sup>s</sup>

<sup>y</sup> *What perils past, what crosses to ensue,—*] i. e. What crosses 'are to ensue after many perils past.—MALONE.

<sup>r</sup> ——— [*But which of you was by, &c.*] He refers to *King Richard II.* act iv. sc. 2. But whether the king's or the author's memory fails him, so it was, that Warwick was not present at that conversation.—JOHNSON. Neither was the king himself present, so that he must have received information of what passed from Northumberland. His memory, indeed, is singularly treacherous, as, at the time of which he is now speaking, he had actually ascended the throne.—RITSON. Shakspeare has also mistaken the name of the present nobleman. The earldom of Warwick was at this time in the family of *Beauchamp*, and did not come into that of the *Nevils* till many years after, in the latter end of the reign of King Henry VI. when it descended to *Anne Beauchamp*, the daughter of the earl here introduced, who was married to *Richard Nevil* earl of Salisbury.—STEEVENS.

<sup>s</sup> ——— [*I had no such intent;*] He means, “*I should have had no such intent, but that necessity,*” &c. or Shakspeare has here also forgotten his former play, or has chosen to make Henry forget his situation at the time mentioned. He had then actually accepted the crown.—MALONE.

But that necessity so bow'd the state,  
 That I and greatness were compell'd to kiss :—  
*The time shall come*, thus did he follow it,  
*The time will come, that foul sin, gathering head,*  
*Shall break into corruption* :—so went on,  
 Foretelling this same time's condition,  
 And the division of our amity.

*War.* There is a history in all men's lives,  
 Figuring the nature of the times deceas'd :  
 The which observ'd, a man may prophecy,  
 With a near aim, of the main chance of things  
 As yet not come to life ; which in their seeds,  
 And weak beginnings, lie intreasur'd.  
 Such things become the hatch and brood of time ;  
 And, by the necessary form of this,<sup>1</sup>  
 King Richard might create a perfect guess,  
 That great Northumberland, then false to him,  
 Would, of that seed, grow to a greater falseness ;  
 Which should not find a ground to root upon,  
 Unless on you.

*K. Hen.* Are these things then necessities ?  
 Then let us meet them like necessities :—  
 And that same word even now cries out on us ;  
 They say, the bishop and Northumberland  
 Are fifty thousand strong.

*War.* It cannot be, my lord ;  
 Rumour doth double, like the voice and echo,  
 The numbers of the fear'd :—Please it your grace,  
 To go to bed ; upon my life, my lord,  
 The powers that you already have sent forth,  
 Shall bring this prize in very easily.  
 To comfort you the more, I have receiv'd  
 A certain instance, that Glendower is dead.<sup>2</sup>  
 Your majesty hath been this fortnight ill ;  
 And these unseason'd hours, perforce, must add  
 Unto your sickness.

<sup>1</sup> — by the necessary form of this,] i. e. Of the history of King Richard's life.

<sup>2</sup> — that Glendower is dead.] Glendower did not die till after King Henry IV. Shakspeare was led into this error by Holinshed, who places Owen Glendower's death in the tenth year of Henry's reign.—MALONE.

*K. Hen.* I will take your counsel :  
 And, were these inward wars once out of hand,  
 We would, dear lords, unto the Holy Land. [*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE II.

*Court before Justice Shallow's House in Gloucestershire.*

*Enter SHALLOW and SILENCE, meeting; MOULDY, SHADOW, WART, FEEBLE, BULL-CALF, and Servants behind.*

*Shal.* Come on, come on, come on; give me your hand, sir, give me your hand, sir: an early stirrer, by the rood.<sup>x</sup> And how doth my good cousin Silence?

*Sil.* Good morrow, good cousin Shallow.

*Shal.* And how doth my cousin, your bedfellow; and your fairest daughter, and mine, my god-daughter Ellen?

*Sil.* Alas, a black ouzel,<sup>y</sup> cousin Shallow.

*Shal.* By yea and nay, sir, I dare say, my cousin William is become a good scholar: He is at Oxford, still, is he not?

*Sil.* Indeed, sir; to my cost.

*Shal.* He must then to the inns of court shortly: I was once of Clement's-inn; where, I think, they will talk of mad Shallow yet.

*Sil.* You were called—lusty Shallow, then, cousin.

*Shal.* By the mass, I was called any thing; and I would have done any thing, indeed, and roundly too. There was I, and little John Doit of Staffordshire, and black George Bare, and Francis Pickbone, and Will Squele a Cotswold man,<sup>z</sup>—you had not four such swinge-bucklers<sup>a</sup> in all the inns of court again; and I may say to you, we know where the bona-robas<sup>b</sup> were; and had

<sup>x</sup> — by the rood,] i. e. *The cross.*

<sup>y</sup> — ouzel,] i. e. A blackbird.

<sup>z</sup> — a Cotswold man,—] The games at Cotswold were, in the time of our author, very famous. Of these I have seen accounts in several old pamphlets, and Shallow, by distinguishing Will Squele, as a Cotswold man, meant to have him understood as one who was well versed in manly exercises.—STEEVENS. See note to *Merry Wives of Windsor*, act i. sc. 1.

<sup>a</sup> — swinge-bucklers,—] *Swinge-bucklers* and *swash-bucklers* were words implying rakes or rioters in the time of Shakspeare.

<sup>b</sup> — bona-robas—] i. e. Ladies of pleasure. *Bona Roba*, Ital.

the best of them all at commandment. Then was Jack Falstaff, now sir John, a boy; and page to Thomas Mowbray, duke of Norfolk.<sup>c</sup>

*Sil.* This sir John, cousin, that comes hither anon about soldiers?

*Shal.* The same sir John, the very same. I saw him break Skogan's head<sup>d</sup> at the court gate, when he was a crack,<sup>e</sup> and not thus high: and the very same day did I fight with one Sampson Stöckfish, a fruiterer, behind Gray's inn. O, the mad days that I have spent! and to see how many of mine old acquaintance are dead!

*Sil.* We shall all follow, cousin.

*Shal.* Certain, 'tis certain; very sure, very sure: death, as the Psalmist saith, is certain to all; all shall die. How a good yoke of bullocks at Stamford fair?

*Sil.* Truly, cousin, I was not there.

*Shal.* Death is certain.—Is old Double of your town living yet?

*Sil.* Dead, sir.

*Shal.* Dead!—See, see!—he drew a good bow; And dead!—he shot a fine shoot:—John of Gaunt loved him well, and betted much money on his head. Dead!—he would have clapped i'the clout at twelve score;<sup>f</sup> and carried you a forehand shaft a fourteen and fourteen and a half, that it would have done a man's heart good to see.—How a score of ewes now?

*Sil.* Thereafter as they be: a score of good ewes may be worth ten pounds.

*Shal.* And is old Double dead!

<sup>c</sup> — page to Thomas Mowbray duke of Norfolk.] Among other proofs of Shakspeare's having changed the name of this character from *Oldcastle* to *Falstaff*, in Weever's poem, called *The Mirror of Martyrs*, 18mo. 1601, *Oldcastle* says,

“ Within the spring time of my flowering youth  
He [his father] stept into the winter of his age;  
Made means (Mercurius thus begins the truth,)  
That I was made Sir Thomas Mowbray's page.”—REED.

<sup>d</sup> — Skogan's head—] This was *John Skogan*, jester to King Edward IV. and not *Henry*, the poet, who lived long before, but is frequently confounded with him. Our author, no doubt, was well read in *John's Jests*, “gathered by Andrew Boarde, doctor of physick,” and printed in 4to. and black letter, but without date.—RITSON.

<sup>e</sup> — a crack,] This is an old Islandic word, signifying a boy or child.

<sup>f</sup> — clapped i'the clout—] i. e. Hit the white mark: at twelve score; i. e. of yards.

*Enter BARDOLPH and one with him.*

*Sil.* Here come two of sir John Falstaff's men, as I think.

*Bard.* Good morrow, honest gentlemen: I beseech you which is justice Shallow?

*Shal.* I am Robert Shallow, sir; a poor esquire of this country, and one of the king's justices of the peace; What is your good pleasure with me?

*Bard.* My captain, sir, commends him to you; my captain, sir John Falstaff: a tall gentleman, by heaven, and a most gallant leader.

*Shal.* He greets me well, sir; I know him a good back-sword man: How doth the good knight? may I ask, how my lady his wife doth?

*Bard.* Sir, pardon; a soldier is better accommodated, than with a wife.

*Shal.* It is well said, in faith, sir; and it is well said indeed too. Better accommodated!—it is good; yea, indeed, it is: good phrases are surely, and ever were, very commendable. Accommodated!—it comes from *accommodo*: very good; a good phrase.<sup>‡</sup>

*Bard.* Pardon me, sir: I have heard the word. Phrase, call you it? By this good day, I know not the phrase: but I will maintain the word with my sword, to be a soldier-like word, and a word of exceeding good command. Accommodated; That is, when a man is, as they say, accommodated: or, when a man is,—being,—whereby,—he may be thought to be accommodated; which is an excellent thing.

*Enter FALSTAFF.*

*Shal.* It is very just:—Look, here comes good sir John.—Give me your good hand, give me your worship's good hand: By my troth, you look well, and bear your years very well: welcome, good sir John.

*Fal.* I am glad to see you well, good master Robert Shallow:—Master Sure-card, as I think.

<sup>‡</sup> — a good phrase.] *Accommodate* was a modish term of that time, as Ben Jonson informs us: “You are not to cast or wring for the perfumed terms of the time, as *accommodation*, complement, spirit, &c. but use them properly in their places as others.” *Discoveries*.—WARBURTON.

*Shal.* No, sir John; it is my cousin Silence, in commission with me.

*Fal.* Good master Silence, it well befits you should be of the peace.

*Sil.* Your good worship is welcome.

*Fal.* Fye! this is hot weather.—Gentlemen, have you provided me here half a dozen sufficient men?

*Shal.* Marry have we, sir. Will you sit?

*Fal.* Let me see them, I beseech you.

*Shal.* Where's the roll? where's the roll? where's the roll?—Let me see, let me see. So, so, so, so; Yea, marry, sir:—Ralph Mouldy:—let them appear as I call; let them do so, let them do so.—Let me see; Where is Mouldy?

*Moul.* Here an't please you.

*Shal.* What think you, sir John? a good limbed fellow: young, strong, and of good friends.

*Fal.* Is thy name Mouldy?

*Moul.* Yea, an't please you.

*Fal.* 'Tis the more time thou wert used.

*Shal.* Ha, ha, ha! most excellent, i'faith! things, that are mouldy, lack use: Very singular good!—In faith, well said, sir John; very well said.

*Fal.* Prick him.

[To SHALLOW.]

*Moul.* I was pricked well enough before, an you could have let me alone: my old dame will be undone now, for one to do her husbandry, and her drudgery: you need not to have pricked me; there are other men fitter to go out than I.

*Fal.* Go to; peace, Mouldy, you shall go. Mouldy, it is time you were spent.

*Moul.* Spent!

*Shal.* Peace, fellow, peace; stand aside; Know you where you are?—For the other, sir John:—let me see:—Simon Shadow!

*Fal.* Ay marry, let me have him to sit under; he's like to be a cold soldier.

*Shal.* Where's Shadow?

*Shad.* Here, sir.

*Fal.* Shadow, whose son art thou?

*Shal.* My mother's son, sir.

*Fal.* Thy mother's son! like enough; and thy father's shadow: so the son of the female is the shadow of the male: It is often so, indeed; but not much of the father's substance.

*Shal.* Do you like him, sir John?

*Fal.* Shadow will serve for summer,—prick him;—for we have a number of shadows to fill up the muster-book.<sup>b</sup>

*Shal.* Thomas Wart!

*Fal.* Where's he?

*Wart.* Here, sir.

*Fal.* Is thy name Wart?

*Wart.* Yea, sir.

*Fal.* Thou art a very ragged wart.

*Shal.* Shall I prick him, sir John?

*Fal.* It were superfluous; for his apparel is built upon his back, and the whole frame stands upon pins: prick him no more.

*Shal.* Ha, ha, ha!—you can do it, sir; you can do it: I commend you well.—Francis Feeble!

*Fee.* Here, sir.

*Fal.* What trade art thou, Feeble?

*Fee.* A woman's tailor, sir.

*Shal.* Shall I prick him, sir?

*Fal.* You may; but if he had been a man's tailor, he would have pricked you.—Wilt thou make as many holes in an enemy's battle, as thou hast done in a woman's petticoat?

*Fee.* I will do my good will, sir; you can have no more.

*Fal.* Well said, good woman's tailor! well said, courageous Feeble! Thou wilt be as valiant as the wrathful dove, or most magnanimous mouse.—Prick the woman's tailor well, master Shallow; deep, master Shallow.

*Fee.* I would, Wart might have gone, sir.

*Fal.* I would, thou wert a man's tailor; that thou might'st mend him, and make him fit to go. I cannot put him to a private soldier, that is the leader of so many thousands: Let that suffice, most forcible Feeble.

<sup>b</sup> — we have a number of shadows to fill up the muster-book.] i. e. We have in the muster-book many names for which we, the captains, receive pay, though we have not the men.—JONSON.



*Fee.* It shall suffice, sir.

*Fal.* I am bound to thee, reverend Feeble.—Who is next?

*Shal.* Peter Bull-calf of the green!

*Fal.* Yea, marry, let us see Bull-calf.

*Bull.* Here, sir.

*Fal.* 'Fore God, a likely fellow!—Come, prick me Bull-calf till he roar again.

*Bull.* O lord! good my lord captain,—

*Fal.* What, dost thou roar before thou art pricked?

*Bull.* O lord, sir! I am a diseased man.

*Fal.* What disease hast thou?

*Bull.* A whoreson cold, sir; a cough, sir; which I caught with ringing in the king's affairs, upon his coronation-day, sir.

*Fal.* Come, thou shalt go to the wars in a gown; we will have away thy cold; and I will take such order, that thy friends shall ring for thee.—Is here all?

*Shal.* Here is two more called than your number;<sup>i</sup> you must have but four here, sir;—and so, I pray you, go in with me to dinner.

*Fal.* Come, I will go drink with you, but I cannot tarry dinner. I am glad to see you, in good troth, master Shallow.

*Shal.* O, sir John, do you remember since we lay all night in the windmill in Saint George's fields?

*Fal.* No more of that, good master Shallow, no more of that.

*Shal.* Ha, it was a merry night. And is Jane Night-work alive?

*Fal.* She lives, master Shallow.

*Shal.* She never could away with<sup>k</sup> me.

*Fal.* Never, never: she would always say, she could not abide master Shallow.

<sup>i</sup> Here is two more called than your number;] Five only have been called, and the number required is four. Some name seems to have been omitted by the transcriber. The restoration of this sixth man would solve the difficulty that occurs below; for when Mouldy and Bull-calf are set aside, Falstaff, as Dr. Farmer has observed, gets but three recruits. Perhaps our author himself is answerable for this slight inaccuracy.—MALONE.

<sup>k</sup> — away with—] i. e. Bear with. It seems originally to have meant to go away contented with a person or thing.—NARES.

*Shal.* By the mass, I could anger her to the heart. She was then a bona-roba. Doth she hold her own well?

*Fal.* Old, old, master Shallow.

*Shal.* Nay, she must be old; she cannot choose but be old; certain, she's old; and had Robin Night-work by old Night-work, before I came to Clement's inn.

*Sil.* That's fifty-five year ago.

*Shal.* Ha, cousin Silence, that thou hadst seen that that this knight and I have seen!—Ha, sir John, said I well?

*Fal.* We have heard the chimes at midnight, master Shallow.

*Shal.* That we have, that we have, that we have in faith, sir John, we have; our watch-word was, *Hem, boys!*—Come, let's to dinner; come, let's to dinner:—O, the days that we have seen!—Come, come.

[*Exeunt FALSTAFF, SHALLOW, and SILENCE.*]

*Bull.* Good master corporate Bardolph, stand my friend; and here is four Harry ten shillings in French crowns for you. In very truth, sir, I had as lief be hanged, sir, as go: and yet, for mine own part, sir, I do not care: but, rather, because I am unwilling, and, for mine own part, have a desire to stay with my friends; else, sir, I did not care, for mine own part, so much.

*Bard.* Go to; stand aside.

*Mould.* And good master corporal captain, for my old dame's sake, stand my friend: she has nobody to do any thing about her, when I am gone; and she is old, and cannot help herself: you shall have forty, sir.

*Bard.* Go to; stand aside.

*Fee.* By my troth I care not;—a man can die but once;—We owe God a death;—I'll ne'er bear a base mind:—an't be my destiny, so; an't be not, so; No man's too good to serve his prince; and, let it go which way it will, he that dies this year, is quit for the next.

*Bard.* Well said; thou'rt a good fellow.

*Fee.* 'Faith, I'll bear no base mind.

*Re-enter FALSTAFF, and Justices.*

*Fal.* Come, sir, which men shall I have?

*Shal.* Four, of which you please.

*Bard.* Sir, a word with you :—I have three pound to free Mouldy and Bull-calf.<sup>1</sup>

*Fal.* Go to ; well.

*Shal.* Come, sir John, which four will you have ?

*Fal.* Do you choose for me.

*Shal.* Marry then,—Mouldy, Bull-calf, Feeble, and Shadow.

*Fal.* Mouldy, and Bull-calf :—For you, Mouldy, stay at home still ; you are past service :<sup>m</sup>—and, for your part, Bull-calf,—grow till you come unto it ; I will none of you.

*Shal.* Sir John, sir John, do not yourself wrong : they are your likeliest men, and I would have you served with the best.

*Fal.* Will you tell me, master Shallow, how to choose a man ? Care I for the limb, the thewes,<sup>n</sup> the stature, bulk, and big assemblance of a man ! Give me the spirit, master Shallow.—Here's Wart ;—you see what a ragged appearance it is : he shall charge you, and discharge you, with the motion of a pewterer's hammer ; come off, and on, swifter than he that gibbets-on the brewer's bucket.<sup>o</sup> And this same half-faced fellow, Shadow,—give me this man ; he presents no mark to the enemy ; the foeman<sup>p</sup> may with as great aim level at the edge of a penknife : And, for a retreat,—how swiftly will this Feeble, the woman's tailor, run off ? O, give me the spare men, and spare me the great ones.—Put me a caliver<sup>q</sup> into Wart's hand, Bardolph.

*Bard.* Hold, Wart, traverse ;<sup>r</sup> thus, thus, thus.

<sup>1</sup> — I have three pound to free Mouldy and Bull-calf.] Bardolph had received four pounds ; but as Falstaff cheated the king, he is cheated by his servant in return.

<sup>m</sup> — stay at home still, &c.] The old copies read, *Stay at home till you are past service.* The emendation of the text was made by Tyrwhitt.

<sup>n</sup> — the thewes,] i. e. The muscular strength or appearance of manhood. In ancient writers this term usually implies manners, or behaviour only.—STEEVENS.

<sup>o</sup> — swifter than he that gibbets on the brewer's bucket.] As the buckets at each end of the gibbet must be put on at the same instant, it necessarily requires a quick motion.—M. MASON.

<sup>p</sup> — foeman—] An obsolete term for an *enemy in war.*

<sup>q</sup> — caliver—] A caliver was less and lighter than a musquet, as is evident from its being fired without a rest.—GROSE.

<sup>r</sup> — traverse ;] An ancient term in military exercise.

*Fal.* Come, manage me your caliver. So:—very well:—go to:—very good:—exceeding good.—O, give me always a little, lean, old, chapped, bald shot.\*—Well said, i'faith, Wart: thou'rt a good scab: hold, there's a tester for thee.

*Shal.* He is not his craft's-master, he doth not do it right. I remember at Mile-end green,<sup>t</sup> (when I lay at Clement's inn,—I was then Sir Dagonet in Arthur's show,<sup>u</sup>) there was a little quiver<sup>x</sup> fellow, and 'a would manage you his piece thus: and 'a would about, and about, and come you in, and come you in: *rah, tah, tah*, would 'a say; *bounce*, would 'a say; and away again would 'a go, and again would 'a come:—I shall never see such a fellow.

*Fal.* These fellows will do well, master Shallow.—God keep you, master Silence: I will not use many words with you:—Fare you well, gentlemen both: I thank you: I must a dozen mile to-night.—Bardolph, give the soldiers coats.

*Shal.* Sir John, heaven bless you, and prosper your affairs, and send us peace! As you return, visit my house; let our old acquaintance be renewed: peradventure, I will with you to the court.

*Fal.* I would you would, master Shallow.

*Shal.* Go to; I have spoke, at a word. Fare you well.

[*Exeunt* SHALLOW and SILENCE.]

*Fal.* Fare you well, gentle gentlemen. On Bardolph; lead the men away. [*Exeunt* BARDOLPH, *Recruits*, &c.] As I return, I will fetch off these justices: I do see the

\* ——— *shot*—is here used for *shooter*; one who is to fight by shooting.—JOHNSON.

<sup>t</sup> ——— *Mile-end green*.] We learn from Stowe's Chronicle, that in the year 1585, four thousand citizens were trained and exercised at *Mile-end*. And again, that on the 27th of August, 1599, thirty thousand citizens *showed* at the same place, where they trained all that day and other days, under their captaines, also citizens, until the 4th of September.—STEEVENS and MALONE.

<sup>u</sup> ——— *Sir Dagonet in Arthur's show*.] Sir Dagonet was fool to King Arthur; whether the show here alluded to, in which Shallow played Dagonet was a theatrical interlude, or an exhibition of archery, is doubted. It was most probably the latter, as we know, from Mulcaster's *Positions concerning the training up of children*, 4to. 1581, and 1587, that a society of archers calling themselves ARTHUR'S KNIGHTS, existed in our poet's time.—JOHNSON and BOWLES.

<sup>x</sup> ——— *quiver*—] i. e. *Nimble, active, &c.*

bottom of justice Shallow. Lord; lord, how subject we old men are to this vice of lying! This same starved justice hath done nothing but prate to me of the wildness of his youth, and the feats he hath done about Turnbull-street;<sup>y</sup> and every third word a lie, duer paid to the hearer than the Turk's tribute. I do remember him at Clement's-inn, like a man made after supper of a cheese-paring: when he was naked, he was, for all the world, like a fork'd radish, with a head fantastically carved upon it with a knife: he was so forlorn, that his dimensions to any thick sight were invincible:<sup>z</sup> he was the very Genius of famine; yet lecherous as a monkey, and the whores called him—mandrake: he came ever in the rear-ward of the fashion; and sung those tunes to the over-scuted<sup>a</sup> huswives that he heard the carmen whistle, and sware—they were his fancies, or his good-nights.<sup>b</sup> And now is this Vice's dagger<sup>c</sup> become a squire; and talks as familiarly of John of Gaunt, as if he had been sworn brother to him: and I'll be sworn he never saw him but once in the Tilt-yard; and then he burst<sup>d</sup> his head, for crowding among the marshal's men. I saw it; and told John of Gaunt, he beat his own name;<sup>e</sup> for you might have truss'd him, and all his apparel, into an eel-skin; the case of a treble hautboy was a mansion for him, a court; and now has he land and beeves. Well; I will be acquainted with him, if I return: and it shall go hard, but I will make him a philosopher's two stones<sup>f</sup> to me: If the young dace be a bait

<sup>y</sup> — about Turnbull-street;] *Turnbull* or *Turnmill-street*, is near Cowcross, West Smithfield.

<sup>z</sup> — *invincible*:] This word is used by Ben Jonson and others in the sense of *invisible*. "I have some doubt," says Mr. Gifford, "whether we rightly comprehend this word as understood by our ancestors." *Ben Jonson*, vol. i. 30.

<sup>a</sup> — *over-scuted*—] That is, whipt, carted.

<sup>b</sup> — fancies, or his good-nights.] *Fancies* and *Good-nights* were the titles of little poems.

<sup>c</sup> — *Vices' dagger*—] The *Vice* here meant is an allegorical personage in our old drama's or moralities. "It filled the office of fool, and was grotesquely dressed in a cap with ass's ears, a long coat, and a dagger of lath; one of his chief employments was to make sport with the devil, leaping on his back and belabouring him with his dagger of lath, till he made him roar; the devil, however, always carried him off in the end."—NARES' *Glossary*.

<sup>d</sup> — *burst*—] This word was formerly synonymous with *broke*.

<sup>e</sup> — *beat his own name*:] That is, beat *gaunt*, a fellow so slender, that his name might have been *gaunt*.

<sup>f</sup> — *a philosopher's two stones*—] After much discussion, the note of Dr.

for the old pike, I see no reason, in the law of nature, but I may snap at him. Let time shape, and there an end.

[*Exit.*]

## ACT IV.

### SCENE I.—*A Forest in Yorkshire.*

*Enter the Archbishop of York, Mowbray, Hastings, and Others.*

*Arch.* What is this forest call'd ?

*Hast.* 'Tis Gualtree forest,<sup>ε</sup> an't shall please your grace.

*Arch.* Here stand, my lords : and send discoverers forth,  
To know the numbers of our enemies.

*Hast.* We have sent forth already.

*Arch.* 'Tis well done.

My friends, and brethren in these great affairs,  
I must acquaint you that I have receiv'd  
New-dated letters from Northumberland ;  
Their cold intent, tenour and substance, thus :—  
Here doth he wish his person, with such powers  
As might hold sortance with his quality,  
The which he could not levy ; whereupon  
He is retir'd, to ripe his growing fortunes,  
To Scotland : and concludes in hearty prayers,  
That your attempts may overlive the hazard,  
And fearful meeting of their opposite.

*Mowb.* Thus do the hopes we have in him touch ground,  
And dash themselves to pieces.

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Hast.* Now, what news ?

*Mess.* West of this forest, scarcely off a mile,  
In goodly form comes on the enemy :

Warburton has been proved to be correct, which describes one of these stones as a universal medicine, and the other a transmuter of base metals into gold.

<sup>ε</sup> 'Tis Gualtree forest.] "The earle of Westmoreland, &c. made forward against the rebels, and coming into a plaine within Gualtree forest, caused their standards to be pitched down in like sort as the archbishop had pitched his, over against them." *Holinshed.*—STEEVENS.

And, by the ground they hide, I judge their number  
Upon, or near, the rate of thirty thousand.

*Mowb.* The just proportion that we gave them out.  
Let us sway on,<sup>h</sup> and face them in the field.

*Enter WESTMORELAND.*

*Arch.* What well-appointed<sup>i</sup> leader fronts us here?

*Mowb.* I think, it is my lord of Westmoreland.

*West.* Health and fair greeting from our general,  
The prince, lord John and duke of Lancaster.

*Arch.* Say on, my lord of Westmoreland, in peace;  
What doth concern your coming?

*West.* Then, my lord,  
Unto your grace do I in chief address  
The substance of my speech. If that rebellion  
Came like itself, in base and abject routs,  
Led on by bloody youth, guarded with rage,<sup>k</sup>  
And countenanc'd by boys, and beggary;  
I say, if damn'd commotion so appear'd,  
In his true, native, and most proper shape,  
You, reverend father, and these noble lords,  
Had not been here, to dress the ugly form  
Of base and bloody insurrection  
With your fair honours. You, lord archbishop,—  
Whose see is by a civil peace maintain'd;  
Whose beard the silver hand of peace hath touch'd;  
Whose learning and good letters peace hath tutor'd;  
Whose white investments<sup>l</sup> figure innocence,  
The dove and very blessed spirit of peace,—  
Wherefore do you so ill translate yourself,  
Out of the speech of peace, that bears such grace,  
Into the harsh and boist'rous tongue of war?  
Turning your books to graves,<sup>m</sup> your ink to blood,

<sup>h</sup> — *sway on,*] This word is intended to express the uniform and forcible motion of a compact body.—JOHNSON.

<sup>i</sup> — *well-appointed*—] i. e. *Completely accoutred.*

<sup>k</sup> — *bloody youth, guarded with rage,*] i. e. Sanguine youth, or youth full of blood: *guarded* is an expression taken from dress, and means *faced* or *turned up*.—JOHNSON and STEEVENS.

<sup>l</sup> — *white investments*—] Formerly all bishops wore white, even when they travelled.—GREY.

<sup>m</sup> — *graves,*] For *graves* Warburton proposes to read *glaves*, and is fol-

Your pens to lances ; and your tongue divine  
To a loud trumpet, and a point of war ?

*Arch.* Wherefore do I this ?—so the question stands.  
Briefly to this end :—We are all diseas'd ;  
And, with our surfeiting, and wanton hours,  
Have brought ourselves into a burning fever,  
And we must bleed for it : of which disease  
Our late king, Richard, being infected, died.  
But, my most noble lord of Westmoreland,  
I take not on me here as a physician ;  
Nor do I, as an enemy to peace,  
Troop in the throngs of military men :  
But, rather, show a while like fearful war,  
To diet rank minds, sick of happiness ;  
And purge the obstructions, which begin to stop  
Our very veins of life. Hear me more plainly.  
I have in equal balance justly weigh'd  
What wrongs our arms may do, what wrongs we suffer,  
And find our griefs heavier than our offences.  
We see which way the stream of time doth run,  
And are enforc'd from our most quiet sphere  
By the rough torrent of occasion :  
And have the summary of all our griefs,  
When time shall serve, to show in articles ;  
Which, long ere this, we offer'd to the king,  
And might by no suit gain our audience :  
When we are wrong'd, and would unfold our griefs,  
We are denied access unto his person  
Even by those men that most have done us wrong.  
The dangers of the day's but newly gone,  
(Whose memory is written on the earth  
With yet-appearing blood,) and the examples  
Of every minute's instance,<sup>n</sup> (present now,)  
Have put us in these ill-beseeming arms :  
Not to break peace, or any branch of it ;

lowed by Sir Thomas Hanmer. Steevens, perhaps as plausibly, suggests *greaves*, i. e. armour for the legs, a kind of boots.

<sup>n</sup> ——— *instance*,] i. e. *Proof, recurrence*. This word is used by Shakspeare with great laxity.



But to establish here a peace indeed,  
Concurring both in name and quality.

*West.* When ever yet was your appeal denied?  
Wherein have you been galled by the king?  
What peer hath been suborn'd to grate on you?  
That you should seal this lawless bloody book  
Of forg'd rebellion with a seal divine,  
And consecrate commotion's bitter edge?<sup>o</sup>

*Arch.* My brother general, the commonwealth,  
To brother born an household cruelty,  
I make my quarrel in particular.<sup>p</sup>

*West.* There is no need of any such redress;  
Or, if there were, it not belongs to you.

*Mowb.* Why not to him, in part; and to us all,  
That feel the bruises of the days before;  
And suffer the condition of these times  
To lay a heavy and unequal hand  
Upon our honours?

*West.* O my good lord Mowbray,  
Construe the times to their necessities,<sup>q</sup>  
And you shall say indeed,—it is the time,  
And not the king, that doth you injuries.  
Yet, for your part, it not appears to me,  
Either from the king, or in the present time,<sup>r</sup>  
That you should have an inch of any ground  
To build a grief on: Were you not restor'd

<sup>o</sup> — consecrate commotion's bitter edge?] i. e. The edge of bitter strife and commotion; the sword of rebellion.—MALONE. It was customary in the time of the crusades, for the pope to consecrate the general's sword.—WARBURTON.

<sup>p</sup> My brother general, the commonwealth, &c.] i. e. My brother general (meaning Mowbray, the lord marischal) makes the misconduct of public affairs, and the welfare of the community, his cause of quarrel; but my particular cause of quarrel is a family injury, the cruelty with which my brother has been treated."—M. MASON. This appears the best of the explanations as the passage stands at present; perhaps the whole of the first line applies to Westmoreland, and that by a slight alteration we should read

"My brother-general i'the commonwealth,  
To brother born," &c.

The circumstance alluded to is mentioned in the first part of this play:

"The archbishop—who bears hard  
His brother's death at Bristol, the lord Scroop."

<sup>q</sup> Construe the times to their necessities,] That is,—Judge of what is done in these times, according to the exigencies that over-rule us.—JOHNSON.

<sup>r</sup> Either from the king, &c.] Whether the faults of government be imputed to the time or the king, it appears not that you have, for your part, been injured either by the king or the time.—JOHNSON.

To all the duke of Norfolk's signiories,  
Your noble and right-well-remember'd father's ?

*Mowb.* What thing, in honour, had my father lost,  
That need to be reviv'd, and breath'd in me ?  
The king, that lov'd him, as the state stood then,  
Was, force perforce, compell'd to banish him :  
And then, when Harry Bolingbroke, and he,—  
Being mounted, and both roused in their seats,  
Their neighing coursers daring of the spur,  
Their armed staves in charge,<sup>s</sup> their beavers down,<sup>t</sup>  
Their eyes of fire sparkling through sights of steel,<sup>u</sup>  
And the loud trumpet blowing them together ;  
Then, then, when there was nothing could have staid  
My father from the breast of Bolingbroke,  
O, when the king did throw his warder<sup>x</sup> down,  
His own life hung upon the staff he threw :  
Then threw he down himself ; and all their lives,  
That, by indictment, and by dint of sword,  
Have since miscarried under Bolingbroke.

*West.* You speak, lord Mowbray, now you know not what :  
The earl of Hereford<sup>y</sup> was reputed then  
In England the most valiant gentleman ;  
Who knows, on whom fortune would then have smil'd ?  
But, if your father had been victor there,  
He ne'er had borne it out of Coventry :  
For all the country, in a general voice,  
Cried hate upon him ; and all their prayers, and love,  
Were set on Hereford, whom they doted on,  
And bless'd, and grac'd indeed, more than the king.  
But this is mere digression from my purpose.—  
Here come I from our princely general,  
To know your griefs ; to tell you from his grace,  
That he will give you audience : and wherein

<sup>s</sup> *Their armed staves in charge,*] An armed staff is a lance. To be in charge, is to be fixed in the rest for the encounter.—*JOHNSON.*

<sup>t</sup> — *their beavers down,*] *Beaver* meant properly that part of the helmet which let down, to enable the wearer to drink ; but is confounded both here and in *Hamlet* with *visiere*, or used for *helmet* in general.—*MALONE.*

<sup>u</sup> — *sights of steel,*] i. e. The perforated part of their helmets, through which they could see to direct their aim. *Visiere*, *FR.*—*STEEVENS.*

<sup>x</sup> — *warder*—] i. e. *Truncheon*, or *staff of command.*

<sup>y</sup> *The earl of Hereford*—] This is a mistake of our author's. He was *duke* of Hereford.—*MALONE.*

It shall appear that your demands are just,  
You shall enjoy them ; every thing set off,  
That might so much as think you enemies.

*Mowb.* But he hath forc'd us to compel this offer ;  
And it proceeds from policy, not love.

*West.* Mowbray, you overween, to take it so ;  
This offer comes from mercy, not from fear :  
For, lo ! within a ken, our army lies :  
Upon mine honour, all too confident  
To give admittance to a thought of fear.  
Our battle is more full of names than yours,  
Our men more perfect in the use of arms,  
Our armour all as strong, our cause the best ;  
Then reason wills,<sup>z</sup> our hearts should be as good :—  
Say you not then, our offer is compell'd.

*Mowb.* Well, by my will, we shall admit no parley.

*West.* That argues but the shame of your offence :  
A rotten case abides no handling.

*Hast.* Hath the prince John a full commission,  
In very ample virtæ of his father,  
To hear and absolutely to determine  
Of what conditions we shall stand upon ?

*West.* That is intended in the general's name :<sup>a</sup>  
I muse, you make so slight a question.

*Arch.* Then take, my lord of Westmoreland, this schedule ;  
For this contains our general grievances :—  
Each several article herein redress'd ;  
All members of our cause, both here and hence,  
That are insinew'd to this action,  
Acquitted by a true substantial form ;<sup>b</sup>  
And present execution of our wills  
To us, and to our purposes, confined :  
We come within our awful banks again,<sup>d</sup>  
And knit our powers to the arm of peace.

<sup>z</sup> — *reason wills,*] i. e. *Reason determines.*

<sup>a</sup> — *intended in the general's name :*] *Intended is understood, like the French entendre. It is a power included in the name or office of a general.*—STEEVENS and JOHNSON.

<sup>b</sup> — *substantial form ;*] i. e. By a pardon of due form and legal validity.—JOHNSON.

<sup>c</sup> — *confined ;*]—is the old reading, and though the modern editors have changed it for *consigned* ; it is indisputably right. *Consigned* means *tied up to.*

<sup>d</sup> — *awful banks again,*] i. e. The proper limits of reverence.—JOHNSON.

*West.* This will I show the general. Please you, lords,  
In sight of both our battles we may meet :  
And either end in peace, which heaven so frame !  
Or to the place of difference call the swords  
Which must decide it.

*Arch.* My lord, we will do so.

[*Exit WEST.*]

*Mowb.* There is a thing within my bosom, tells me,  
That no conditions of our peace can stand.

*Hast.* Fear you not that : if we can make our peace  
Upon such large terms, and so absolute,  
As our conditions shall consist upon,<sup>e</sup>  
Our peace shall stand as firm as rocky mountains.

*Mowb.* Ay, but our valuation shall be such,  
That every slight and false-derived cause,  
Yea, every idle, nice,<sup>f</sup> and wanton reason,  
Shall, to the king, taste of this action :  
That, were our royal faiths martyrs in love,<sup>g</sup>  
We shall be winnow'd with so rough a wind,  
That even our corn shall seem as light as chaff,  
And good from bad find no partition.

*Arch.* No, no, my lord ; Note this,—the king is weary  
Of dainty and such picking<sup>h</sup> grievances :  
For he hath found,—to end one doubt by death,  
Revives two greater in the heirs of life.  
And therefore will he wipe his tables<sup>i</sup> clean ;  
And keep no tell-tale to his memory,  
That may repeat and history his loss  
To new remembrance : For full well he knows,  
He cannot so precisely weed this land,  
As his misdoubts present occasion :  
His foes are so enrooted with his friends,  
That, plucking to unfix an enemy,  
He doth unfasten so, and shake a friend.  
So that this land, like an offensive wife,

<sup>e</sup> — consist upon,] Perhaps the meaning is, as our conditions shall stand upon, shall make the foundation of the treaty. A Latin sense.—MALONE.

<sup>f</sup> — nice,] i. e. Trivial.

<sup>g</sup> — our royal faiths—] i. e. The faith we owe to the king.

<sup>h</sup> — picking—] i. e. Insignificant.

<sup>i</sup> — his tables—] i. e. His table-book.

That hath enrag'd him on to offer strokes,  
 As he is striking, holds his infant up,  
 And hangs resolv'd correction in the arm  
 That was uprear'd to execution.

*Hast.* Besides, the king hath wasted all his rods  
 On late offenders, that he now doth lack  
 The very instrument of chastisement:  
 So that his power, like to a fangless lion,  
 May offer, but not hold.

*Arch.* 'Tis very true:—  
 And therefore be assur'd, my good lord marshal,  
 If we do now make our atonement well,  
 Our peace will, like a broken limb united,  
 Grow stronger for the breaking.

*Mowb.* Be it so.  
 Here is return'd my lord of Westmoreland.

*Re-enter WESTMORELAND.*

*West.* The prince is here at hand: Pleaseth your lordship,  
 To meet his grace just distance 'tween our armies?

*Mowb.* Your grace of York, in God's name then set  
 forward.

*Arch.* Before, and greet his grace:—my lord, we come.  
 [*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE II.

*Another Part of the Forest.*

*Enter, from one side, MOWBRAY, the Archbishop, HASTINGS, and others; from the other side, Prince JOHN of LANCASTER, WESTMORELAND, Officers and Attendants.*

*P. John.* You are well encounter'd here, my cousin  
 Mowbray:

Good day to you, gentle lord archbishop:  
 And so to you, lord Hastings,—and to all.—  
 My lord of York, it better show'd with you,  
 When that your flock, assembled by the bell,  
 Encircled you, to hear with reverence

Your exposition on the holy text ;  
 Than now to see you here an iron man,<sup>k</sup>  
 Cheering a rout of rebels with your drum,  
 Turning the word to sword, and life to death.  
 That man, that sits within a monarch's heart,  
 And ripens in the sunshine of his favour,  
 Would he abuse the countenance of the king,  
 Alack, what mischiefs might he set abroad,  
 In shadow of such greatness ! With you, lord bishop,  
 It is even so :—Who hath not heard it spoken,  
 How deep you were within the books of God ?  
 To us, the speaker in his parliament ;  
 To us, the imagin'd voice of God himself ;  
 The very opener, and intelligencer,  
 Between the grace, the sanctities of heaven,  
 And our dull workings !<sup>l</sup> O, who shall believe,  
 But you misuse the reverence of your place ;  
 Employ the countenance and grace of heaven,  
 As a false favourite doth his prince's name,  
 In deeds dishonourable ? You have taken up,<sup>m</sup>  
 Under the counterfeited zeal of God,  
 The subjects of his substitute, my father ;  
 And, both against the peace of heaven and him,  
 Have here up-swarm'd them.

*Arch.*

Good my lord of Lancaster,

I am not here against your father's peace :  
 But, as I told my lord of Westmoreland,  
 The time disorder'd doth, in common sense,<sup>n</sup>  
 Croud us, and crush us, to this monstrous form,  
 To hold our safety up. I sent your grace  
 The parcels and particulars of our grief ;  
 The which hath been with scorn shov'd from the court.  
 Whereon this Hydra son of war is born :  
 Whose dangerous eyes may well be charm'd asleep,<sup>o</sup>

<sup>k</sup> — *an iron man,*] “ Coming forth among them clad in armour, he encouraged and pricked them forth to take the enterprize in hand.” *Holinshed*.—STEEVENS.

<sup>l</sup> — *workings :*] i. e. Labours of thought.

<sup>m</sup> — *taken up,*] i. e. Levied, raised in arms.

<sup>n</sup> — *in common sense,*] *Common sense* is the general sense of general danger.—JOHNSON.

<sup>o</sup> *Whose dangerous eyes may well be charm'd asleep,*] Alluding to the dragon charmed to rest by the spells of Medea.—STEEVENS.

With grant of our most just and right desires ;  
 And true obedience of this madness cur'd,  
 Stoop tamely to the foot of majesty.

*Mowb.* If not, we ready are to try our fortunes  
 To the last man.

*Hast.* And though we here fall down,  
 We have supplies to second our attempt ;  
 If they miscarry, theirs shall second them :  
 And so, success of mischief<sup>p</sup> shall be born ;  
 And heir from heir shall hold this quarrel up,  
 Whiles England shall have generation.

*P. John.* You are too shallow, Hastings, much too  
 shallow,  
 To sound the bottom of the after-times.

*West.* Pleaseth your grace, to answer them directly,  
 How far-forth you do like their articles ?

*P. John.* I like them all, and do allow<sup>q</sup> them well :  
 And swear here by the honour of my blood,  
 My father's purposes have been mistook ;  
 And some about him have too lavishly  
 Wrested his meaning and authority.—  
 My lord, these griefs shall be with speed redress'd ;  
 Upon my soul, they shall. If this may please you,  
 Discharge your powers unto their several counties,  
 As we will ours : and here between the armies,  
 Let's drink together friendly, and embrace ;  
 That all their eyes may bear those tokens home,  
 Of our restored love, and amity.<sup>r</sup>

*Arch.* I take your princely word for these redresses.

*P. John.* I give it you, and will maintain my word :  
 And thereupon I drink unto your grace.

*Hast.* Go, captain, [*to an Officer,*] and deliver to the  
 army  
 This news of peace ; let them have pay, and part :

<sup>p</sup> — success—] Here used for *succession*.

<sup>q</sup> — allow—] i. e. *Approve*.

<sup>r</sup> *Discharge your powers, &c.*] It was Westmoreland who made this deceitful proposal, as appears from Holinshed. "The earl of Westmoreland using more policie than the rest, said, whereas our people have been long in armour, let them depart home to their wonted trades : in the meane time let us drink together in signe of agreement, that the people on both sides may see it, and know that it is true, that we be light at a point.—STEEVENS.

I know, it will well please them ; hie thee, captain.

[Exit Officer.

*Arch.* To you, my noble lord of Westmoreland.

*West.* I pledge your grace : And, if you knew what  
I have bestow'd, to breed this present peace, [pains  
You would drink freely : but my love to you  
Shall show itself more openly hereafter.

*Arch.* I do not doubt you.

*West.* I am glad of it :—

Health to my lord, and gentle cousin, Mowbray.

*Mowb.* You wish me health in very happy season ;  
For I am, on the sudden, something ill.

*Arch.* Against ill chances, men are ever merry ;<sup>s</sup>  
But heaviness foreruns the good event.

*West.* Therefore be merry, coz ;<sup>t</sup> since sudden sorrow  
Serves to say thus,—Some good thing comes to-morrow.

*Arch.* Believe me, I am passing light in spirit.

*Mowb.* So much the worse, if your own rule be true.

[Shouts within.

*P. John.* The word of peace is render'd ; Hark, how  
they shout !

*Mowb.* This had been cheerful, after victory.

*Arch.* A peace is of the nature of a conquest ;  
For then both parties nobly are subdued,  
And neither party loser.

*P. John.* Go, my lord,

And let our army be discharged too.—

[Exit WESTMORELAND.

And, good my lord, so please you, let our trains<sup>u</sup>  
March by us ; that we may peruse the men  
We should have cop'd withal.

*Arch.* Go, good lord Hastings,  
And, ere they be dismiss'd, let them march by.

[Exit HASTINGS.

<sup>s</sup> *Against ill chances, men are ever merry ;* ] Thus the poet describes Romeo as feeling an *unaccustomed* degree of cheerfulness just before he hears the news of the death of Juliet.—STEEVENS.

<sup>t</sup> *Therefore be merry, coz ;* ] i. e. Therefore, notwithstanding this sudden impulse to heaviness, be merry, for such sudden dejections forebode good.—JOHNSON.

<sup>u</sup> — *let our trains, &c.* ] That is, our army on each part, that we may both see those that were to have opposed us.—JOHNSON.



*P. John.* I trust, my lords, we shall lie to-night together.—

*Re-enter WESTMORELAND.*

Now, cousin, wherefore stands our army still?

*West.* The leaders, having charge from you to stand, Will not go off until they hear you speak.

*P. John.* They know their duties.

*Re-enter HASTINGS.*

*Hast.* My lord, our army is dispers'd already :  
Like youthful steers unyok'd, they take their courses  
East, west, north, south ; or, like a school broke up,  
Each hurries toward his home, and sporting-place.

*West.* Good tidings, my lord Hastings ; for the which  
I do arrest thee, traitor, of high treason :  
And you, lord archbishop,—and you, lord Mowbray,  
Of capital treason I attach you both.

*Mowb.* Is this proceeding just and honourable?

*West.* Is your assembly so?

*Arch.* Will you thus break your faith?

*P. John.* I pawn'd thee none :

I promis'd you redress of these same grievances,  
Whereof you did complain ; which, by mine honour,  
I will perform with a most christian care.

But, for you, rebels,—look to taste the due

Meet for rebellion, and such acts as yours.

Most shallowly did you these arms commence,

Fondly<sup>x</sup> brought here, and foolishly sent hence.—

Strike up our drums, pursue the scatter'd stray ;

Heaven, and not wê, hath safely fought to-day.—

Some guard these traitors to the block of death ;

Treason's true bed, and yielder up of breath. [*Exeunt.*<sup>y</sup>

<sup>x</sup> *Fondly*—] i. e. *Foolishly*.

<sup>y</sup> *Exeunt.*] It cannot but raise some indignation to find this horrid violation of faith passed over thus slightly by the poet, without any note of censure or detestation.—JOHNSON.

## SCENE III.

*Another Part of the Forest.*

*Alarums: Excursions. Enter FALSTAFF and COLEVILE, meeting.*

*Fal.* What's your name, sir? of what condition are you; and of what place, I pray?

*Cole.* I am a knight, sir; and my name is—Colevile of the dale.<sup>z</sup>

*Fal.* Well then, Colevile is your name; a knight is your degree; and your place, the dale: Colevile shall still be your name; a traitor your degree; and the dungeon your place,—a place deep enough; so shall you still be Colevile of the dale.

*Cole.* Are not you sir John Falstaff?

*Fal.* As good a man as he, sir, whoe'er I am. Do ye yield, sir? or shall I sweat for you? If I do sweat, they are drops of thy lovers, and they weep for thy death; therefore rouse up fear and trembling, and do observance to my mercy.

*Cole.* I think, you are sir John Falstaff; and, in that thought, yield me.

*Fal.* I have a whole school of tongues in this belly of mine; and not a tongue of them all speaks any other word but my name. An I had but a belly of any indifferency, I were simply the most active fellow in Europe: My womb, my womb, my womb undoes me.—Here comes our general.

*Enter Prince JOHN of LANCASTER, WESTMORELAND, and Others.*

*P. John.* The heat is past,<sup>a</sup> follow no further now;—  
Call in the powers, good cousin Westmoreland.—

[*Exit WEST.*

<sup>z</sup> — *Colevile of the dale.*] “At the king's coming to Durham, the lord Hastings, Sir John Colevile of the dale, &c. being convicted of the conspiracy, were there beheaded.” *Holinshead.*—STEVENS.

<sup>a</sup> *The heat is past,*] That is, the violence of resentment, the eagerness of revenge.—JOHNSON.

Now, Falstaff, where have you been all this while ?

When every thing is ended, then you come :

These tardy tricks of yours will, on my life,

One time or other break some gallows' back.

*Fal.* I would be sorry, my lord, but it should be thus ; I never knew yet, but rebuke and check was the reward of valour. Do you think me a swallow, an arrow, or a bullet? have I, in my poor and old motion, the expedition of thought? I have speeded hither with the very extremest inch of possibility ; I have foundered nine-score and odd posts : and here, travel-tainted as I am, have, in my pure and immaculate valour, taken sir John Coleville of the dale, a most furious knight, and valorous enemy : But what of that? he saw me, and yielded ; that I may justly say with the hook-nosed fellow of Rome,<sup>b</sup>—I came, saw, and overcame.

*P. John.* It was more of his courtesy than your deserving.

*Fal.* I know not : here he is, and here I yield him : and I beseech your grace, let it be booked with the rest of this day's deeds ; or, by the lord, I will have it in a particular ballad else, with mine own picture on the top of it, Coleville kissing my foot : To the which course if I be enforced, if you do not all show like gilt two-pences, to me ; and I, in the clear sky of fame, o'er shine you as much as the full moon doth the cinders of the element,<sup>c</sup> which show like pins' heads to her ; believe not the word of the noble : Therefore let me have right, and let desert mount.

*P. John.* Thine's too heavy to mount.

*Fal.* Let it shine then.

*P. John.* Thine's too thick to shine.

*Fal.* Let it do something, my good lord, that may do me good, and call it what you will.

<sup>b</sup> — *hook-nosed fellow of Rome,*] The quarto reads, "*the hook-nosed fellow of Rome, their Cosin.*" I have followed the folio. The modern editors read, but without authority, "*the hook-nosed fellow of Rome, there, Cæsar.*"—STEEVENS. I cannot consider this reading without authority for the "*their Cosin*" of the quarto is very likely to have been a misprint for "*there, Cæsar.*"

<sup>c</sup> — *cinders of the element,*] A ludicrous term for the stars.—STEEVENS.

*P. John.* Is thy name Colevile?<sup>d</sup>

*Cole.* It is, my lord.

*P. John.* A famous rebel art thou, Colevile.

*Fal.* And a famous true subject took him.

*Cole.* I am, my lord, but as my betters are,  
That led me hither: had they been rul'd by me,  
You should have won them dearer than you have.

*Fal.* I know not how they sold themselves: but thou,  
like a kind fellow, gavest thyself away; and I thank thee  
for thee.

*Re-enter WESTMORELAND.*

*P. John.* Now, have you left pursuit?—

*West.* Retreat is made, and execution stay'd.

*P. John.* Send Colevile, with his confederates,  
To York, to present execution:—  
Blunt, lead him hence; and see you guard him sure.

[*Exeunt some with COLEVILE.*

And now despatch we toward the court, my lords;  
I hear, the king my father is sore sick:  
Our news shall go before us to his majesty,—  
Which, cousin, you shall bear,—to comfort him;  
And we with sober speed will follow you.

*Fal.* My lord, I beseech you, give me leave to go through  
Glostershire: and when you come to court, stand my  
good lord,<sup>e</sup> 'pray, in your good report.

*P. John.* Fare you well, Falstaff: I, in my condition,<sup>f</sup>  
Shall better speak of you than you deserve. [Exit.

*Fal.* I would, you had but the wit; 'twere better than  
your dukedom.<sup>g</sup>—Good faith, this same young sober-  
blooded boy doth not love me; nor a man cannot make  
him laugh<sup>h</sup>—but that's no marvel, he drinks no wine.

<sup>d</sup> — *Colevile?*] This name is designed to be pronounced as a trisyllable.  
—STEEVENS.

<sup>e</sup> — *stand my good lord,*] i. e. *Stand my good friend.*

<sup>f</sup> — *I, in my condition,*] i. e. In my place as commanding officer, who ought to represent things merely as they are, shall speak of you better than you deserve.—STEEVENS.

<sup>g</sup> — *your dukedom.*] He had no dukedom.

<sup>h</sup> — *this same young sober-blooded boy doth not love me; nor a man cannot make him laugh—*] Falstaff here speaks like a veteran in life. The young prince did not love him, and he despaired to gain his affection, for he could not make

There's never any of these demure boys come to any proof:<sup>i</sup> for thin drink doth so over-cool their blood, and making many fish-meals, that they fall into a kind of male green-sickness; and then, when they marry, they get wenches: they are generally fools and cowards;—which some of us should be too, but for inflammation. A good sherris-sack<sup>k</sup> hath a two-fold operation in it. It ascends me into the brain; dries me there all the foolish, and dull, and crudy vapours which environ it: makes it apprehensive,<sup>l</sup> quick, forgetive,<sup>m</sup> full of nimble, fiery, and delectable shapes; which delivered o'er to the voice, (the tongue,) which is the birth, becomes excellent wit. The second property of your excellent sherris is,—the warming of the blood; which, before cold and settled, left the liver white and pale, which is the badge of pusillanimity, and cowardice: but the sherris warms it, and makes it course from the inwards to the parts extreme. It illumineth the face; which, as a beacon, gives warning to all the rest of this little kingdom, man, to arm: and then the vital commoners, and inland petty spirits, muster me all to their captain, the heart; who, great, and puffed up with this retinue, doth any deed of courage; and this valour comes of sherris: So that skill in the weapon is nothing, without sack; for that sets it a-work: and learning, a mere hoard of gold kept by a devil;<sup>n</sup> till sack commences it,<sup>o</sup> and sets it in act and use. Hereof comes it,

him laugh. Men only become friends by community of pleasures. He who cannot be softened into gaiety, cannot easily be melted into kindness.—JOHNSON.

<sup>i</sup> — to any proof,] i. e. Any confirmed state of manhood. The allusion is to armour hardened till it abides a certain trial.—STEEVENS.

<sup>k</sup> — sherris-sack—] i. e. Sherry or sack from Xeres, a town of Andalusia near Cadix. The sack, to which this epithet was not annexed, came chiefly from Malaga.—MALONE. The ancient and genuine sherry was a dry wine, and therefore fit to be drank with sugar. What we now use is in some degree sweetened by art, and therefore affords no adequate idea of the liquor that was Falstaff's favourite.—STEEVENS.

<sup>l</sup> — apprehensive,] i. e. Quick to understand.

<sup>m</sup> — forgetive,] i. e. Imaginative.

<sup>n</sup> — kept by a devil;] It was anciently supposed that all the mines of gold, &c. were guarded by evil spirits.—STEEVENS.

<sup>o</sup> — till sack commences it,] It seems probable to me, that Shakspeare, in these words, alludes to the Cambridge *Commencement*; and in what follows, to the Oxford *Act*: for by those different names our two universities have long distinguished the season, at which each of them gives to her respective students a complete authority to use those *hoards of learning* which have entitled

that prince Harry is valiant: for the cold blood he did naturally inherit of his father, he hath, like lean, steril, and bare land, manured, husbanded, and tilled, with excellent endeavour of drinking good, and good store of fertile sherris; that he is become very hot, and valiant. If I had a thousand sons, the first human principle I would teach them, should be,—to forswear thin potations, and addict themselves to sack.

*Enter* BARDOLPH.

How now, Bardolph?

*Bard.* The army is discharged all, and gone.

*Fal.* Let them go. I'll through Glostershire; and there will I visit master Robert Shallow, esquire: I have him already tempering between my finger and my thumb,<sup>p</sup> and shortly will I seal with him. Come away. [*Exeunt.*]

#### SCENE IV.

Westminster. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter* King HENRY, CLARENCE, Prince HUMPHREY, WARWICK, and others.

*K. Hen.* Now, lords, if heaven doth give successful end  
To this debate that bleedeth at our doors,  
We will our youth lead on to higher fields,  
And draw no swords but what are sanctified.  
Our navy is address'd,<sup>q</sup> our power collected,  
Our substitutes in absence well invested,  
And every thing lies level to our wish:  
Only, we want a little personal strength;  
And pause us, till these rebels, now afoot,  
Come underneath the yoke of government.

*War.* Both which, we doubt not but your majesty  
Shall soon enjoy.

them to their several degrees in arts, law, physick, and divinity.—TYRWHITT. Steevens has shewn by several quotations that such allusions were frequent with our old play-writers.

<sup>p</sup> — *I have him already tempering, &c.*] A very pleasant allusion to the old use of sealing with soft wax.—WARBURTON.

<sup>q</sup> — *address'd.*] i. e. *Ready, prepared.*

*K. Hen.* Humphrey, my son of Gloster,

Where is the prince your brother ?

*P. Humph.* I think, he's gone to hunt, my lord, at Windsor.

*K. Hen.* And how accompanied ?

*P. Humph.* I do not know, my lord.

*K. Hen.* Is not his brother, Thomas of Clarence, with him ?

*P. Humph.* No, my good lord : he is in presence here.

*Cl.* What would my lord and father ?

*K. Hen.* Nothing but well to thee, Thomas of Clarence.

How chance, thou art not with the prince thy brother ?

He loves thee, and thou dost neglect him, Thomas ;

Thou hast a better place in his affection,

Than all thy brothers : cherish it, my boy ;

And noble offices thou may'st effect

Of mediation, after I am dead,

Between his greatness and thy other brethren :—

Therefore, omit him not : blunt not his love :

Nor lose the good advantage of his grace,

By seeming cold, or careless of his will.

For he is gracious, if he be observ'd ;<sup>r</sup>

He hath a tear for pity, and a hand

Open as day for melting charity :

Yet notwithstanding, being incens'd, he's flint ;

As humorous as winter,<sup>s</sup> and as sudden

As flaws congealed in the spring of day.<sup>t</sup>

His temper, therefore, must be well observ'd :

Chide him for faults, and do it reverently,

When you perceive his blood inclin'd to mirth :

But, being moody, give him line and scope ;

Till that his passions, like a whale on ground,

Confound themselves with working. Learn this, Thomas,

And thou shalt prove a shelter to thy friends ;

<sup>r</sup> — *if he be observ'd ;*] i. e. If he has respectful attention shown to him.

<sup>s</sup> — *humorous as winter,*] i. e. Changeable as the weather of a winter's day.

JOHNSON.

<sup>t</sup> — *flaws congealed in the spring of day.*] Alluding to the opinion of some philosophers, that the vapours being congealed in the air by cold, (which is most intense towards the morning,) and being afterwards rarified and let loose by the warmth of the sun, occasion those sudden and impetuous gusts of wind which are called *flaws*.—WARBURTON.

A hoop of gold, to bind thy brothers in ;  
 That the united vessel of their blood,  
 Mingled with venom of suggestion,<sup>u</sup>  
 (As, force perforce, the age will pour it in,)  
 Shall never leak though it do work as strong  
 As aconitum, or rash<sup>x</sup> gunpowder.

*Cl.* I shall observe him with all care and love.

*K. Hen.* Why art thou not at Windsor with him,  
 Thomas ?

*Cl.* He is not there to-day ; he dines in London.

*K. Hen.* And how accompanied ? can'st thou tell that ?

*Cl.* With Pains, and other his continual followers.

*K. Hen.* Most subject is the fattest soil to weeds ;  
 And he, the noble image of my youth,  
 Is overspread with them : Therefore my grief  
 Stretches itself beyond the hour of death ;  
 The blood weeps from my heart, when I do shape,  
 In forms imaginary, the unguided days,  
 And rotten times, that you shall look upon  
 When I am sleeping with my ancestors.  
 For when his headstrong riot hath no curb,  
 When rage and hot blood are his counsellors,  
 When means and lavish manners meet together,  
 O, with what wings shall his affections<sup>y</sup> fly  
 Towards fronting peril and oppos'd decay !

*War.* My gracious lord, you look beyond him quite :  
 The prince but studies his companions,  
 Like a strange tongue : wherein, to gain the language,  
 'Tis needful, that the most immodest word  
 Be look'd upon, and learn'd : which once attain'd,  
 Your highness knows, comes to no further use,  
 But to be known, and hated. So, like gross terms,  
 The prince will, in the perfectness of time,  
 Cast off his followers : and their memory  
 Shall as a pattern or a measure live,

<sup>u</sup> *Mingled with venom of suggestion,*] Though their blood be inflamed by the temptations to which youth is peculiarly subject.—MALONE.

<sup>x</sup> ——— *rash*—] i. e. *Quick, violent, sudden.* This representation of the prince is a natural picture of a young man, whose passions are yet too strong for his virtues.—JOHNSON.

<sup>y</sup> ——— *his affections*—] i. e. *His passions.*



By which his grace must mete the lives of others ;  
Turning past evils to advantages.

*K. Hen.* 'Tis seldom, when the bee doth leave her comb  
In the dead carrion.<sup>2</sup>—Who's here? Westmoreland?

*Enter WESTMORELAND.*

*West.* Health to my sovereign! and new happiness  
Added to that that I am to deliver!  
Prince John, your son, doth kiss your grace's hand:  
Mowbray, the bishop Scroop, Hastings, and all,  
Are brought to the correction of your law;  
There is not now a rebel's sword unsheathed,  
But peace puts forth her olive every where,  
The manner how this action hath been borne,  
Here at more leisure may your highness read;  
With every course, in his particular.<sup>3</sup>

*K. Hen.* O Westmoreland, thou art a summer bird,  
Which ever in the haunch of winter sings  
The lifting up of day. Look! here's more news.

*Enter HARCOURT.*

*Har.* From enemies heaven keep your majesty;  
And, when they stand against you, may they fall  
As those that I am come to tell you of!  
The earl Northumberland, and the lord Bardolph,  
With a great power of English, and of Scots,  
Are by the sheriff of Yorkshire overthrown:  
The manner and true order of the fight,  
This packet, please it you, contains at large.

*K. Hen.* And wherefore should these good news make  
me sick?  
Will fortune never come with both hands full,  
But write her fair words still in foulest letters?  
She either gives a stomach, and no food,—  
Such are the poor, in health; or else a feast,

<sup>2</sup> 'Tis seldom, when the bee, &c.] As the bee having once placed her comb in a carcass, stays by her honey, so he that has once taken pleasure in bad company, will continue to associate with those that have the art of pleasing him.—*JOHNSON.*

<sup>3</sup> — in his particular.] i. e. In the detail contained in the letter of prince John.—*HENLEY.* A particular is yet used as a substantive by legal conveyancers, for a minute detail of things singly enumerated.—*MALONE.*

And takes away the stomach,—such are the rich,  
That have abundance, and enjoy it not.

I should rejoice now at this happy news ;  
And now my sight fails, and my brain is giddy :—

O me ! come near me, now I am much ill. [Swoons.

*P. Humph.* Comfort, your majesty !

*Cla.* O my royal father !

*West.* My sovereign lord, cheer up yourself, look up !

*War.* Be patient, princes ; you do know these fits

Are with his highness very ordinary.

Stand from him, give him air ; he'll straight be well.

*Cla.* No, no ; he cannot long hold out these pangs ;  
The incessant care and labour of his mind  
Hath wrought the mure,<sup>b</sup> that should confine it in,  
So thin, that life looks through, and will break out.

*P. Humph.* The people fear me ;<sup>c</sup> for they do observe  
Unfather'd heirs, and loathly birds of nature :<sup>d</sup>  
The seasons change their manners, as the year<sup>e</sup>  
Had found some months asleep, and leap'd them over.

*Cla.* The river hath thrice flow'd,<sup>f</sup> no ebb between :  
And the old folk, time's doting chronicles,  
Say, it did so, a little time before  
That our great grandsire, Edward, sick'd and died.

*War.* Speak lower, princes, for the king recovers.

*P. Humph.* This apoplex will, certain, be his end.

*K. Hen.* I pray you, take me up, and bear me hence  
Into some other chamber : softly, 'pray.

[*They convey the King into an inner part of  
the room, and place him on a bed.*

Let there be no noise made, my gentle friends ;  
Unless some dull<sup>g</sup> and favourable hand  
Will whisper musick to my weary spirit.

<sup>b</sup> — the mure, &c.] i. e. The wall.

<sup>c</sup> — fear me ;] i. e. Make me afraid.

<sup>d</sup> Unfather'd heirs, &c.] i. e. Equivocal births ; animals that had no animal progenitors ; productions not brought forth according to the stated laws of generation.—JOHNSON. For birds I should propose to read births.

<sup>e</sup> The seasons change their manners as, &c.] This is finely expressed : alluding to the terms rough and harsh, mild and soft, applied to weather.—WARBURTON. As is here used for as if.

<sup>f</sup> The river hath thrice flow'd,] This is historically true. It happened on the 12th of October, 1411.—STEEVENS.

<sup>g</sup> — dull—] i. e. Producing dullness or heaviness ; and consequently sleep.—MALONE.

*War.* Call for the musick in the other room.

*K. Hen.* Set me the crown upon my pillow here.<sup>h</sup>

*Cla.* His eye is hollow, and he changes much.

*War.* Less noise. less noise.

*Enter Prince HENRY.*

*P. Hen.* Who saw the duke of Clarence ?

*Cla.* I am here, brother, full of heaviness.

*P. Hen.* How now ! rain within doors, and none abroad !  
How doth the king ?

*P. Humph.* Exceeding ill.

*P. Hen.* Heard he the good news yet ?  
Tell it him.

*P. Humph.* He alter'd much upon the hearing it.

*P. Hen.* If he be sick  
With joy, he will recover without physick.

*War.* Not so much noise, my lords:—sweet prince,  
speak low ;

The king your father is dispos'd to sleep.

*Cla.* Let us withdraw into the other room.

*War.* Will't please your grace to go along with us ?

*P. Hen.* No ; I will sit and watch here by the king.

[*Exeunt all but P. HENRY.*]

Why doth the crown lie there upon his pillow,  
Being so troublesome a bedfellow ?  
O polished perturbation ! golden care !  
That keep'st the ports<sup>i</sup> of slumber open wide  
To many a watchful night !—sleep with it now !  
Yet not so sound, and half so deeply sweet,  
As he, whose brow, with homely biggin<sup>k</sup> bound,  
Snores out the watch of night. O majesty !  
When thou dost pinch thy bearer, thou dost sit  
Like a rich armour worn in heat of day,  
That scalds with safety. By his gates of breath  
There lies a downy feather, which stirs not :  
Did he suspire, that light and weightless down

<sup>h</sup> *Set me the crown upon my pillow here.*] It is still the custom in France to place the crown on the king's pillow when he is dying.—STEEVENS.

<sup>i</sup> — ports—] i. e. *Gates.*

<sup>k</sup> — homely biggin—] A kind of cap, at present worn only by children ; but so called from the cap worn by the Beguines, an order of nuns.—STEEVENS.

Perforce must move.—My gracious lord! my father!—  
 This sleep is sound indeed; this is a sleep,  
 That from this golden rigol<sup>1</sup> hath divorc'd  
 So many English kings. Thy due, from me,  
 Is tears, and heavy sorrows of the blood;  
 Which nature, love, and filial tenderness,  
 Shall, O dear father, pay thee plenteously:  
 My due, from thee, is this imperial crown;  
 Which, as immediate from thy place and blood,  
 Derives itself to me. Lo, here it sits,—

[Putting it on his head.

Which heaven shall guard: And put the world's whole  
 strength

Into one giant arm, it shall not force  
 This lineal honour from me: This from thee  
 Will I to mine leave, as 'tis left to me.

[Exit.

K. Hen. Warwick! Gloster! Clarence!

*Re-enter WARWICK, and the rest.*

Cla. Doth the king call?

War. What would your majesty? How fares your  
 grace?

K. Hen. Why did you leave me here alone, my lords?

Cla. We left the prince my brother here, my liege,  
 Who undertook to sit and watch by you.

K. Hen. The prince of Wales? Where is he? let me  
 He is not here. [see him:

War. This door is open; he is gone this way.

P. Humph. He came not through the chamber where  
 we stay'd.

K. Hen. Where is the crown? who took it from my  
 pillow?

War. When we withdrew, my liege, we left it here.

K. Hen. The prince hath ta'en it hence:—go, seek him  
 Is he so hasty, that he doth suppose [out.  
 My sleep my death?—

Find him my lord of Warwick; chide him hither.

[Exit WARWICK.

<sup>1</sup> — rigol—] i. e. Circle, crown. It is extraordinary that this word, which is derived from the old Italian *rigolo*, a small wheel, should be twice used by Shakspeare, and not found in any other author.

This part of his conjoins with my disease,  
 And helps to end me.—See, sons, what things you are!  
 How quickly nature falls into revolt,  
 When gold becomes her object!  
 For this the foolish over-careful fathers  
 Have broke their sleep with thoughts, their brains with care,  
 Their bones with industry;  
 For this they have engrossed and pil'd up  
 The canker'd heaps of strange-achieved gold;  
 For this they have been thoughtful to invest  
 Their sons with arts, and martial exercises:  
 When, like the bee, tolling<sup>m</sup> from every flower  
 The virtuous sweets;  
 Our thighs pack'd with wax, our mouths with honey,  
 We bring it to the hive; and like the bees,  
 Are murder'd for our pains. This bitter taste  
 Yield his engrossments<sup>n</sup> to the ending father.—

*Re-enter WARWICK.*

Now, where is he that will not stay so long  
 Till his friend sickness hath determin'd<sup>o</sup> me?

*War.* My lord, I found the prince in the next room,  
 Washing with kindly tears his gentle cheeks;  
 With such a deep demeanour in great sorrow,  
 That tyranny, which never quaff'd but blood,  
 Would, by beholding him, have wash'd his knife  
 With gentle eye-drops. He is coming hither.

*K. Hen.* But wherefore did he take away the crown?

*Re-enter Prince HENRY.*

Lo, where he comes,—Come hither to me, Harry:—  
 Depart the chamber, leave us here alone.

[*Exeunt CLARENCE, Prince HUMPHREY,  
 Lords, &c.*

*P. Hen.* I never thought to hear you speak again.

*K. Hen.* Thy wish was father, Harry, to that thought:  
 I stay too long by thee, I weary thee.

<sup>m</sup> — tolling—] i. e. Taking toll. The folio reads *culling*.

<sup>n</sup> — his engrossments—] i. e. His accumulations.

<sup>o</sup> — determin'd—] i. e. Ended; it is still used in this sense in legal conveyances.—REED.

Dost thou so hunger for my empty chair,  
 That thou wilt needs invest thee with mine honours  
 Before thy hour be ripe? O foolish youth!  
 Thou seek'st the greatness that will overwhelm thee.  
 Stay but a little; for my cloud of dignity  
 Is held from falling with so weak a wind,  
 That it will quickly drop: my day is dim.  
 Thou hast stol'n that, which, after some few hours,  
 Were thine without offence; and, at my death,  
 Thou hast seal'd up my expectation:<sup>p</sup>  
 Thy life did manifest, thou lov'dst me not,  
 And thou wilt have me die assured of it.  
 Thou hid'st a thousand daggers in thy thoughts;  
 Which thou hast whetted on thy stony heart,  
 To stab at half an hour of my life.  
 What! canst thou not forbear me half an hour?  
 Then get thee gone; and dig my grave thyself;  
 And bid the merry bells ring to thine ear,  
 That thou art crowned, not that I am dead.  
 Let all the tears that should bedew my hearse,  
 Be drops of balm, to sanctify thy head:  
 Only compound me with forgotten dust;  
 Give that, which gave thee life, unto the worms.  
 Pluck down my officers, break my decrees;  
 For now a time is come to mock at form,  
 Harry the fifth is crown'd:—Up, vanity!  
 Down, royal state! all you sage counsellors, hence!  
 And to the English court assemble now,  
 From every region, apes of idleness!  
 Now, neighbour confines, purge you of your scum:  
 Have you a ruffian, that will swear, drink, dance,  
 Revel the night; rob, murder, and commit  
 The oldest sins the newest kind of ways?  
 Be happy, he will trouble you no more:  
 England shall double gild his treble guilt:  
 England shall give him office, honour, might:  
 For the fifth Harry from curb'd license plucks  
 The muzzle of restraint, and the wild dog  
 Shall flesh his tooth in every innocent.

<sup>p</sup> — seal'd up my expectation:] Thou hast confirmed my opinion.—JOHNSON.

O my poor kingdom, sick with civil blows !  
 When that my care could not withhold thy riots,  
 What wilt thou do, when riot is thy care ?  
 O, thou wilt be a wilderness again,  
 Peopled with wolves, thy old inhabitants !

*P. Hen.* O, pardon me, my liege ! but for my tears,

[*Kneeling.*]

The moist impediments unto my speech,  
 I had forestall'd this dear and deep rebuke,  
 Ere you with grief had spoke, and I had heard  
 The course of it so far. There is your crown ;  
 And He that wears the crown immortally,  
 Long guard it yours ! If I affect it more,  
 Than as your honour, and as your renown,  
 Let me no more from this obedience rise,  
 (Which my most true and inward-duteous spirit  
 Teacheth,) this prostrate and exterior bending !  
 Heaven witness with me, when I here came in  
 And found no course of breath within your majesty,  
 How cold it struck my heart ! If I do feign,  
 O, let me in my present wildness die ;  
 And never live to show the incredulous world  
 The noble change that I have purposed !  
 Coming to look on you, thinking you dead,  
 (And dead almost, my liege, to think you were,)  
 I spake unto the crown as having sense,  
 And thus upbraided it. *The care on thee depending,  
 Hath fed upon the body of my father ;  
 Therefore, thou, best of gold, art worst of gold.  
 Other, less fine in carat, is more precious,  
 Preserving life in med'cine potable :<sup>1</sup>  
 But thou, most fine, most honour'd, most renown'd,  
 Hast eat thy bearer up.* Thus, my most royal liege,  
 Accusing it, I put it on my head ;  
 To try with it,—as with an enemy,  
 That had before my face murder'd my father,—  
 The quarrel of a true inheritor.

<sup>1</sup> — *in med'cine potable* :] There has long prevailed an opinion that a solution of gold has great medicinal virtues, and that the incorruptibility of gold might be communicated to the body impregnated with it.—*JOHNSON.*

But if it did infect my blood with joy,  
 Or swell my thoughts to any strain of pride ;  
 If any rebel or vain spirit of mine  
 Did, with the least affection of a welcome,  
 Give entertainment to the might of it,  
 Let God for ever keep it from my head !  
 And make me as the poorest vassal is,  
 That doth with awe and terror kneel to it !

*K. Hen.* O my son !

Heaven put it in thy mind, to take it hence,  
 That thou might'st win the more thy father's love,  
 Pleading so wisely in excuse of it.  
 Come hither, Harry, sit thou by my bed ;  
 And hear, I think, the very latest counsel  
 That ever I shall breathe. Heaven knows, my son,  
 By what by-paths, and indirect crook'd ways,  
 I met this crown ; and I myself know well,  
 How troublesome it sat upon my head :  
 To thee it shall descend with better quiet,  
 Better opinion, better confirmation ;  
 For all the soil<sup>r</sup> of the achievement goes  
 With me into the earth. It seem'd in me,  
 But as an honour snatch'd with boisterous hand ;  
 And I had many living, to upbraid  
 My gain of it by their assistances ;  
 Which daily grew to quarrel, and to bloodshed,  
 Wounding supposed<sup>s</sup> peace : all these bold fears,<sup>t</sup>  
 Thou see'st, with peril I have answered :  
 For all my reign hath been but as a scene  
 Acting that argument ; and now my death  
 Changes the mode :<sup>u</sup> for what in me was purchas'd,<sup>x</sup>  
 Falls upon thee in a more fairer sort ;  
 So thou the garland wear'st successively.<sup>y</sup>

<sup>r</sup> — soil—] i. e. Turpitude, reproach.

<sup>s</sup> — supposed—] i. e. Imagined, not real.

<sup>t</sup> — bold fears,] i. e. Audacious terrors.—STEEVENS.

<sup>u</sup> — mode:] i. e. The state of things.

<sup>x</sup> — for what in me was purchas'd,] Purchased, in this place, signifies acquired by unjust and indirect methods. Purchase, in Shakspeare, frequently means stolen goods, or goods dishonestly obtained.—M. MASON.

<sup>y</sup> — successively.] i. e. By order of succession. Every usurper snatches a claim of hereditary right as soon as he can.—JOHNSON.



Yet, though thou stand'st more sure than I could do,  
 Thou art not firm enough, since griefs are green;  
 And all thy friends, which thou must make thy friends,<sup>z</sup>  
 Have but their stings and teeth newly ta'en out;  
 By whose fell working I was first advanc'd,  
 And by whose power I well might lodge a fear  
 To be again displac'd: which to avoid,  
 I cut them off:<sup>a</sup> and had a purpose now  
 To lead out many to the Holy Land;<sup>b</sup>  
 Lest rest, and lying still, might make them look  
 Too near unto my state. Therefore, my Harry,  
 Be it thy course, to busy giddy minds  
 With foreign quarrels; that action, hence borne out,  
 May waste the memory of the former days.  
 More would I, but my lungs are wasted so,  
 That strength of speech is utterly denied me.  
 How I came by the crown, O God, forgive!<sup>c</sup>  
 And grant it may with thee in true peace live!

*P. Hen.* My gracious liege,  
 You won it, wore it, kept it, gave it me;  
 Then plain, and right, must my possession be:  
 Which I, with more than with a common pain,  
 'Gainst all the world will rightfully maintain.

*Enter Prince JOHN of LANCASTER, WARWICK, Lords,  
 and others.*

*K. Hen.* Look, look, here comes my John of Lancaster,

*P. John.* Health, peace, and happiness, to my royal  
 father!

*K. Hen.* Thou bring'st me happiness, and peace, son  
 John;

<sup>z</sup> *And all thy friends, which thou must make thy friends,*] i. e. All those capable or likely to assist you, and whom it is incumbent on you to conciliate and attach to your cause.—SEYMOUR.

<sup>a</sup> *I cut them off:*] We should read, *I cut some off*, otherwise the king advises the prince to make those persons his friends whom he had already destroyed.—M. MASON.

<sup>b</sup> *To lead out many to the Holy Land;*] This journey to the Holy Land, of which the king very frequently revives the mention, had two motives, religion and policy. He durst not wear the ill-gotten crown without expiation, but in the act of expiation he contrives to make his wickedness successful.—JOHNSON.

<sup>c</sup> *How I came, &c.*] This is a true picture of a mind divided between heaven and earth. He prays for the prosperity of guilt while he deprecates its punishment.—JOHNSON.

But health, alack, with youthful wings is flown  
 From this bare, wither'd trunk; upon thy sight,  
 My worldly business makes a period.—  
 Where is my lord of Warwick?

*P. Hen.* My lord of Warwick!

*K. Hen.* Doth any name particular belong  
 Unto the lodging where I first did swoon?

*War.* 'Tis call'd Jerusalem, my noble lord.

*K. Hen.* Laud be to God!—even there my life must  
 It hath been prophesied to me many years, [end.  
 I should not die but in Jerusalem;  
 Which vainly I suppos'd, the Holy Land:—  
 But, bear me to that chamber; there I'll lie;  
 In that Jerusalem shall Harry die.<sup>d</sup> [Exeunt.

## ACT V.

SCENE I.—Glostershire. *A Hall in Shallow's House.*

*Enter* SHALLOW, FALSTAFF, BARDOLPH, *and* Page.

*Shall.* By cock and pye,<sup>e</sup> sir, you shall not away to-night.—What, Davy, I say!

*Fal.* You must excuse me, master Robert Shallow.

*Shall.* I will not excuse you; you shall not be excused; excuses shall not be admitted; there is no excuse shall serve; you shall not be excused.—Why, Davy!

*Enter* DAVY.

*Davy.* Here, sir.

*Shall.* Davy, Davy, Davy,—let me see, Davy; let me

<sup>d</sup> *In that Jerusalem shall Harry die.*] “At length he recovered his speech and understanding, and perceiving himself in a strange place, which he knew not, he willed to know if the chamber had any particular name, whereunto answer was made, that it was called Jerusalem. Then said the king; lauds be given to the Father of heaven, for now I know that I shall die here in this chamber, according to prophecie of me declared, that I should depart this life in Jerusalem.”—*Holinshed.*

<sup>e</sup> *By cock and pye,*] In this oath of Justice Shallow, the word *cock* is a purposed disguise of the name of the Deity. *Pie* was the familiar English name of the book, which contained the manner of saying and solemnizing the offices of the Romish Church.—*STEEVENS.*

see:—yea, marry, William cook, bid him come hither.—  
Sir John, you shall not be excused.

*Davy.* Marry, sir, thus; those precepts cannot be served:<sup>f</sup> and, again, sir,—Shall we sow the headland with wheat?

*Shall.* With red wheat, Davy. But for William cook;—Are there no young pigeons?

*Davy.* Yes, sir.—Here is now the smith's note, for shoeing, and plough-irons.

*Shall.* Let it be cast,<sup>g</sup> and paid:—sir John, you shall not be excused.

*Davy.* Now, sir, a new link to the bucket must needs be had:—And, sir, do you mean to stop any of William's wages, about the sack he lost the other day at Hinckley<sup>h</sup> fair?

*Shall.* He shall answer it:—Some pigeons, Davy; a couple of short-legged hens; a joint of mutton; and any pretty little tiny kickshaws, tell William cook.

*Davy.* Doth the man of war stay all night, sir?

*Shall.* Yes, Davy. I will use him well; A friend i'the court is better than a penny in purse. Use his men well, Davy; for they are arrant knaves, and will backbite.

*Davy.* No worse than they are back-bitten, sir: for they have marvellous foul linen.

*Shall.* Well conceited, Davy. About thy business, Davy.

*Davy.* I beseech you, sir, to countenance William Visor of Wincot against Clement Perkes of the hill.

*Shall.* There are many complaints, Davy, against that Visor; that Visor is an arrant knave, on my knowledge.

*Davy.* I grant your worship, that he is a knave, sir: but, yet, God forbid, sir, but a knave should have some countenance at his friend's request. An honest man, sir, is able to speak for himself, when a knave is not. I have

<sup>f</sup> — those precepts cannot be served:] Precept is a justice's warrant. To the offices which Falstaff gives Davy in the following scene, may be added that of justice's clerk. Davy has almost as many employments as Scrub in *The Stratagem*.—JOHNSON.

<sup>g</sup> Let it be cast,] i. e. Cast up.

<sup>h</sup> — Hinckley—] A town in Leicestershire.

served your worship truly, sir, this eight years; and if I cannot once or twice in a quarter bear out a knave against an onest man, I have but a very little credit with your worship. The knave is mine honest friend, sir; therefore, I beseech your worship, let him be countenanced.

*Shall.* Go to; I say, he shall have no wrong. Look about, Davy. [*Exit DAVY.*] Where are you, sir John? Come, off with your boots.—Give me your hand, master Bardolph.

*Bard.* I am glad to see your worship.

*Shall.* I thank thee with all my heart, kind master Bardolph:—and welcome, my tall fellow. [*To the Page.*] Come, sir John. [*Exit SHALLOW.*]

*Fal.* I'll follow you, good master Robert Shallow. Bardolph, look to our horses. [*Exeunt BARDOLPH and Page.*] If I were sawed into quantities, I should make four dozen of such bearded hermit's-staves<sup>i</sup> as master Shallow. It is a wonderful thing to see the semblable coherence of his men's spirits and his: They, by observing him, do bear themselves like foolish justices; he, by conversing with them, is turned into a justice-like serving-man; their spirits are so married in conjunction with the participation of society, that they flock together in consent,<sup>k</sup> like so many wild-geese. If I had a suit to master Shallow, I would humour his men, with the imputation of being near their master:<sup>l</sup> if to his men, I would curry with master Shallow, that no man could better command his servants. It is certain, that either wise bearing, or ignorant carriage, is caught, as men take diseases, one of another: therefore, let men take heed of their company. I will devise matter enough out of this Shallow, to keep prince Harry in continual laughter, the wearing-out of six fashions, (which is four terms or two actions,<sup>m</sup>) and he

<sup>i</sup> — bearded hermit's-staves—] He had before called him the starved justice. His want of flesh is a standing jest.—JOHNSON.

<sup>k</sup> — in consent,] i. e. In accord.

<sup>l</sup> — near their master;] i. e. Admitted to their master's confidence.—STEEVENS.

<sup>m</sup> — two actions,] There is something humourous in making a spendthrift compute time by the operation of an action for debt.—JOHNSON. And some severity on the law's delay, in making each action last two terms.

shall laugh without *intervallums*. O, it is much, that a lie, with a slight oath, and a jest, with a sad brow,<sup>n</sup> will do with a fellow that never had the ache<sup>o</sup> in his shoulders! O, you shall see him laugh, till his face be like a wet cloak ill laid up.

*Shall.* [*within.*] Sir John!

*Fal.* I come, master Shallow; I come, master Shallow.  
[*Exit FALSTAFF.*]

## SCENE II.

Westminster. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter WARWICK, and the Lord Chief Justice.*

*War.* How now, my lord chief justice? whither away?

*Ch. Just.* How doth the king?

*War.* Exceeding well; his cares are now all ended.

*Ch. Just.* I hope, not dead.

*War.* He's walk'd the way of nature;

And, to our puposes, he lives no more.

*Ch. Just.* I would, his majesty had call'd me with him:  
The service that I truly did his life,  
Hath left me open to all injuries.

*War.* Indeed, I think, the young king loves you not.

*Ch. Just.* I know, he doth not; and do arm myself,  
To welcome the condition of the time;  
Which cannot look more hideously upon me  
Than I have drawn it in my fantasy.

*Enter Prince JOHN, Prince HUMPHREY, CLARENCE,  
WESTMORELAND, and others.*

*War.* Here come the heavy issue of dead Harry;  
O, that the living Harry had the temper  
Of him, the worst of these three gentlemen!  
How many nobles then should hold their places,  
That must strike sail to spirits of vile sort!

*Ch. Just.* Alas! I fear, all will be overturn'd.

<sup>n</sup> — *sad brow,*] i. e. *Serious countenance.*

<sup>o</sup> — *fellow that never had the ache—*] That is, a young fellow, one whose disposition to merriment time and pain have not yet impaired.—*JOHNSON.*

*P. John.* Good morrow, cousin Warwick.

*P. Humph. Cla.* Good morrow, cousin.

*P. John.* We meet like men that had forgot to speak.

*War.* We do remember; but our argument  
Is all too heavy to admit much talk.

*P. John.* Well, peace be with him that hath made us  
heavy!

*Ch. Just.* Peace be with us, lest we be heavier!

*P. Humph.* O, good my lord, you have lost a friend,  
indeed:

And I dare swear, you borrow not that face  
Of seeming sorrow; it is, sure, your own.

*P. John.* Though no man be assur'd what grace to find,  
You stand in coldest expectation:  
I am the sorrier; 'would, 'twere otherwise.

*Cla.* Well, you must now speak sir John Falstaff fair;  
Which swims against your stream of quality.

*Ch. Just.* Sweet princes, what I did, I did in honour,  
Led by the impartial conduct of my soul;  
And never shall you see, that I will beg  
A ragged and forestall'd<sup>p</sup> remission.—  
If truth and upright innocency fail me,  
I'll to the king my master that is dead,  
And tell him who hath sent me after him.

*War.* Here comes the prince.

*Enter King HENRY V.*

*Ch. Just.* Good morrow; and heaven save your majesty!

*King.* This new and gorgeous garment, majesty,  
Sits not so easy on me as you think.—  
Brothers, you mix your sadness with some fear;  
This is the English, not the Turkish court;  
Not Amurath an Amurath succeeds,<sup>q</sup>

<sup>p</sup> — ragged and forestall'd remission.—] Ragged is mean, beggarly, ignominious; respecting the sense of the word forestall'd there is some doubt. Dr. Johnson supposes forestalled remission to mean a pardon begged by a voluntary confession of offence. M. Mason considers the purport of the phrase to be a pardon that it is predetermined shall not be granted. I incline to the latter interpretation.

<sup>q</sup> This is the English, not the Turkish court;

Not Amurath an Amurath succeeds,] This is not the court where the prince that mounts the throne puts his brothers to death.—JOHNSON. Amurath the

But Harry Harry : Yet be sad, good brothers,  
 For, to speak the truth, it very well becomes you ;  
 Sorrow so royally in you appears,  
 That I will deeply put the fashion on,  
 And wear it in my heart. Why then, be sad ;  
 But entertain no more of it, good brothers,  
 Than a joint burden laid upon us all.  
 For me, by heaven, I bid you be assur'd ;  
 I'll be your father and your brother too ;  
 Let me but bear your love, I'll bear your cares.  
 Yet weep, that Harry's dead ; and so will I ;  
 But Harry lives, that shall convert those tears,  
 By number, into hours of happiness.

*P. John, &c.* We hope no other from your majesty.

*King.* You all look strangely on me :—and you most ;  
 [To the Chief Justice.

You are, I think, assur'd I love you not.

*Ch. Just.* I am assur'd if I be measur'd rightly,  
 Your majesty hath no just cause to hate me.

*King.* No !

How might a prince of my great hopes forget  
 So great indignities you laid upon me ?  
 What ! rate, rebuke, and roughly send to prison  
 The immediate heir of England ! Was this easy ?  
 May this be wash'd in Lethe, and forgotten ?

*Ch. Just.* I then did use the person of your father ;  
 The image of his power lay then in me :  
 And, in the administration of his law,  
 Whiles I was busy for the commonwealth,  
 Your highness pleased to forget my place,  
 The majesty and power of law and justice,  
 The image of the king whom I presented,

Third, the sixth emperor of the Turks, died on January 18, 1595—6. The people being disaffected to Mahomet the eldest son, and inclined to Amurath, one of the younger children, the death of the emperor was concealed for ten days by the Janizaries, till Mahomet came from Amasia to Constantinople. On his arrival he was saluted emperor by the great Bassas, and others his favourites ; “ which done,” says Knolles “ he presently after caused all his brethren to be invited to a solemn feast in the court ; whereunto they, yet ignorant of their father's death, came cheerfully as men fearing no harm ; but, being come, were there all most miserably strangled.”—FARMER.

↑ — Was this easy ? That is, was this not grievous ? Shakspeare has *easy* in this sense elsewhere.—JOHNSON.

And struck me in my very seat of judgment;<sup>s</sup>  
 Whereon, as an offender to your father,  
 I gave bold way to my authority,  
 And did commit you. If the deed were ill,  
 Be you contented, wearing now the garland,  
 To have a son set your decrees at nought;  
 To pluck down justice from your awful bench;  
 To trip the course of law,<sup>t</sup> and blunt the sword  
 That guards the peace and safety of your person:  
 Nay, more; to spurn at your most royal image,  
 And mock your workings in a second body.<sup>u</sup>  
 Question your royal thoughts, make the case yours;  
 Be now the father, and propose a son:<sup>x</sup>  
 Hear your own dignity so much profan'd,  
 See your most dreadful laws so loosely slighted,  
 Behold yourself so by a son disdained;  
 And then imagine me taking your part,  
 And, in your power, soft silencing your son:  
 After this cold considerance, sentence me;  
 And, as you are a king, speak in your state,<sup>y</sup>  
 What I have done, that misbecame my place,  
 My person, or my liege's sovereignty.

*King.* You are right, justice, and you weigh this well;  
 Therefore still bear the balance, and the sword:  
 And I do wish your honours may increase,  
 Till you do live to see a son of mine  
 Offend you, and obey you, as I did.

<sup>s</sup> — struck me in my very seat of judgment;] “Where on a time he (the prince) stroke the chiefe justice on the face with his fiste, for imprisoning one of his mates, he was not only committed to straigthe prison himselfe by the sayde chief justice, but also of his father put out of the privie counsell and banished the courte.” *Holinshead*. Sir William Gascoigne, the chief justice here mentioned, died (if the inscription on his tombstone, which is now illegible, was rightly transcribed) in December, 1412; consequently before the accession of Henry the Fifth; but Shakspeare might have been misled by Stowe, who, in a marginal note, 1 Henry V. asserts that “William Gascoigne was chief justice of the king’s bench from the sixth of Henry IV. to the third of Henry V.”—MALONE.

<sup>t</sup> To trip the course of law,] To defeat the process of justice; a metaphor taken from the act of tripping a runner.—JOHNSON.

<sup>u</sup> And mock your workings in a second body,] To treat with contempt your acts executed by a representative.—JOHNSON.

<sup>x</sup> — and propose a son:] i. e. Image to yourself a son, contrive for a moment to think you have one.—STEEVENS.

<sup>y</sup> — in your state,] In your regal character and office, not with the passion of a man interested, but with the impartiality of a legislator.—JOHNSON.



So shall I live to speak my father's words ;—  
*Happy am I, that have a man so bold,*  
*That dares do justice on my proper son :*  
*And not less happy, having such a son,*  
*That would deliver up his greatness so*  
*Into the hands of justice.*—You did commit me :  
 For which, I do commit into your hand  
 The unstained sword that you have us'd to bear ;  
 With this remembrance,<sup>z</sup>—That you use the same  
 With the like bold, just, and impartial spirit,  
 As you have done 'gainst me. There is my hand ;  
 You shall be as a father to my youth :  
 My voice shall sound as you do prompt mine ear ;  
 And I will stoop and humble my intents  
 To your well practis'd, wise directions.—  
 And, princes all, believe me, I beseech you ;—  
 My father is gone wild<sup>a</sup> into his grave,  
 For in his tomb lie my affections ;  
 And with his spirit sadly<sup>b</sup> I survive,  
 To mock the expectation of the world ;  
 To frustrate prophecies ; and to raze out  
 Rotten opinion, who hath writ me down  
 After my seeming. The tide of blood in me  
 Hath proudly flow'd in vanity, till now :  
 Now doth it turn, and ebb back to the sea ;  
 Where it shall mingle with the state of floods,<sup>c</sup>  
 And flow henceforth in formal majesty.  
 Now call we our high court of parliament :  
 And let us choose such limbs of noble counsel,  
 That the great body of our state may go  
 In equal rank with the best govern'd nation ;  
 That war, or peace, or both at once, may be  
 As things acquainted and familiar to us ;—  
 In which you, father, shall have foremost hand.

[To the Lord Chief Justice.

<sup>z</sup> — remembrance,] i. e. Admonition.

<sup>a</sup> *My father is gone wild*—] The meaning is—My *wild* dispositions having ceased on my father's death, and being now as it were buried in his tomb, he and wildness are interred in the same grave.—MALONE.

<sup>b</sup> — *sadly*,—] i. e. *Soberly, seriously, gravely*. *Sad* is opposed to *wild*.—JOHNSON.

<sup>c</sup> — *the state of floods*,] i. e. *Dignity of floods*, or of the ocean.

Our coronation done, we will accite,  
 As I before remember'd, all our state ;  
 And (God consigning to my good intents,)  
 No prince, nor peer, shall have just cause to say,—  
 Heaven shorten Harry's happy life one day. [Exeunt.]

## SCENE III.

Glostershire. *The Garden of Shallow's House.*

Enter FALSTAFF, SHALLOW, SILENCE, BARDOLPH, the  
 Page, and DAVY.

*Shal.* Nay, you shall see mine orchard : where, in an  
 arbour, we will eat a last year's pippin of my own grafting,  
 with a dish of carraways,<sup>d</sup> and so forth :—come, cousin  
 Silence ;—and then to bed.

*Fal.* 'Fore God, you have here a goodly dwelling, and  
 a rich.

*Shal.* Barren, barren, barren ; beggars all, beggars all,  
 sir John :—marry, good air.—Spread, Davy ; spread, Davy ;  
 Well said, Davy.

*Fal.* This Davy serves you for good uses ; he is your  
 serving-man, and your husbandman.

*Shal.* A good varlet, a good varlet, a very good varlet,  
 sir John.—By the mass, I have drunk too much sack at  
 supper :—A good varlet. Now sit down, now sit down :  
 —come, cousin.

*Sil.* Ah, sirrah ! quoth-a,—we shall

*Do nothing but eat, and make good cheer,* [Singing.]

*And praise heaven for the merry year ;*

*When flesh is cheap and females dear,<sup>e</sup>*

*And lusty lads roam here and there,*

*So merrily,*

*And ever among so merrily.*

<sup>d</sup> — carraways,] A small kind of comfits. In Cogan's *Haven of Health*, 4to. bl. l. 1595, we find that our ancestors were "wont to eat *carawaies* or biscuits, or some other kind of comfits or *seedes* together with *apples*, thereby to breake winde ingendred by them : and surely it is a very good way for students."—STEEVENS.

<sup>e</sup> — and females dear, &c.] This very natural character of Justice Silence is not sufficiently observed. He would scarcely speak a word before, and now there is no possibility of stopping his mouth. He has a catch for every occasion.—FARMER.

*Fal.* There's a merry heart!—Good master Silence, I'll give you a health for that anon.

*Shal.* Give master Bardolph some wine, Davy.

*Davy.* Sweet sir, sit; [*seating BARDOLPH and the Page at another table.*] I'll be with you anon:—most sweet sir, sit.—Master page, good master page, sit: proface!<sup>f</sup> What you want in meat, we'll have in drink. But you must bear; The heart's all. [*Exit.*]

*Shal.* Be merry, master Bardolph;—and my little soldier there, be merry.

*Sil.* *Be merry, be merry, my wife has all;*<sup>g</sup> [*Singing.*]

*For women are shrews, both short and tall:*

*'Tis merry in hall, when beards wag all,*

*And welcome merry shrove-tide.<sup>h</sup>*

*Be merry, be merry, &c.*

*Fal.* I did not think, master Silence had been a man of this mettle.

*Sil.* Who I? I have been merry twice and once, ere now.

*Re-enter DAVY.*

*Davy.* There is a dish of leather-coats<sup>i</sup> for you.

[*Setting them before BARDOLPH.*]

*Shal.* Davy,—

*Davy.* Your worship?—I'll be with you straight.

[*To BARD.*—A cup of wine, sir?

*Sil.* *A cup of wine, that's brisk and fine,* [*Singing.*]

*And drink unto the leman mine;*

*And a merry heart lives long-a.*

*Fal.* Well said, master Silence.

*Sil.* And we shall be merry;—now comes in the sweet of the night.

<sup>f</sup> — *proface!*] This word, which is equivalent to *much good may it do you*, was a familiar exclamation of welcome to a dinner or any other meal. We received it from the Norman romance language. In Roquefort's *Glossaire de la langue Romaine*, we find "*Prouface*, souhait qui veut dire, bien vous fasse; proficiat."—See NARES' *Glossary*.

<sup>g</sup> — *my wife has all;*] This is the old reading, which Dr. Farmer altered to *my wife's as all.*

<sup>h</sup> — *shrove-tide.*]—was formerly a season of extraordinary spirit and feasting. In the Romish church there was anciently a feast immediately preceding Lent, which lasted many days, called *carniscapium*.—T. WARTON.

<sup>i</sup> — *leather-coats*—] The apple commonly denominated *russetine*, in Devonshire is called the *buff-coat*.—HENLEY.

*Fal.* Health and long life to you, master Silence.

*Sil.* *Fill the cup, and let it come ;*

*I'll pledge you a mile to the bottom.*

*Shal.* Honest Bardolph, welcome : If thou wantest any thing, and wilt not call, beshrew thy heart.—Welcome, my little tiny thief ; [*to the Page ;*] and welcome, indeed, too.—I'll drink to master Bardolph, and to all the cavaleroes<sup>k</sup> about London.

*Davy.* I hope to see London once ere I die.

*Bard.* An I might see you there, Davy,—

*Shal.* By the mass, you'll crack a quart together. Ha ! will you not, master Bardolph ?

*Bard.* Yes, sir, in a pottle pot.

*Shal.* I thank thee :—The knave will stick by thee, I can assure thee that : he will not out ; he is true bred.

*Bard.* And I'll stick by him, sir.

*Shal.* Why, there spoke a king. Lack nothing : be merry. [*Knocking heard.*] Look who's at door there : Ho ! who knocks ? [*Exit DAVY.*

*Fal.* Why now you have done me right.

[*To SILENCE, who drinks a bumper.*

*Sil.* *Do me right,*<sup>1</sup> [*Singing.*

*And dub me knight :*<sup>m</sup>

*Samingo.*<sup>n</sup>

Is't not so ?

*Fal.* 'Tis so.

*Sil.* Is't so ? Why, then, say an old man can do somewhat.

<sup>k</sup> — *cavaleroes*—] This was the term by which an airy, splendid, irregular fellow was distinguished. The soldiers of King Charles were called cavaliers, from the gaiety which they affected in opposition to the sour faction of the parliament.—JOHNSON.

<sup>1</sup> *Do me right,*] *To do a man right, and to do him reason,* were formerly the usual expressions in pledging healths. He who drank a bumper, expected that a bumper should be drank to his toast.—STEEVENS.

<sup>m</sup> *And dub me knight :*] It was the custom of the good fellows of Shakspeare's days to drink a very large draught of wine, and sometimes a less palatable potation, on *their knees*, to the health of their mistress. He who performed this exploit was dubb'd a *knight* for the evening.—MALONE.

<sup>n</sup> *Samingo.*] It is supposed that this word is corrupted from *San Domingo* : this name is supposed by Tollet to have been made the burthen of a drinking song from the known gluttony and druukeuness of the *Dominicans*.

*Re-enter* DAVY.

*Davy.* An it please your worship, there's one Pistol come from the court with news.

*Fal.* From the court, let him come in.—

*Enter* PISTOL.

How now, Pistol?

*Pist.* God save you, sir John!

*Fal.* What wind blew you hither, Pistol?

*Pist.* Not the ill wind which blows no man to good.— Sweet knight, thou art now one of the greatest men in the realm.

*Sil.* By'r lady, I think 'a be; but goodman Puff of Barson.

*Pist.* Puff?

Puff in thy teeth, most recreant coward base!—

Sir John, I am thy Pistol, and thy friend,

And helter-skelter have I rode to thee;

And tidings do I bring, and lucky joys,

And golden times, and happy news of price.

*Fal.* I pr'ythee now, deliver them like a man of this world.

*Pist.* A foutra for the world, and worldlings base! I speak of Africa, and golden joys.

*Fal.* O base Assyrian knight, what is thy news? Let king Cophetua hear the truth thereof.

*Sil.* *And Robin Hood, Scarlet, and John.* [Sings.

*Pist.* Shall dunghill curs confront the Helicons? And shall good news be baffled?

Then, Pistol, lay thy head in Furies' lap.

*Shal.* Honest gentleman, I know not your breeding.

*Pist.* Why then, lament therefore.

*Shal.* Give me pardon, sir;—If, sir, you come with news from the court, I take it, there is but two ways; either to utter them, or to conceal them. I am, sir, under the king, in some authority.

*Pist.* Under which king, Bezonian?° speak, or die.

° — Bezonian?] A term of reproach, frequent in the writers contemporary with our poet. *Bisognoso*, a needy person; thence metaphorically, a base scoundrel.—THEOBALD.

*Shal.* Under king Harry.

*Pist.* Harry the fourth? or fifth?

*Shal.* Harry the fourth.

*Pist.* A foutra for thine office!—

Sir John, thy tender lambkin now is king;  
Harry the fifth's the man. I speak the truth:  
When Pistol lies, do this; and fig me, like  
The bragging Spaniard.<sup>p</sup>

*Fal.* What! is the old king dead?

*Pist.* As nail in door:<sup>q</sup> the things I speak, are just.

*Fal.* Away, Bardolph; saddle my horse.—Master Robert Shallow, choose what office thou wilt in the land, 'tis thine.—Pistol, I will double-charge thee with dignities.

*Bard.* O joyful day!—I would not take a knighthood for my fortune.

*Pist.* What? I do bring good news?

*Fal.* Carry master Silence to bed.—Master Shallow, my lord Shallow, be what thou wilt, I am fortune's steward. Get on thy boots: we'll ride all night:—O, sweet Pistol:—Away, Bardolph. [*Exit* BARD.]—Come, Pistol, utter more to me; and, withal, devise something to do thyself good.—Boot, boot, master Shallow: I know, the young king is sick for me. Let us take any man's horses; the laws of England are at my commandment. Happy are they which have been my friends; and woe to my lord chief justice!

*Pist.* Let vultures vile seize on his lungs also!

*Where is the life that late I led,*<sup>r</sup> say they:

Why, here it is; Welcome these pleasant days. [*Exeunt.*]

<sup>p</sup> ——— fig me, like

*The bragging Spaniard.*] To *fig*, in Spanish, *higas dar*, is to insult by putting the thumb between the fore and middle finger. From this Spanish custom we yet say in contempt, "a fig for you."—JOHNSON.

<sup>q</sup> *Fal.* *What! is the old king dead?*

*Pist.* *As nail in door:*] This proverbial expression is oftener used than understood. The *door nail* is the *nail* on which in ancient *doors* the knocker strikes. It is therefore used as a comparison to any one irrecoverably dead, one who has fallen (as Virgil says) *multa morte*, i. e. with abundant death, such as reiteration of strokes on the head would naturally produce.—STEVENS.

<sup>r</sup> *Where is the life that late I led,*] Words of an old ballad.—WARBURTON.

## SCENE IV.

London. *A Street.*

*Enter Beadles,<sup>s</sup> dragging in Hostess QUICKLY, and DOLL TEAR-SHEET.*

*Host.* No, thou arrant knave; I would I might die, that I might have thee hanged; thou hast drawn my shoulder out of joint.

*I Bead.* The constables have delivered her over to me: and she shall have whipping-cheer enough, I warrant her; there hath been a man or two lately killed about her.

*Dol.* Nut-hook, nut-hook,<sup>t</sup> you lie. Come on; I'll tell thee what, thou damned tripe-visaged rascal; an the child I now go with, do miscarry, thou hadst better thou hadst struck thy mother, thou paper-faced villain.

*Host.* O the Lord, that sir John were come! he would make this a bloody day to somebody. But I pray God the fruit of her womb miscarry!

*I Bead.* If it do, you shall have a dozen of cushions again; you have but eleven now. Come, I charge you both to go with me; for the man is dead, that you and Pistol beat among you.

*Dol.* I'll tell thee what, thou thin man in a censer!<sup>u</sup> I will have you as soundly swunged for this, you blue-bottle rogue!<sup>x</sup> you filthy famished correctioner: if you be not swunged, I'll forswear half-kirtles.<sup>y</sup>

*I Bead.* Come, come, you she knight-errant, come.

*Host.* O that right should thus overcome might! Well; of sufferance comes ease.

<sup>s</sup> *Enter Beadles, &c.]* In the quarto of 1600, the stage direction stands thus: "Enter Sincklo, and three or four Officers;" and the name of *Sincklo* is prefixed to the speeches which in the later editions are given to the *Beadle*. *Sincklo* was one of the players in Shakspeare's company.—TYRWHITT.

<sup>t</sup> *Nut-hook, &c.]* *Nut-hook* seems to have been in those times a term of reproach for a catch-poll.—JOHNSON.

<sup>u</sup> — *thou thin man in a censer!*] An embossed figure in the middle of the pierced convex lid of the *censer*. These utensils, in which coarse perfumes were burnt, were rendered indispensable by the consummate sluttery of ancient houses.—STEEVENS.

<sup>x</sup> — *blue-bottle rogue!*] A name, I suppose, given to the beadle, from the colour of his livery; and in allusion to the flesh-fly, commonly called a *blue-bottle*.—JOHNSON and FARMER.

<sup>y</sup> — *half-kirtles.]* i. e. *Short cloaks*.

*Dol.* Come, you rogue, come; bring me to a justice.

*Host.* Ay; come, you starved blood-hound.

*Dol.* Goodman death! goodman bones!

*Host.* Thou atomy thou!

*Dol.* Come, you thin thing: come, you rascal!<sup>2</sup>

1 *Bead.* Very well. [*Exeunt.*]

### SCENE V.

*A publick Place near Westminster Abbey.*

*Enter two Grooms, strewing Rushes.*

1 *Groom.* More rushes, more rushes.<sup>a</sup>

2 *Groom.* The trumpets have sounded twice.

1 *Groom.* It will be two o'clock ere they come from the coronation: Despatch, despatch. [*Exeunt* GROOMS.]

*Enter FALSTAFF, SHALLOW, PISTOL, BARDOLPH,  
and the Page.*

*Fal.* Stand here by me, master Robert Shallow; I will make the king do you grace: I will leer upon him, as 'a comes by; and do but mark the countenance that he will give me.

*Pist.* God bless thy lungs, good knight.

*Fal.* Come here, Pistol; stand behind me.—O, if I had had time to have made new liveries, I would have bestowed the thousand pound I borrowed of you. [*To SHALLOW.*] But 'tis no matter; this poor show doth better: this doth infer the zeal I had to see him.

*Shal.* It doth so.

*Fal.* It shows my earnestness of affection.

*Shal.* It doth so.

*Fal.* My devotion.

*Shal.* It doth, it doth, it doth.

*Fal.* As it were, to ride day and night; and not to

<sup>2</sup> — rascal! ] i. e. *Lean deer.*

<sup>a</sup> *More rushes, &c.*] It has been already observed, that at ceremonial entertainments, it was the custom to strew the floor with rushes.—*JOHNSON.* Chambers, and indeed all apartments usually inhabited, were formerly strewed in this manner. As our ancestors rarely washed their floors, disguises of uncleanness became necessary things. In the present instance, however, the rushes are supposed to be scattered on the pavement of the street, or on a platform.—*STEEVENS.*



deliberate, not to remember, not to have patience to shift me.

*Shal.* It is most certain.

*Fal.* But to stand stained with travel, and sweating with desire to see him: thinking of nothing else; putting all affairs else in oblivion; as if there were nothing else to be done, but to see him.

*Pist.* 'Tis *semper idem*, for *absque hoc nihil est*: 'Tis all in every part.<sup>b</sup>

*Shal.* 'Tis so indeed.

*Pist.* My knight, I will inflame thy noble liver,  
And make thee rage.

Thy Doll, and Helen of thy noble thoughts,  
Is in base durance, and contagious prison;  
Haul'd thither

By most mechanical and dirty hand:—

Rouze up revenge from ebon den with fell Alecto's snake,  
For Doll is in; Pistol speaks nought but truth.

*Fal.* I will deliver her.

[*Shouts within, and the trumpets sound.*]

*Pist.* There roar'd the sea, and trumpét-clangor sounds.

*Enter the King and his Train, the Chief Justice among them.*

*Fal.* God save thy grace, king Hal! my royal Hal!

*Pist.* The heavens thee guard and keep, most royal imp  
of fame!<sup>c</sup>

*Fal.* God save thee, my sweet boy!

*King.* My lord chief justice, speak to that vain man.

*Ch. Just.* Have you your wits? know you what 'tis  
you speak?

*Fal.* My king! my Jove! I speak to thee, my heart!

*King.* I know thee not, old man: Fall to thy prayers;  
How ill white hairs become a fool, and jester!  
I have long dream'd of such a kind of man,

<sup>b</sup> — 'Tis all in every part.] We should read,

“'Tis all in all, and all in every part.”—WARBURTON.

The allusion here, if any allusion there be, is to the description of the soul:

“And as the soul possesseth head and heart,

*She's all in all, and all in every part.*” Drayton's *Mortimeriados*,  
4to. 1596.—MALONE.

— *imp*—] This word is perpetually used by ancient writers, for *progeny*.—STEEVENS.

So surfeit-swell'd, so old, and so profane ;<sup>d</sup>  
 But, being awake, I do despise my dream.  
 Make less thy body, hence,<sup>e</sup> and more thy grace ;  
 Leave gormandizing ; know, the grave doth gape  
 For thee thrice wider than for other men :—  
 Reply not to me with a fool-born jest ;  
 Presume not, that I am the thing I was :  
 For heaven doth know, so shall the world perceive,  
 That I have turn'd away my former self ;  
 So will I those that kept me company.  
 When thou dost hear I am as I have been,  
 Approach me ; and thou shalt be as thou wast,  
 The tutor and the feeder of my riots :  
 Till then, I banish thee, on pain of death,—  
 As I have done the rest of my misleaders,—  
 Not to come near our person by ten mile.<sup>f</sup>  
 For competence of life, I will allow you,  
 That lack of means enforce you not to evil :  
 And, as we hear you do reform yourselves,

<sup>d</sup> — *profane!*] In our author it often signifies *love of talk*, without the particular idea now given it.—JOHNSON.

<sup>e</sup> — *hence,*] i. e. Henceforward, from this time, in the future.

<sup>f</sup> *Not to come near our person by ten mile.*] Mr. Rowe observes, that many readers lament to see Falstaff so hardly used by his old friend. But if it be considered, that the fat knight has never uttered one sentiment of generosity, and with all his power of exciting mirth, has nothing in him that can be esteemed, no great pain will be suffered from the reflection that he is compelled to live honestly, and maintained by the king, with a promise of advancement when he shall deserve it.

I think the poet more blameable for Poin, who is always represented as joining some virtues with his vices, and is therefore treated by the prince with apparent distinction, yet he does nothing in the time of action: and though after the bustle is over, he is again a favourite, at last vanishes without notice. Shakspeare certainly lost him by heedlessness, in the multiplicity of his characters, the variety of his action, and his eagerness to end the play.—JOHNSON.

This circumstance was originally mentioned by Hall, and is thus recorded by Holinshed, who was certainly Shakspeare's historian: "Immediately after that he was invested kyng, and had receyved the crowne, he determined with himselfe to putte upon him the shape of a new man, turning insolence and wildness into gravitie and sobernesse: and whereas he had passed his youth in wanton pastime and riotous disorder, with a sorte of misgoverned mates, and unthriftie playfeers, he now banished them from his presence, (not unrewarded nor yet unpreferred,) *inhibiting them upon a great payne, not once to approche, lodge, or sojourne within ten miles of his courte or mansion:* and in their places he elected and chose men of gravitie, witte, and hygh policie, by whose wise counsell he might at all times rule to his honour:—whereas if he should have retained the other lustie companions aboute him, he doubted least they might have allured him into such lewde and lighte partes, as with them before tyme he had youthfully used."—MALONE.

We will,—according to your strength, and qualities,—  
Give you advancement.—Be it your charge, my lord,  
To see perform'd the tenor of our word.—

Set on. [Exeunt King, and his Train.

Fal. Master Shallow, I owe you a thousand pound.

Shal. Ay, marry, sir John ; which I beseech you to let  
me have home with me.

Fal. That can hardly be, master Shallow. Do not you  
grieve at this ; I shall be sent for in private to him : look  
you, he must seem thus to the world. Fear not your ad-  
vancement ; I will be the man yet, that shall make you  
great.

Shal. I cannot perceive how ; unless you give me your  
doublet, and stuff me out with straw. I beseech you,  
good sir John, let me have five hundred of my thousand.

Fal. Sir, I will be as good as my word : this that you  
heard, was but a colour.

Shal. A colour, I fear, that you will die in, sir John.

Fal. Fear no colours ; go with me to dinner. Come,  
lieutenant Pistol ;—come Bardolph :—I shall be sent for  
soon at night.

*Re-enter Prince JOHN, the Chief Justice, Officers, &c.*

Ch. Just. Go, carry sir John Falstaff to the Fleet ;<sup>g</sup>  
Take all his company along with him.

Fal. My lord, my lord,—

Ch. Just. I cannot now speak : I will hear you soon,  
Take them away.

Pist. *Si fortuna me tormento, spero me contenta.*

[Exeunt FAL. SHAL. PIST. BARD. Page,  
, and Officers.

P. John. I like this fair proceeding of the king's :  
He hath intent, his wonted followers  
Shall all be very well provided for ;  
But all are banish'd, till their conversations  
Appear more wise and modest to the world.

<sup>g</sup> — to the Fleet ;] I do not see why Falstaff is carried to the Fleet. We have never lost sight of him since his dismissal from the king ; he has committed no new fault, and therefore incurred no punishment ; but the different agitations of fear, anger, and surprize in him and his company, made a good scene to the eye ; and our author, who wanted them no longer on the stage, was glad to find this method of sweeping them away.—JOHNSON.

*Ch. Just.* And so they are.

*P. John.* The king hath call'd his parliament, my lord.

*Ch. Just.* He hath.

*P. John.* I will lay odds,—that ere this year expire,

We bear our civil swords, and native fire,

As far as France: I heard a bird so sing,

Whose musick, to my thinking, pleased the king.

Come, will you hence?

[*Exeunt.*<sup>h</sup>

<sup>h</sup> I fancy every reader, when he ends this play, cries out with Desdemona, "O most lame and impotent conclusion!" As this play was not, to our knowledge, divided into acts by the author, I could be content to conclude it with the death of Henry the Fourth:

"In that Jerusalem shall Harry die."

These scenes, which now make the fifth act of *Henry the Fourth*, might then be the first of *Henry the Fifth*; but the truth is, that they do not unite very commodiously to either play. When these plays were represented, I believe they ended as they are now ended in the books; but Shakspeare seems to have designed that the whole series of action, from the beginning of *Richard the Second*, to the end of *Henry the Fifth*, should be considered by the reader as one work, upon one plan, only broken into parts by the necessity of exhibition.

None of Shakspeare's plays are more read than the *First and Second Parts of Henry the Fourth*. Perhaps no author has ever, in two plays, afforded so much delight. The great events are interesting, for the fate of kingdoms depends upon them; the slighter occurrences are diverting, and, except one or two, sufficiently probable: the incidents are multiplied with wonderful fertility of invention, and the characters diversified with the utmost nicety of discernment, and the profoundest skill in the nature of man.

The prince, who is the hero both of the comick and tragick part, is a young man of great abilities and violent passions, whose sentiments are right, though his actions are wrong; whose virtues are obscured by negligence, and whose understanding is dissipated by levity. In his idle hours he is rather loose than wicked; and when the occasion forces out his latent qualities, he is great without effort, and brave without tumult. The trifer is roused into a hero, and the hero again reposes in the trifer. The character is great, original, and just.

Percy is a rugged soldier, choleric and quarrelsome, and has only the soldier's virtues, generosity and courage.

But Falstaff, unimitated, unimitable Falstaff, how shall I describe thee? thou compound of sense and vice; of sense which may be admired, but not esteemed; of vice which may be despised, but hardly detested. Falstaff is a character loaded with faults, and with those faults which naturally produce contempt. He is a thief and a glutton, a coward and a boaster, always ready to cheat the weak, and prey upon the poor; to terrify the timorous, and insult the defenceless. At once obsequious and malignant, he satirizes in their absence those whom he lives by flattering. He is familiar with the prince only as an agent of vice, but of this familiarity he is so proud, as not only to be supercilious and haughty with common men, but to think his interest of importance to the duke of Lancaster. Yet the man thus corrupt, thus despicable, makes himself necessary to the prince that despises him, by the most pleasing of all qualities, perpetual gaiety, by an unfailing power of exciting laughter, which is the more freely indulged, as his wit is not of the splendid or ambitious kind, but consists in easy scapes and sallies of levity, which make sport, but raise no envy. It must be observed, that he is stained with no enormous or sanguinary crimes, so that his licentiousness is not so offensive but that it may be borne for his mirth.

The moral to be drawn from this representation is, that no man is more dangerous than he that, with a will to corrupt, hath the power to please; and that neither wit nor honesty ought to think themselves safe with such a companion, when they see Henry seduced by Falstaff.—JOHNSON.

## EPILOGUE.<sup>1</sup>

SPOKEN BY A DANCER.

*First, my fear; then, my court'sy: last, my speech. My fear is, your displeasure; my court'sy, my duty; and my speech, to beg your pardons. If you look for a good speech now, you undo me: for what I have to say, is of mine own making; and what, indeed, I should say, will, I doubt, prove mine own marring. But to the purpose, and so to the venture.—Be it known to you, (as it is very well,) I was lately here in the end of a displeasing play, to pray your patience for it, and to promise you a better. I did mean, indeed, to pay you with this; which, if, like an ill venture, it come unluckily home, I break, and you, my gentle creditors, lose. Here, I promised you, I would be, and here I commit my body to your mercies: bate me some, and I will pay you some, and, as most debtors do, promise you infinitely.*

*If my tongue cannot entreat you to acquit me, will you command me to use my legs? and yet that were but light payment,—to dance out of your debt. But a good conscience will make any possible satisfaction, and so will I. All the gentlewomen here have forgiven me,<sup>k</sup> if the gentlemen will not, then the gentlemen do not agree with the gentlewomen, which was never seen before in such an assembly.*

*One word more, I beseech you. If you be not too much cloyed with fat meat, our humble author will continue the story with Sir John in it, and make you merry with fair Katharine of France: where for any thing I know, Falstaff shall die of a sweat, unless already he be killed with your hard opinions: for Oldcastle died a martyr, and this is not the man.<sup>l</sup>*

<sup>i</sup> This epilogue was merely occasional, and alludes to some theatrical transaction.—JOHNSON.

<sup>k</sup> *All the gentlewomen, &c.*] The trick of influencing one part of the audience by the favour of the other, has been played already in the epilogue to *As you like it*.—JOHNSON.

<sup>l</sup> ———, *for Oldcastle died a martyr, and this is not the man.*] The ridiculous representations of Sir John Oldcastle, lord Cobham, on the stage were undoubtedly produced by papists, and probably often exhibited in inferior theatres to crowded audiences, between the years 1580 and 1590. Shakspeare had given this name originally to Falstaff, but as the cause of the reformation became more generally popular, he found it necessary to change the appellation of his character. Mr. Malone has written several pages to disprove this traditional anecdote; but his arguments are not likely to produce much conviction.

*My tongue is weary; when my legs are too, I will bid you good night: and so kneel down before you;—but, indeed, to pray for the queen.<sup>m</sup>*

<sup>m</sup> ——— to pray for the queen.] It was the custom of the old players at the end of the performance, to pray for their patrons.

Almost all the ancient interludes I have met with conclude with some solemn prayer for the king or queen, house of commons, &c. Hence, perhaps, the *Vivant Rex et Regina*, at the bottom of our modern play-bills.—STEVENS.

The first part of the document discusses the importance of maintaining accurate records of all transactions. It emphasizes that every entry should be supported by a valid receipt or invoice. This ensures transparency and allows for easy verification of the data.

In the second section, the author outlines the various methods used to collect and analyze the data. This includes both primary and secondary data collection techniques. The analysis focuses on identifying trends and patterns over time, which is crucial for making informed decisions.

The final part of the report provides a detailed breakdown of the findings. It highlights the key areas where improvements can be made and offers practical recommendations for future actions. The goal is to ensure that the organization remains competitive and efficient in its operations.



M. Weyh.

C. Hoath.

# WIND HENRY VTE

... ..  
... ..  
... ..



## KING HENRY V.

---

THIS play was entered on the Stationers' books, August 14, 1600, and printed in the same year. It was written after the Second Part of King Henry IV. being promised in the epilogue to that play; and while the earl of Essex was in Ireland, as we learn from the chorus to the fifth act. Lord Essex went to Ireland April 15, 1599, and returned to London on the 23th of September in the same year. So that this play must have been produced between April and September, 1599.

The transactions comprised in this Historical Play commence about the latter end of the first, and terminate in the eighth, year of this king's reign: when he married Katharine princess of France, and closed up the differences betwixt England and that crown.—MALONE and THEOBALD.

PERSONS REPRESENTED.

---

*King HENRY the Fifth.*

*Duke of GLOSTER, } brothers to the king.*  
*Duke of BEDFORD, }*

*Duke of EXETER, uncle to the king.*

*Duke of YORK, cousin to the king.*

*Earls of SALISBURY, WESTMORELAND, and WARWICK.*

*Archbishop of CANTERBURY.*

*Bishop of ELY.*

*Earl of CAMBRIDGE, } conspirators against the king.*  
*Lord SCROOP, }*  
*Sir THOMAS GREY, }*

*Sir THOMAS ERPINGHAM, GOWER, FLUELLEN, MAC-*  
*MORRIS, JAMY, officers in King Henry's army.*

*BATES, COURT, WILLIAMS, soldiers in the same.*

*NYM, BARDOLPH, PISTOL, formerly servants to Falstaff,*  
*now soldiers in the same.*

*Boy, servant to them. A Herald. Chorus.*

*CHARLES the Sixth, king of France.*

*LEWIS, the Dauphin.*

*Dukes of BURGUNDY, ORLEANS, and BOURBON.*

*The Constable of France.*

*RAMBURES, and GRANDPREE, French lords.*

*Governor of Harfleur. MONTJOY, a French herald.*

*Ambassadors to the king of England.*

*ISABEL, queen of France.*

*KATHARINE, daughter of Charles and Isabel.*

*ALICE, a lady attending on the Princess Katharine.*

*QUICKLY, Pistol's Wife, an Hostess.*

*Lords, Ladies, Officers, French and English Soldiers, Mes-*  
*sengers, and Attendants.*

*The SCENE, at the beginning of the Play, lies in England,*  
*but afterwards wholly in France.*

## C H O R U S.

*Enter* CHORUS.

O, for a muse of fire, that would ascend  
 The brightest heaven of invention !  
 A kingdom for a stage, princes to act,  
 And monarchs to behold the swelling scene !  
 Then should the warlike Harry, like himself,  
 Assume the port of Mars ; and, at his heels,  
 Leash'd in like hounds, should famine, sword, and fire,  
 Crouch for employment. But pardon, gentles all,  
 The flat unraised spirit, that hath dar'd,  
 On this unworthy scaffold, to bring forth  
 So great an object : Can this cockpit hold  
 The vasty fields of France ? or may we cram  
 Within this wooden O,<sup>a</sup> the very casques,<sup>b</sup>  
 That did affright the air at Agincourt ?  
 O, pardon ! since a crooked figure may  
 Attest, in little place, a million ;  
 And let us, ciphers to this great accompt,  
 On your imaginary forces<sup>c</sup> work :  
 Suppose, within the girdle of these walls  
 Are now confin'd two mighty monarchies,  
 Whose high upreared and abutting fronts  
 The perilous, narrow ocean parts asunder.  
 Piece out our imperfections with your thoughts ;  
 Into a thousand parts divide one man,  
 And make imaginary puissance :<sup>d</sup>

<sup>a</sup> — *this wooden O,*] Alluding to the sign of Shakspeare's theatre, which was that of *the Globe*. It was also probably circular within. The outside appears from Mr. Henley's drawing to have been octagonal.

<sup>b</sup> — *the very casques,*] This does not mean the identical casques, or *helmets*, but the casques *only*, the casques *alone*.—M. MASON.

<sup>c</sup> — *imaginary forces,*—] *Imaginary* for *imaginative*, or your powers of fancy. Active and passive words are by this author frequently confounded.—JOHNSON.

<sup>d</sup> This chorus shows that Shakspeare was fully sensible of the absurdity of showing battles on the theatre, which, indeed, is never done, but tragedy becomes farce. Nothing can be represented to the eye, but by something like it, and

Think, when we talk of horses, that you see them  
Printing their proud hoofs i' the receiving earth :  
For 'tis your thoughts that now must deck our kings,  
Carry them here and there ; jumping o'er times ;  
Turning the accomplishment of many years  
Into an hour-glass ; For the which supply,  
Admit me chorus to this history ;  
Who, prologue-like, your humble patience pray,  
Gently to hear, kindly to judge, our play.

*within a wooden O, nothing very like a battle can be exhibited.—JOHNSON.* Shakspear et quelques poètes Espagnols ont tiré de si grandes beautés de la représentation active de la guerre, que, malgré toutes les imperfections qui l'accompagnent, je ne saurais désirer qu'ils s'en fussent abstenus. Un habile directeur de spectacle saurait aujourd'hui prendre un juste milieu entre l'excès et le défaut d'appareil militaire. Il mettrait tout son art à faire supposer que les guerriers dont il montre les combats, ne sont que les groupes détachés d'un immense tableau qui ne peut être saisi dans son ensemble, et l'action principale serait censée se passer derrière le théâtre. Une musique guerrière plus ou moins éloignée, et le cliquetis des armes fourniraient les moyens de produire ce genre d'illusion.—SCHLEGEL. *Litt. Dram. tom. 3. p. 121.*

# KING HENRY V.

## ACT I.

SCENE I.<sup>a</sup>—London. *An Ante-chamber in the King's Palace.*

*Enter the Archbishop of Canterbury,<sup>b</sup> and Bishop of Ely.<sup>c</sup>*

*Cant.* MY lord, I'll tell you,—that self bill is urg'd,  
Which in the eleventh year o' the last king's reign  
Was like, and had indeed against us pass'd,  
But that the scrambling<sup>d</sup> and unquiet time  
Did push it out of further question.

*Ely.* But how, my lord, shall we resist it now?

*Cant.* It must be thought on. If it pass against us,  
We lose the better half of our possession :  
For all the temporal lands, which men devout  
By testament have given to the church,  
Would they strip from us ; being valued thus,—  
As much as would maintain, to the king's honour,  
Full fifteen earls, and fifteen hundred knights ;  
Six thousand and two hundred good esquires ;  
And, to relief of lazars, and weak age,  
Of indigent faint souls, past corporal toil,  
A hundred alms-houses, right well supplied ;

<sup>a</sup> *Scene I.*] This scene was added after the first edition of 1608, which is much short of the present editions, wherein the speeches are generally enlarged and raised : several whole scenes besides, and all the choruses also, were since added by Shakspeare.—POPE. It appears from Hall's and Holinshed's Chronicles, that the business of this scene was transacted at Leicester, where King Henry V. held a parliament in the second year of his reign. But the chorus at the beginning of the second act shows that the author intended to make London the place of his first scene.—MALONE.

<sup>b</sup> — of Canterbury,] Henry Chichely, a Carthusian monk, recently promoted to the see of Canterbury.—MALONE.

<sup>c</sup> — *Ely.*] John Fordham, consecrated 1388 ; died 1426.—REED.

<sup>d</sup> — *scrambling*—] i. e. *Scrambling*.

And to the coffers of the king beside,  
A thousand pounds by the year : Thus runs the bill.

*Ely.* This would drink deep.

*Cant.* 'Twould drink the cup and all.

*Ely.* But what prevention ?

*Cant.* The king is full of grace, and fair regard.

*Ely.* And a true lover of the holy church.

*Cant.* The courses of his youth promis'd it not.

The breath no sooner left his father's body,  
But that his wildness, mortified in him,  
Seem'd to die too : yea, at that very moment,  
Consideration like an angel came,  
And whipp'd the offending Adam out of him ;  
Leaving his body as a paradise,  
To envelop and contain celestial spirits.  
Never was such a sudden scholar made :  
Never came reformation in a flood,<sup>e</sup>  
With such a heady current, scouring faults ;  
Nor never hydra-headed wilfulness  
So soon did lose his seat, and all at once,  
As in this king.

*Ely.* We are blessed in the change.

*Cant.* Hear him but reason in divinity,  
And, all-admiring, with an inward wish  
You would desire, the king were made a prelate :  
Hear him debate of commonwealth affairs,  
You would say,—it hath been all-in-all his study :  
List his discourse of war, and you shall hear  
A fearful battle render'd you in musick :  
Turn him to any cause of policy,  
The Gordian knot of it he will unloose,  
Familiar as his garter ; that, when he speaks  
The air, a charter'd libertine, is still,<sup>f</sup>  
And the mute wonder lurketh in men's ears,  
To steal his sweet and honeyed sentences ;  
So that the art and practick part of life<sup>g</sup>

<sup>e</sup> *Never came reformation in a flood,*] Alluding to the method by which Hercules cleansed the famous stables, when he turned a river through them. Hercules still is in our author's head, when he mentions the hydra.—JOHNSON.

<sup>f</sup> *The air, &c.*] This line is exquisitely beautiful.—JOHNSON.

<sup>g</sup> *So that the art and practick part of life—*] He discourses with so much skill

Must be the mistress to his theorick :  
 Which is a wonder, how his grace should glean it,  
 Since his addiction was to courses vain :  
 His companies unletter'd, rude, and shallow ;  
 His hours fill'd up with riots, banquets, sports ;  
 And never noted in him any study,  
 Any retirement, any sequestration  
 From open haunts and popularity.<sup>h</sup>

*Ely.* The strawberry grows underneath the nettle :  
 And wholesome berries thrive and ripen best,  
 Neighbour'd by fruit of baser quality :  
 And so the prince obscur'd his contemplation  
 Under the veil of wildness ; which, no doubt,  
 Grew like the summer grass, fastest by night,  
 Unseen, yet crescive in his faculty.<sup>i</sup>

*Cant.* It must be so ; for miracles are ceas'd ;  
 And therefore we must needs admit the means,  
 How things are perfected.

*Ely.* But, my good lord,  
 How now for mitigation of this bill  
 Urg'd by the commons ? Doth his majesty  
 Incline to it, or no ?

*Cant.* He seems indifferent ;  
 Or, rather, swaying more upon our part,  
 Than cherishing the exhibitors against us :  
 For I have made an offer to his majesty,—  
 Upon our spiritual convocation ;  
 And in regard of causes now in hand,  
 Which I have open'd to his grace at large,  
 As touching France,—to give a greater sum  
 Than ever at one time the clergy yet  
 Did to his predecessors part withal.

*Ely.* How did this offer seem receiv'd, my lord ?

on all subjects, that *the art and practice of life must be the mistress or teacher of his theorick* ; that is, that *his theory must have been taught by art and practice* ; which, says he, is strange, since he could see little of the true art or practice among his loose companions, nor ever retired to digest his practice into theory. *Art* is used by the author for *practice*, as distinguished from *science*, or *theory*.—JOHNSON.

<sup>h</sup> — popularity.] i. e. *Plebeian intercourse* ; an unusual sense of the word.  
 —STEEVENS. May it not rather mean, *constant society* ?

<sup>i</sup> — *crescive in his faculty.*] Increasing in its proper power.—JOHNSON.

*Cant.* With good acceptance to his majesty ;  
Save, that there was not time enough to hear  
(As I perceiv'd, his grace would fain have done,)  
The severals, and unhidden passages,<sup>k</sup>  
Of his true titles to some certain dukedoms :  
And, generally, to the crown and seat of France,  
Deriv'd from Edward, his great grandfather.

*Ely.* What was the impediment that broke this off ?

*Cant.* The French ambassador, upon that instant,  
Crav'd audience : and the hour, I think, is come,  
To give him hearing : Is it four o'clock ?

*Ely.* It is.

*Cant.* Then go we in, to know his embassy ;  
Which I could, with a ready guess, declare,  
Before the Frenchman speak a word of it.

*Ely.* I'll wait upon you ; and I long to hear it.

[*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE II.

*The same. A Room of State in the same.*

*Enter King HENRY, GLOSTER, BEDFORD, EXETER,  
WARWICK, WESTMORELAND, and Attendants.*

*K. Hen.* Where is my gracious lord of Canterbury ?

*Ere.* Not here in presence.

*K. Hen.* Send for him, good uncle.<sup>l</sup>

*West.* Shall we call in the ambassador, my liege ?

*K. Hen.* Not yet, my cousin ; we would be resolv'd,  
Before we hear him, of some things of weight,  
That task<sup>m</sup> our thoughts, concerning us and France.

<sup>k</sup> *The severals, and unhidden passages,*] This line I suspect of corruption, though it may be fairly enough explained : the *passages* of his *titles* are the *lines of succession* by which his claims descend. *Unhidden* is *open, clear*.—JOHNSON. We should read *several*, instead of *severals*.—M. MASON.

<sup>l</sup> ——— *good uncle.*] Thomas Beaufort, earl of Dorset, half brother to Henry IV. being one of the sons of John of Gaunt, by Katharine Swynford. Shakspeare is premature in giving him the title of duke of Exeter ; he did not receive that rank till the year after the battle of Agincourt, Nov. 14, 1416.—MALONE.

<sup>m</sup> ——— *task*.—] Keep busied with scruples and laborious disquisitions.—JOHNSON.



*Enter the Archbishop of Canterbury, and Bishop of Ely.*

*Cant.* God, and his angels, guard your sacred throne,  
And make you long become it!

*K. Hen.* Sure, we thank you  
My learned lord, we pray you to proceed;  
And justly and religiously unfold,  
Why the law Salique, that they have in France,  
Or should, or should not, bar us in our claim.  
And God forbid, my dear and faithful lord,  
That you should fashion, wrest, or bow your reading,  
Or nicely charge your understanding soul<sup>n</sup>  
With opening titles miscreate,<sup>o</sup> whose right  
Suits not in native colours with the truth;  
For God doth know, how many, now in health,  
Shall drop their blood in approbation<sup>p</sup>  
Of what your reverence shall incite us to:  
Therefore take heed how you impawn<sup>q</sup> our person,  
How you awake the sleeping sword of war;  
We charge you in the name of God, take heed:  
For never two such kingdoms did contend,  
Without much fall of blood; whose guiltless drops  
Are every one a woe, a sore complaint,  
'Gainst him, whose wrongs give edge unto the swords  
That make such waste in brief mortality.  
Under this conjuration, speak, my lord:  
And we will hear, note, and believe in heart,  
That what you speak is in your conscience wash'd  
As pure as sin with baptism.

*Cant.* Then hear me, gracious sovereign,—and you peers,  
That owe your lives, your faith, and services,  
To this imperial throne;—There is no bar<sup>r</sup>

<sup>n</sup> Or nicely charge your understanding soul—] Take heed, lest by nice and subtle sophistry you burthen your knowing soul, or knowingly burthen your soul, with the guilt of advancing a false title, or of maintaining, by specious fallacies, a claim which, if shown in its native and true colours, would appear to be false.—JOHNSON.

<sup>o</sup> — miscreate,] i. e. *Illegitimate, spurious.*

<sup>p</sup> — in approbation of—] i. e. *In proof of.*

<sup>q</sup> — impawn—] i. e. *Engage.* These words, to engage and to pawn, were formerly synonymous. But impawn here seems to have the same meaning as the French phrase *se commettre*.—MALONE.

<sup>r</sup> — There is no bar, &c.] This whole speech is copied (in a manner verbatim) from Holinshed's *Chronicle*.—MALONE.

To make against your highness' claim to France,  
 But this, which they produce from Pharamond,—  
*In terram Salicam mulieres nē succedant,*  
*No woman shall succeed in Salique land:*  
 Which Salique land the French unjustly gloze,<sup>s</sup>  
 To be the realm of France, and Pharamond  
 The founder of this law and female bar.  
 Yet their own authors faithfully affirm,  
 That the land Salique lies in Germany,  
 Between the floods of Sala and of Elbe:  
 Where Charles the great, having subdued the Saxons,  
 There left behind and settled certain French;  
 Who, holding in disdain the German women,  
 For some dishonest manners of their life,  
 Establish'd there this law,—to wit, no female  
 Should be inheritrix in Salique land;  
 Which Salique, as I said, 'twixt Elbe and Sala,  
 Is at this day in Germany call'd—Meisen.  
 Thus doth it well appear, the Salique law  
 Was not devised for the realm of France;  
 Nor did the French possess the Salique land  
 Until four hundred one and twenty years  
 After defunction of king Pharamond,  
 Idly suppos'd the founder of this law;  
 Who died within the year of our redemption  
 Four hundred twenty-six; and Charles the great  
 Subdued the Saxons, and did seat the French  
 Beyond the river Sala, in the year  
 Eight hundred five. Besides, their writers say,  
 King Pepin, which deposed Childerick,  
 Did, as heir general, being descended  
 Of Blithild, which was daughter to king Clothair,  
 Make claim and title to the crown of France.  
 Hugh Capet also,—that usurp'd the crown  
 Of Charles the duke of Lorain, sole heir male  
 Of the true line and stock of Charles the great,—  
 To fine<sup>t</sup> his title with some show of truth,  
 (Though, in pure truth, it was corrupt and naught,)

<sup>s</sup> — *gloze,*] i. e. *Expound, explain.*

<sup>t</sup> *To fine—*] i. e. *To adorn.*

Convey'd himself<sup>u</sup> as heir to the lady Lingare,  
 Daughter to Charlemain,<sup>x</sup> who was the son  
 To Lewis the emperor, and Lewis the son  
 Of Charles the great. Also king Lewis the tenth,<sup>y</sup>  
 Who was sole heir to the usurper Capet,  
 Could not keep quiet in his conscience,  
 Wearing the crown of France, till satisfied  
 That fair queen Isabel, his grandmother,  
 Was lineal of the lady Ermengare,  
 Daughter to Charles the foresaid duke of Lorain :  
 By the which marriage, the line of Charles the great  
 Was re-united to the crown of France.  
 So that, as clear as is the summer's sun,  
 King Pepin's title, and Hugh Capet's claim,  
 King Lewis his satisfaction, all appear  
 To hold in right and title of the female :  
 So do the kings of France unto this day ;  
 Howbeit they would hold up this Salique law,  
 To bar your highness claiming from the female ;  
 And rather choose to hide them in a net,  
 Than amply to imbare<sup>z</sup> their crooked titles  
 Usurp'd from you and your progenitors.

*K. Hen.* May I, with right and conscience, make this  
 claim ?

*Cant.* The sin upon my head, dread sovereign !  
 For in the book of Numbers is it writ,—

<sup>u</sup> Convey'd himself—] i. e. *Derived his title.* Our poet found this expression in Holinshed.—MALONE.

<sup>x</sup> ——— the lady *Lingare*,

*Daughter to Charlemain,*] By Charles the Great is meant the emperor Charlemagne, son of Pepin : Charlemain is Charlechaue, or Charles the Bald, who, as well as Charles le Gros, assumed the title of Magnus. But then Charlechaue had only one daughter, named Judith, married, or, as some say, only betrothed, to our king Ethelwulf, and carried off after his death by Baldwin the forester, afterwards earl of Flanders, whom it is very certain, Hugh Capet was neither heir to, nor any way descended from. No such female as Lingare is to be met with in any French historian. In fact, these fictitious persons and pedigrees seem to have been devised by the English heralds “to fine” a corrupt “title with some show of truth.” It was manifestly impossible that Henry, who had no hereditary title to his own dominions, could derive one by the same colour, to another person's. He proposes the invasion of France in prosecution of the dying advice of his father :

“ ——— to busy giddy minds in foreign quarrels.”—RITSON.

<sup>y</sup> ——— *Lewis the tenth,*] This is a mistake into which Shakspeare was led by Holinshed. We should read *Lewis the ninth.*—MALONE.

<sup>z</sup> ——— *imbare*—] i. e. *Lay open.*

When the son dies, let the inheritance  
 Descend unto the daughter. Gracious lord,  
 Stand for your own; unwind your bloody flag;  
 Look back unto your mighty ancestors:  
 Go, my dread lord, to your great grandsire's tomb,  
 From whom you claim; invoke his warlike spirit,  
 And your great uncle's, Edward the black prince;  
 Who on the French ground play'd a tragedy,  
 Making defeat on the full power of France;  
 Whiles his most mighty father on a hill  
 Stood smiling, to behold his lion's whelp  
 Forage in blood of French nobility.<sup>a</sup>  
 O noble English, that could entertain  
 With half their forces the full pride of France;  
 And let another half stand laughing by,  
 All out of work, and cold for action!<sup>b</sup>

*Ely.* Awake remembrance of these valiant dead,  
 And with your puissant arm renew their feats:  
 You are their heir, you sit upon their throne;  
 The blood and courage, that renowned them,  
 Runs in your veins; and my thrice-puissant liege  
 Is in the very May-morn of his youth,  
 Ripe for exploits and mighty enterprizes.

*Exe.* Your brother kings and monarchs of the earth  
 Do all expect that you should rouse yourself,  
 As did the former lions of your blood.

*West.* They know, your grace hath cause, and means,  
 and might;  
 So hath your highness; never king of England  
 Had nobles richer, and more loyal subjects;  
 Whose hearts have left their bodies here in England,  
 And lie pavilion'd in the fields of France.

*Cant.* O, let their bodies follow, my dear liege,  
 With blood, and sword, and fire, to win your right:  
 In aid whereof, we of the spirituality  
 Will raise your highness such a mighty sum,

<sup>a</sup> *Whiles his most mighty father, &c.*] This alludes to Holinshed's description of the battle of Cressy. The king is there described as standing "aloft on a windmill-hill," and refusing to give any orders concerning the battle while his son was alive; "for I will that this journeye be his and the honour thereof."

<sup>b</sup> — cold for action!] i. e. Cold for want of action.—STEEVENS.

As never did the clergy at one time  
Bring in to any of your ancestors.

*K. Hen.* We must not only arm to invade the French ;  
But lay down our proportions to defend  
Against the Scot, who will make road upon us  
With all advantages.

*Cant.* They of those marches,<sup>c</sup> gracious sovereign,  
Shall be a wall sufficient to defend  
Our inland from the pilfering borderers.

*K. Hen.* We do not mean the coursing snatchers only,  
But fear the main intendment<sup>d</sup> of the Scot,  
Who hath been still a giddy neighbour to us ;  
For you shall read, that my great grandfather  
Never went with his forces into France,  
But that the Scot on his unfurnish'd kingdom  
Came pouring, like the tide into a breach,  
With ample and brim fulness of his force ;  
Galling the gleaned land with hot essays ;  
Girding with envious siege, castles and towns ;  
That England, being empty of defence,  
Hath shook, and trembled at the bruit thereof.<sup>e</sup>

*Cant.* She hath been then more fear'd<sup>f</sup> than harm'd, my  
For hear her but exempl'd by herself,— [liege :  
When all her chivalry hath been in France,  
And she a mourning widow of her nobles,  
She hath herself not only well defended,  
But taken, and impounded as a stray,  
The king of Scots ; whom she did send to France,  
To fill king Edward's fame with prisoner kings ;  
And make her chronicle as rich with praise,<sup>g</sup>  
As is the ooze and bottom of the sea  
With sunken wreck and sunless treasures.

<sup>c</sup> *They of those marches.*] The *marches* are the *borders*, the *limits*, the *confines*. Hence the *Lords Marchers*, i. e. the lords presidents of the *marches*, &c.

—STEEVENS.

<sup>d</sup> — *main intendment*—] i. e. *General disposition*.

<sup>e</sup> — *at the bruit thereof.*] This is the reading of the quartos 1600 and 1608 ; the folio reads, *at the ill neighbourhood*.

<sup>f</sup> — *fear'd*—] i. e. *Frightened*.

<sup>g</sup> *And make her chronicle, &c.*] The quarto reads *your chronicle*, the folio *their chronicle*, neither of which words have any propriety in the sentence ; I have therefore adopted Dr. Johnson's emendation, who says, "*your* and *their*, written by contraction *yr*, are just alike ; and *her*, in the old hands, is not much unlike *yr*."

*West.* But there's a saying, very old and true,—  
*If that you will France win,*  
*Then with Scotland first begin :*

For once the eagle England being in prey,  
 To her unguarded nest the weasel Scot  
 Comes sneaking, and so sucks her princely eggs;  
 Playing the mouse, in absence of the cat,  
 To spoil and havock more than she can eat.

*Ere.* It follows, then, the cat must stay at home:  
 Yet that is but a curs'd necessity;<sup>h</sup>  
 Since we have locks to safeguard necessaries.  
 And pretty traps to catch the petty thieves.  
 While that the armed hand doth fight abroad,  
 The advised head defends itself at home;  
 For government, though high, and low, and lower,  
 Put into parts, doth keep in one concent;<sup>i</sup>  
 Congruing in a full and natural close,  
 Like musick.

*Cant.* True: therefore doth heaven divide  
 The state of man in divers functions,  
 Setting endeavour in continual motion;  
 To which is fixed, as an aim or butt,  
 Obedience:<sup>j</sup> for so work the honey bees;  
 Creatures, that, by a rule in nature, teach  
 The act of order to a peopled kingdom.  
 They have a king, and officers of sorts:<sup>k</sup>  
 Where some, like magistrates, correct at home;  
 Others, like merchants, venture trade abroad;

<sup>h</sup> — but a curs'd necessity;] Mr. M. Mason proposes to read *not for but*. These monosyllables are frequently confounded in these plays; and it is certainly (as Dr. Warburton has observed) the speaker's business to show that there is no real necessity for staying at home.—MALONE.

<sup>i</sup> — in one concent;] I learn from Dr. Burney, that *concent* is connected harmony, in general, and not confined to any specific consonance. Thus, (says the same elegant and well-informed writer,) *concentio* and *concentus* are both used by Cicero for the union of voices or instruments in what we should now call a chorus, or concert.—STEVENS.

<sup>j</sup> — Setting endeavour in continual motion;

To which is fixed, as an aim or butt,

*Obedience:*] Neither the sense nor the construction of this passage is very obvious. The construction is, *endeavour—as an aim or butt to which endeavour, obedience is fixed*. The sense is, that all endeavour is to terminate in obedience, to be subordinate to the publick good and general design of government.—JOHNSON.

<sup>k</sup> — and officers of sorts:] i. e. *Officers of different degrees*.

Others, like soldiers, armed in their stings,  
 Make boot upon the summer's velvet buds ;  
 Which pillage they with merry march bring home  
 To the tent-royal of their emperor :  
 Who, busied in his majesty, surveys  
 The singing masons building roofs of gold ;  
 The civil<sup>l</sup> citizens kneading up the honey ;  
 The poor mechanick porters crouding in  
 Their heavy burdens at his narrow gate ;  
 The sad-ey'd justice, with his surly hum,  
 Delivering o'er to éxecutors<sup>m</sup> pale  
 The lazy yawning drone. I this infer,—  
 That many things, having full reference  
 To one concent, may work contrariously :  
 As many arrows, loosed several ways,  
 Fly to one mark ;  
 As many several ways meet in one town ;  
 As many fresh streams run in one self sea ;  
 As many lines close in the dial's centre ;  
 So may a thousand actions, once afoot,  
 End in one purpose, and be all well borne  
 Without defeat. Therefore to France, my liege.  
 Divide your happy England into four ;  
 Whereof take you one quarter into France,  
 And you withal shall make all Gallia shake.  
 If we, with thrice that power left at home,  
 Cannot defend our own door from the dog,  
 Let us be worried ; and our nation lose  
 The name of hardiness, and policy.

*K. Hen.* Call in the messengers sent from the Dauphin.

[*Exit an Attendant. The King ascends  
 his throne.*

Now are we well resolv'd ; and,—by God's help ;  
 And yours, the noble sinews of our power,—  
 France being ours, we'll bend it to our awe,  
 Or break it all to pieces : Or there we'll sit,  
 Ruling, in large and ample empery,<sup>n</sup>

<sup>l</sup> — civil—] i. e. *Not martial.*

<sup>m</sup> — éxecutors—] Here used for *executioners.*

<sup>n</sup> — empery,] This word, which signifies *dominion*, is now obsolete, though  
 ormerly in general use.

O'er France, and all her almost kingly dukedoms :  
 Or lay these bones in an unworthy urn,  
 Tombless, with no remembrance over them :  
 Either our history shall, with full mouth,  
 Speak freely of our acts ; or else our grave,  
 Like Turkish mute, shall have a tongueless mouth,  
 Not worship'd with a waxen epitaph.<sup>o</sup>

*Enter Ambassadors of France,*

Now are we well prepar'd to know the pleasure  
 Of our fair cousin Dauphin ; for, we hear,  
 Your greeting is from him, not from the king.

*Amb.* May it please your majesty, to give us leave  
 Freely to render what we have in charge ;  
 Or shall we sparingly show you far off  
 The Dauphin's meaning, and our embassy ?

*K. Hen.* We are no tyrant, but a Christian king ;  
 Unto whose grace our passion is as subject,  
 As are our wretches fetter'd in our prisons :  
 Therefore, with frank and with uncurbed plainness  
 Tell us the Dauphin's mind.

*Amb.* Thus then, in few.  
 Your highness, lately sending into France,  
 Did claim some certain dukedoms, in the right  
 Of your great predecessor, king Edward the third.  
 In answer to which claim, the prince our master  
 Says,—that you savour too much of your youth ;  
 And bids you be advis'd, there's nought in France,  
 That can be with a nimble galliard<sup>p</sup> won ;

<sup>o</sup> *Either our history shall, with full mouth,  
 Speak freely of our acts ; or else our grave,*

*Like Turkish mute, &c.]* In many parts of the continent, it is customary, upon the decease of an eminent person, for his friend to compose short laudatory poems, epitaphs, &c. and affix them to the hearse or grave with pins, wax, paste, &c. This practice was once also prevalent here. To this Shakspeare alludes. He had first written "*paper epitaph*," which is the reading of the quarto, 1608, and which he judiciously changed to *waxen*, as less ambiguous, and altogether as familiar to the audience. Henry's meaning therefore is, "I will either have my full history recorded with glory, or lie in an undistinguished grave : not merely without an inscription sculptured on stone, but unworshipped (unhonoured,) even by a waxen epitaph, i. e. by the short-lived compliment of a paper fastened on it."—GIFFORD'S *Ben Jonson*, vol. ix. p. 59.

<sup>p</sup> ——— *galliard*—] An ancient dance, now obsolete.



You cannot revel into dukedoms there :  
 He therefore sends you, meeter for your spirit,  
 This tun of treasure ; and, in lieu of this,  
 Desires you, let the dukedoms, that you claim,  
 Hear no more of you. This the Dauphin speaks.

*K. Hen.* What treasure, uncle ?

*Exe.* Tennis-balls, my liege.

*K. Hen.* We are glad, the Dauphin is so pleasant with us ;  
 His present, and your pains, we thank you for :  
 When we have match'd our rackets to these balls,  
 We will, in France, by God's grace, play a set,  
 Shall strike his father's crown into the hazard :  
 Tell him, he hath made a match with such a wrangler,  
 That all the courts of France will be disturb'd  
 With chaces.<sup>a</sup> And we understand him well,  
 How he comes o'er us with our wilder days,  
 Not measuring what use we made of them.  
 We never valu'd this poor seat of England ;  
 And therefore, living hence,<sup>r</sup> did give ourself  
 To barbarous license ; As 'tis ever common,  
 That men are merriest when they are from home.  
 But tell the Dauphin,—I will keep my state :  
 Be like a king, and show my sail of greatness,  
 When I do rouse me in my throne of France :  
 For that I have laid by<sup>s</sup> my majesty,  
 And plodded like a man for working-days ;  
 But I will rise there with so full a glory,  
 That I will dazzle all the eyes of France,  
 Yea, strike the Dauphin blind to look on us.  
 And tell the pleasant prince,—this mock of his  
 Hath turn'd his balls to<sup>t</sup> gun-stones ; and his soul  
 Shall stand sore charged for the wasteful vengeance  
 That shall fly with them : for many a thousand widows

<sup>a</sup> — *chaces.*] *Chace* is a term at tennis.

<sup>r</sup> *We never valu'd this poor seat of England ;*

*And therefore living hence, &c.*] He never valued the poor seat or throne of England ; therefore lived as one absent from it.—MALONE and WARBURTON.

<sup>s</sup> *For that I have laid by—*] To qualify myself for this undertaking, I have descended from my station, and studied the arts of life in a lower character.—JOHNSON.

<sup>t</sup> — *his balls to gun-stones ;*] When ordnance was first used, they discharged balls, not of iron, but of stone.—JOHNSON.

Shall this his mock mock out of their dear husbands ;  
 Mock mothers from their sons, mock castles down :  
 And some are yet ungotten, and unborn,  
 That shall have cause to curse the Dauphin's scorn.  
 But this lies all within the will of God,  
 To whom I do appeal ; And in whose name,  
 Tell you the Dauphin, I am coming on,  
 To venge me as I may, and to put forth  
 My rightful hand in a well-hallow'd cause,  
 So, get you hence in peace ; and tell the Dauphin,  
 His jest will savour but of shallow wit,  
 When thousands weep, more than did laugh at it.—  
 Convey them with safe conduct.—Fare you well.

[*Exeunt* Ambassadors.

*Ere.* This was a merry message.

*K. Hen.* We hope to make the sender blush at it.

[*Descends from his throne.*

Therefore, my lords, omit no happy hour,  
 That may give furtherance to our expedition :  
 For we have now no thought in us but France ;  
 Save those to God, that run before our business.  
 Therefore, let our proportions for these wars  
 Be soon collected ; and all things thought upon,  
 That may, with reasonable swiftness, add,  
 More feathers to our wings ; for, God before,  
 We'll chide this Dauphin at his father's door.  
 Therefore, let every man now task his thought,  
 That this fair action may on foot be brought. [*Exeunt.*

## ACT II.

*Enter* CHORUS.

*Chor.* Now all the youth of England are on fire,  
 And silken dalliance in the wardrobe lies ;  
 Now thrive the armourers, and honour's thought  
 Reigns solely in the breast of every man :  
 They sell the pasture now, to buy the horse ;  
 Following the mirror of all Christian kings,  
 With winged heels, as English Mercuries.

For now sits expectation in the air ;  
 And hides a sword, from hilts unto the point,  
 With crowns imperial,<sup>a</sup> crowns, and coronets,  
 Promis'd to Harry, and his followers.  
 The French, advis'd by good intelligence  
 Of this most dreadful preparation,  
 Shake in their fear ; and with pale policy  
 Seek to divert the English purposes.  
 O England !—model to thy inward greatness,  
 Like little body with a mighty heart,—  
 What might'st thou do, that honour would thee do,  
 Were all thy children kind and natural !  
 But see thy fault ! France hath in thee found out  
 A nest of hollow bosoms, which he<sup>x</sup> fills  
 With treacherous crowns ; and three corrupted men,—  
 One, Richard earl of Cambridge ;<sup>y</sup> and the second,  
 Henry lord Scroop of Masham ;<sup>z</sup> and the third,  
 Sir Thomas Grey knight of Northumberland,—  
 Have for the gilt<sup>a</sup> of France, (O guilt, indeed !)  
 Confirm'd conspiracy with fearful France ;  
 And by their hands this grace of kings must die,  
 (If hell and treason hold their promises,)  
 Ere he take ship for France, and in Southampton.  
 Linger your patience on ; and well digest  
 The abuse of distance, while we force a play.<sup>b</sup>  
 The sum is paid ; the traitors are agreed ;  
 The king is set from London ; and the scene  
 Is now transported, gentles, to Southampton :  
 There is the playhouse now, there must you sit :  
 And thence to France shall we convey you safe,

<sup>a</sup> *And hides a sword, front hilts unto the point,*

*With crowns imperial,]* This image, it has been observed by Mr. Henley, is borrowed from a wooden cut in the first edition of Holinshed's Chronicle.—MALONE.

<sup>x</sup> — *he—]* i. e. *France, or the king of France.*

<sup>y</sup> — *Richard earl of Cambridge;]* Richard de Coninsbury, younger son of Edmund of Langley, duke of York. He was father of Richard duke of York, father of Edward the Fourth.—WALPOLE.

<sup>z</sup> *Henry lord Scroop]*—was a third husband of Joan duchess of York, (she had four,) mother-in-law of Richard earl of Cambridge.—MALONE.

<sup>a</sup> — *gilt—]* i. e. *Gold.*

<sup>b</sup> — *force a play.]* i. e. Produce a play by compelling many circumstances into a narrow compass.—STEEVENS.

And bring you back, charming the narrow seas  
 To give you gentle pass ; for, if we may,  
 We'll not offend one stomach with our play.  
 But, till the king come forth, and not till then,  
 Unto Southampton do we shift our scene. [Exit.

## SCENE I.

*The same.* Eastcheap.

*Enter* NYM *and* BARDOLPH.

*Bard.* Well met, corporal Nym.

*Nym.* Good morrow, lieutenant Bardolph.

*Bard.* What, are ancient Pistol and you friends yet ?

*Nym.* For my part, I care not : I say little ; but when time shall serve, there shall be smiles ;—but that shall be as it may. I dare not fight ; but I will wink, and hold out mine iron : It is a simple one ; but what though ? it will toast cheese ; and it will endure cold as another man's sword will : and there's the humour of it.

*Bard.* I will bestow a breakfast, to make you friends ; and we'll be all three sworn brothers to France ;<sup>c</sup> let it be so, good corporal Nym.

*Nym.* 'Faith, I will live so long as I may, that's the certain of it ; and when I cannot live any longer, I will do as I may :<sup>d</sup> that is my rest,<sup>e</sup> that is the rendezvous of it.

*Bard.* It is certain, corporal, that he is married to Nell Quickly ; and, certainly, she did you wrong ; for you were troth-plight to her.

*Nym.* I cannot tell ; things must be as they may : men may sleep, and they may have their throats about them at that time ; and, some say, knives have edges. It must be as it may : though patience be a tired mare, yet she will plod. There must be conclusions. Well, I cannot tell.

<sup>c</sup> — and we'll be all three sworn brothers to France ;] The humour of sworn brothers should be opened a little. In the time of adventure, it was usual for two chiefs to bind themselves to share in each other's fortune, and divide their acquisitions between them. So, in the Conqueror's expedition, Robert de Oily, and Roger de Ivery, were *fratres jurati* ; and Robert gave one of the honours he received to his sworn brother Roger. So these three scoundrels set out for France, as if they were going to make a conquest of the kingdom.—WHALLEY.

<sup>d</sup> — do as I may :] Mr. M. Mason purposes to read *die as I may*.

<sup>e</sup> — my rest,] i. e. My determination.

*Enter* PISTOL *and* Mrs. QUICKLY.

*Bard.* Here comes ancient Pistol, and his wife:—good corporal, be patient here.—How now, mine host Pistol?

*Pist.* Base tike,<sup>f</sup> call'st thou me—host?

Now by this hand I swear, I scorn the term;  
Nor shall my Nell keep lodgers.

*Quick.* No, by my troth, not long: for we cannot lodge and board a dozen or fourteen gentlewomen, that live honestly by the prick of their needles, but it will be thought we keep a bawdy-house straight. [*NYM draws his sword.*] O well-a-day, Lady, if he be not drawn now! O Lord! here's corporal Nym's—now shall we have wilful adultery and murder committed.—Good lieutenant Bardolph,—good corporal, offer nothing here.

*Nym.* Pish!

*Pist.* Pish for thee, Iceland dog!<sup>g</sup> thou prick-eared cur of Iceland.

*Quick.* Good corporal Nym, show the valour of a man, and put up thy sword.

*Nym.* Will you shog off? I would have you *solus*.

[*Sheathing his sword.*]

*Pist.* *Solus*, egregious dog? O viper vile!  
The *solus* in thy most marvellous face;  
The *solus* in thy teeth, and in thy throat,  
And in thy hateful lungs, yea, in thy maw, perdy;  
And, which is worse, within thy nasty mouth!  
I do retort the *solus* in thy bowels;  
For I can take,<sup>h</sup> and Pistol's cock is up,  
And flashing fire will follow.

*Nym.* I am not Barbason:<sup>i</sup> you cannot conjure me. I have an humour to knock you indifferently well: If you grow foul with me, Pistol, I will scour you with my rapier, as I may, in fair terms: if you would walk off, I would

<sup>f</sup> — tike,] Tijk is the Runich word for a little or worthless dog. The word is still employed in Yorkshire, and signifies a clown or rustick.—STEEVENS.

<sup>g</sup> — Iceland dog!] Shaggy, sharp-eared, white dogs much imported formerly as favourites for ladies, &c.—NARES' Glossary.

<sup>h</sup> — I can take,] i. e. I can take fire. All this sentence of Pistol's consists in allusions to his name.—M. MASON.

<sup>i</sup> I am not Barbason;] Barbason is the name of a dæmon mentioned in *The Merry Wives of Windsor*. The unmeaning tumour of Pistol's speech very naturally reminds Nym of the sounding nonsense uttered by conjurers.—STEEVENS.

prick your guts a little, in good terms, as I may; and that's the humour of it.

*Pist.* O braggard vile, and damned furious wight!  
The grave doth gape, and doting death is near;  
Therefore exhale.<sup>k</sup> [PISTOL and NYM draw.

*Bard.* Hear me, hear me what I say:—he that strikes the first stroke, I'll run him up to the hilts, as I am a soldier. [Draws.

*Pist.* An oath of mickle might; and fury shall abate.  
Give me thy fist, thy fore-foot to me give;  
Thy spirits are most tall.

*Nym.* I will cut thy throat, one time or other, in fair terms; that is the humour of it.

*Pist.* *Coupe le gorge*, that's the word?—I thee defy again.  
O hound of Crete, think'st thou my spouse to get?  
No; to the spital go,  
And from the powdering tub of infamy  
Fetch forth the lazar kite of Cressid's kind,  
Doll Tear-sheet she by name, and her espouse:  
I have, and I will hold the *quondam* Quickly  
For the only she; and—*Pauca*, there's enough.

*Enter the Boy.*

*Boy.* Mine host Pistol, you must come to my master, —and you, hostess;—he is very sick, and would to bed. —Good Bardolph, put thy nose between his sheets, and do the office of a warming-pan: 'faith, he's very ill.

*Bard.* Away, you rogue.

*Quick.* By my troth, he'll yield the crow a pudding one of these days; the king has killed his heart.—Good husband, come home presently.

[*Exeunt Mrs. QUICKLY and Boy.*

*Bard.* Come, shall I make you two friends? We must to France together; Why, the devil, should we keep knives to cut one another's throats?

*Pist.* Let floods o'erswell, and fiends for food howl on!

*Nym.* You'll pay me the eight shillings I won of you at betting?

<sup>k</sup> ——— exhale.] i. e. Draw, hale, or lug out. This is Malone's explanation of the word, which is approved by Gifford.—*Ben Jonson*, vol. ii. 441.

*Pist.* Base is the slave that pays.

*Nym.* That now I will have; that's the humour of it.

*Pist.* As manhood shall compound; Push home.

*Bard.* By this sword, he that makes the first thrust, I'll kill him; by this sword, I will.

*Pist.* Sword is an oath, and oaths must have their course.

*Bard.* Corporal Nym, an thou wilt be friends, be friends; an thou wilt not, why then be enemies with me too. Pr'ythee, put up.

*Nym.* I shall have my eight shillings I won of you at betting?

*Pist.* A noble shalt thou have, and present pay; And liquor likewise will I give to thee, And friendship shall combine, and brotherhood; I'll live by Nym, and Nym shall live by me;— Is not this just?—for I shall sutler be Unto the camp, and profits will accrue. Give me thy hand.

*Nym.* I shall have my noble?

*Pist.* In cash most justly paid.

*Nym.* Well then, that's the humour of it.

*Re-enter Mrs. QUICKLY.*

*Quick.* As ever you came of women, come in quickly to sir John: Ah, poor heart! he is so shaked of a burning quotidian tertian, that it is most lamentable to behold. Sweet men, come to him.

*Nym.* The king hath run bad humours on the knight, that's the even of it.

*Pist.* Nym, thou hast spoke the right; His heart is fractured, and corroborate.

*Nym.* The king is a good king: but it must be as it may; he passes some humours, and careers.

*Pist.* Let us condole the knight; for lambkins, we will live. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE II.

Southampton. *A Council-Chamber.*

*Enter* EXETER, BEDFORD, *and* WESTMORELAND.

*Bed.* 'Fore God, his grace is bold, to trust these traitors.

*Exe.* They shall be apprehended by and by.

*West.* How smooth and even they do bear themselves!  
As if allegiance in their bosoms sat,  
Crowned with faith, and constant loyalty.

*Bed.* The king hath note of all that they intend,  
By interception which they dream not of.

*Exe.* Nay, but the man that was his bedfellow,<sup>1</sup>  
Whom he hath cloy'd and grac'd with princely favours,—  
That he should, for a foreign purse, so sell  
His sovereign's life to death and treachery!

*Trumpet sounds.* *Enter King* HENRY, SCROOP, CAM-  
BRIDGE, GREY, Lords, *and* Attendants.

*P. Hen.* Now sits the wind fair, and we will aboard.  
My lord of Cambridge,—and my kind lord of Masham,—  
And you, my gentle knight,—give me your thoughts:  
Think you not, that the powers we bear with us,  
Will cut their passage through the force of France;  
Doing the execution, and the act,  
For which we have in head<sup>m</sup> assembled them?

*Scroop.* No doubt, my liege, if each man do his best.

*K. Hen.* I doubt not that: since we are well persuaded  
We carry not a heart with us from hence,  
That grows not in a fair consent<sup>n</sup> with ours;  
Nor leave not one behind, that doth not wish  
Success and conquest to attend on us.

*Cam.* Never was monarch better fear'd, and lov'd,  
Than is your majesty; there's not, I think, a subject,

<sup>1</sup> — that was his bedfellow,] “The said Lord Scroop was in such favour with the king, that he admitted him sometimes to be his bedfellow.”—*Holinshed.* This familiar appellation, which appears strange to us, was common among our ancestors.—STEEVENS.

<sup>m</sup> — in head—] i. e. *In force.*

<sup>n</sup> — grows not in a fair consent—] i. e. *In friendly concord.*—MALONE.  
For grows I should prefer reading goes.



That sits in heart-grief and uneasiness  
Under the sweet shade of your government.

*Grey.* Even those, that were your father's enemies,  
Have steep'd their galls in honey ; and do serve you  
With hearts create<sup>o</sup> of duty and of zeal.

*K. Hen.* We therefore have great cause of thankful-  
And shall forget the office of our hand, [ness ;  
Sooner than quittance of desert and merit,  
According to the weight and worthiness.

*Scroop.* So service shall with steeled sinews toil ;  
And labour shall refresh itself with hope,  
To do your grace incessant services.

*K. Hen.* We judge no less.—Uncle of Exeter,  
Enlarge the man committed yesterday,  
That rail'd against our person : we consider,  
It was excess of wine that set him on ;  
And, on his more advice,<sup>p</sup> we pardon him.

*Scroop.* That's mercy, but too much security :  
Let him be punish'd, sovereign ; lest example  
Breed, by his sufferance, more of such a kind.

*K. Hen.* O, let us yet be merciful.

*Cam.* So may your highness, and yet punish too.

*Grey.* Sir, you show great mercy, if you give him life,  
After the taste of much correction.

*K. Hen.* Alas, your too much love and care of me  
Are heavy orisons 'gainst this poor wretch.  
If little faults, proceeding on distemper,<sup>q</sup>  
Shall not be wink'd at, how shall we stretch our eye,<sup>r</sup>  
When capital crimes, chew'd, swallow'd, and digested,  
Appear before us ?—We'll yet enlarge that man,  
Though Cambridge, Scroop, and Grey,—in their dear  
care,

And tender preservation of our person,—  
Would have him punish'd. And now to our French causes ;  
Who are the late commissioners ?<sup>s</sup>

<sup>o</sup> — create—] i. e. *Compounded or made up of duty and zeal.*

<sup>p</sup> — more advice,] On his return to more *coolness of mind.*—JOHNSON.

<sup>q</sup> — distemper,] i. e. *Intoxication.*

<sup>r</sup> — how shall we stretch our eye,] If we may not *wink at small faults, how wide must we open our eyes at great.*—JOHNSON.

<sup>s</sup> *Who are the late commissioners?*] That is, as appears from the sequel, who are the persons *lately appointed commissioners?*—M. MASON.

*Cam.* I one, my lord ;  
Your highness bade me ask for it to-day.

*Scroop.* So did you me, my liege.

*Grey.* And me, my royal sovereign.

*K. Hen.* Then, Richard earl of Cambridge, there is  
yours :—

There yours, lord Scroop of Masham ;—and, sir knight,  
Grey of Northumberland, this same is yours :—  
Read them ; and know, I know your worthiness.—  
My lord of Westmoreland,—and uncle Exeter,—  
We will aboard to-night.—Why, how now, gentlemen ?  
What see you in those papers, that you lose  
So much complexion ?—look ye, how they change !  
Their cheeks are paper.—Why, what read you there,  
That hath so cowarded and chas'd your blood  
Out of appearance ?

*Cam.* I do confess my fault ;  
And do submit me to your highness' mercy.

*Grey. Scroop.* To which we all appeal.

*K. Hen.* The mercy, that was quick<sup>1</sup> in us but late,  
By your own counsel is suppress'd and kill'd :  
You must not dare, for shame, to talk of mercy ;  
For your own reasons turn into your bosoms,  
As dogs upon their masters, worrying them.—  
See you, my princes, and my noble peers,  
These English monsters ! My lord of Cambridge here,—  
You know, how apt our love was, to accord  
To furnish him with all appertinents  
Belonging to his honour ; and this man  
Hath, for a few light crowns, lightly conspir'd,  
And sworn unto the practices of France,  
To kill us here in Hampton : to the which,  
This knight, no less for bounty bound to us  
Than Cambridge is,—hath likewise sworn.—But O !  
What shall I say to thee, lord Scroop ; thou cruel,  
Ingrateful, savage, and inhuman creature !  
Thou that didst bear the key of all my counsels,  
That knew'st the very bottom of my soul,  
That almost might'st have coin'd me into gold,

<sup>1</sup> — quick—] That is, living.

Would'st thou have practised on me for thy use?  
 May it be possible, that foreign hire  
 Could out of thee extract one spark of evil,  
 That might annoy my finger? 'tis so strange,  
 That, though the truth of it stands off as gross  
 As black from white,<sup>u</sup> my eye will scarcely see it.  
 Treason, and murder, ever kept together,  
 As two yoke-devils sworn to either's purpose,  
 Working so grossly<sup>x</sup> in a natural cause,  
 That admiration did not whoop at them:  
 But thou, 'gainst all proportion, didst bring in  
 Wonder, to wait on treason, and on murder:  
 And whatsoever cunning fiend it was,  
 That wrought upon thee so preposterously,  
 H'ath got the voice in hell for excellence:  
 And other devils, that suggest by treasons,  
 Do botch and bungle up damnation  
 With patches, colours, and with forms being fetch'd  
 From glistening semblances of piety;  
 But he, that temper'd thee,<sup>y</sup> bade thee stand up,  
 Gave thee no instance why thou should'st do treason,  
 Unless to dub thee with the name of traitor.  
 If that same dæmon, that hath gull'd thee thus,  
 Should with his lion gait walk the whole world,  
 He might return to vasty Tartar<sup>z</sup> back,  
 And tell the legions—I can never win  
 A soul so easy as that Englishman's.  
 O, how hast thou with jealousy infected  
 The sweetness of affiancè!<sup>a</sup> Show men dutiful?  
 Why, so didst thou: Seem they grave and learned?

<sup>u</sup> ——— *though the truth of it stands off as gross*

*As black from white,*] Though the truth be as apparent and visible as black and white contiguous to each other. *To stand off* is *être relevé*, to be prominent to the eye, as the strong parts of a picture.—JOHNSON.

<sup>x</sup> ——— *grossly*—] i. e. *Palpably*; with a plain and visible connection of cause and effect.—JOHNSON.

<sup>y</sup> ——— *he, that temper'd thee,*] i. e. Rendered thee pliable to his will.—STEEVENS.

<sup>z</sup> ——— *Tartar*—] i. e. *Tartarus*, the fabled place of future punishment.

<sup>a</sup> *O, how hast thou with jealousy infected*

*The sweetness of affiancè!*] Shakspeare uses this aggravation of the guilt of treachery with great judgment. One of the worst consequences of breach of trust is the diminution of that confidence which makes the happiness of life, and the dissemination of suspicion, which is the poison of society.—JOHNSON.

Why, so didst thou : Come they of noble family ?  
 Why, so didst thou : Seem they religious ?  
 Why, so didst thou : Or are they spare in diet ;  
 Free from gross passion, or of mirth, or anger ;  
 Constant in spirit, not swerving with the blood ;  
 Garnish'd and deck'd in modest complement ;<sup>b</sup>  
 Not working with the eye, without the ear,<sup>c</sup>  
 And, but in purged judgment, trusting neither ?  
 Such, and so finely bolted,<sup>d</sup> didst thou seem :  
 And thus thy fall hath left a kind of blot,  
 To mark the full-fraught man, and best indued,  
 With some suspicion. I will weep for thee ;  
 For this revolt of thine, methinks, is like  
 Another fall of man.—Their faults are open,  
 Arrest them to the answer of the law ;—  
 And God acquit them of their practices !

*Exe.* I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of  
 Richard earl of Cambridge.

I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Henry  
 lord Scroop of Masham.

I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Thomas  
 Grey, knight of Northumberland.

*Scroop.* Our purposes God justly hath discover'd ;  
 And I repent my fault, more than my death :  
 Which I beseech your highness to forgive,  
 Although my body pay the price of it.

*Cam.* For me,—the gold of France did not seduce ;  
 Although I did admit it as a motive,  
 The sooner to effect what I intended :  
 But God be thanked for prevention ;  
 Which I in sufferance heartily will rejoice,<sup>e</sup>  
 Beseeching God, and you, to pardon me.

<sup>b</sup> *Garnish'd and deck'd in modest complement ;]* *Complements*, in the age of Shakspeare, meant the same as *accomplishments* in the present one.—STEVENS.

<sup>c</sup> *Not working with the eye, without the ear,]* The king means to say of Scroop, that he was a cautious man, who knew that *fronti nulla fides*, that a specious appearance was deceitful, and therefore did not work with the eye, without the ear, did not trust the air or look of any man till he had tried him by enquiry and conversation.—JOHNSON.

<sup>d</sup> — *bolted,]* i. e. *Sifted, refined.*

<sup>e</sup> *Which I in sufferance heartily will rejoice,]* Cambridge means to say, at which prevention, or, which intended scheme that it was prevented, I shall rejoice. Shakspeare has many such elliptical expressions. The intended

*Grey.* Never did faithful subject more rejoice  
At the discovery of most dangerous treason,  
Than I do at this hour joy o'er myself,  
Prevented from a damned enterprize :  
My fault, but not my body, pardon, sovereign.

*K. Hen.* God quit you in his mercy ! Hear your sentence.  
You have conspir'd against our royal person,  
Join'd with an enemy proclaim'd, and from his coffers  
Receiv'd the golden earnest of our death :  
Wherein you would have sold your king to slaughter,  
His princes and his peers to servitude,  
His subjects to oppression and contempt,  
And his whole kingdom unto desolation.  
Touching our person, seek we no revenge ;  
But we our kingdom's safety must so tender,  
Whose ruin you three sought, that to her laws  
We do deliver you. Get you therefore hence,  
Poor miserable wretches, to your death :  
The taste whereof, God, of his mercy, give you  
Patience to endure, and true repentance  
Of all your dear offences !—Bear them hence.

[*Exeunt Conspirators, guarded.*]

Now, lords, for France ; the enterprize whereof  
Shall be to you, as us, like glorious.  
We doubt not of a fair and lucky war ;  
Since God so graciously hath brought to light  
This dangerous treason, lurking in our way,  
To hinder our beginnings, we doubt not now,  
But every rub is smoothed on our way.  
Then, forth, dear countrymen ; let us deliver  
Our puissance into the hand of God,  
Putting it straight in expedition.  
Cheerly to sea ; the signs of war avancé :  
No king of England, if not king of France.

[*Exeunt.*]

scheme that he alludes to, was the taking off Henry, to make room for his brother-in-law.—MALONE.

## SCENE III.

London. *Mrs. Quickly's House in Eastcheap.*

*Enter* PISTOL, *Mrs. QUICKLY*, NYM, BARDOLPH,  
and Boy.

*Quick.* Pr'ythee, honey-sweet husband, let me bring thee<sup>f</sup> to Staines.

*Pist.* No; for my manly heart doth yearn.—  
Bardolph, be blithe;—Nym, rouse thy vaunting veins;  
Boy, bristle thy courage up; for Falstaff he is dead,  
And we must yearn therefore.

*Bard.* 'Would, I were with him, wheresome'er he is,  
either in heaven, or in hell!

*Quick.* Nay, sure, he's not in hell; he's in Arthur's bosom, if ever man went to Arthur's bosom. 'A made a finer end, and went away, an it had been any chrisom child;<sup>g</sup> 'a parted even just between twelve and one, e'en at turning o'the tide:<sup>h</sup> for after I saw him fumble with the sheets, and play with flowers, and smile upon his fingers' ends, I knew there was but one way; for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and 'a babbled of green fields.<sup>i</sup> How now, sir John? quoth I: what, man! be of good cheer. So 'a cried out—God, God, God! three or four times: now I, to comfort him, bid him, 'a should not think of God; I hoped, there was no need to trouble himself with any such thoughts yet: So, 'a bade me lay more clothes on his feet: I put my hand into the bed, and felt them, and they were as cold as any stone; then I felt to his knees, and so upward, and upward, and all was as cold as any stone.

<sup>f</sup> — let me bring thee—] i. e. Let me attend, or accompany thee.

<sup>g</sup> — chrisom child;] i. e. An infant within a month of its birth, and still wearing the *chrysom*, or face-cloth, put on the head at its baptism. The original use of the *chrisom* cloth was to prevent the rubbing off the *chrisin* or holy unguent, a part of the old baptismal office.—NARES' *Glossary*.

<sup>h</sup> — turning o'the tide:] It has been a very old opinion, which Mead, *de imperio solis*, quotes, as if he believed it, that nobody dies but in the time of ebb: half the deaths in London confute the notion; but we find that it was common among the women of the poet's time.—JOHNSON.

<sup>i</sup> — and 'a babbled of green fields.] The words in the folio are, *and a table of green fields*. The present very ingenious emendation of the text was made by Theobald. In both the quartos of 1600 and 1608, the sentence is omitted.

*Nym.* They say, he cryed out of sack:

*Quick.* Ay, that a' did.

*Bard.* And of women.

*Quick.* Nay, that a' did not.

*Boy.* Yes, that a' did; and said, they were devils incarnate.

*Quick.* 'A could never abide carnation; 'twas a colour he never liked.

*Boy.* 'A said once, the devil would have him about women.

*Quick.* 'A did in some sort, indeed, handle women: but then he was rheumatick;<sup>k</sup> and talked of the whore of Babylon.

*Boy.* Do you not remember, 'a saw a flea stick upon Bardolph's nose; and 'a said, it was a black soul burning in hell-fire?

*Bard.* Well, the fuel is gone, that maintained that fire: that's all the riches I got in his service.

*Nym.* Shall we shog off? the king will be gone from Southampton.

*Pist.* Come, let's away.—My love, give me thy lips.

Look to my chattels, and my moveables:

Let senses rule; the word is, *Pitch, and pay*;<sup>l</sup>

Trust none;

For oaths are straws, men's faiths are wafer-cakes,

And hold-fast is the only dog, my duck;

Therefore, *caveto* be thy counsellor.

Go, clear thy chrystals.<sup>m</sup>—Yoke-fellows in arms,

Let us to France! like horse-leeches, my boys;

To suck, to suck, the very blood to suck!

*Boy.* And that is but unwholesome food, they say.

*Pist.* Touch her soft mouth, and march.

*Bard.* Farewell, hostess. [Kissing her.]

*Nym.* I cannot kiss, that is the humour of it; but adieu.

<sup>k</sup> — *rheumatic*;] i.e. *Peevish, splenetic*; this is not a slip-slop of Mrs. Quickly for *lunatic* as Malone supposes; but the word appears to have been familiarly used in the present sense. Ben Jonson has *rheum* for spleen, or choler.

<sup>l</sup> — *Pitch and pay* ;] A familiar expression, meaning, *pay ready money*.

<sup>m</sup> — *clear thy chrystals.*] Dry thine eyes.

*Pist.* Let housewifery appear; keep close, I thee command.

*Quick.* Farewell; adieu.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE IV.

France. *A Room in the French King's Palace.*

*Enter the French King attended; the Dauphin, the Duke of BURGUNDY, the Constable, and others.*

*Fr. King.* Thus come the English with full power  
upon us;  
And more than carefully it us concerns,  
To answer royally in our defences.  
Therefore the dukes of Berry, and of Bretagne,  
Of Brabant, and of Orleans, shall make forth,—  
And you, prince Dauphin,—with all swift despatch,  
To line, and new repair, our towns of war,  
With men of courage, and with means defendant:  
For England his approaches makes as fierce,  
As waters to the sucking of a gulph.  
It fits us then, to be as provident  
As fear may teach us, out of late examples  
Left by the fatal and neglected English  
Upon our fields.

*Dau.* My most redoubted father,  
It is most meet we arm us 'gainst the foe:  
For peace itself should not so dull a kingdom,  
(Though war, nor no known quarrel, were in question,)  
But that defences, musters, preparations,  
Should be maintain'd, assembled, and collected,  
As were a war in expectation.  
Therefore, I say, 'tis meet we all go forth,  
To view the sick and feeble parts of France;  
And let us do it with no show of fear;  
No, with no more, than if we heard that England  
Were busied with a Whitsun morris-dance:  
For, my good liege, she is so idly king'd,  
Her scepter so fantastically borne



By a vain, giddy, shallow, humorous youth,  
That fear attends her not.

*Con.* O peace, prince Dauphin!

You are too much mistaken in this king :  
Question your grace the late ambassadors,—  
With what great state he heard their embassy,  
How well supplied with noble counsellors,  
How modest in exception,<sup>n</sup> and, withal,  
How terrible in constant resolution,—  
And you shall find, his vanities fore-spent  
Were but the outside of the Roman Brutus,  
Covering discretion with a coat of folly ;  
As gardeners do with ordure hide those roots  
That shall first spring, and be most delicate.

*Dau.* Well, 'tis not so, my lord high constable,  
But though we think it so, it is no matter :  
In cases of defence, 'tis best to weigh  
The enemy more mighty than he seems,  
So the proportions of defence are fill'd ;  
Which, of a weak and niggardly projection,<sup>o</sup>  
Doth, like a miser, spoil his coat, with scanting  
A little cloth.

*Fr. King.* Think we king Harry strong ;  
And, princes, look, you strongly arm to meet him.  
The kindred of him hath been flesh'd upon us ;  
And he is bred out of that bloody strain,<sup>p</sup>  
That haunted us in our familiar paths :  
Witness our too much memorable shame,  
When Cressy battle fatally was struck,  
And all our princes captiv'd, by the hand  
Of that black name, Edward black prince of Wales ;  
Whiles that his mountain sire,<sup>q</sup>—on mountain standing,  
Up in the air, crown'd with the golden sun,—  
Saw his heroical seed, and smil'd to see him

<sup>n</sup> *How modest in exception,*] How diffident and decent in making objections.  
—JOHNSON.

<sup>o</sup> — *of a weak and niggardly projection,*] i. e. By a weak and niggardly scheme of action : we have here another instance of the familiar use of *of* for *by*.

<sup>p</sup> — *strain,*] i. e. *Lineage*.

<sup>q</sup> — *mountain sire,*] The poet meant to give an idea of more than human proportion in the figure of the king.—STEVENS.

Mangle the work of nature, and deface  
 The patterns that by God and by French fathers  
 Had twenty years been made. This is a stem  
 Of that victorious stock ; and let us fear  
 The native mightiness and fate of him.<sup>r</sup>

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* Ambassadors from Henry king of England  
 Do crave admittance to your majesty.

*Fr. King.* We'll give them present audience. Go, and  
 bring them. [*Exeunt Mess. and certain Lords.*  
 You see, this chase is hotly follow'd, friends.

*Dau.* Turn head, and stop pursuit : for coward dogs  
 Most spend their mouths,<sup>s</sup> when what they seem to  
 Runs far before them. Good, my sovereign, [*threaten*  
 Take up the English short ; and let them know  
 Of what a monarchy you are the head :  
 Self-love, my liege, is not so vile a sin  
 As self-neglecting.

*Re-enter Lords, with EXETER and Train.*

*Fr. King.* From our brother England ?

*Exe.* From him ; and thus he greets your majesty.  
 He wills you, in the name of God Almighty,  
 That you divest yourself, and lay apart  
 The borrow'd glories, that, by gift of heaven,  
 By law of nature, and of nations, 'long  
 To him, and to his heirs ; namely, the crown,  
 And all wide stretched honours that pertain,  
 By custom and the ordinance of times  
 Unto the crown of France. That you may know,  
 'Tis no sinister, nor no aukward claim,  
 Pick'd from the worm-holds of long-vanish'd days,  
 Nor from the dust of old oblivion rak'd,  
 He sends you this most memorable line,<sup>t</sup> [*Gives a paper.*  
 In every branch truly demonstrative ;

<sup>r</sup> — *fate of him.*] His *fate* is what is allotted him by destiny, or what he is fated to perform.—JOHNSON.

<sup>s</sup> — *speak their mouths,*] That is, *bark* ; the sportsman's term.—JOHNSON.

<sup>t</sup> — *memorable line,*] This genealogy ; this deduction of his *lineage*.—JOHNSON.

Willing you, overlook this pedigree :  
 And, when you find him evenly deriv'd  
 From his most fam'd of famous ancestors,  
 Edward the Third, he bids you then resign  
 Your crown and kingdom, indirectly held  
 From him the native and true challenger.

*Fr. King.* Or else what follows ?

*Exe.* Bloody constraint: for if you hide the crown  
 Even in your hearts, there will he rake for it :  
 And therefore in fierce tempest is he coming,  
 In thunder, and in earthquake, like a Jove ;  
 (That, if requiring fail, he will compel ;)   
 And bids you, in the bowels of the Lord,  
 Deliver up the crown ; and to take mercy  
 On the poor souls, for whom this hungry war  
 Opens his vasty jaws: and on your head  
 Turns he the widows' tears, the orphans' cries,  
 The dead men's blood, the pining maidens' groans,  
 For husbands, fathers, and betrothed lovers,  
 That shall be swallow'd in this controversy.  
 This is his claim, his threat'ning, and my message ;  
 Unless the Dauphin be in presence here,  
 To whom expressly I bring greeting too.

*Fr. King.* For us, we will consider of this further :  
 To-morrow shall you bear our full intent  
 Back to our brother England.

*Dau.* For the Dauphin,  
 I stand here for him ; What to him from England ?

*Exe.* Scorn, and defiance ; slight regard, contempt,  
 And any thing that may not misbecome  
 The mighty sender, doth he prize you at.  
 Thus says my king : and, if your father's highness  
 Do not, in grant of all demands at large,  
 Sweeten the bitter mock you sent his majesty,  
 He'll call you to so hot an answer for it,  
 That caves and womby vaultages of France  
 Shall chide<sup>u</sup> your trespass, and return your mock  
 In second accent of his ordinance.

*Dau.* Say, if my father render fair reply,

<sup>u</sup> — chide—] i. e. Resound, re-echo.

It is against my will: for I desire  
 Nothing but odds with England; to that end,  
 As matching to his youth and vanity,  
 I did present him with those Paris balls.

*Exe.* He'll make your Paris Louvre shake for it,  
 Were it the mistress court of mighty Europe:  
 And, be assur'd, you'll find a difference,  
 (As we, his subjects, have in wonder found,)  
 Between the promise of his greener days,  
 And these he masters now; now he weighs time,  
 Even to the utmost grain; which you shall read  
 In your own losses, if he stay in France.

*Fr. King.* To-morrow shall you know our mind at full.

*Exe.* Despatch us with all speed, lest that our king  
 Come here himself to question our delay;  
 For he is footed in this land already.

*Fr. King.* You shall be soon despatch'd, with fair con-  
 A night is but small breath, and little pause, [ditions:  
 To answer matters of this consequence. [Exeunt.

### ACT III.

*Enter CHORUS.*

*Chor.* Thus with imagin'd wing our swift scene flies,  
 In motion of no less celerity  
 Than that of thought. Suppose that you have seen  
 The well-appointed king at Hampton pier<sup>x</sup>  
 Embark his royalty; and his brave fleet  
 With silken streamers the young Phœbus fanning.  
 Play with your fancies; and in them behold,  
 Upon the hempen tackle, ship-boys climbing:  
 Hear the shrill whistle, which doth order give  
 To sounds confus'd: behold the threaten sails,  
 Borne with the invisible and creeping wind,

<sup>x</sup> — at Hampton pier—] Among the records of the town of Southampton, they have a minute and authentic account, drawn up at the time, of the encampment of Henry the Fifth near the town, before his embarkment for France. It is remarkable, that the place where the army was encamped, then a low level plain or down, is now nearly covered with sea, and called Westport.—  
 T. WARTON.

Draw the huge bottoms through the furrow'd sea,  
 Breasting the lofty surge : O, do but think,  
 You stand upon the rivage,<sup>y</sup> and behold  
 A city on the inconstant billows dancing ;  
 For so appears this fleet majestic,  
 Holding due course to Harfleur. Follow, follow !  
 Grapple your minds to sternage of this navy ;<sup>z</sup>  
 And leave your England, as dead midnight, still,  
 Guarded with grandsires, babies, and old women,  
 Either past, or not arriv'd to, pith and puissance :  
 For who is he, whose chin is but enrich'd  
 With one appearing hair, that will not follow  
 These cull'd and choice-drawn cavaliers to France ?  
 Work, work, your thoughts, and therein see a siege :  
 Behold the ordnance on their carriages,  
 With fatal mouths gaping on girded Harfleur,  
 Suppose, the ambassador from the French comes back ;  
 Tells Harry—that the king doth offer him  
 Katharine his daughter ; and with her, to dowry,  
 Some petty and unprofitable dukedoms.  
 The offer likes not : and the nimble gunner  
 With linstock<sup>a</sup> now the devilish cannon touches ;  
[Alarum ; and Chambers<sup>b</sup> go off.]
 And down goes all before them. Still be kind,  
 And eke out our performance with your mind. [Exit.]

## SCENE I.

*The same. Before Harfleur.*

*Alarums. Enter King HENRY, EXETER, BEDFORD,  
 GLOSTER, and Soldiers, with Scaling Ladders.*

*K. Hen.* Once more unto the breach, dear friends, once  
 more ;  
 Or close the wall up with our English dead !

<sup>y</sup> — rivage,] i. e. Bank or shore.

<sup>z</sup> — to sternage of this navy ;] The stern being the hinder part of the ship, the meaning is, let your minds follow close after the navy. Stern, however, appears to have been anciently synonymous to rudder.—MALONE.

<sup>a</sup> — linstock—] The staff to which the match is fixed when ordnance is fired.—JOHNSON.

<sup>b</sup> — Chambers—] Small pieces of ordnance.

In peace, there's nothing so becomes a man,  
 As modest stillness, and humility :  
 But when the blast of war blows in our ears,  
 Then imitate the action of the tiger ;<sup>c</sup>  
 Stiffen the sinews, summon up the blood,  
 Disguise fair nature with hard-favour'd rage :  
 Then lend the eye a terrible aspect ;  
 Let it pry through the portage of the head,  
 Like the brass cannon ; let the brow o'erwhelm it,  
 As fearfully, as doth a galled<sup>d</sup> rock  
 O'erhang and jutty<sup>e</sup> his confounded base,<sup>f</sup>  
 Swill'd<sup>g</sup> with the wild and wasteful ocean.  
 Now set the teeth, and stretch the nostril wide ;  
 Hold hard the breath, and bend up every spirit  
 To his full height !—On, on, you noblest English,  
 Whose blood is fet<sup>h</sup> from fathers of war-proof !  
 Fathers, that, like so many Alexanders,  
 Have, in these parts, from morn till even fought,  
 And sheath'd their swords for lack of argument.<sup>i</sup>  
 Dishonour not your mothers ; now attest,  
 That those, whom you call'd fathers, did beget you !  
 Be copy now to men of grosser blood,  
 And teach them how to war !—And you, good yeomen,  
 Whose limbs were made in England, show us here  
 The mettle of your pasture ; let us swear  
 That you are worth your breeding : which I doubt not ;  
 For there is none of you so mean and base,  
 That hath not noble lustre in your eyes.  
 I see you stand like greyhounds in the slips,<sup>k</sup>  
 Straining upon the start. The game's afoot ;

<sup>c</sup> *When the blast of war blows in our ears, Then imitate the action of the tiger ;*] Sir Thomas Hanmer has observed, that in storms and high winds the tiger roars and rages most furiously.—  
 STEEVENS.

<sup>d</sup> — *galled*—] i. e. *Fretted, worn away.*

<sup>e</sup> — *jutty*—] i. e. *Project into the sea.*

<sup>f</sup> *Confounded*—] According to Dr. Johnson this means *worn or wasted*, but I rather understand it in the sense of *disturbed and agitated* ; troubled by the noise and dash of waters.

<sup>g</sup> *Swill'd*—] i. e. *Washed.*

<sup>h</sup> — *fet*—] i. e. *Fetched.* This word is found in the bible, Acts xxviii. 13, and is said to be still in use in some counties.

<sup>i</sup> — *argument.*] i. e. *Matter, or subject.*

<sup>k</sup> — *slips,*] A contrivance of leather, to start two dogs at the same time.

Follow your spirit : and, upon this charge,  
 Cry—God for Harry ! England ! and saint George !  
 [*Exeunt. Alarum, and Chambers go off.*]

## SCENE II.

*The same.*

*Forces pass over; then enter NYM, BARDOLPH,  
 PISTOL, and Boy.*

*Bard.* On, on, on, on, on ! to the breach, to the breach !

*Nym.* 'Pray thee, corporal, stay ; the knocks are too hot ; and, for mine own part, I have not a case of lives ; the humour of it is too hot, that is the very plain-song of it.

*Pist.* The plain-song is most just ; for humours do abound ;  
 Knocks go and come ; God's vassals drop and die ;  
 And sword and shield,  
 In bloody field,  
 Doth win immortal fame.

*Boy.* 'Would I were in an alehouse in London !  
 I would give all my fame for a pot of ale, and safety.

*Pist.* And I :  
 If wishes would prevail with me,  
 My purpose should not fail with me,  
 But thither would I hie.

*Boy.* As duly,  
 But not as truly,  
 As bird doth sing on bough.

*Enter FLUELLEN.<sup>1</sup>*

*Flu.* Got's plood !—Up to the preaches, you rascals !  
 will you not up to the preaches ?

[*Driving them forward.*]

*Pist.* Be merciful, great duke, to men of mould !<sup>m</sup>

<sup>1</sup> — *Fluellen.*] This is only the Welsh pronunciation of *Lluellyn*.—  
 STEEVENS.

<sup>m</sup> — *great duke to men of mould !*] *Duke* is here used for *leader* or *captain*,  
*men of mould* are men of *carth* or mortal men.—JOHNSON.

Abate thy rage, abate thy manly rage !

Abate thy rage, great duke !

Good bawcock, bate thy rage ! use lenity, sweet chuck !

*Nym.* These be good humours !—your honour wins bad humours.

[*Exeunt* NYM, PISTOL, and BARDOLPH,  
*followed by* FLUELLEN.]

*Boy.* As young as I am, I have observed these three swashers. I am boy to them all three : but all they three, though they would serve me, could not be man to me ; for, indeed, three such anticks do not amount to a man. For Bardolph,—he is white-livered, and red-faced ; by the means whereof, 'a faces it out, but fights not. For Pistol,—he hath a killing tongue, and a quiet sword ; by the means whereof 'a breaks words, and keeps whole weapons. For Nym,—he hath heard, that men of few words are the best men ; and therefore he scorns to say his prayers, lest 'a should be thought a coward : but his few bad words are match'd with as few good deeds ; for 'a never broke any man's head but his own ; and that was against a post, when he was drunk. They will steal any thing, and call it,—purchase. Bardolph stole a lute-case ; bore it twelve leagues, and sold it for three halfpence. Nym, and Bardolph, are sworn brothers in filching ; and in Calais they stole a fire-shovel : I knew, by that piece of service, they meant to carry coals.<sup>n</sup> They would have me as familiar with men's pockets, as their gloves or their handkerchiefs ; which makes much against my manhood, if I should take from another's pocket, to put into mine ; for it is plain pocketing up of wrongs. I must leave them, and seek some better service : their villainy goes against my weak stomach, and therefore I must cast it up. [*Exit* Boy.]

<sup>n</sup> — *they meant to carry coals.*] This is the reading of the quartos, 1600, and 1608. The folio reads *the men would carry coals.* *To carry coals* means *to submit to insults.* The origin of the phrase is this ;—in every family the scullions, the turnspits, the carriers of wood and coals were esteemed as the lowest menials, the latter in particular, were the drudges of the other servants.—NARES' *Glossary.*



*Re-enter FLUELLEN, GOWER following.*

*Gow.* Captain Fluellen, you must come presently to the mines; the duke of Gloster would speak with you.

*Flu.* To the mines! tell you the duke, it is not so good to come to the mines: For, look you, the mines is not according to the disciplines of the war; the concavities of it is not sufficient; for, look you, th' athversary (you may discuss unto the duke, look you,) is dight himself four yards under the countermines:° by Cheshu, I think, 'a will plow up all, if there is not better directions.

*Gow.* The duke of Gloster, to whom the order of the siege is given, is altogether directed by an Irishman; a very valiant gentleman, i'faith.

*Flu.* It is captain Macmorris, is it not?

*Gow.* I think it be.

*Flu.* By Cheshu, he is an ass, as in the 'orld: I will verily as much in his peard: he has no more directions in the true disciplines of the wars, look you, of the Roman disciplines, than is a puppy-dog.

*Enter MACMORRIS and JAMY, at a distance.*

*Gow.* Here 'a comes; and the Scots captain, captain Jamy, with him.

*Flu.* Captain Jamy is a marvellous falorous gentleman, that is certain; and of great expedition, and knowledge, in the ancient wars, upon my particular knowledge of his directions: by Cheshu, he will maintain his argument as well as any military man in the 'orld, in the disciplines of the pristine wars of the Romans.

*Jamy.* I say, gud-day, captain Fluellen.

*Flu.* God-den to your worship, goot captain Jamy.

*Gow.* How now, captain Macmorris? have you quit the mines? have the pioneers given o'er?

*Mac.* By Chrish la, tish ill done: the work ish give over, the trumpet sound the retreat. By my hand, I swear, and by my father's soul, the work ish ill done; it ish give

° — is dight himself four yards under the countermines:] Fluellen means, that the enemy had digged himself countermines four yards under the mines.—  
JOHNSON.

over : I would have blowed up the town, so Chrish save me, la, in an hour. O, tish ill done, tish ill done ; by my hand, tish ill done !

*Flu.* Captain Macmorris, I peşeech you now, will you voutsafe me, look you, a few disputations with you, as partly touching or concerning the disciplines of the war, the Roman wars, in the way of argument, look you, and friendly communication ; partly, to satisfy my opinion, and partly, for the satisfaction, look you, of my mind, as touching the direction of the military discipline ; that is the point.

*Jamy.* It sall be very gud, gud feith, gud captains bath : and I sall quit you<sup>p</sup> with gud leve, as I may pick occasion ; that sall I, marry.

*Mac.* It is no time to discourse, so Chrish save me, the day is hot, and the weather, and the wars, and the king, and the dukes ; it is no time to discourse. The town is beseeched, and the trumpet calls us to the breach ; and we talk, and, by Chrish, do nothing ; 'tis shame for us all : so God sa' me, 'tis shame to stand still ; it is shame, by my hand : and there is throats to be cut, and works to be done ; and there ish nothing done, so Chrish sa' me, la.

*Jamy.* By the mess, ere these eyes of mine take themselves to slumber, aile do good service, or aile ligge i'the grund for it ; ay, or go to death ; and aile pay it as valorously as I may, that sall I surely do, that is the breff and the long : Mary, I wad full fain heard some question 'tween you 'tway.

*Flu.* Captain Macmorris, I think, look you, under your correction, there is not many of your nation——

*Mac.* Of my nation ? What ish my nation ? ish a villain, and a bastard, and a knave, and a rascal ? What ish my nation ? Who talks of my nation ?

*Flu.* Look you, if you take the matter otherwise than is meant, captain Macmorris, peradventure, I shall think you do not use me with that affability as in discretion you

<sup>p</sup> —— *I sall quit you—*] That is, I shall, with your permission, *requite you*, that is, *answer you*, or interpose with my arguments, as I shall find opportunity.  
—JOHNSON.

ought to use me, look you ; being as goot a man as yourself, both in the disciplines of wars, and the derivation of my birth, and in other particularities.

*Mac.* I do not know you so good a man as myself : so Chrish save me, I will cut off your head.

*Gow.* Gentlemen both, you will mistake each other.

*Jamy.* Au ! that's a foul fault. [*A parley is sounded.*]

*Gow.* The town sounds a parley.

*Flu.* Captain Macmorris, when there is more better opportunity to be required, look you, I will be so bold as to tell you, I know the disciplines of war ; and there is an end. [*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE III.

*The same. Before the Gates of Harfleur.*

*The Governour and some Citizens on the Walls ; the English Forces below. Enter King HENRY and his Train.*

*K. Hen.* How yet resolves the governour of the town ?  
This is the latest parle we will admit ;  
Therefore, to our best mercy give yourselves ;  
Or like to men proud of destruction,  
Defy us to our worst : for, as I am a soldier,  
(A name, that, in my thoughts, becomes me best,)  
If I begin the battery once again,  
I will not leave the half-achieved Harfleur,  
Till in her ashes she lie buried.  
The gates of mercy shall be all shut up ;  
And the flesh'd soldier,—rough and hard of heart,—  
In liberty of bloody hand, shall range  
With conscience wide as hell ; mowing like grass  
Your fresh-fair virgins, and your flowering infants.  
What is it then to me, if impious war,—  
Array'd in flames, like to the prince of fiends,—  
Do, with his smirch'd complexion, all fell feats  
Enlink'd to waste and desolation ?<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> ——— fell feats

*Enlink'd to waste and desolation ?*] All the savage practices naturally concomitant to the sack of cities.—JOHNSON.

What is't to me, when you yourselves are cause,  
 If your pure maidens fall into the hand  
 Of hot and forcing violation!  
 What rein can hold licentious wickedness,  
 When down the hill he holds his fierce career?  
 We may as bootless spend our vain command  
 Upon the enraged soldiers in their spoil,  
 As send precepts to the Leviathan  
 To come ashore. Therefore, you men of Harfleur,  
 Take pity of your town, and of your people,  
 Whiles yet my soldiers are in my command;  
 Whiles yet the cool and temperate wind of grace  
 O'erblows<sup>r</sup> the filthy and contagious clouds  
 Of deadly murder, spoil, and villainy.  
 If not, why in a moment, look to see  
 The blind and bloody soldier with foul hand  
 Defile the locks of your shrill-shrieking daughters;  
 Your fathers taken by the silver beards,  
 And their most reverend heads dash'd to the walls;  
 Your naked infants spitted upon pikes;  
 Whiles the mad mothers with their howls confus'd  
 Do break the clouds, as did the wives of Jewry  
 At Herod's bloody-hunting slaughtermen.  
 What say you? will you yield, and this avoid?  
 Or, guilty in defence, be thus destroy'd?

*Gov.* Our expectation hath this day an end:  
 The Dauphin, whom of succour we entreated,  
 Returns us—that his powers are not yet ready  
 To raise so great a siege. Therefore, dread king,  
 We yield our town, and lives, to thy soft mercy:  
 Enter our gates; dispose of us, and ours;  
 For we no longer are defensible.

*K. Hen.* Open your gates.—Come uncle, Exeter,  
 Go you and enter Harfleur; there remain,  
 And fortify it strongly 'gainst the French:  
 Use mercy to them all. For us, dear uncle,—  
 The winter coming on, and sickness growing  
 Upon our soldiers,—we'll retire to Calais.

<sup>r</sup> *O'erblows*—] i. e. *Drives away, or keeps off*.—JOHNSON.

To-night in Harfleur will we be your guest ;  
To-morrow for the march are we address.<sup>s</sup>

[*Flourish.* *The King, &c. enter the town.*

SCENE IV.<sup>1</sup>

Rouen. *A Room in the Palace.*

Enter KATHARINE and ALICE.

Kath. *Alice, tu as esté en Angleterre, et tu parles bien le language.*

Alice. *Un peu, madame.*

Kath. *Je te prie, m'enseignez ; il faut que j'apprenne à parler. Comment appelez vous la main, en Anglois ?*

Alice. *La main ? elle est appelée, de hand.*

Kath. *De hand. Et les doigts ?*

Alice. *Les doigts ? ma foy, j'oublie les doigts ; mais je me souviendray. Les doigts ? je pense, qu'ils sont appelé de fingres ; ouy, de fingres.*

Kath. *La main, de hand ; les doigts, de fingres. Je pense, que je suis le bon escolier. J'ay gagné deux mots d'Anglois vistement. Comment appelez vous les ongles ?*

Alice. *Les ongles ? les appellons, de nails.*

Kath. *De nails. Escoutez ; dites moy, si je parle bien : de hand, de fingres, de nails.*

Alice. *C'est bien dit, madame ; il est fort bon Anglois.*

Kath. *Dites moy en Anglois, le bras.*

Alice. *De arm, madame.*

Kath. *Et le coude.*

Alice. *De elbow.*

Kath. *De elbow. Je n'en faitz la repetition de tous les mots, que vous m'avez appris dès à present.*

Alice. *Il est trop difficile, madame, comme je pense.*

<sup>s</sup> — address.] i. e. Prepared.

<sup>1</sup> Scene IV.] This scene is mean enough, when it is read ; but the grimaces of two French women, and the odd accent with which they uttered the English, made it divert upon the stage. It may be observed, that there is in it not only the French language, but the French spirit. Alice compliments the princess upon her knowledge of four words, and tells her that she pronounces like the English themselves. The princess suspects no deficiency in her instructress, nor the instructress in herself. Throughout the whole scene there may be found French servility, and French vanity.—JOHNSON.

Kath. *Excusez moy, Alice ; escoutez : De hand, de fingre, de nails, de arm, de bilbow.*

Alice. *De elbow, madame.*

Kath. *O Seigneur Dieu ! je m'en oublie ; De elbow. Comment appelez vous le col ?*

Alice. *De neck, madame.*

Kath. *De neck : Et le menton ?*

Alice. *De chin.*

Kath. *De sin. Le col, de neck : le menton, de sin.*

Alice. *Ouy. Sauf vostre honneur : en verité, vous prononces les mots aussi droict que les natifs d'Angleterre.*

Kath. *Je ne doute point d'apprendre par la grace de Dieu ; et en peu de temps.*

Alice. *N'avez vous pas deja oublié ce que je vous ay enseignée ?*

Kath. *Non, je reciteray à vous promptement. De hand, de fingre, de mails,—*

Alice. *De nails, madame.*

Kath. *De nails, de arme, de ilbow.*

Alice. *Sauf vostre honneur, de elbow.*

Kath. *Ainsi dis je ; de elbow, de neck, et de sin : Comment appelez vous le pieds et la robe ?*

Alice. *De foot, madame ; et de con.*

Kath. *De foot, et de con ? O Seigneur Dieu ! ces sont mots de son mauvais, corruptible, grosse, et impudique, et non pour les dames d'honneur d'user : Je ne voudrois prononcer ces mots devant les Seigneurs de France, pour tout le monde. Il faut de foot, et de con, neantmoins. Je reciterai une autre fois ma leçon ensemble : De hand, de fingre, de nails, de arm, de elbow, de neck, de sin, de foot, de con.*

Alice. *Excellent, madame !*

Kath. *C'est assez pour une fois ; allons nous a disner.*

[Exeunt.]

## SCENE V.

*The same. Another Room in the same.*

*Enter the French King, the Dauphin, Duke of BOURBON, the Constable of France, and others.*

*Fr. King.* 'Tis certain, he hath pass'd the river Some.

*Con.* And if he be not fought withal, my lord,  
Let us not live in France; let us quit all,  
And give our vineyards to a barbarous people.

*Dau.* *O Dieu vivant!* shall a few sprays of us,—  
The emptying of our fathers' luxury,<sup>u</sup>  
Our scions, put in wild and savage<sup>x</sup> stock,  
Spurt up so suddenly into the clouds,  
And overlook their grafters?

*Bow.* Normans, but bastard Normans, Norman bas-  
*Mort de-ma vie!* if they march along [tards!  
Unfought withal, but I will sell my dukedom,  
To buy a slobbery and a dirty farm  
In that nook-shotten<sup>y</sup> isle of Albion.

*Con.* *Dieu de batailles!* where have they this mettle?  
Is not their climate foggy, raw, and dull?  
On whom, as in despite, the sun looks pale,  
Killing their fruit with frowns? Can sodden water,  
A drench for sur-rein'd jades,<sup>z</sup> their barley broth,  
Decoct their cold blood to such valiant heat?  
And shall our quick blood, spirited with wine,  
Seem frosty? O, for the honour of our land,  
Let us not hang like roping icicles  
Upon our houses' thatch, whiles a more frosty people  
Sweat drops of gallant youth in our rich fields;  
Poor—we may call them, in their native lords.

<sup>u</sup> — *our fathers' luxury,*] In this place, as in others, *luxury* means *lust*.—  
JOHNSON.

<sup>x</sup> — *savage*—is here used in the French original sense, for *silvan*, *uncultivated*, the same with *wild*.—JOHNSON.

<sup>y</sup> *In that nook-shotten isle of Albion,*] *Shotten* signifies any thing *projected*: so *nook-shotten isle*, is an isle that shoots out into capes, promontories, and necks of land, the very figure of Great Britain.—WARBURTON.

<sup>z</sup> — *sur-rein'd*—] i. e. *Over-worked*: one that has been guided by the rein too long.

*Dau.* By faith and honour,  
Our madams mock at us; and plainly say,  
Our mettle is bred out: and they will give  
Their bodies to the lust of English youth,  
To new-store France with bastard warriors.

*Bour.* They bid us—to the English dancing-schools,  
And teach lavoltas high,<sup>a</sup> and swift corantos;  
Saying, our grace is only in our heels,  
And that we are most lofty runaways.

*Fr. King.* Where is Montjóy, the herald? speed him  
hence;

Let him greet England with our sharp defiance.—  
Up, princes; and, with spirit of honour edg'd,  
More sharper than your swords, hie to the field:  
Charles De-la-bret, high constable of France;  
You dukes of Orleans, Bourbon, and of Berry,  
Alençon, Brabant, Bar, and Burgundy;  
Jaques Chatillion, Rambures, Vaudemont,  
Beaumont, Grandpré, Roussi, and Fauconberg,  
Foix, Lestrade, Bouciqualt, and Charolois;  
High dukes, great princes, barons, lords, and knights,  
For your great seats, now quit you of great shames.  
Bar Harry England, that sweeps through our land  
With pennons<sup>b</sup> painted in the blood of Harfleur:  
Rush on his host, as doth the melted snow  
Upon the vallies: whose low vassal seat  
The Alps doth spit and void his rheum upon:  
Go down upon him,—you have power enough,—  
And in a captive chariot, into Rouën  
Bring him our prisoner.

*Con.* This becomes the great.  
Sorry am I, his numbers are so few,  
His soldiers sick, and famish'd in their march;  
For, I am sure, when he shall see our army,  
He'll drop his heart into the sink of fear,  
And, for<sup>c</sup> achievement, offer us his ransome.

<sup>a</sup> — *lavoltas high*,] A dance in which there was much turning and much capering.—HANMER.

<sup>b</sup> *With pennons*—] *Pennons* armorial were small flags, on which the arms, device, and motto of a knight were painted.—STEEVENS.

<sup>c</sup> — *for*—] i. e. *Instead of*.



*Fr. King.* Therefore, lord constable, haste on Montjóy;  
And let him say to England, that we send  
To know what willing ransome he will give.—  
Prince Dauphin, you shall stay with us in Roüen.

*Dau.* Not so, I do beseech your majesty.

*Fr. King.* Be patient, for you shall remain with us.—  
Now, forth, lord constable, and princes all;  
And quickly bring us word of England's fall. [*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE VI.

*The English Camp in Picardy.*

*Enter GOWER and FLUELLEN.*

*Gow.* How now, captain Fluellen? come you from the bridge?<sup>a</sup>

*Flu.* I assure you, there is very excellent service committed at the pridge.

*Gow.* Is the duke of Exeter safe?

*Flu.* The duke of Exeter is as magnanimous as Agamemnon; and a man that I love and honour with my soul, and my heart, and my duty, and my life, and my livings, and my uttermost powers: he is not, (God be praised and plessed!) any hurt in the 'orld; but keeps the pridge most valiantly, with excellent discipline. There is an ensign there at the pridge,—I think, in my very conscience, he is as valiant as Mark Antony; and he is a man of no estimation in the 'orld: but I did see him do gallant service.

*Gow.* What do you call him?

*Flu.* He is called—ancient Pistol.

*Gow.* I know him not.

<sup>a</sup> — come you from the bridge?] After Henry had passed the Somme, the French endeavoured to intercept him in his passage to Calais; and for that purpose attempted to break down the only bridge that was over the small river Ternois, at Blangi, over which it was necessary for Henry to pass. But Henry, having notice of their design, sent a part of his troops before him, who, attacking and putting the French to flight, preserved the bridge, till the whole English army arrived and passed over it.—MALONE.

*Enter* PISTOL.

*Flu.* Do you not know him? Here comes the man.

*Pist.* Captain, I thee beseech to do me favours: The duke of Exeter doth love thee well.

*Flu.* Ay, I praise Got; and I have merited some love at his hands.

*Pist.* Bardolph, a soldier, firm and sound of heart,  
Of buxom valour, hath,—by cruel fate,  
And giddy fortune's furious fickle wheel,  
That goddess blind,  
That stands upon the rolling restless stone,—

*Flu.* By your patience ancient Pistol. Fortune is painted plind, with a muffer<sup>e</sup> before her eyes; to signify to you that fortune is plind: And she is painted also with a wheel; to signify to you, which is the moral of it, that she is turning, and inconstant, and variations, and mutabilities: and her foot, look you, is fixed upon a spherical stone, which rolls, and rolls, and rolls;—In good truth, the poet is make a most excellent description of fortune: fortune, look you, is an excellent moral.

*Pist.* Fortune is Bardolph's foe, and frowns on him;  
For he hath stol'n a *pix*,<sup>f</sup> and hanged must 'a be.  
A damned death!

Let gallows gape for dog, let man go free,  
And let not hemp his wind-pipe suffocate;  
But Exeter hath given the doom of death,  
For *pix* of little price.

Therefore, go speak, the duke will hear thy voice;  
And let not Bardolph's vital thread be cut  
With edge of penny cord, and vile reproach:  
Speak, captain, for his life, and I will thee requite.

*Flu.* Ancient Pistol, I do partly understand your meaning.

*Pist.* Why then rejoice therefore.

<sup>e</sup> — a *muffer*]—was a fold of linen which partially covered a woman's face.—STEEVENS.

<sup>f</sup> — a *pix*,] Holinshed says, "a foolish soldier stole a *pixe*, (i. e. a little chest, in which the consecrated host was used to be kept,) out of a church, for which cause he was apprehended, and the king would not once more remove till the *box* was restored, and the offender *strangled*.—MALONE.

*Flu.* Certainly, ancient, it is not a thing to rejoice at: for if, look you, he were my brother, I would desire the duke to use his goot pleasure, and put him to executions; for disciplines ought to be used.

*Pist.* Die and be damn'd; and *figo* for thy friendship!

*Flu.* It is well.

*Pist.* The fig of Spain! [*Exit* PISTOL.

*Flu.* Very good.

*Gow.* Why, this is an arrant counterfeit rascal; I remember him now; a bawd; a cutpurse.

*Flu.* I'll assure you, 'a utter'd as prave 'ords at the pridge, as you shall see in a summer's day: But it is very well; what he has spoke to me, that is well, I warrant you, when time is serve.

*Gow.* Why, 'tis a gull, a fool, a rogue; that now and then goes to the wars, to grace himself, at his return into London, under the form of a soldier. And such fellows are perfect in great commanders' names: and they will learn you by rote, where services were done;—at such and such a sconce,<sup>h</sup> at such a breach, at such a convoy; who came off bravely, who was shot, who disgraced, what terms the enemy stood on; and this they con perfectly in the phrase of war, which they trick up with new-tuned oaths: And what a beard of the general's cut,<sup>i</sup> and a horrid suit<sup>k</sup> of the camp, will do among foaming bottles, and ale-washed wits, is wonderful to be thought on! but you must learn to know such slanders of the age, or else you may be marvellous mistook.

*Flu.* I tell you what captain Gower;—I do perceive, he

<sup>g</sup> *The fig of Spain!*] This familiar term of contempt has been already explained, *Henry IV.* p. 2. Mr. Steevens thinks there is an allusion here to the custom of giving poisoned figs to those who were the objects either of Spanish or Italian revenge.

<sup>h</sup> — a *sconce*.] Appears to have been some hasty, rude, inconsiderable kind of fortification.—STEEVENS.

<sup>i</sup> — a *beard of the general's cut*.] It appears from an old ballad inserted in a miscellany, entitled *Le Prince d'Amour*, 8vo. 1660, that our ancestors were very curious in the fashion of their beards, and that a certain *cut* or form was appropriated to the soldier, the bishop, the judge, the clown, &c. The *spade-beard*, and perhaps the *stiletto-beard* also, was appropriated to the first of these characters. It is observable that our author's patron, Henry earl of Southampton, who spent much of his time in camps, is drawn with the latter of these beards; and his unfortunate friend, Lord Essex, is constantly represented with the former.—MALONE.

<sup>k</sup> — *suit*.] So the folio. The quartos, 1600, &c. read *shout*.

is not the man that he would gladly make show to the 'orld he is ; if I find a hole in his coat, I will tell him my mind. [*Drum heard.*] Hark you, the king is coming ; and I must speak with him from the pridge.<sup>1</sup>

*Enter King HENRY, GLOSTER, and Soldiers.*

*Flu.* Got pless your majesty !

*K. Hen.* How now, Fluellen ? camest thou from the bridge ?

*Flu.* Ay, so please your majesty. The duke of Exeter has very gallantly maintained the pridge : the French is gone off, look you ; and there is gallant and most prave passages : Marry, th'athversary was have possession of the pridge ; but he was enforced to retire, and the duke of Exeter is master of the pridge : I can tell your majesty, the duke is a prave man.

*K. Hen.* What men have you lost, Fluellen ?

*Flu.* The perdition of th'athversary hath been very great, very reasonable great : marry, for my part, I think the duke hath lost never a man, but one that is like to be executed for robbing a church, one Bardolph, if your majesty know the man ; his face is all bubukles, and whelks, and knobs, and flames of fire ; and his lips plows at his nose, and it is like a coal of fire, sometimes plue, and sometimes red ; but his nose is executed, and his fire's out.

*K. Hen.* We would have all such offenders so cut off : —and we give express charge, that, in our marches through the country, there be nothing compelled from the villages, nothing taken but paid for ; none of the French upbraided, or abused in disdainful language : For when lenity and cruelty play for a kingdom, the gentler gamester is the soonest winner.

*Tucket sounds. Enter MONTJOY.<sup>m</sup>*

*Mont.* You know me by my habit.<sup>n</sup>

<sup>1</sup> — *I must speak with him from the pridge.*] Fluellen, who comes from the bridge, wants to acquaint the king with the transactions that had happened there.—THEOBALD.

<sup>m</sup> *Enter Montjoy.*] *Mont-joie* is the title of the first king at arms in France, as *Garter* is in our own country.—STEEVENS.

<sup>n</sup> — *by my habit.*] That is, by his herald's coat. The person of a herald

*K. Hen.* Well then, I know thee; What shall I know of thee?

*Mont.* My master's mind.

*K. Hen.* Unfold it.

*Mont.* Thus says my king: Say thou to Harry of England, Though we seemed dead, we did but sleep; Advantage is a better soldier, than rashness. Tell him, we could have rebuked him at Harfleur: but that we thought not good to bruise an injury, till it were full ripe;—now we speak upon our cue,<sup>o</sup> and our voice is imperial: England shall repent his folly, see his weakness, and admire our sufferance. Bid him, therefore, consider of his ransome; which must proportion the losses we have borne, the subjects we have lost, the disgrace we have digested; which, in weight to reanswer, his pettiness would bow under. For our losses, his exchequer is too poor; for the effusion of our blood, the muster of his kingdom too faint a number; and for our disgrace, his own person, kneeling at our feet, but a weak and worthless satisfaction. To this add—defiance: and tell him, for conclusion, he hath betrayed his followers, whose condemnation is pronounced. So far my king and master; so much my office.

*K. Hen.* What is thy name? I know thy quality.

*Mont.* Montjoy.

*K. Hen.* Thou dost thy office fairly. Turn thee back, And tell thy king,—I do not seek him now; But could be willing to march on to Calais Without impeachment:<sup>p</sup> for, to say the sooth, (Though 'tis no wisdom to confess so much Unto an enemy of craft and vantage,) My people are with sickness much enfeebled; My numbers lessen'd: and those few I have, Almost no better than so many French; Who when they were in health, I tell thee, herald, I thought, upon one pair of English legs Did march three Frenchmen.—Yet, forgive me, God, That I do brag thus!—this your air of France

being inviolable, was distinguished in those times of formality by a peculiar dress, which is likewise yet worn on particular occasions.—JOHNSON.

<sup>o</sup> — cue,] i. e. The final or catch word of a speech.

<sup>p</sup> — impeachment:] i. e. Hinderance. *Empêchement*, French.

Hath blown that vice in me; I must repent.  
 Go, therefore, tell thy master, here I am;  
 My ransom, is this frail and worthless trunk;  
 My army, but a weak and sickly guard;  
 Yet, God before, tell him we will come on,  
 Though France himself, and such another neighbour,  
 Stand in our way. There's for thy labour, Montjoy.  
 Go, bid thy master well advise himself:  
 If we pass, we will; if we be hinder'd,  
 We shall your tawny ground with your red blood  
 Discolour: and so, Montjoy, fare you well.  
 The sum of all our answer is but this:  
 We would not seek a battle, as we are;  
 Nor as we are, we say, we will not shun it;  
 So tell your master.

*Mont.* I shall deliver so. Thanks to your highness.  
 [Exit MONTJOY.]

*Glo.* I hope they will not come upon us now.

*K. Hen.* We are in God's hand, brother, not in theirs.  
 March to the bridge; it now draws toward night,—  
 Beyond the river we'll encamp ourselves;  
 And on to-morrow bid them march away. [Exeunt.]

## SCENE VII.

*The French Camp near Agincourt.*

*Enter the Constable of France, the Lord RAMBURES, the Duke of Orleans, Dauphin, and others.*

*Con.* Tut! I have the best armour of the world.—  
 'Would, it were day!

*Orl.* You have an excellent armour; but let my horse  
 have his due.

*Con.* It is the best horse of Europe.

*Orl.* Will it never be morning?

*Dau.* My lord of Orleans, and my lord high constable,  
 you talk of horse and armour,—

*Orl.* You are as well provided of both, as any prince in  
 the world.

*Dau.* What a long night is this!—I will not change

my horse with any that treads but on four pasterns. *Ca, ha!* He bounds from the earth, as if his entrails were hairs;<sup>4</sup> *le cheval volant*, the Pegasus, *qui a les narines de feu!* When I bestride him, I soar, I am a hawk: he trots the air; the earth sings when he touches it; the basest horn of his hoof is more musical than the pipe of Hermes.

*Orl.* He's of the colour of the nutmeg.

*Dau.* And of the heat of the ginger. It is a beast for Perseus: he is pure air and fire; and the dull elements of earth and water never appear in him, but only in patient stillness, while his rider mounts him: he is, indeed, a horse; and all other jades you may call—beasts.

*Con.* Indeed, my lord, it is a most absolute and excellent horse.

*Dau.* It is the prince of palfreys; his neigh is like the bidding of a monarch, and his countenance enforces homage.

*Orl.* No more, cousin.

*Dau.* Nay, the man hath no wit, that cannot, from the rising of the lark to the lodging of the lamb, vary deserved praise on my palfrey: it is a theme as fluent as the sea; turn the sands into eloquent tongues, and my horse is argument for them all: 'tis a subject for a sovereign to reason on, and for a sovereign's sovereign to ride on: and for the world (familiar to us, and unknown,) to lay apart their particular functions, and wonder at him. I once writ a sonnet in his praise, and began thus: *Wonder of nature,*—

*Orl.* I have heard a sonnet begin so to one's mistress.

*Dau.* Then did they imitate that which I composed to my courser; for my horse is my mistress.

*Orl.* Your mistress bears well.

*Dau.* Me well; which is the prescript praise and perfection of a good and particular mistress.

*Con.* *Ma foy!* the other day, methought, your mistress shrewdly shook your back.

*Dau.* So, perhaps, did yours.

*Con.* Mine was not bridled.

<sup>4</sup> *He bounds from the earth, as if his entrails were hairs:]* Alluding to the bounding of the tennis-balls, which were stuffed with hair.—WARBURTON.

*Dau.* O! then, belike, she was old and gentle; and you rode, like a kerne of Ireland, your French hose off, and in your strait trossers.<sup>r</sup>

*Con.* You have good judgment in horsemanship.

*Dau.* Be warned by me then: they that ride so, and ride not warily, fall into foul bogs; I had rather have my horse to my mistress.

*Con.* I had as lief have my mistress a jade.

*Dau.* I tell thee, constable, my mistress wears her own hair.

*Con.* I could make as true a boast as that, if I had a sow to my mistress.

*Dau.* *Le chien est retourné à son propre vomissement, et la truie lavée au bourbier:* thou makest use of any thing.

*Con.* Yet do I not use my horse for my mistress; or any such proverb, so little kin to the purpose.

*Ram.* My lord constable, the armour, that I saw in your tent to-night, are those stars, or suns, upon it?

*Con.* Stars, my lord.

*Dau.* Some of them will fall to-morrow, I hope.

*Con.* And yet my sky shall not want.

*Dau.* That may be, for you bear a many superfluously; and 'twere more honour, some were away.

*Con.* Even as your horse bears your praises; who would trot as well, were some of your brags dismounted.

*Dau.* 'Would I were able to load him with his desert! Will it never be day? I will trot to-morrow a mile, and my way shall be paved with English faces.

*Con.* I will not say so, for fear I should be faced out of my way: But I would it were morning, for I would fain be about the ears of the English.

*Ram.* Who will go to hazard with me for twenty English prisoners?

*Con.* You must first go yourself to hazard, ere you have them.

*Dau.* 'Tis midnight, I'll go arm myself. [Exit.

<sup>r</sup> — like a kerne of Ireland, your French hose off, and in your strait trossers.] A kerne was a foot soldier in the Irish troops always represented as very poor and ragged.—NARES. Trossers are breeches and stockings made to set as close to the body as can be.—TOLLET. It has been suggested, perhaps rightly, that strait trossers in this place means the bare legs.



*Orl.* The Dauphin longs for morning.

*Ram.* He longs to eat the English.

*Con.* I think he will eat all he kills.

*Orl.* By the white hand of my lady, he's a gallant prince.

*Con.* Swear by her foot, that she may tread out the oath.

*Orl.* He is, simply, the most active gentleman of France.

*Con.* Doing is activity: and he will still be doing.

*Orl.* He never did harm, that I heard of.

*Con.* Nor will do none to-morrow: he will keep that good name still.

*Orl.* I know him to be valiant.

*Con.* I was told that, by one that knows him better than you.

*Orl.* What's he?

*Con.* Marry, he told me so himself; and he said, he cared not who knew it.

*Orl.* He needs not, it is no hidden virtue in him.

*Con.* By my faith, sir, but it is; never any body saw it, but his lackey: 'tis a hooded valour; and when it appears, it will bate.<sup>s</sup>

*Orl.* Ill will never said well.

*Con.* I will cap that proverb with—There is flattery in friendship.

*Orl.* And I will take up that with—Give the devil his due.

*Con.* Well placed; there stands your friend for the devil: have at the very eye of that proverb, with—A pox of the devil.

*Orl.* You are the better at proverbs, by how much—A fool's bolt is soon shot.

<sup>s</sup> — 'tis a hooded valour; and, when it appears, it will bate.] This pun is taken from the terms used in falconry. The whole sense and sarcasm depends upon the equivoque of one word, viz. *bate*, in sound, but not in orthography, answering to the term *bait* in falconry. When the hawk is *unhooded*, her first action is *baiting*, that is flapping her wings, as a preparation to her flying at the game. The hawk wants no courage, but invariably *baits* upon taking off the hood. The Constable sarcastically says of the Dauphin's courage, "'Tis a hooded valour;" (i. e. it is hid from every body but his lackey,) and when it *appears* (by preparing to engage the enemy), it will *bate* (i. e. fall off, evaporate).—*Supplement to Gent. Mag.* 1739, p. 1199.

*Con.* You have shot over.

*Orl.* 'Tis not the first time you were overshot.

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* My lord high constable, the English lie within fifteen hundred paces of your tent.

*Con.* Who hath measured the ground?

*Mess.* The lord Grandpré.

*Con.* A valiant and most expert gentleman.—Would it were day!—Alas, poor Harry of England! he longs not for the dawning, as we do.

*Orl.* What a wretched and peevish<sup>t</sup> fellow is this king of England, to mope with his fat-brained followers so far out of his knowledge!

*Con.* If the English had any apprehension, they would run away.

*Orl.* That they lack; for if their heads had any intellectual armour, they could never wear such heavy head-pieces.

*Ram.* That island of England breeds very valiant creatures; their mastiffs are of unmatchable courage.

*Orl.* Foolish curs! that run winking into the mouth of a Russian bear, and have their heads crushed like rotten apples: You may as well say,—that's a valiant flea, that dare eat his breakfast on the lip of a lion.

*Con.* Just, just; and the men do sympathize with the mastiffs, in robustious and rough coming on, leaving their wits with their wives: and then give them great meals of beef, and iron and steel, they will eat like wolves, and fight like devils.

*Orl.* Ay, but these English are shrewdly out of beef.

*Con.* Then we shall find to-morrow—they have only stomachs to eat, and none to fight. Now is it time to arm: Come, shall we about it?

*Orl.* It is now two o'clock: but, let me see,—by ten, We shall have each a hundred Englishmen. [*Exeunt.*

<sup>t</sup> — peevish—] In ancient language, signified—foolish.

## ACT IV.

*Enter* CHORUS.

*Chor.* Now entertain conjecture of a time,  
 When creeping murmur, and the poring dark,  
 Fills the wide vessel of the universe.  
 From camp to camp, through the foul womb of night,  
 The hum of either army stilly<sup>u</sup> sounds,  
 That the fix'd sentinels almost receive  
 The secret whispers of each other's watch :  
 Fire answers fire : and through their paly flames  
 Each battle sees the other's umber'd face :<sup>x</sup>  
 Steed threatens steed, in high and boastful neighs  
 Piercing the night's dull ear; and from the tents,  
 The armourers, accomplishing the knights,  
 With busy hammers closing rivets up,  
 Give dreadful note of preparation.  
 The country cocks do crow, the clocks do toll,  
 And the third hour of drowsy morning name.  
 Proud of their numbers, and secure in soul,  
 The confident and over-lusty<sup>y</sup> French  
 Do the low-rated English play at dice ;  
 And chide the cripple tardy-gaited night,  
 Who, like a foul and ugly witch, doth limp  
 So tediously away. The poor condemned English,  
 Like sacrifices, by their watchful fires  
 Sit patiently, and inly ruminate  
 The morning's danger : and their gesture sad,  
 Investing lank-lean cheeks, and warworn coats,  
 Presenteth them unto the gazing moon  
 So many horrid ghosts. O, now, who will behold  
 The royal captain of this ruin'd band,  
 Walking from watch to watch, from tent to tent,

<sup>u</sup> — stilly—] i. e. Gently, lowly.

<sup>x</sup> Each battle sees the other's umber'd face ;] Holinshed says that the distance between the two armies was but two hundred and fifty paces.—By umber'd the poet means discoloured by the gleam of the fires. *Umbur* is a dark yellow earth, brought from Umbria in Italy, which being mixed with water, produces such a dusky yellow colour as the gleam of fire by night gives to the countenance.—MALONE.

<sup>y</sup> — over-lusty—] i. e. Over-saucy.

Let him cry—Praise and glory on his head!  
 For forth he goes, and visits all his host;  
 Bids them good-morrow, with a modest smile;  
 And calls them—brothers, friends, and countrymen.  
 Upon his royal face there is no note,  
 How dread an army hath enrounded him;  
 Nor doth he dedicate one jot of colour  
 Unto the weary and all-watched night:  
 But freshly looks, and overbears attaint,  
 With cheerful semblance, and sweet majesty  
 That every wretch, pining and pale before,  
 Beholding him, plucks comfort from his looks:  
 A largess universal, like the sun,  
 His liberal eye doth give to every one,  
 Thawing cold fear. Then, mean and gentle all,  
 Behold, as may unworthiness define,  
 A little touch of Harry in the night:  
 And so our scene must to the battle fly;  
 Where, (O for pity!) we shall much disgrace—  
 With four or five most vile and ragged foils,  
 Right ill dispos'd, in brawl ridiculous,—  
 The name of Agincourt: Yet, sit and see;  
 Minding<sup>z</sup> true things, by what their mockeries be. [*Exit.*]

## SCENE I.

*The English Camp at Agincourt.*

*Enter King HENRY, BEDFORD, and GLOSTER.*

*K. Hen.* Gloster, 'tis true, that we are in great danger;  
 The greater therefore should our courage be.—  
 Good morrow, brother Bedford.—God Almighty!  
 There is some soul of goodness in things evil,  
 Would men observingly distil it out;  
 For our bad neighbour makes us early stirrers,  
 Which is both healthful, and good husbandry:  
 Besides, they are our outward consciences,  
 And preachers to us all; admonishing,  
 That we should dress us fairly for our end.

<sup>z</sup> *Minding—*] i. e. *Calling to remembrance.*

Thus may we gather honey from the weed,  
And make a moral of the devil himself.

*Enter ERPINGHAM.<sup>a</sup>*

Good morrow, old sir Thomas Erpingham :  
A good soft pillow for that good white head  
Were better than a churlish turf of France.

*Erp.* Not so, my liege ; this lodging likes me better,  
Since I may say—now lie I like a king.

*K. Hen.* 'Tis good for men to love their present pains,  
Upon example ; so the spirit is eased :  
And, when the mind is quicken'd, out of doubt,  
The organs, though defunct and dead before,  
Break up their drowsy grave, and newly move  
With casted slough and fresh legerity.<sup>b</sup>  
Lend me thy cloak, sir Thomas.—Brothers both,  
Commend me to the princes in our camp ;  
Do my good morrow to them, and anon,  
Desire them all to my pavilion.

*Glo.* We shall, my liege.

*[Exeunt GLOSTER and BEDFORD.]*

*Erp.* Shall I attend your grace ?

*K. Hen.* No, my good knight ;  
Go with my brothers to my lords of England :  
I and my bosom must debate a while,  
And then I would no other company.

*Erp.* The Lord in heaven, bless thee, noble Harry !

*[Exit ERPINGHAM.]*

*K. Hen.* God-a-mercy, old heart ! thou speakest cheer-  
fully.

*Enter PISTOL.*

*Pist.* *Qui va là ?*

*K. Hen.* A friend.

<sup>a</sup> *Sir Thomas Erpingham.*] He came over with Bolingbroke from Bretagne and was one of the commissioners to receive King Richard's abdication. In Henry the Fifth's time, he was warden of Dover Castle.—EDWARDS and STEEVENS.

<sup>b</sup> *With casted slough, &c.*] *Slough* is the skin which the serpent annually throws off, and by the change of which he is supposed to regain new vigour and fresh youth. *Legerity* is lightness, nimbleness.—JOHNSON.

*Pist.* Discuss unto me ; Art thou an officer ?  
Or art thou base, common, and popular ?

*K. Hen.* I am a gentleman of a company.

*Pist.* Trailest thou the puissant pike ?

*K. Hen.* Even so : What are you ?

*Pist.* As good a gentleman as the emperor.

*K. Hen.* Then you are a better than the king.

*Pist.* The king's a bawcock, and a heart of gold,  
A lad of life, an imp<sup>c</sup> of fame ;  
Of parents good, of fist most valiant :  
I kiss his dirty shoe, and from my heart-strings  
I love the lovely bully. What's thy name ?

*K. Hen.* Harry *le Roy*.

*Pist.* *Le Roy!* a Cornish name ; art thou of Cornish  
crew ?

*K. Hen.* No, I am a Welshman.

*Pist.* Knowest thou Fluellen ?

*K. Hen.* Yes.

*Pist.* Tell him, I'll knock his leek about his pate,  
Upon saint Davy's day.

*K. Hen.* Do not you wear your dagger in your cap that  
day, lest he knock that about yours.

*Pist.* Art thou his friend ?

*K. Hen.* And his kinsman too.

*Pist.* The *figo* for thee, then !

*K. Hen.* I thank you : God be with you !

*Pist.* My name is Pistol called.

[*Exit.*]

*K. Hen.* It sorts<sup>d</sup> well with your fierceness.

*Enter FLUELLEN and GOWER, severally.*

*Gow.* Captain Fluellen !

*Flu.* So! in the name of Cheshu Christ, speak lower.<sup>c</sup>  
It is the greatest admiration of the universal 'orld, when  
the true and auncient prerogatifes and laws of the wars is  
not kept : if you would take the pains but to examine the  
wars of Pompey the Great, you shall find, I warrant you,

<sup>c</sup> — *imp*—] This word in its primitive sense means *shoot*, it is used by  
Shakspeare in the sense of *son*.

<sup>d</sup> — *It sorts*—] i. e. *It agrees*.

<sup>e</sup> — *lower*.] The folio reads *fewer*.

that there is no tiddle taddle, or pibble pabble, in Pompey's camp; I warrant you, you shall find the ceremonies of the wars, and the cares of it, and the forms of it, and the sobriety of it, and the modesty of it, to be otherwise.

*Gow.* Why, the enemy is loud; you heard him all night.

*Flu.* If the enemy is an ass, and a fool, and a prating coxcomb, is it meet, think you, that we should also, look you, be an ass, and a fool, and a prating coxcomb; in your own conscience now?

*Gow.* I will speak lower.

*Flu.* I pray you, and beseech you that you will.

[*Exeunt GOWER and FLUELLEN.*]

*K. Hen.* Though it appear a little out of fashion,  
There is much care and valour in this Welshman.

*Enter BATES, COURT, and WILLIAMS.*

*Court.* Brother John Bates, is not than the morning which breaks yonder?

*Bates.* I think it be: but we have no great cause to desire the approach of day.

*Will.* We see yonder the beginning of the day, but, I think, we shall never see the end of it.—Who goes there?

*K. Hen.* A friend.

*Will.* Under what captain serve you?

*K. Hen.* Under sir Thomas Erpingham.

*Will.* A good old commander, and a most kind gentleman: I pray you, what thinks he of our estate?

*K. Hen.* Even as men wrecked upon a sand, that look to be washed off the next tide.

*Bates.* He hath not told his thought to the king?

*K. Hen.* No; nor it is not meet he should. For, though I speak it to you, I think, the king is but a man, as I am: the violet smells to him, as it doth to me; the element shows to him, as it doth to me; all his senses have but human conditions:<sup>f</sup> his ceremonies laid by, in his nakedness he appears but a man; and though his affections are

<sup>f</sup> — conditions:]—are qualities. The meaning is, that objects are represented by his senses to him, as to other men by theirs. What is danger to another is danger likewise to him; and, when he feels *fear*, it is like the fear of meaner mortals.—JOHNSON.

higher mounted than ours, yet, when they stoop, they stoop with the like wing; therefore when he sees reason of fears, as we do, his fears, out of doubt, be of the same relish as ours are: Yet, in reason, no man should possess him with any appearance of fear, lest he, by showing it, should dishearten his army.

*Bates.* He may show what outward courage he will: but, I believe, as cold a night as 'tis, he could wish himself in the Thames up to the neck; and so I would he were, and I by him, at all adventures, so we were quit here.

*K. Hen.* By my troth, I will speak my conscience of the king; I think, he would not wish himself any where but where he is.

*Bates.* Then, 'would he were here alone; so should he be sure to be ransomed, and a many poor men's lives saved.

*K. Hen.* I dare say, you love him not so ill, to wish him here alone; howsoever you speak this, to feel other men's minds: Methinks, I could not die any where so contented, as in the king's company; his cause being just, and his quarrel honourable.

*Will.* That's more than we know.

*Bates.* Ay, or more than we should seek after; for we know enough, if we know we are the king's subjects; if his cause be wrong, our obedience to the king wipes the crime of it out of us.

*Will.* But if the cause be not good, the king himself hath a heavy reckoning to make; when all those legs, and arms, and heads, chopped off in a battle, shall join together at the latter day, and cry all—We died at such place; some, swearing; some, crying for a surgeon; some, upon their wives left poor behind them; some, upon the debts they owe; some, upon their children rawly left.<sup>s</sup> I am afeard there are few die well, that die in battle; for how can they charitably dispose of any thing, when blood is their argument? Now, if these men do not die well, it will be a black matter for the king that led them to it; whom to disobey, were against all proportion of subjection.

<sup>s</sup> — rawly left.] i. e. Left young and helpless.—RITSON.



*K. Hen.* So, if a son, that is by his father sent about merchandise, do sinfully miscarry upon the sea, the imputation of his wickedness, by your rule, should be imposed upon his father that sent him: or if a servant, under his master's command, transporting a sum of money, be assailed by robbers, and die in many irreconciled iniquities, you may call the business of the master the author of the servant's damnation:—But this is not so: the king is not bound to answer the particular endings of his soldiers, the father of his son, nor the master of his servant; for they purpose not their death, when they purpose their services. Besides, there is no king, be his cause never so spotless, if it come to the arbitrement of swords, can try it out with all unspotted soldiers. Some, peradventure, have on them the guilt of premeditated and contrived murder: some, of beguiling virgins with the broken seals of perjury; some, making the wars their bulwark, that have before gored the gentle bosom of peace with pillage and robbery. Now, if these men have defeated the law, and outrun native punishment,<sup>h</sup> though they can outstrip men, they have no wings to fly from God: war is his beadle, war is his vengeance; so that here men are punished, for before-breach of the king's laws, in now the king's quarrel: where they feared the death, they have borne life away; and where they would be safe, they perish: Then if they die unprovided, no more is the king guilty of their damnation, than he was before guilty of those impieties for the which they are now visited. Every subject's duty is the king's; but every subject's soul is his own.<sup>i</sup> Therefore should every soldier in the wars do as every sick man in his bed, wash every môte out of his conscience: and dying so, death is to him advantage; or not dying, the time was blessedly lost, wherein such preparation was gained: and, in him that escapes, it were not sin to think, that making God so free an offer, he let him outlive that day to see his greatness, and to teach others how they should prepare.

<sup>h</sup> — native punishment,] That is, punishment in their native country.—HEATH.

<sup>i</sup> Every subjects duty, &c.] This is a very just distinction, and the whole argument is well followed, and properly concluded.—JOHNSON.

*Will.* 'Tis certain, every man that dies ill, the ill is upon his own head, the king is not to answer for it.

*Bates.* I do not desire he should answer for me; and yet I determine to fight lustily for him.

*K. Hen.* I myself heard the king say, he would not be ransomed.

*Will.* Ay, he said so, to make us fight cheerfully: but, when our throats are cut, he may be ransomed, and we ne'er the wiser.

*K. Hen.* If I live to see it, I will never trust his word after.

*Will.* 'Mass, you'll pay him<sup>k</sup> then! That's a perilous shot out of an elder gun, that a poor and private displeasure can do against a monarch! you may as well go about to turn the sun to ice, with fanning in his face with a peacock's feather. You'll never trust his word after! come, 'tis a foolish saying.

*K. Hen.* Your reproof is something too round;<sup>l</sup> I should be angry with you, if the time were convenient.

*Will.* Let it be a quarrel between us, if you live.

*K. Hen.* I embrace it.

*Will.* How shall I know thee again?

*K. Hen.* Give me any gage of thine, and I will wear it in my bonnet: then, if ever thou darest acknowledge it, I will make it my quarrel.

*Will.* Here's my glove; give me another of thine.

*K. Hen.* There.

*Will.* This will I also wear in my cap: if ever thou come to me and say, after to-morrow, *This is my glove*, by this hand, I will take thee a box on the ear.

*K. Hen.* If ever I live to see it, I will challenge it.

*Will.* Thou darest as well be hanged.

*K. Hen.* Well, I will do it, though I take thee in the king's company.

*Will.* Keep thy word: fare thee well.

*Bates.* Be friends, you English fools, be friends; we have French quarrels enough, if you could tell how to reckon.

<sup>k</sup> — pay him—] i. e. Punish him.

<sup>l</sup> — too round;] i. e. Too unceremonious.

*K. Hen.* Indeed, the French may lay twenty French crowns<sup>m</sup> to one, they will beat us; for they bear them on their shoulders: But it is no English treason, to cut French crowns; and, to-morrow, the king himself will be a clipper. [Exeunt Soldiers.]

Upon the king!<sup>n</sup> let us our lives, our souls,  
 Our debts, our careful wives, our children, and  
 Our sins, lay on the king;—we must bear all.  
 O hard condition! twin-born with greatness,  
 Subjected to the breath of every fool,  
 Whose sense no more can feel but his own wringing!  
 What infinite heart's ease must king's neglect,  
 That private men enjoy?  
 And what have kings, that privates have not too,  
 Save ceremony, save general ceremony?  
 And what art thou, thou idol ceremony?  
 What kind of god art thou, that suffer'st more  
 Of mortal griefs, than do thy worshippers?  
 What are thy rents? what are thy comings-in?  
 O ceremony, show me but thy worth!  
 What is the soul of adoration?  
 Art thou aught else but place, degree, and form,  
 Creating awe and fear in other men?  
 Wherein thou art less happy being fear'd  
 Than they in fearing.  
 What drink'st thou oft, instead of homage sweet,  
 But poison'd flattery? O, be sick, great greatness,  
 And bid thy ceremony give thee cure!  
 Think'st thou, the fiery fever will go out  
 With titles blown from adulation?  
 Will it give place to flexure and low bending?  
 Canst thou, when thou command'st the beggar's knee,  
 Command the health of it? No, thou proud dream,  
 That play'st so subtly with a king's repose;  
 I am a king, that find thee; and I know,

<sup>m</sup> — twenty French crowns—] The conceit here turns upon the equivocal sense of *crown*, which signifies either a *coin* or a *head*.—TYRWHITT.

<sup>n</sup> Upon the king! &c.] There is something very striking and solemn in this soliloquy, into which the king breaks immediately as soon as he is left alone. Something like this, on less occasions, every breast has felt. Reflection and seriousness rush upon the mind upon the separation of a gay company, and especially after forced and unwilling merriment.—JOHNSON.

'Tis not the balm, the sceptre, and the ball,  
 The sword, the mace, the crown imperial,  
 The enter-tissued robe of gold and pearl,  
 The farced title running<sup>o</sup> 'fore the king,  
 The throne he sits on, nor the tide of pomp  
 That beats upon the high shore of this world,  
 No, not all these, thrice-gorgeous ceremony,  
 Not all these, laid in bed majestical,  
 Can sleep so soundly as the wretched slave;<sup>p</sup>  
 Who, with a body fill'd, and vacant mind,  
 Gets him to rest, cramm'd with distressful bread;  
 Never sees horrid night, the child of hell;  
 But, like a lackey, from the rise to set,  
 Sweats in the eye of Phœbus, and all night  
 Sleeps in Elysium; next day, after dawn,  
 Doth rise, and help Hyperion to his horse;  
 And follows so the ever-running year  
 With profitable labour, to his grave:  
 And, but for ceremony, such a wretch,  
 Winding up days with toil, and nights with sleep,  
 Had the fore-hand and vantage of a king.  
 The slave, a member of the country's peace,  
 Enjoys it; but in gross brain little wots,  
 What watch the king keeps to maintain the peace,  
 Whose hours the peasant best advantages.<sup>q</sup>

*Enter* ERPINGHAM.

*Erp.* My lord, your nobles, jealous of your absence,  
 Seek through your camp to find you.

*K. Hen.*

Good old knight,

<sup>o</sup> — farced title running, &c.] *Fareed* is stuffed. The tumid puffy titles with which a king's name is always introduced. This, I think, is the sense.—  
 JOHNSON.

<sup>p</sup> Can sleep so soundly, &c.] These lines are exquisitely pleasing. *To sweat in the eye of Phœbus*, and *to sleep in Elysium*, are expressions very poetical.—  
 JOHNSON.

<sup>q</sup> — but—little wots,  
 What watch the king keeps to maintain the peace,  
 Whose hours the peasant best advantages.] The sense of this passage, which is expressed with some slight obscurity, seems to be—*He little knows at the expense of how much royal vigilance, that peace, which brings most advantage to the peasant, is maintained.* To advantage is a verb elsewhere used by Shakspeare.—  
 JOHNSON.

Collect them all together at my tent :

I'll be before thee.

*Erp.* I shall do't, my lord. [*Exit.*]

*K. Hen.* 'O God of battles ! steel my soldiers' hearts !  
Possess them not with fear ; take from them now  
The sense of reckoning, if the opposed numbers  
Pluck their hearts from them !—Not to-day, O Lord,  
O not to-day, think not upon the fault  
My father made in compassing the crown !  
I Richard's body have interred new ;  
And on it have bestow'd more contrite tears,  
Than from it issued forced drops of blood.  
Five hundred poor I have in yearly pay,  
Who twice a day their wither'd hands hold up  
Toward heaven, to pardon blood ; and I have built  
Two chantries,<sup>†</sup> where the sad and solemn priests  
Sing still for Richard's soul. More will I do :  
Though all that I can do, is nothing worth ;  
Since that my penitence comes after all,  
Imploring pardon.

*Enter GLOSTER.*

*Glo.* My liege !

*K. Hen.* My brother Gloster's voice !—Ay ;  
I know thy errand, I will go with thee :—  
The day, my friends, and all things stay for me. [*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE II.

*The French Camp.*

*Enter Dauphin, ORLEANS, RAMBURES, and others.*

*Orl.* The sun doth gild our armour ; up, my lords.

*Dau.* *Montez à cheval* :—My horse ! *valet ! lacquay !* ha !

*Orl.* O brave spirit !

*Dau.* *Via !—les eaux et la terre*<sup>‡</sup>—

<sup>†</sup> Two chantries,] One of these monasteries was for Carthusian monks, and was called *Bethlehem* ; the other was for religious men and women of the order of Saint Bridget, and was named *Sion*. They were on opposite sides of the Thames, and adjoined the royal manor of *Sheen*, now called *Richmond*.—MALONE.

<sup>‡</sup> *Via !—les eaux et la terre*—] *Via* is an old hortatory exclamation, as *allons !*—JOHNSON.

Orl. *Rien puis? l'air et le feu*——

Dau. *Ciel!* cousin Orleans.——

*Enter Constable.*

Now, my lord constable!

*Con.* Hark, how our steeds for present service neigh.

*Dau.* Mount them, and make incision in their hides;  
That their hot blood may spin in English eyes,  
And dout<sup>t</sup> them with superfluous courage: Ha!

*Ram.* What will you have them weep our horses' blood?  
How shall we then behold their natural tears?

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* The English are embattled, you French peers.

*Con.* To horse, you gallant princes! straight to horse!  
Do but behold yon poor and starved band,  
And your fair show shall suck away their souls,  
Leaving them but the shades and husks of men.  
There is not work enough for all our hands;  
Scarce blood enough in all their sickly veins,  
To give each naked curtle-ax a stain,  
That our French gallants shall to-day draw out,  
And sheath for lack of sport: let us but blow on them,  
The vapour of our valour will o'erturn them.  
'Tis positive 'gainst all exceptions, lords,  
That our superfluous lackeys, and our peasants,—  
Who, in unnecessary action, swarm  
About our squares of battle,—were enough  
To purge this field of such a hilding<sup>u</sup> foe;  
Though we upon this mountain's basis by  
Took stand for idle speculation:  
But that our honours must not. What's to say?  
A very little little let us do,  
And all is done. Then let the trumpets sound  
The tucket-sonuance,<sup>x</sup> and the note to mount:

<sup>t</sup> ——— *dout*—] i. e. *Do out*, or *extinguish*.

<sup>u</sup> ——— *hilding*]—or *hinderling*, is a *low wretch*.

<sup>x</sup> *The tucket sonuance, &c.*] *The tucket sonuance* was, perhaps, the name of an introductory flourish on the trumpet, as *toccata* in Italian is the prelude of a sonata on the harpsichord, and *toccar la tromba* is to blow the trumpet.—

For our approach shall so much dare the field,  
That England shall couch down in fear, and yield.

*Enter GRANDPRÉ.*

*Grand.* Why do you stay so long, my lords of France?  
Yon island carrions,<sup>y</sup> desperate of their bones,  
Ill-favour'dly become the morning field:  
Their ragged curtains<sup>z</sup> poorly are let loose,  
And our air shakes them passing scornfully.  
Big Mars seems bankrupt in their beggar'd host,  
And faintly through a rusty beaver peeps.  
Their horsemen sit like fixed candlesticks,  
With torch-staves in their hand:<sup>a</sup> and their poor jades  
Lob down their heads, dropping the hides and hips;  
The gum down-roping from their pale dead eyes;  
And in their pale dull mouths the gimmel bit<sup>b</sup>  
Lies foul with chew'd grass, still and motionless;  
And their executors, the knavish crows,  
Fly o'er them all, impatient for their hour.  
Description cannot suit itself in words,  
To démonstrate the life of such a battle  
In life so lifeless as it shows itself.

*Con.* They have said their prayers, and they stay for death.

*Dau.* Shall we go send them dinners, and fresh suits,  
And give their fasting horses provender,  
And after fight with them?

<sup>y</sup> *You island carrions,*] This and the preceding description of the English is founded on the melancholy account given by our historians of the English army, immediately before the battle of Agincourt. "The Englishmen were brought into great misery in this journey (from Harfleur to Agincourt); their victual was in manner spent, and now could they get none: rest could they none take, for their enemies were ever at hand to give them alarms: daily it rained, and nightly it froze; of fewel there was great scarcity, but of fluxes great plenty; money they had enough, but wares to bestowe it upon for their relief or comfote, had they little or none." *Holinshed.*—MALONE.

<sup>z</sup> — *ragged curtains*—] i. e. *Their torn colours.*

<sup>a</sup> *Their horsemen sit like fixed candlesticks,*

*With torch-staves in their hand:*] Grandpré alludes to the form of ancient candlesticks, which frequently represented human figures holding the sockets for the lights in their extended hands.—STEEVENS.

<sup>b</sup> — *gimmel bit*—] *Gimmel* is, in the western counties, a *ring*; a *gimmel bit* is therefore a *bit* of which the parts played one within another.—JOHNSON.

*Con.* I stay but for my guard;<sup>c</sup> On, to the field :  
I will the banner from a trumpet take,  
And use it for my haste. Come, come away !  
The sun is high, and we outwear the day. [ *Exeunt.*

## SCENE III.

*The English Camp.*

*Enter the English Host ; GLOSTER, BEDFORD, EXETER,  
SALISBURY,<sup>d</sup> and WESTMORELAND.*

*Glo.* Where is the king ?

*Bed.* The king himself is rode to view their battle.

*West.* Of fighting men they have full threescore  
thousand.

*Exe.* There's five to one ; besides, they all are fresh.

*Sal.* God's arm strike with us ! 'tis a fearful odds.

God be wi' you, princes all ; I'll to my charge :

If we no more meet, till we meet in heaven,

Then joyfully,—my noble lord of Bedford,—

My dear lord Gloster,—and my good lord Exeter,—

And my kind kinsman,—warriors all, adieu !

*Bed.* Farewell, good Salisbury ; and good luck go with  
thee !

*Exe.* Farewell, kind lord, fight valiantly to-day ;

And yet I do thee wrong, to mind thee of it,

For thou art fram'd of the firm truth of valour.

[ *Exit SALISBURY.*

*Bed.* He is as full of valour, as of kindness ;  
Princely in both.

*West.* O that we now had here

*Enter King HENRY.*

But one ten thousand of those men in England,  
That do no work to-day !

<sup>c</sup> — *guard* ;] i. e. The men of war whose duty it was to attend on the constable of France, and among those his standard or standard-bearer.—MALONE. Shakspeare here attributes to the Constable the action of the duke of Brabant, who, according to Holinshed, “when his standard was not come, caused a *banner* to be taken from a *trumpet*, and fastened to a speare and borne before him instead of a standard.” The meaning of the word *guard* in this passage has been disputed by the commentators ; but the above explanation of Malone's is, I find, preferred in Nares' Glossary.

<sup>d</sup> *Salisbury,*] Thomas Montacute, earl of Salisbury.—MALONE.



*K. Hen.*

What's he, that wishes so ?

My cousin Westmoreland ?—No, my fair cousin :  
 If we are mark'd to die, we are enough  
 To do our country loss ; and if to live,  
 The fewer men the greater share of honour.  
 God's will ! I pray thee, wish not one man more.  
 By Jove, I am not covetous for gold ;  
 Nor care I, who doth feed upon my cost ;  
 It yearns<sup>e</sup> me not, if men my garments wear ;  
 Such outward things dwell not in my desires :  
 But, if it be a sin to covet honour,  
 I am the most offending soul alive.  
 No, 'faith, my coz, wish not a man from England :  
 God's peace ! I would not lose so great an honour,  
 As one man more, methinks, would share from me,  
 For the best hope I have. O, do not wish one more :  
 Rather proclaim it, Westmoreland, through my host,  
 That he, which hath no stomach to this fight,  
 Let him depart ; his passport shall be made,  
 And crowns for convoy put into his purse :  
 We would not die in that man's company,  
 That fears his fellowship to die with us.  
 This day is call'd—the feast of Crispian :<sup>f</sup>  
 He that outlives this day, and comes safe home,  
 Will stand a tip-toe when this day is nam'd,  
 And rouse him at the name of Crispian.  
 He, that shall live this day, and see old age,  
 Will yearly on the vigil<sup>g</sup> feast his friends,  
 And say—to-morrow is saint Crispian ;  
 Then will he strip his sleeve, and show his scars,  
 And say,—these wounds I had on Crispin's day.  
 Old men forget ; yet all shall be forgot,  
 But he'll remember, with advantages,

<sup>e</sup> — yearns—] i. e. *Grieves, vexes.*

<sup>f</sup> — of Crispian :] The battle of Agincourt was fought upon the 25th of October, 1415, St. Crispin's day. The legend upon which this is founded follows : “ Crispianus and Crispianus were brothers, born at Rome ; from whence they travelled to Soissons, in France, about the year 303, to propagate the Christian religion ; but because they would not be chargeable to others for their maintenance, they exercised the trade of shoemakers : but the governor of the town discovering them to be Christians, ordered them to be beheaded about the year 303.” *Wheatley's Rational Illustration*, folio edit. p. 76.—GREY.

<sup>g</sup> — vigil—] i. e. *The evening before the festival.*

What feats he did that day: Then shall our names,  
 Familiar in their mouths as household words,—  
 Harry the king, Bedford, and Exeter,  
 Warwick and Talbot, Salisbury and Gloster,—  
 Be in their flowing cups freshly remember'd:  
 This story shall the good man teach his son;  
 And Crispin Crispian ne'er go by,  
 From this day to the ending of the world,  
 But we in it shall be remembered:  
 We few, we happy few, we band of brothers;  
 For he to-day that sheds his blood with me,  
 Shall be my brother; be he ne'er so vile,  
 This day shall gentle his condition:<sup>h</sup>  
 And gentlemen in England, now a-bed,  
 Shall think themselves accurs'd, they were not here;  
 And hold their manhoods cheap, while any speaks,  
 That fought with us upon saint Crispin's day.

*Enter SALISBURY.*

*Sal.* My sovereign lord, bestow yourself with speed;  
 The French are bravely<sup>i</sup> in their battle set,  
 And will with all expedience<sup>j</sup> charge on us.

*K. Hen.* All things are ready, if our minds be so.

*West.* Perish the man, whose mind is backward now!

*K. Hen.* Thou dost not wish more help from England,  
 cousin?

*West.* God's will, my liege, 'would you and I alone,  
 Without more help, might fight this battle out!

*K. Hen.* Why, now thou hast unwish'd five thousand  
 men;<sup>k</sup>

<sup>h</sup> — *gentle his condition* :] This day shall advance him to the rank of a gentleman.—JOHNSON.

King Henry V. inhibited any person but such as had a right by inheritance or grant to assume coats of arms, except those who fought with him at the battle of Agincourt; and, I think, these last were allowed the chief seats of honour at all feasts and publick meetings.—TOLLET.

<sup>i</sup> — *bravely*—] i. e. *Ostentatiously, splendidly.*

<sup>j</sup> — *expedience*—] i. e. *Expedition.*

<sup>k</sup> *Why, now thou hast unwish'd five thousand men* ;] By wishing only thyself and me, thou hast wished five thousand men away. Shakspeare never thinks of such trifles as numbers. In the last scene the French are said to be *full threescore thousand*, which Exeter declares to be *five to one*; but by the king's account, they are twelve to one.—JOHNSON. The numbers of the troops engaged in the battle of Agincourt are variously stated by different historians:

Which likes me better, than to wish us one.—  
You know your places : God be with you all !

*Tucket. Enter MONTJOY.*

*Mont.* Once more I come to know of thee, king Harry,  
If for thy ransome thou wilt now compound,  
Before thy most assured overthrow :  
For, certainly, thou art so near the gulf,  
Thou needs must be englutted. Besides, in mercy,  
The constable desires thee—thou wilt mind  
Thy followers of repentance ; that their souls  
May make a peaceful and a sweet retire  
From off these fields, where (wretches) their poor bodies  
Must lie and fester.

*K. Hen.* Who hath sent thee now ?

*Mont.* The constable of France.

*K. Hen.* I pray thee, bear my former answer back ;  
Bid them achieve me, and then sell my bones.  
Good God ! why should they mock poor fellows thus ?  
The man, that once did sell the lion's skin  
While the beast liv'd, was kill'd with hunting him.  
A many of our bodies shall, no doubt,  
Find native graves ; upon the which, I trust,  
Shall witness live in brass<sup>1</sup> of this day's work :  
And those that leave their valiant bones in France,  
Dying like men, though buried in your dunghills,  
They shall be fam'd ; for there the sun shall greet them,  
And draw their honours reeking up to heaven ;  
Leaving their earthly parts to choke your clime,  
The smell whereof shall breed a plague in France.  
Mark then a bounding valour in our English :  
That, being dead, like to the bullet's grazing,  
Break out into a second course of mischief,  
Killing in relapse of mortality.<sup>m</sup>

Holinshed makes the English army consist of fifteen thousand, and the French of sixty thousand horse, besides foot, in all one hundred thousand ; but Johnson is wrong in supposing that Shakspeare designed to represent the English army as amounting to only five thousand men. The desire of Westmoreland is not that the king and he should fight single handed with the foe, but that they and their vassals should undertake the conquest without any other aid.

<sup>1</sup> — in brass—] i. e. In brazen plates anciently let into tombstones.—

STEEVENS.

<sup>m</sup> — a bounding valour, &c.] This allusion is exceedingly beautiful ; com-

Let me speak proudly;—Tell the constable,  
 We are but warriors for the working day:<sup>n</sup>  
 Our gayness, and our gilt,<sup>o</sup> are all besmirch'd  
 With rainy marching in the painful field;  
 There's not a piece of feather in our host,  
 (Good argument, I hope, we shall not fly,)  
 And time hath worn us into slovenry:  
 But, by the mass, our hearts are in the trim:  
 And my poor soldiers tell me—yet ere night  
 They'll be in fresher robes; or they will pluck  
 The gay new coats o'er the French soldiers' heads,  
 And turn them out of service. If they do this,  
 (As, if God please, they shall,) my ransome then  
 Will soon be levied. Herald, save thou thy labour;  
 Come thou no more for ransome, gentle herald;  
 They shall have none, I swear, but these my joints:  
 Which if they have as I will leave 'em to them,  
 Shall yield them little, tell the constable.

*Mont.* I shall, king Harry. And so fare thee well:  
 Thou never shalt hear herald any more. [*Exit.*]

*K. Hen.* I fear, thou'lt once more come again for ransome.

*Enter the Duke of York.*<sup>p</sup>

*York.* My lord most humbly on my knee I beg  
 The leading of the vaward.<sup>q</sup>

*K. Hen.* Take it brave York.—Now, soldiers, march  
 away.

And how thou pleasest, God, dispose the day! [*Exeunt.*]

paring the revival of the English valour to the rebounding of a cannon-ball.—  
 THEOBALD. For *break* we should read *breaks*, for it is to *valour*, and not to the  
*English* that this reviving faculty is attributed. *Relapse of mortality* is a harsh  
 expression, but means by the *mortal* or fatal *rebound*. “Shakspeare,” says  
 Steevens, “has given *mind of honour* for *honourable mind*: and by the same rule  
 might write *relapse of mortality*, for *mortal rebound*.”

<sup>n</sup> — *warriors for the working-day*:] We are soldiers but coarsely dressed;  
 we have not on our holiday apparel.—JOHNSON.

<sup>o</sup> — *our gilt*,] i. e. *Golden show, superficial gilding*. Obsolete.

<sup>p</sup> *Duke of York*.] This personage is the same who appears in our author's  
 Richard II. by the title of *duke of Aumerle*. His Christian name was Edward.  
 He was the eldest son of Edmund of Langley, duke of York, who is introduced  
 in the same play, and who was the fifth son of King Edward III.—MALONE.

<sup>q</sup> — *vaward*.] i. e. *Vanward*, the first line or front of the army.

## SCENE IV.

*The Field of Battle.*

*Alarums: Excursions. Enter French Soldier, PISTOL, and Boy.*

*Pist.* Yield, cur.

*Fr. Sol.* *Je pense, que vous estes le gentilhomme de bonne qualité.*

*Pist.* Quality,<sup>r</sup> call you me?—Construe me, art thou a gentleman? What is thy name? discuss.

*Fr. Sol.* *O seigneur Dieu!*

*Pist.* O, signieur Dew should be a gentleman:—  
Perpend my words, O signieur Dew, and mark;—  
O signieur Dew, thou diest on point of fox,<sup>s</sup>  
Except, O signieur, thou do give to me  
Egregious ransome.

*Fr. Sol.* *O, prenez misericorde! ayez pitié de moy!*

*Pist.* Moy shall not serve, I will have forty moys;  
For I will fetch thy rim<sup>t</sup> out at thy throat,  
In drops of crimson blood.

*Fr. Sol.* *Est il impossible d'eschapper la force de ton bras?*

*Pist.* Brass, cur!

Thou damned and luxurious mountain goat,<sup>u</sup>  
Offer'st me brass?

*Fr. Sol.* *O pardonnez moy!*

*Pist.* Say'st thou me so? is that a ton of moys?<sup>x</sup>  
Come hither, boy; Ask me this slave in French,  
What is his name.

*Boy.* *Escoutez; Comment estes vous appellé?*

*Fr. Sol.* *Monsieur le Fer.*

*Boy.* He says his name is—master Fer.

<sup>r</sup> Quality, &c.] The old copy reads, "qualitie calme custure me."—The emendation of the text was taken from the MS. of Mr. Edwards.

<sup>s</sup> — thou diest on point of fox,] Fox is an old cant word for a sword.—  
STEEVENS.

<sup>t</sup> — rim—] i. e. The *peritonæum* or membrane enclosing the intestines. Pistol, with a very vague notion of the anatomical meaning of the word, seems to use it in a general way for any part of the intestines; his object being to terrify his prisoner.—NARES' *Glossary*.

<sup>u</sup> — luxurious—] i. e. *Lascivious*.

<sup>x</sup> — a ton of moys?] *Moy* is a piece of money; whence *moi d'or*, or *moi of gold*.

*Pist.* Master Fer! I'll fer him, and fir<sup>y</sup> him, and ferret him:—discuss the same in French unto him.

*Boy.* I do not know the French for fer, and ferret, and fir<sup>k</sup>.

*Pist.* Bid him prepare, for I will cut his throat.

*Fr. Sol.* *Que dit-il, monsieur?*

*Boy.* *Il me commande de vous dire que vous faites vous prest; car ce soldat icy est disposé tout à cette heure de couper vostre gorge.*

*Pist.* Ouy, couper gorge, par may foy, pesant, Unless thou give me crowns, brave crowns; Or mangled shalt thou be by this my sword.

*Fr. Sol.* *O, je vous supplie pour l'amour de Dieu, me pardonner! Je suis gentilhomme de bonne maison; gardez ma vie, et je vous donneray deux cents escus.*

*Pist.* What are his words?

*Boy.* He prays you to save his life: he is a gentleman of a good house; and, for his ransome, he will give you two hundred crowns.

*Pist.* Tell him,—my fury shall abate, and I The crowns will take.

*Fr. Sol.* *Petit monsieur, que dit-il?*

*Boy.* *Encore qu'il est contre son jurement, de pardonner aucun prisonnier; neantmoins, pour les escus que vous l'avez promis, il est content de vous donner la liberté, le franchise-ment.*

*Fr. Sol.* *Sur mes genoux, je vous donne mille remerciemens: et je m'estime heureux que je suis tombé entre les mains d'un chevalier, je pense, le plus brave, valiant, et tres distingué seigneur d'Angleterre.*

*Pist.* Expound unto me, boy.

*Boy.* He gives you upon his knees, a thousand thanks: and he esteems himself happy that he hath fallen into the hands of (as he thinks) the most brave, valorous, and thrice-worthy signieur of England.

*Pist.* As I suck blood, I will some mercy show.— Follow me, cur.

[Exit PISTOL.]

<sup>y</sup> — and fir<sup>k</sup> him,] The word *firk* is so variously used by the old writers, that it is almost impossible to ascertain its precise meaning. On this occasion it may mean to chastise.—STEEVENS.

Boy. *Suivez vous le grand capitaine.*

[*Exit French Soldier.*

I did never know so full a voice issue from so empty a heart: but the saying is true,—the empty vessel makes the greatest sound. Bardolph and Nym, had ten times more valour than this roaring devil i'the old play,<sup>z</sup> that every one may pare his nails with a wooden dagger; and they are both hanged; and so would this be, if he durst steal any thing adventurously. I must stay with the lackeys, with the luggage of our camp: the French might have a good prey of us, if he know of it; for there is none to guard it, but boys. [Exit.

## SCENE V.

*Another Part of the Field of Battle.*

*Alarums. Enter Dauphin, ORLEANS, BOURBON, Constable, RAMBURES, and others.*

Con. *O diable!*

Orl. *O seigneur!—le jour est perdu, tout est perdu!*

Dau. *Mort de ma vie!* all is confounded, all!

Reproach and everlasting shame

Sits mocking in our plumes.—*O meschante fortune!*—

Do not run away.

[*A short alarum.*

Con. Why, all our ranks are broke.

Dau. *O perdurable*<sup>a</sup> shame!—let's stab ourselves.

Be these the wretches that we play'd at dice for?

Orl. Is this the king we sent to for his ransome?

Bour. Shame, and eternal shame, nothing but shame!

Let us die instant: Once more back again;

And he that will not follow Bourbon now,

Let him go hence, and, with his cap in hand,

Like a base pander, hold the chamber-door,

Whilst by a slave, no gentler<sup>b</sup> than my dog,

His fairest daughter is contaminate.

<sup>z</sup> — *this roaring devil i'the old play,*] In the old moralities the devil was always attacked by the *Vice*, who belaboured him with his lath, and sent him roaring off the stage.—MALONE.

<sup>a</sup> — *perdurable*—] i. e. *Lasting*.

<sup>b</sup> — *no gentler*—] Who has no more *gentility*.

*Con.* Disorder, that hath spoil'd us, friend us now !  
Let us, in heaps, go offer up our lives  
Unto these English, or else die with fame.

*Orl.* We are enough, yet living in the field,  
To smother up the English in our throngs,  
If any order might be thought upon.

*Bour.* The devil take order now ! I'll to the throng ;  
Let life be short ; else shame will be too long. [*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE VI.

*Another Part of the Field.*

*Alarums.* Enter King HENRY, and Forces ; EXETER,  
and others.

*K. Hen.* Well have we done, thrice-valiant countrymen :  
But all's not done, yet keep the French the field.

*Exe.* The duke of York commends him to your majesty.

*K. Hen.* Lives he, good uncle ? thrice within this hour,  
I saw him down ; thrice up again, and fighting ;  
From helmet to the spur, all blood he was.

*Exe.* In which array, (brave soldier,) doth he lie,  
Larding the plain : and by his bloody side,  
(Yoke-fellow to his honour-owing wounds,)  
The noble earl of Suffolk also lies.

Suffolk first died : and York, all haggled over,  
Comes to him, where in gore he lay insteep'd,  
And takes him by the beard ; kisses the gashes,  
That bloodily did yawn upon his face ;  
And cries aloud,—*Tarry, dear cousin Suffolk !*

*My soul shall thine keep company to heaven :*  
*Tarry, sweet soul, for mine, then fly a-breast ;*  
*As, in this glorious and well-foughten field,*  
*We kept together in our chivalry !*

Upon these words I came, and cheer'd him up :  
He smil'd me in the face, raught<sup>c</sup> me his hand,  
And, with a feeble gripe, says,—*Dear my lord,*  
*Commend my service to my sovereign.*  
So did he turn, and over Suffolk's neck

<sup>c</sup> — raught—] i. e. Reached.



He threw his wounded arm, and kiss'd his lips ;  
 And so, espous'd to death, with blood he seal'd  
 A testament of noble-ending love.  
 The pretty and sweet manner of it forc'd  
 Those waters from me, which I would have stopp'd ;  
 But I had not so much of man in me,  
 But all my mother came into mine eyes,  
 And gave me up to tears.

*K. Hen.* I blame you not ;  
 For, hearing this, I must perforce compound  
 With mistful eyes, or they will issue too.— [*Alarum.*  
 But, hark ! what new alarum is this same ?<sup>d</sup>  
 The French have reinforc'd their scatter'd men :—  
 Then every soldier kill his prisoners ;  
 Give the word through. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE VII.

*Another Part of the Field.*

*Alarums. Enter FLUELLEN and GOWER.*

*Flu.* Kill the poys and the luggage ! 'tis expressly  
 against the law of arms : 'tis as arrant a piece of knavery,  
 mark you now, as can be offer'd, in the 'orld : In your  
 conscience now, is it not ?

*Gow.* 'Tis certain there's not a boy left alive ; and the  
 cowardly rascals, that ran from the battle, have done this  
 slaughter : besides, they have burn'd and carried away  
 all that was in the king's tent ; wherefore the king, most  
 worthily, hath caused every soldier to cut his prisoner's  
 throat. O, 'tis a gallant king !

*Flu.* Ay, he was porn at Monmouth, captain Gower :  
 What call you the town's name, where Alexander the pig  
 was born ?

<sup>d</sup> — *what new alarum—*] Henry ordered the prisoners to be slain for two reasons, both of which are mentioned by Holinshed and referred to by Shakespeare : first, because he expected another battle, and had not men sufficient to guard one army and fight another ; and, secondly, as is mentioned by Gower in the subsequent scene, because some French runaways getting notice that the baggage was only guarded by boys and lackeys, came down, killed and plundered them, and burnt their baggage : in resentment of which villainy, the king, contrary to his usual lenity, ordered all the prisoners' throats to be cut.  
 —JOHNSON and THEOBALD.

*Gow.* Alexander the great.

*Flu.* Why, I pray you, is not pig, great? The pig, or the great, or the mighty, or the huge, or the magnanimous, are all one reckonings, save the phrase is a little variations.

*Gow.* I think Alexander the great was born in Macedon; his father was called—Philip of Macedon, as I take it.

*Flu.* I think it is in Macedon, where Alexander is born. I tell you, captain,—If you look in the maps of the 'orld, I warrant, you shall find, in the comparisons between Macedon and Monmouth, that the situations, look you, is both alike. There is a river in Macedon; and there is also moreover a river at Monmouth: it is called Wye, at Monmouth; but it is out of my prains, what is the name of the other river; but 'tis all one, 'tis so like as my fingers is to my fingers, and there is salmons in both. If you mark Alexander's life well, Harry of Monmouth's life is come after it indifferent well; for there is figures in all things. Alexander (God knows, and you know,) in his rages, and his furies, and his wraths, and his cholers, and his moods, and his displeasures, and his indignations, and also being a little intoxicates in his prains, did, in his ales and his angers, look you, kill his pest friend, Clytus.

*Gow.* Our king is not like him in that; he never killed any of his friends.

*Flu.* It is not well done, mark you now, to take tales out of my mouth, ere it is made an end and finished. I speak but in the figures and comparisons of it: As Alexander is kill his friend Clytus, being in his ales and his cups; so also Harry Monmouth, being in his right wits and his goot judgments, is turn away the fat knight with the great pelly-doublet: he was full of jests, and gipes, and knaveries, and mocks; I am forget his name.

*Gow.* Sir John Falstaff.

*Flu.* That is he: I can tell you, there is goot men porn at Monmouth.

*Gow.* Here comes his majesty.

*Alarum.* Enter King HENRY with a part of the English Forces; WARWICK,<sup>e</sup> GLOSTER, EXETER, and others.

*K. Hen.* I was not angry since I came to France  
Until this instant.—Take a trumpet, herald;  
Ride thou unto the horsemen on yon hill;  
If they will fight with us, bid them come down,  
Or void the field; they do offend our sight:  
If they'll do neither, we will come to them;  
And make them skirr away,<sup>f</sup> as swift as stones  
Enforced from the old Assyrian slings:  
Besides, we'll cut the throats of those we have;  
And not a man of them, that we shall take,  
Shall taste our mercy:—Go, and tell them so.

Enter MONTJOY.

*Exe.* Here comes the herald of the French, my liege.

*Glo.* His eyes are humbler than they us'd to be.

*K. Hen.* How now! what means this, herald? know'st  
thou not,

That I have fin'd these bones of mine for ransome?  
Com'st thou again for ransome?

*Mont.* No, great king:

I come to thee for charitable licence,  
That we may wander o'er this bloody field,  
To book our dead, and then to bury them;  
To sort our nobles from our common men;  
For many of our princes (woe the while!)  
Lie drown'd and soak'd in mercenary blood;  
(So do our vulgar drench their peasant limbs  
In blood of princes;) and their wounded steeds  
Fret fetlock deep in gore, and, with wild rage,  
Yerk out their armed heels at their dead masters,  
Killing them twice. O, give us leave, great king,  
To view the field in safety, and dispose  
Of their dead bodies.

*K. Hen.* I tell thee truly, herald,

<sup>e</sup> ——— *Warwick,*] Richard Beauchamp, earl of Warwick. He did not however obtain the title till 1417, two years after the era of this play.—MALONE.

<sup>f</sup> ——— *skirr away,*] *To skirr* is to run swiftly in various directions.—NARES.

I know not, if the day be ours, or no;  
For yet a many of your horsemen peer,  
And gallop o'er the field.

*Mont.* The day is yours.

*K. Hen.* Praised be God, and not our strength, for it!—  
What is this castle call'd, that stands hard by?

*Mont.* They call it—Agincourt.

*K. Hen.* Then call we this—the field of Agincourt,  
Fought on the day of Crispin Crispianus.

*Flu.* Your grandfather of famous memory, an't please  
your majesty, and your great uncle Edward the plack  
prince of Wales, as I have read in the chronicles, fought  
a most prave pattle here in France.

*K. Hen.* They did, Fluellen.

*Flu.* Your majesty says very true: if your majesties is  
remembered of it, the Welshmen did goot service in a  
garden where leeks did grow, wearing leeks in their Mon-  
mouth caps;<sup>s</sup> which, your majesty knows, to this hour is  
an honourable padge of the service; and, I do believe,  
your majesty takes no scorn to wear the leek upon saint  
Tavy's day.

*K. Hen.* I wear it for a memorable honour:  
For I am Welsh, you know, good countryman.

*Flu.* All the water in Wye cannot wash your majesty's  
Welsh plood out of your pody, I can tell you that: Got  
pless it and preserve it, as long as it pleases his grace,  
and his majesty too!

*K. Hen.* Thanks, good my countryman.

*Flu.* By Cheshu, I am your majesty's countryman, I  
care not who know it; I will confess it to all the 'orld: I  
need not to be ashamed of your majesty, praised be God,  
so long as your majesty is an honest man.

*K. Hen.* God keep me so!—Our heralds go with him;  
Bring me just notice of the numbers dead  
On both our parts.—Call yonder fellow hither.

[*Points to WILLIAMS. Exit MONTJOY  
and others.*]

<sup>s</sup> — *Monmouth caps*—were formerly much worn. "The best caps," says Fuller in his *Worthies of Wales*, "were formerly made at Monmouth, where the capper's chapel doth still remain."—MALONE.

*Exe.* Soldier, you must come to the king.

*K. Hen.* Soldier, why wears't thou that glove in thy cap?

*Will.* An't please your majesty, 'tis the gage of one that I should fight withal, if he be alive.

*K. Hen.* An Englishman?

*Will.* An't please your majesty, a rascal, that swaggered with me last night: who, if 'a live, and ever dare to challenge this glove, I have sworn to take him a box o'the ear: or, if I can see my glove in his cap (which he swore, as he was a soldier, he would wear, if alive,) I will strike it out soundly.

*K. Hen.* What think you, captain Fluellen? is it fit this soldier keep his oath?

*Flu.* He is a craven and a villain else, an't please your majesty, in my conscience.

*K. Hen.* It may be, his enemy is a gentleman of great sort,<sup>b</sup> quite from the answer of his degree.<sup>i</sup>

*Flu.* Though he be as goot a gentleman as the tevil is, as Lucifer and Belzebub himself, it is necessary, look your grace, that he keep his vow and his oath: if he be perjured, see you now, his reputation is as arrant a villain, and a Jack sauce, as ever his plack shoe trod upon Got's ground and his earth, in my conscience, la.

*K. Hen.* Then keep thy vow, sirrah, when thou meet'st the fellow.

*Will.* So I will, my liege, as I live.

*K. Hen.* Who servest thou under?

*Will.* Under captain Gower, my liege.

*Flu.* Gower is a goot captain: and is good knowledge and literature in the wars.

*K. Hen.* Call him hither to me, soldier.

*Will.* I will, my liege.

[*Exit.*

*K. Hen.* Here, Fluellen; wear thou this favour for me, and stick it in thy cap: When Alençon and myself were down together,<sup>k</sup> I plucked this glove from his helm; if

<sup>b</sup> — great sort,] i. e. High rank.

<sup>i</sup> — quite from the answer of his degree.] A man of such station as is not bound to hazard his person to answer to a challenge from one of the soldier's low degree.—JOHNSON.

<sup>k</sup> — When Alençon and myself were down together,] Henry was felled to

any man challenge this, he is a friend to Alençon and an enemy to our person; if thou encounter any such, apprehend him, an thou dost love me.

*Flu.* Your grace does me as great honours, as can be desired in the hearts of his subjects: I would fain see the man, that has but two legs, that shall find himself agrieved at this glove, that is all; but I would fain see it once: an please Got of his grace, that I might see it.

*K. Hen.* Knowest thou Gower?

*Flu.* He is my dear friend, an please you.

*K. Hen.* Pray thee, go seek him, and bring him to my tent.

*Flu.* I will fetch him.

[*Exit.*]

*K. Hen.* My lord of Warwick,—and my brother Gloster, Follow Fluellen close at the heels:

The glove, which I have given him for a favour,

May, haply, purchase him a box o'the ear:

It is the soldier's; I, by bargain, should

Wear it myself. Follow, good cousin Warwick:

If that the soldier strike him, (as, I judge

By his blunt bearing, he will keep his word,)

Some sudden mischief may arise of it;

For I do know Fluellen valiant,

And, touch'd with choler, hot as gunpowder,

And quickly will return an injury:

Follow, and see there be no harm between them.—

Go you with me, uncle of Exeter.

[*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE VIII.

*Before King Henry's Pavilion.*

*Enter GOWER and WILLIAMS.*

*Will.* I warrant, it is to knight you, captain.

*Enter FLUELLEN.*

*Flu.* Got's will and his pleasure, captain, I peseech

the ground at the battle of Agincourt, by the duke of Alençon, but recovered and slew two of the duke's attendants. Afterwards Alençon was killed by the king's guard, contrary to Henry's intention, who wished to have saved him.—MALONE.

you now, come apace to the king: there is more goot toward you, peradventure, than is in your knowledge to dream of.

*Will.* Sir, know you this glove?

*Flu.* Know the glove? I know, the glove is a glove.

*Will.* I know this; and thus I challenge it.

[*Strikes him.*]

*Flu.* 'Sblud, an arrant traitor, as any's in the universal world, or in France, or in England.

*Gow.* How now, sir? you villain!

*Will.* Do you think I'll be forsworn?

*Flu.* Stand away, captain Gower; I will give treason his payment into plows, I warrant you.

*Will.* I am no traitor.

*Flu.* That's a lie in thy throat.—I charge you in his majesty's name, apprehend him; he's a friend of the duke Alençon's.

*Enter WARWICK and GLOSTER.*

*War.* How now, how now! what's the matter?

*Flu.* My lord of Warwick, here is (praised be Got for it!) a most contagious treason come to light, look you, as you shall desire in a summer's day. Here is his majesty.

*Enter King HENRY and EXETER.*

*K. Hen.* How now! what's the matter?

*Flu.* My liege, here is a villain, and a traitor, that look your grace, has struck the glove which your majesty is take out of the helmet of Alençon.

*Will.* My liege, this was my glove; here is the fellow of it: and he, that I gave it to in change, promised to wear it in his cap; I promised to strike him, if he did: I met this man with my glove in his cap, and I have been as good as my word.

*Flu.* Your majesty now, (saving your majesty's manhood,) what an arrant, rascally, beggarly, lowsy knave it is: I hope, your majesty is pear me testimony, and witness, and avouchments, that this is the glove of Alençon, that your majesty is give me, in your conscience now.

*K. Hen.* Give me thy glove, soldier; Look, here is the fellow of it. 'Twas I, indeed, thou promised'st to strike; and thou hast given me most bitter terms.

*Flu.* An please your majesty, let his neck answer for it, if there is any martial law in the 'orld.

*K. Hen.* How canst thou make me satisfaction?

*Will.* All offences, my liege, come from the heart: never came any from mine, that might offend your majesty.

*K. Hen.* It was ourself thou didst abuse.

*Will.* Your majesty came not like yourself: you appeared to me but as a common man; witness the night, your garments, your lowliness; and what your highness suffered under that shape, I beseech you, take it for your own fault, and not mine: for had you been as I took you for, I made no offence; therefore, I beseech your highness, pardon me.

*K. Hen.* Here, uncle Exeter, fill this glove with crowns, And give it to this fellow.—Keep it, fellow; And wear it for an honour in thy cap, Till I do challenge it.—Give him the crowns;— And, captain, you must needs be friends with him.

*Flu.* By this day and this light, the fellow has mettle enough in his pelly:—Hold, there is twelve pence for you, and I pray you to serve Got, and keep you out of prawls, and prabbles, and quarrels, and dissensions, and, I warrant you, it is the petter for you.

*Will.* I will none of your money.

*Flu.* It is with a goot will; I can tell you, it will serve you to mend your shoes: Come, wherefore should you be so pashful? your shoes is not so goot: 'tis a goot silling, I warrant you, or I will change it.

*Enter an English Herald.*

*K. Hen.* Now, herald; are the dead number'd?

*Her.* Here is the number of the slaughter'd French.

[*Delivers a paper.*]

*K. Hen.* What prisoners of good sort are taken, uncle?

*Exe.* Charles duke of Orleans,<sup>1</sup> nephew to the king;

<sup>1</sup> Charles duke of Orleans, &c.] This list is copied from Holinshed and Hall.



John duke of Bourbon, and lord Bouciqualt :  
Of other lords, and barons, knights, and 'squires,  
Full fifteen hundred, besides common men.

*K. Hen.* This note doth tell me of ten thousand French,  
That in the field lie slain : of princes, in this number,  
And nobles bearing banners, there lie dead  
One hundred twenty-six : added to these,  
Of knights, esquires, and gallant gentlemen,  
Eight thousand and four hundred ; of the which,  
Five hundred were but yesterday dubb'd knights :  
So that, in these ten thousand they have lost,  
There are but sixteen hundred mercenaries ;  
The rest are—princes, barons, lords, knights, 'squires,  
And gentlemen of blood and quality.  
The names of those their nobles that lie dead,—  
Charles De-la-bret, high constable of France ;  
Jaques of Chatillon, admiral of France ;  
The master of the cross-bows, lord Rambures ;  
Great master of France, the brave sir Guischard Dauphin :  
John duke of Alençon ; Antony duke of Brabant,  
The brother to the duke of Burgundy ;  
And Edward duke of Bar : of lusty earls,  
Grandpré, and Roussi, Fauconberg, and Foix,  
Beaumont, and Marle, Vaudemont, and Lestrale.  
Here was a royal fellowship of death !—  
Where is the number of our English dead ?

[*Herald presents another paper.*]

Edward the duke of York, the earl of Suffolk,  
Sir Richard Ketly, Davy Gam, esquire :<sup>m</sup>  
None else of name ; and, of all other men,  
But five and twenty. O God, thy arm was here,  
And not to us, but to thy arm alone,  
Ascribe we all.—When, without stratagem,  
But in plain shock, and even play of battle,  
Was ever known so great and little loss,

<sup>m</sup> — *Davy Gam esquire :*] This gentleman being sent by Henry, before the battle, to reconnoitre the enemy and to find out their strength, made this report : “ May it please you, my liege, there are *enough* to be killed, *enough* to be taken prisoners, and *enough* to run away.” He saved the king's life in the field.—MALONE.

On one part and on the other?—Take it, God,  
For it is only thine!

*Exe.* 'Tis wonderful!

*K. Hen.* Come, go we in procession to the village:  
And be it death proclaimed through our host,  
To boast of this, or take that praise from God,  
Which is his only.

*Flu.* Is it not lawful, and please your majesty, to tell  
how many is killed?

*K. Hen.* Yes, captain; but with this acknowledgment,  
That God fought for us.

*Flu.* Yes, my conscience, he did us great goot.

*K. Hen.* Do we all holy rites;<sup>n</sup>  
Let there be sung *Non nobis*, and *Te Deum*.  
The dead with charity enclos'd in clay,  
We'll then to Calais; and to England then;  
Where ne'er from France arriv'd more happy men.

[*Exeunt.*]

## ACT V.

*Enter CHORUS.*

*Chor.* Vouchsafe to those that have not read the story,  
That I may prompt them: and of such as have,  
I humbly pray them to admit the excuse  
Of time, of numbers, and due course of things,  
Which cannot in their huge and proper life  
Be here presented. Now we bear the king  
Toward Calais: grant him there; there seen,  
Heave him away upon your winged thoughts,  
Athwart the sea: Behold, the English beach  
Pales in the flood with men, with wives, and boys,

<sup>n</sup> *Do we all holy rites;*] The king, when he saw no appearance of enemies, caused the retreat to be blown, and gathering his army together, gave thanks to Almighty God for so happy a victory, causing his prelates and chapeleins to sing this psalme, *In exitu Isreal de Egypto*; and commanding every man to kneele down to the ground at this verse,—*Non nobis, Domine, non nobis: sed nobis tuo gloriam*: which done, he caused *Te Deum* and certain anthems to be sung, giving laud and praise to God, and not boasting of his own force, or any humaine power.—HOLINSHED.

Whose shouts and claps out-voice the deep-mouth'd sea,  
 Which, like a mighty whiffler<sup>o</sup> 'fore the king,  
 Seems to prepare his way : so let him land ;  
 And, solemnly, see him set on to London.  
 So swift a pace hath thought, that even now  
 You may imagine him upon Blackheath :  
 Where that his lords desire him, to have borne  
 His bruised helmet, and his bended sword,  
 Before him, through the city : he forbids it,  
 Being free from vainness and self-glorious pride ;  
 Giving full trophy, signal, and ostent,  
 Quite from himself, to God. But now behold,  
 In the quick forge and workinghouse of thought,  
 How London doth pour out her citizens !  
 The mayor, and all his brethren, in best sort,—  
 Like to the senators of the antique Rome,  
 With the plebeians swarming at their heels,—  
 Go forth, and fetch their conquering Cæsar in :  
 As, by a lower but by loving likelihood,<sup>p</sup>  
 Were now the general of our gracious empress<sup>q</sup>  
 (As, in good time, he may,) from Ireland coming,  
 Bringing rebellion broached<sup>r</sup> on his sword,  
 How many would the peaceful city quit,  
 To welcome him ? much more, and much more cause,  
 Did they this Harry. Now in London place him ;  
 (As yet the lamentation of the French  
 Invites the king of England's stay at home :  
 The emperor's coming<sup>s</sup> in behalf of France,  
 To order peace between them ;) and omit  
 All the occurrences, whatever chanc'd,

<sup>o</sup> — a mighty whiffler—] An officer who walks first in processions, or before persons in high stations, on occasions of ceremony. The name is still retained in London, and there is an officer so called that walks before their companies at times of public solemnity. It seems a corruption from the French word *huissier*.—HANMER.

<sup>p</sup> — likelihood,] i. e. *Similitude*.—WARBURTON.

<sup>q</sup> — the general of our gracious empress—] The earl of Essex, in the reign of queen Elizabeth.—POPE.

<sup>r</sup> — broached—] i. e. *Spitted, transfixed*.

<sup>s</sup> The emperor's coming—] The emperor Sigismond, who was married to Henry's second cousin. The embarrassment of this passage will be entirely removed by a very slight alteration, the omission of a single letter, and reading—"The emperor coming in behalf of France;" instead of *emperors*.—MALONE and M. MASON.

Till Harry's back-return again to France ;  
 There must we bring him ; and myself have play'd  
 The interim, by remembering you—'tis past.  
 Then brook abridgement ; and your eyes advance  
 After your thoughts, straight back again to France. [*Exit.*]

## SCENE I.

France. *An English Court of Guard.*

*Enter FLUELLEN and GOWER.*

*Gow.* Nay, that's right ; but why wear you your leek to-day ? Saint Davy's day is past.

*Flu.* There is occasions and causes why and wherefore in all things : I will tell you, as my friend, captain Gower ; The rascally, scald, beggarly, lowsy, praggling knave, Pistol,—which you and yourself, and all the 'orld, know to be no petter than a fellow, look you now, of no merits,—he is come to me, and brings me pread and salt yesterday, look you, and bid me eat my leek : it was in a place where I could not breed no contentions with him ; but I will be so pold as to wear it in my cap till I see him once again, and then I will tell him a little piece of my desires.

*Enter PISTOL.*

*Gow.* Why, here he comes, swelling like a turkey-cock.

*Flu.* 'Tis no matter for his swellings, nor his turkey-cocks.—Got bless you, ancient Pistol ! you scurvy, lowsy knave, Got bless you !

*Pist.* Ha ! art thou Bedlam ? dost thou thirst, base To have me fold up Parca's fatal web ?<sup>t</sup> [*Trojan,*  
 Hence ! I am qualmish at the smell of leek.

*Flu.* I peseech you heartily, scurvy, lowsy knave, at my desires, and my requests, and my petitions, to eat, look you, this leek ; because, look you, you do not love it, nor your affections, and your appetites, and your di-

<sup>t</sup> *To have me fold up, &c.] Dost thou desire to have me put thee to death?—*  
 JOHNSON.

gestions, does not agree with it, I would desire you to eat it.

*Pist.* Not for Cadwallader, and all his goats.

*Flu.* There is one goat for you. [*Strikes him.*]  
Will you be so goot, scald knave, as eat it?

*Pist.* Base Trojan, thou shalt die.

*Flu.* You say very true, scald knave, when Got's will is: I will desire you to live in the mean time, and eat your victuals; come, there is sauce for it. [*Striking him again.*] You called me yesterday, mountain-squire; but I will make you to-day a squire of low degree." I pray you, fall to; if you can mock a leek, you can eat a leek.

*Gow.* Enough, captain; you have astonished him.\*

*Flu.* I say, I will make him eat some part of my leek, or I will peat his pate four days:—Pite, I pray you; it is good for your green wound, and your ploody coxcomb.

*Pist.* Must I bite?

*Flu.* Yes, certainly; and out of doubt, and out of questions too, and ambiguities.

*Pist.* By this leek, I will most horribly revenge; I eat, and eke I swear.—

*Flu.* Eat, I pray you: Will you have some more sauce to your leek? there is not enough leek to swear by.

*Pist.* Quiet thy cudgel; thou dost see, I eat.

*Flu.* Much goot do you, scald knave, heartily. Nay, pray you, throw none away; the skin is goot for your proken coxcomb. When you take occasions to see leeks hereafter, I pray you, mock at them; that is all.

*Pist.* Good.

*Flu.* Ay, leeks is goot:—Hold you, there is a groat to heal your pate.

*Pist.* Me a groat!

*Flu.* Yes, verily, and in truth, you shall take it; or I have another leek in my pocket, which you shall eat.

*Pist.* I take thy groat, in earnest of revenge.

\* — a squire of low degree.] i. e. I will bring thee to the ground. The phrase is taken from the title of an old metrical romance, once very popular among our countrymen.—See *Reliques of Ancient Poetry*, vol. iii. p. 30, 2d edit.

\* — astonished him.] i. e. Stunned him with the blow.—JOHNSON.

*Flu.* If I owe you any thing, I will pay you in cudgels ; you shall be a woodmonger, and buy nothing of me but cudgels. God be wi' you, and keep you, and heal your pate. [*Exit.*

*Pist.* All hell shall stir for this.

*Gow.* Go, go ; you are a counterfeit cowardly knave. Will you mock at an ancient tradition,—begun upon an honourable respect, and worn as a memorable trophy of pre-deceased valour,—and dare not avouch in your deeds any of your words ? I have seen you gleeking<sup>y</sup> and galling at this gentleman twice or thrice. You thought, because he could not speak English in the native garb, he could not therefore handle an English cudgel : you find it otherwise ; and, henceforth, let a Welsh correction teach you a good English condition.<sup>z</sup> Fare ye well. [*Exit.*

*Pist.* Doth fortune play the huswife<sup>a</sup> with me now ?  
 News have I, that my Nell is dead i'the spital  
 Of malady of France ;  
 And there my rendezvous is quite cut off.  
 Old I do wax ; and from my weary limbs  
 Honour is cudgell'd. Well, bawd will I turn,  
 And something lean to cutpurse of quick hand.  
 To England will I steal, and there I'll steal :  
 And patches will I get unto these scars,  
 And swear, I got them in the Gallia wars. [*Exit.*<sup>b</sup>

<sup>y</sup> — gleeking—] i. e. Scoffing, sneering. *Gleck* was a game at cards.—  
 STEEVENS.

<sup>z</sup> — condition.] i. e. *Temper, disposition of mind.*

<sup>a</sup> — huswife—] i. e. *Jilt.* *Huswife* is here used in an ill sense.—  
 JOHNSON.

<sup>b</sup> The comick scenes of *The History of Henry the Fourth and Fifth* are now at an end, and all the comick personages are now dismissed. Falstaff and Mrs. Quickly are dead ; Nym and Bardolph are hanged ; Gadshill was lost immediately after the robbery ; Poins and Peto have vanished since, one knows not how ; and Pistol is now beaten into obscurity. I believe every reader regrets their departure.—JOHNSON.

## SCENE II.

Troyes in Champagne. *An Apartment in the French King's Palace.*

*Enter at one door, King HENRY, BEDFORD, GLOSTER, EXETER, WARWICK, WESTMORELAND, and other Lords; at another, the French King, Queen ISABEL, the Princess KATHARINE, Lords, Ladies, &c. the Duke of BURGUNDY, and his Train.*

*K. Hen.* Peace to this meeting, wherefore we are met!<sup>c</sup>  
Unto our brother France,—and to our sister,  
Health and fair time of day:—joy and good wishes  
To our most fair and princely cousin Katharine;  
And (as a branch and member of this royalty,  
By whom this great assembly is contriv'd,)  
We do salute you, duke of Burgundy;—  
And, princes French, and peers, health to you all!

*Fr. King.* Right joyous are we to behold your face,  
Most worthy brother England; fairly met:—  
So are you, princes English, every one.

*Q. Isa.* So happy be the issue, brother England,  
Of this good day, and of this gracious meeting,  
As we are now glad to behold your eyes;  
Your eyes, which hitherto have borne in them  
Against the French, that met them in their bent,  
The fatal balls of murdering basilisks:<sup>d</sup>  
The venom of such looks, we fairly hope,  
Have lost their quality; and that this day  
Shall change all griefs, and quarrels, into love.

*K. Hen.* To cry amen tō that, thus we appear.

*Q. Isa.* You English princes all, I do salute you.

*Bur.* My duty to you both, on equal love,  
Great kings of France and England! That I have  
labour'd  
With all my wits, my pains, and strong endeavours;

<sup>c</sup> *Peace to this meeting, wherefore we are met!*] i. e. Peace, for which we are here met, be to this meeting.—JOHNSON.

<sup>d</sup> ——— *basilisks:*] It was anciently supposed that this serpent could destroy the object of its vengeance by merely looking at it.—STEEVENS.

To bring your most imperial majesties,  
 Unto this bar<sup>e</sup> and royal interview,  
 Your mightiness on both parts best can witness.  
 Since then my office hath so far prevail'd,  
 That face to face, and royal eye to eye,  
 You have congregated ; let it not disgrace me,  
 If I demand, before this royal view,  
 What rub, or what impediment, there is,  
 Why the naked, poor, and mangled peace,  
 Dear nurse of arts, plenties, and joyful births,  
 Should not, in this best garden of the world,  
 Our fertile France, put up her lovely visage ?  
 Alas ! she hath from France too long been chas'd ;  
 And all her husbandry doth lie on heaps,  
 Corrupting in its own fertility.  
 Her vine, the merry cheerer of the heart,  
 Unpruned dies : her hedges even-pleach'd,<sup>f</sup>—  
 Like prisoners wildly over-grown with hair,  
 Put forth disorder'd twigs : her fallow leas,  
 The darnel, hemlock, and rank fumitory,  
 Doth root upon ; while that the coulter<sup>g</sup> rusts,  
 That should deracinate<sup>h</sup> such savagery :  
 The even mead, that erst brought sweetly forth  
 The freckled cowslip, burnet, and green clover,  
 Wanting the scythe, all uncorrected, rank,  
 Conceives by idleness ; and nothing teems,  
 But hateful docks, rough thistles, kecksies, burs,  
 Losing both beauty and utility.  
 And as our vineyards, fallows, meads, and hedges,  
 Defective in their natures, grow to wildness ;  
 Even so our houses, and ourselves, and children,  
 Have lost, or do not learn for want of time,  
 The science that should become our country ;  
 But grow, like savages,—as soldiers will,  
 That nothing do but meditate on blood,—

<sup>e</sup> *Unto this bar—*] To this barrier ; to this place of congress.—JOHNSON.

<sup>f</sup> *— even-pleach'd,—*] i. e. *Woven together*. The line “ Like prisoners,” &c. relates to the one which follows, and not to that which precedes it. The construction is, *Her even-pleach'd hedges put forth disorder'd twigs, resembling persons in prison, whose faces are from neglect over-grown with hair.*—MALONE.

<sup>g</sup> *— coulter—*] i. e. *Plough-share*.

<sup>h</sup> *— deracinate—*] i. e. *Force up by the roots*.



To swearing, and stern looks, diffus'd<sup>i</sup> attire,  
 And every thing that seems unnatural.  
 Which to reduce into our former favour,<sup>k</sup>  
 You are assembled: and my speech entreats,  
 That I may know the let, why gentle peace  
 Should not expel these inconveniencies,  
 And bless us with her former qualities.

*K. Hen.* If, duke of Burgundy, you would the peace,  
 Whose want gives growth to the imperfections  
 Which you have cited, you must buy that peace  
 With full accord to all our just demands;  
 Whose tenours and particular effects  
 You have, enschedul'd briefly, in your hands.

*Bur.* The king hath heard them; to the which, as yet,  
 There is no answer made.

*K. Hen.* Well then, the peace,  
 Which you before so urg'd, lies in his answer.

*Fr. King.* I have but with a cursorary eye  
 O'er-glanc'd the articles: pleaseth your grace  
 To appoint some of your council presently  
 To sit with us once more, with better heed  
 To re-survey them, we will, suddenly,  
 Pass our accept, and peremptory answer.<sup>l</sup>

*K. Hen.* Brother, we shall.—Go, uncle Exeter,—  
 And brother Clarence,—and you, brother Gloster,—  
 Warwick,—and Huntington,—go with the king:  
 And take with you free power, to ratify,  
 Augment, or alter, as your wisdoms best  
 Shall see advantageable for our dignity,  
 Any thing in, or out of, our demands;  
 And we'll consign thereto.—Will you, fair sister,  
 Go with the princes, or stay here with us?

*Q. Isab.* Our gracious brother, I will go with them;  
 Haply, a woman's voice may do some good,  
 When articles, too nicely urg'd, be stood on.

<sup>i</sup> — diffus'd—] i. e. Wild, irregular, extravagant.

<sup>k</sup> — favour,] i. e. Appearance.

<sup>l</sup> — we will, suddenly,

Pass our accept, and peremptory answer.] i. e. We will pass our acceptance of what we approve, and we will pass a peremptory answer to the rest. Politeness might forbid his saying, we will pass a denial, but his own dignity required more time for deliberation.—TOLLET.

*K. Hen.* Yet leave our cousin Katherine here with us ;  
She is our capital demand, compris'd  
Within the fore rank of our articles.

*Q. Isab.* She hath good leave.

[*Exeunt all but HENRY, KATHARINE,  
and her Gentlewoman.*]

*K. Hen.* Fair Katharine, and most fair!  
Will you vouchsafe to teach a soldier terms,  
Such as will enter at a lady's ear,  
And plead her love-suit to her gentle heart ?

*Kath.* Your majesty shall mock at me ; I cannot speak  
your England.

*K. Hen.* O fair Katharine, if you will love me soundly  
with your French heart, I will be glad to hear you confess  
it brokenly with your English tongue. Do you like me,  
Kate ?

*Kath.* *Pardonnez moy*, I cannot tell vat is—like me.

*K. Hen.* An angel is like you, Kate ; and you are like  
an angel.

*Kath.* *Que dit-il ? que je suis semblable à les anges ?*

*Alice.* *Ouy, vrayment, (sauf vostre grace) ainsi dit-il.*

*K. Hen.* I said so, dear Katharine ; and I must not  
blush to affirm it.

*Kath.* *O bon Dieu ! les langues des hommes sont pleines  
des tromperies.*

*K. Hen.* What says she, fair one ? that the tongues of  
men are full of deceits ?

*Alice.* *Ouy ; dat de tongues of de mans is be full of de-  
ceits : dat is de princess.*

*K. Hen.* The princess is the better English-woman.  
I'faith, Kate, my wooing is fit for thy understanding : I  
I am glad, thou can'st speak no better English ; for, if  
thou couldst, thou would'st find me such a plain king,<sup>m</sup>

<sup>m</sup> ——— *such a plain king.*] I know not why Shakspeare now gives the king nearly such a character as he made him formerly ridicule in Percy. This military grossness and unskilfulness in all the softer arts does not suit very well with the gaieties of his youth, with the general knowledge ascribed to him at his accession, or with the contemptuous message sent him by the Dauphin, who represents him as fitter for a ball-room than the field, and tells him that he is *not to revel into duchies, or win provinces with a nimble galliard.* The truth is, that the poet's matter failed him in the fifth act, and he was glad to fill it up with whatever he could get ; and not even Shakspeare can write well without

that thou would'st think; I had sold my farm to buy my crown. I know no ways to mince it in love, but directly to say—I love you: then, if you urge me further than to say—Do you in faith? I swear out my suit. Give me your answer; i'faith, do; and so clap hands and a bargain: How say you, lady?

Kath. *Sauf vostre honneur*, me understand well.

K. Hen. Marry, if you would put me to verses, or to dance for your sake, Kate, why you undid me: for the one, I have neither words nor measure; and for the other, I have no strength in measure,<sup>a</sup> yet a reasonable measure in strength. If I could win a lady at leap-frog, or by vaulting into my saddle with my armour on my back, under the correction of bragging be it spoken, I should quickly leap into a wife. Or, if I might buffet for my love, or bound my horse for her favours, I could lay on like a butcher, and sit like a jack-an-apes, never off: but, before God, I cannot look greenly,<sup>o</sup> nor gasp out my eloquence, nor I have no cunning in protestation; only downright oaths, which I never use till urged, nor never break for urging. If thou canst love a fellow of this temper, Kate, whose face is not worth sun-burning, that never looks in his glass for love of any thing he sees there, let thine eye be thy cook. I speak to thee plain soldier: If thou canst love me for this, take me: if not, to say to thee—that I shall die, is true: but—for thy love, by the Lord, no; yet I love thee too. And while thou livest, dear Kate, take a fellow of plain and uncoined constancy;<sup>p</sup> for he perforce must do thee right, because he hath not the gift to woo in other places: for these fellows of infinite tongue, that can rhyme themselves into ladies' favours,—they do always reason themselves out again. What! a speaker is but a prater; a rhyme is but a ballad. A good leg will fall; a straight back will

a proper subject. It is a vain endeavour for the most skilful hand to cultivate barrenness, or to paint upon vacuity.—JOHNSON.

<sup>a</sup> — in measure,] i. e. In dancing.

<sup>o</sup> — look greenly,] i. e. Like a young lover, awkwardly.

<sup>p</sup> — uncoined constancy;] Resembling a plain piece of metal, that had not yet received any impression. Katharine was the first woman that Henry had ever loved. A. C.

stoop ; a black beard will turn white ; a curled pate will grow bald ; a fair face will wither ; a full eye will wax hollow ; but a good heart, Kate, is the sun and moon ; or, rather the sun, and not the moon ; for it shines bright, and never changes, but keeps his course truly. If thou wouldst have such a one, take me : And take me, take a soldier ; take a soldier, take a king : And what sayest thou then to my love ? speak, my fair, and fairly, I pray thee.

*Kath.* Is it possible that I should love the enemy of France ?

*K. Hen.* No ; it is not possible, you should love the enemy of France, Kate : but, in loving me, you should love the friend of France ; for I love France so well, that I will not part with a village of it ; I will have it all mine : and, Kate, when France is mine, and I am yours, then yours is France, and you are mine.

*Kath.* I cannot tell what is that.

*K. Hen.* No, Kate ? I will tell thee in French ; which, I am sure, will hang upon my tongue like a new-married wife about her husband's neck, hardly to be shook off. *Quand j'ay la possession de France, et quand vous avez la possession de moi,* (let me see, what then ? Saint Dennis be my speed !)—*donc vostre est France, et vous estes mienne.* It is as easy for me, Kate, to conquer the kingdom, as to speak so much more French : I shall never move thee in French, unless it be to laugh at me.

*Kath.* *Sauf' vostre honneur, le François que vous parlez, est meilleur que l'Anglois lequel je parle.*

*K. Hen.* No, 'faith, is't not, Kate : but thy speaking of my tongue, and I thine, most truly falsely, must needs be granted to be much at one. But, Kate, dost thou understand thus much English ? Canst thou love me ?

*Kath.* I cannot tell.

*K. Hen.* Can any of your neighbours tell, Kate ? I'll ask them. Come, I know thou lovest me : and at night when you come into your closet, you'll question this gentlewoman about me ; and I know, Kate, you will, to her, dispraise those parts in me, that you love with your heart : but good Kate, mock me mercifully ; the rather, gentle

princess, because I love thee cruelly. If ever thou be'st mine, Kate, (as I have a saving faith within me, tells me, —thou shalt,) I get thee with scrambling,<sup>q</sup> and thou must therefore needs prove a good soldier-breeder: Shall not thou and I, between saint Dennis and saint George, compound a boy, half French, half English, that shall go to Constantinople, and take the Turk by the beard?<sup>r</sup> shall we not? what sayest thou, my fair flower-de-luce?

*Kath.* I do not know dat.

*K. Hen.* No; 'tis hereafter to know, but now to promise: do but now promise, Kate, you will endeavour for your French part of such a boy; and, for my English moiety, take the word of a king and a bachelor. How answer you, *la plus belle Katharine du monde, mon tres chere et divine deesse?*

*Kath.* Your *majesté* 'ave *fausse* French enough to deceive de most *sage damoiselle* dat is *en France*.

*K. Hen.* Now, fye upon my false French! By mine honour, in true English, I love thee, Kate: by which honour I dare not swear, thou lovest me; yet my blood begins to flatter me that thou dost, notwithstanding the poor and untempering effect<sup>s</sup> of my visage. Now beshrew my father's ambition! he was thinking of civil wars when he got me; therefore was I created with a stubborn outside, with an aspect of iron, that, when I come to woo ladies, I fright them. But, in faith, Kate, the elder I wax, the better I shall appear: my comfort is, that old age, that ill-layer-up of beauty, can do no more spoil upon my face: thou hast me, if thou hast me, at the worst; and thou shalt wear me, if thou wear me, better and better; And therefore tell me, most fair Katharine, will you have me? Put off your maiden blushes: avouch the thoughts of your heart with the looks of an empress; take me by the hand, and say—Harry of England, I am thine: which word thou shalt no sooner bless mine ear withal, but I

<sup>q</sup> — scrambling;] i. e. Scrambling.

<sup>r</sup> — go to Constantinople, and take the Turk by the beard?] The Turks were not possessed of Constantinople, before the year 1453, when Henry the Fifth had been dead thirty-one years.—THEOBALD.

<sup>s</sup> — untempering effect—] The sense is, that you love me notwithstanding my face has no power to temper, i. e. soften you to my purpose.—STEEVENS.

will tell thee aloud—England is thine, Ireland is thine, France is thine, and Henry Plantagenet is thine; who, though I speak it before his face, if he be not fellow with the best king, thou shalt find the best king of good fellows. Come, your answer in broken musick; for thy voice is musick, and thy English broken: therefore queen of all, Katharine, break thy mind to me in broken English, Wilt thou have me?

*Kath.* Dat is, as it shall please de *roy mon pere*.

*K. Hen.* Nay, it will please him well, Kate; it shall please him, Kate.

*Kath.* Den it shall also content me.

*K. Hen.* Upon that I will kiss your hand, and I call you—my queen.

*Kath.* *Laissez, mon seigneur, laissez, laissez: ma foy, je ne veux point que vous abaissez vostre grandeur, en baisant la main d'une vostre indigne serviteure; excusez moy, je vous supplie, mon tres puissant seigneur.*

*H. Hen.* Then I will kiss your lips, Kate.

*Kath.* *Les dames, et damoiselles, pour estre baisées devant leur nopces, il n'est pas le coûtume de France.*

*K. Hen.* Madam my interpreter, what says she?

*Alice.* Dat it is not be de fashion *pour les ladies* of France, —I cannot tell what is, *baiser, en English.*

*K. Hen.* To kiss.

*Alice.* Your majesty *entendre better que moy.*

*K. Hen.* It is not the fashion for the maids in France to kiss before they are married, would she say?

*Alice.* *Ouy, vrayment.*

*K. Hen.* O, Kate, nice customs curt'sy to great kings. Dear Kate, you and I cannot be confined within the weak list<sup>†</sup> of a country's fashion: we are the makers of manners, Kate; and the liberty that follow our places, stops the mouths of all find-faults; as I will do yours, for upholding the nice fashion of your country, in denying me a kiss: therefore, patiently, and yielding [*kissing her.*] You have witchcraft in your lips, Kate: there is more eloquence in a sugar touch of them, than in the tongues of the French council;

<sup>†</sup> — weak list—] i. e. Slight barrier.

and they should sooner persuade Harry of England, than a general petition of monarchs. Here comes your father.

*Enter the French King and Queen, BURGUNDY, BEDFORD, GLOSTER, EXETER, WESTMORELAND, and other French and English Lords.*

*Bur.* God save your majesty! my royal cousin, teach you our princess English?

*K. Hen.* I would have her learn, my fair cousin, how perfectly I love her; and that is good English.

*Bur.* Is she not apt?

*K. Hen.* Our tongue is rough, coz; and my condition<sup>u</sup> is not smooth: so that, having neither the voice, nor the heart of flattery about me, I cannot so conjure up the spirit of love in her, that he will appear in his true likeness.

*Bur.* Pardon the frankness of my mirth, if I answer you for that. If you would conjure in her you must make a circle: if conjure up love in her in his true likeness, he must appear naked, and blind: Can you blame her then, being a maid yet rosed over with the virgin crimson of modesty, if she deny the appearance of a naked blind boy in her naked seeing self? It were, my lord, a hard condition for a maid to consign to.

*K. Hen.* Yet they do wink, and yield; as love is blind, and enforces.

*Bur.* They are then excused, my lord, when they see not what they do.

*K. Hen.* Then, good my lord, teach your cousin to consent to winking.

*Bur.* I will wink on her to consent, my lord, if you will teach her to know my meaning: for maids well summered and warm kept, are like flies at Bartholomewtide, blind, though they have their eyes; and then they will endure handling, which before would not abide looking on.

*K. Hen.* This moral<sup>x</sup> ties me over to time, and a hot summer; and so I will catch the fly, your cousin, in the latter end, and she must be blind too.

<sup>u</sup> — condition—] i. e. *Temper.*

<sup>x</sup> *This moral—*] That is, the application of this fable. The *moral* being the application of a fable, our author calls any application a *moral*.—JOHNSON.

*Bur.* As love is, my lord, before it loves.

*K. Hen.* It is so; and you may, some of you, thank love for my blindness; who cannot see many a fair French city, for one fair French maid that stands in my way.

*Fr. King.* Yes, my lord, you see them perspectively, the cities turned into a maid; for they are all girdled with maiden walls, that war hath never entered.

*K. Hen.* Shall Kate be my wife?

*Fr. King.* So please you.

*K. Hen.* I am content; so the maiden cities you talk of, may wait on her: so the maid, that stood in the way of my wish, shall show me the way to my will.

*Fr. King.* We have consented to all terms of reason.

*K. Hen.* Is't so, my lords of England?

*West.* The king hath granted every article: His daughter, first; and then, in sequel, all, According to their firm proposed natures.

*Exe.* Only, he hath not yet subscribed this:—Where your majesty demands,—That the king of France, having any occasion to write for matter of grant, shall name your highness in this form, and with this addition, in French, —*Notre tres cher filz Henry roy d'Angleterre, heretier de France*; and thus in Latin,—*Præclarissimus filius noster Henricus, rex Angliæ, et hæres Franciæ*.

*Fr. King.* Nor this I have not, brother, so denied, But your request shall make me let it pass.

*K. Hen.* I pray you then, in love and dear alliance, Let that one article rank with the rest: And, thereupon, give me your daughter.

*Fr. King.* Take her, fair son; and from her blood raise up Issue to me: and the contending kingdoms Of France and England, whose very shores look pale With envy of each other's happiness, May cease their hatred; and this dear conjunction Plant neighbourhood and christian-like accord In their sweet bosoms, that never war advance His bleeding sword 'twixt England and fair France.

v — *præclarissimus*—] We certainly ought to read *plæclarissimus*; which is the word in the preamble of the original treaty of Troyes. The error is found in Holinshed and all the old historians.



*All.* Amen!

*K. Hen.* Now welcome, Kate :—and bear me witness all,  
That here I kiss her as my sovereign queen. [*Flourish.*]

*Q. Isab.* God, the best maker of all marriages,  
Combine your hearts in one, your realms in one!  
As man and wife, being two, are one in love,  
So be there 'twixt your kingdoms such a spousal,  
That never may ill office, or fell jealousy,  
Which troubles oft the bed of blessed marriage,  
Thrust in between the paction of these kingdoms,  
To make divorce of their incorporate league;  
That English may as French, French Englishmen,  
Receive each other!—God speak this Amen!

*All.* Amen!

*K. Hen.* Prepare we for our marriage :—on which day,  
My lord of Burgundy, we'll take your oath,  
And all the peers', for surety of our leagues.—  
Then shall I swear to Kate, and you to me;  
And may our oaths well kept and prosp'rous be! [*Exeunt.*]

*Enter* CHORUS.

Thus far, with rough, and all unable pen,  
Our bending<sup>z</sup> author hath pursu'd the story;  
In little room confining mighty men,  
Mangling by starts<sup>a</sup> the full course of their glory.  
Small time, but, in that small, most greatly liv'd  
This star of England: fortune made his sword;  
By which the world's best garden<sup>b</sup> he achiev'd,  
And of it left his son imperial lord.  
Henry the sixth, in infant bands crown'd king  
Of France and England did this king succeed;  
Whose state so many had the managing,  
That they lost France, and made his England bleed:  
Which oft our stage hath shown; and, for their sake,  
In your fair minds let this acceptance take. [*Exit.*<sup>c</sup>]

<sup>z</sup> — Our bending author—] By *bending*, our author meant *unequal to the weight of his subject*; and *bending beneath it*.—STEEVENS.

<sup>a</sup> — Mangling by starts—] By touching only on select parts.—JOHNSON.

<sup>b</sup> — the world's best garden—] i. e. France.

<sup>c</sup> This play has many scenes of high dignity, and many of easy merriment. The character of the king is well supported, except in his courtship, where he

has neither the vivacity of Hal, nor the grandeur of Henry. The humour of Pistol is very happily continued: his character has perhaps been the model of all the bullies that have yet appeared on the English stage.

The lines given to the Chorus have many admirers; but the truth is, that in them a little may be praised, and much must be forgiven; nor can it be easily discovered why the intelligence given by the Chorus is more necessary in this play than in many others where it is omitted. The great defect of this play is the emptiness and narrowness of the last act, which a very little diligence might have easily avoided.—JOHNSON.

Of the general conduct of this play, it may be remarked, that the interest turns altogether upon the circumstances which accompany a single battle; consequently, the poet has put forth all his strength in colouring and contrasting the situation of the two armies; and so admirably has he succeeded in this attempt, by opposing the full assurance of victory on the part of the French, their boastful clamour and impatient levity, to the conscious danger, calm valour, and self-devotedness of the English, that we wait the issue of the combat with an almost breathless anxiety.—Dr. DRAKE.





KING OF HUNGARY VI

... the ... of beauty ...

...

37

FIRST PART OF  
KING HENRY VI.

---

Of this play there is no edition extant previous to the folio, 1623. It is a miserable production ; and Malone has distinctly proved, in his ingenious and elaborate Essay on the three parts of *King Henry VI.* that it has been unjustly ascribed to the hand of Shakspeare.

In the second and third parts of *King Henry VI.* the pen of our great poet is easily distinguished ; but in the present play there is not a single passage marked with the characters of his genius. "It may be asked," says Malone, "if the drama was not written by Shakspeare, why did Heminge and Condell print it with the rest of his works ? The only way I can account for their having done so, is by supposing, that they imagined the insertion of this historical drama was necessary to understanding the two pieces that follow it ; or, that Shakspeare, for the advantage of his own theatre, having written a few lines in the *first* part of *King Henry VI.* after his own second and third parts had been played, they conceived this a sufficient warrant for attributing it, along with the others, to him, in the general collection of his works."<sup>a</sup>

The historical transactions contained in this play, take in the compass of above thirty years.

---

<sup>a</sup> Malone's *Dissertation on King Henry VI.* Boswell's Shakspeare, vol. xviii. p. 591.

## PERSONS REPRESENTED.

---

*King* HENRY the Sixth.

*Duke of* GLOSTER, *uncle to the king, and protector.*

*Duke of* BEDFORD, *uncle to the king, and regent of France.*

THOMAS BEAUFORT, *duke of Exeter, great uncle to the king.*

HENRY BEAUFORT, *great uncle to the king, bishop of Winchester, and afterwards cardinal.*

JOHN BEAUFORT, *earl of Somerset; afterwards duke.*

RICHARD PLANTAGENET, *eldest son of Richard late earl of Cambridge; afterwards duke of York.*

*Earl of* WARWICK. *Earl of* SALISBURY. *Earl of* SUFFOLK.

*Lord* TALBOT, *afterwards earl of Shrewsbury :*

JOHN TALBOT, *his son.*

EDMUND MORTIMER, *earl of March.*

*Mortimer's Keeper, and a Lawyer.*

*Sir* JOHN FASTOLFE. *Sir* WILLIAM LUCY.

*Sir* WILLIAM GLANSDALE. *Sir* THOMAS GARGRAVE.

*Mayor of* LONDON. *WOODVILLE, lieut. of the Tower.*

VERNON, *of the White Rose, or York faction.*

BASSET, *of the Red Rose, or Lancaster faction.*

CHARLES, *dauphin, and afterwards king of France.*

REIGNIER, *duke of Anjou, and titular king of Naples.*

*Duke of* BURGUNDY. *Duke of* ALENÇON.

*Governor of* Paris. *Bastard of* Orleans.

*Master-Gunner of* Orleans, *and his son.*

*General of the French forces in* Bourdeaux.

*A French Sergeant. A Porter.*

*An old Shepherd, father to* Joan la Pucelle.

MARGARET, *daughter to Reignier; afterwards married to King Henry.*

*Countess of* AUVERGNE.

JOAN LA PUCELLE, *commonly called Joan of Arc.*

*Fiends appearing to* La Pucelle, *Lords, Warders of the Tower, Heralds, Officers, Soldiers, Messengers, and several Attendants both on the English and French.*

SCENE, *partly in England, and partly in France.*

FIRST PART OF  
KING HENRY VI.

ACT I.

SCENE I.—Westminster Abbey.

*Dead March. Corpse of King HENRY the Fifth discovered, lying in state; attended on by the Dukes of BEDFORD, GLOSTER, and EXETER; the Earl of WARWICK,<sup>a</sup> the Bishop of WINCHESTER, Heralds, &c.*

*Bed.* HUNG be the heavens with black,<sup>b</sup> yield day to Comets, importing change of times and states, [night! Brandish your crystal tresses in the sky; And with them scourge the bad revolting stars, That have consented unto Henry's death! Henry the fifth, too famous to live long! England ne'er lost a king of so much worth.

*Glo.* England ne'er had a king, until his time. Virtue he had, deserving to command: His brandish'd sword did blind men with his beams; His arms spread wider than a dragon's wings; His sparkling eyes replete with wrathful fire, More dazzled and drove back his enemies,

<sup>a</sup> — [Earl of Warwick,] The earl of Warwick, who makes his appearance in the first scene of this play, is Richard Beauchamp, who is a character in King Henry V. The earl who appears in the subsequent part of it, is Richard Nevil, son to the earl of Salisbury, who became possessed of the title in right of his wife, Anne, sister of Henry Beauchamp, duke of Warwick, on the death of Anne his only child in 1449. Richard, the father of this Henry, was appointed governor to the king, on the demise of Thomas Beaufort, duke of Exeter, and died in 1439. There is no reason to think that the author meant to confound the two characters.—RITSON.

<sup>b</sup> Hung be the heavens with black,] Alluding to our ancient stage-practice when a tragedy was to be expected.—STEEVENS.

Than mid-day sun, fierce bent against their faces.  
 What should I say? his deeds exceed all speech:  
 He ne'er lift up his hand, but conquered.

*Ere.* We mourn in black; Why mourn we not in blood?  
 Henry is dead, and never shall revive:  
 Upon a wooden coffin we attend;  
 And death's dishonourable victory  
 We with our stately presence glorify,  
 Like captives bound to a triumphant car.  
 What? shall we curse the planets of mishap,  
 That plotted thus our glory's overthrow?  
 Or shall we think the subtle-witted French<sup>c</sup>  
 Conjurers and sorcerers, that, afraid of him,  
 By magick verses have contriv'd his end?

*Win.* He was a king bless'd of the King of kings.  
 Unto the French the dreadful judgment day  
 So dreadful will not be, as was his sight.  
 The battles of the Lord of hosts he fought:  
 The church's prayers made him so prosperous.

*Glo.* The church! where is it? had not church-men  
 His thread of life had not so soon decay'd: [pray'd,  
 None do you like but an effeminate prince,  
 Whom, like a school-boy, you may over-awe.

*Win.* Gloster, whate'er we like, thou art protector;  
 And lookest to command the prince, and realm.  
 Thy wife is proud; she holdeth thee in awe,  
 More than God, or religious churchmen, may.

*Glo.* Name not religion, for thou lov'st the flesh;  
 And ne'er throughout the year to church thou go'st,  
 Except it be to pray against thy foes.

*Bed.* Cease, cease these jars, and rest your minds in  
 Let's to the altar:—Heralds, wait on us:— [peace!  
 Instead of gold, we'll offer up our arms;  
 Since arms avail not, now that Henry's dead.—  
 Posterity, await for wretched years,  
 When at their mothers' moist eyes babes shall suck;

<sup>c</sup> — *the subtle-witted French, &c.*] There was a notion prevalent a long time, that life might be taken away by metrical charms. As superstition grew weaker, these charms were imagined only to have power on irrational animals. In our author's time it was supposed that the Irish could kill rats by a song.—JOHNSON.



Our isle be made a nourish<sup>d</sup> of salt tears,  
 And none but women left to wail the dead.—  
 Henry the fifth! thy ghost I invoke;  
 Prosper this realm, keep it from civil broils!  
 Combat with adverse planets in the heavens!  
 A far more glorious star thy soul will make,  
 Than Julius Cæsar, or bright——

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* My honourable lords, health to you all!  
 Sad tidings bring I to you out of France,  
 Of loss, of slaughter, and discomfiture:  
 Guienne, Champagne, Rheims, Roüen, Orleans,<sup>e</sup>  
 Paris, Guysors, Poitiers, are all quite lost.

*Bed.* What say'st thou, man, before dead Henry's corse?  
 Speak softly; or the loss of those great towns  
 Will make him burst his lead, and rise from death.

*Glo.* Is Paris lost? is Roüen yielded up?  
 If Henry were recall'd to life again,  
 These news would cause him once more yield the ghost.

*Ere.* How were they lost? what treachery was us'd?

*Mess.* No treachery; but want of men and money.  
 Among the soldiers this is mutter'd,—  
 That here you maintain several factions;  
 And, whilst a field should be despatch'd and fought,  
 You are disputing of your generals.  
 One would have ling'ring wars, with little cost;  
 Another would fly swift, but wanteth wings;  
 A third man thinks, without expence at all,  
 By guileful fair words peace may be obtain'd.  
 Awake, awake, English nobility!  
 Let not sloth dim your honours, new-begot;  
 Cropp'd are the flower-de-luces in your arms;  
 Of England's coat one half is cut away.

<sup>d</sup> — a nourish—] i. e. *Nourice*, French. A nurse was anciently spelt many different ways, among which *nourish* was one.—STEEVENS.

<sup>e</sup> *Guienne, Champagne, Rheims, Roüen, Orleans,*] *Roüen* is omitted in all the copies, but the propriety of Steevens' observation, that "this verse might be completed by the insertion of *Roüen* among the places lost, as Gloster in his next speech infers that it had been mentioned with the rest," is so evident, that we have inserted it in the text.

*Exe.* Were our tears wanting to this funeral,  
These tidings would call forth her flowing tides.<sup>f</sup>

*Bed.* Me they concern; regent I am of France:—  
Give me my steeled coat, I'll fight for France.—  
Away with these disgraceful wailing robes!  
Wounds I will lend the French, instead of eyes,  
To weep their intermissive miseries.<sup>g</sup>

*Enter another Messenger.*

2 *Mess.* Lords, view these letters, full of bad mischance,  
France is revolted from the English quite;  
Except some petty towns of no import:  
The Dauphin Charles is crowned king in Rheims;  
The bastard of Orleans with him is join'd;  
Reignier, duke of Anjou, doth take his part;  
The duke of Alençon fieth to his side.

*Exe.* The Dauphin crowned king! all fly to him!  
O, whither shall we fly from this reproach?

*Glo.* We will not fly, but to our enemies' throats:—  
Bedford, if thou be slack, I'll fight it out.

*Bed.* Gloster, why doubt'st thou of my forwardness?  
An army have I muster'd in my thoughts,  
Wherewith already France is over-run.

*Enter a third Messenger.*

3 *Mess.* My gracious lords,—to add to your laments,  
Wherewith you now bedew king Henry's hearse,—  
I must inform you of a dismal fight,  
Betwixt the stout lord Talbot and the French.

*Win.* What! wherein Talbot overcame? is't so?

3 *Mess.* O, no; wherein lord Talbot was o'erthrown:  
The circumstance I'll tell you more at large.  
The tenth of August last, this dreadful lord,  
Retiring from the siege of Orleans,  
Having scarce six thousand in his troop,  
By three and twenty thousand of the French  
Was round encompassed and set upon:

<sup>f</sup> — her *flowing tides.*] i. e. England's flowing tides.—MALONE.

<sup>g</sup> — *their intermissive miseries.*] i. e. Their miseries, which have had only a short intermission from Henry the Fifth's death to my coming amongst them.—WARBURTON.

No leisure had he to enrank his men ;  
 He wanted pikes to set before his archers ;  
 Instead whereof, sharp stakes, pluck'd out of hedges,  
 They pitched in the ground confusedly,  
 To keep the horsemen off from breaking in.  
 More than three hours the fight continued ;  
 Where valiant Talbot, above human thought,  
 Enacted wonders with his sword and lance.  
 Hundreds he sent to hell, and none durst stand him ;  
 Here, there, and every where, enrag'd he slew :  
 The French exclaim'd, The devil was in arms :  
 All the whole army stood amaz'd on him :  
 His soldiers, spying his undaunted spirit,  
 A Talbot ! a Talbot ! cried out amain,  
 And rush'd into the bowels of the battle.  
 Here had the conquest fully been seal'd up,  
 If sir John Fastolfe<sup>b</sup> had not play'd the coward ;  
 He being in the vaward, (plac'd behind,<sup>i</sup>  
 With purpose to relieve and follow them,)  
 Cowardly fled, not having struck one stroke.  
 Hence grew the general wreck and massacre ;  
 Enclosed were they with their enemies :  
 A base Walloon, to win the Dauphin's grace,  
 Thrust Talbot with a spear into the back ;  
 Whom all France, with their chief assembled strength,  
 Durst not presume to look once in the face.

*Bed.* Is Talbot slain ? then will I slay myself,  
 For living idly here, in pomp and ease,  
 Whilst such a worthy leader, wanting aid,  
 Unto his dastard foe-men is betray'd.

3 *Mess.* O no, he lives ; but is took prisoner,  
 And lord Scales with him, and lord Hungerford :  
 Most of the rest slaughter'd, or took, likewise.

*Bed.* His ransome there is none but I shall pay :  
 I'll hale the Dauphin headlong from his throne,  
 His crown shall be the ransome of my friend ;

<sup>b</sup> *If sir John Fastolfe, &c.]* For an account of this sir John Fastolfe, see Biographia Britannica, vol. v.

<sup>i</sup> — in the vaward, placed behind,] This is not a contradiction as it at first appears to be. When an army is attacked in the rear, the van becomes the rear in its turn and of course the reserve.—M. MASON.

Four of their lords I'll change for one of ours.—  
 Farewell, my masters ; to my task will I ;  
 Bonfires in France forthwith I am to make,  
 To keep our great saint George's feast withal :  
 Ten thousand soldiers with me will I take,  
 Whose bloody deeds shall make all Europe quake.

3 *Mess.* So you had need ; for Orleans is besieg'd ;  
 The English army is grown weak and faint :  
 The earl of Salisbury craveth supply,  
 And hardly keeps his men from mutiny,  
 Since they, so few, watch such a multitude.

*Exe.* Remember, lords, your oaths to Henry sworn ;  
 Either to quell the Dauphin utterly,  
 Or bring him in obedience to your yoke.

*Bed.* I do remember it, and here take leave,  
 To go about my preparation. [*Exit.*

*Glo.* I'll to the Tower, with all the haste I can,  
 To view the artillery and munition ;  
 And then I will proclaim young Henry king. [*Exit.*

*Exe.* To Eltham will I, where the young king is,  
 Being ordain'd his special governor ;  
 And for his safety there I'll best devise. [*Exit.*

*Win.* Each hath his place and function to attend :  
 I am left out ; for me nothing remains.  
 But long I will not be Jack-out-of-office ;  
 The king from Eltham I intend to send,<sup>k</sup>  
 And sit at chiefest stern of publick weal.

[*Exit.* *Scene closes.*

## SCENE II.

France. *Before Orleans.*

*Enter CHARLES, with his Forces ; ALENÇON, REIGNER,  
 and others.*

*Char.* Mars his true moving, even as in the heavens,  
 So in the earth to this day is not known :

<sup>k</sup> — *I intend to send,*] The king was not at this time so much in the power of the cardinal, that he could send him where he pleased. I have therefore no doubt but that we should read *steal* for *send* ; an emendation which is countenanced by the second charge in *the articles of accusation* preferred by the duke of Gloster against the bishop.—M. MASON and MALONE.

Late did he shine upon the English side ;  
 Now we are victors, upon us he smiles.  
 What towns of any moment, but we have ?  
 At pleasure here we lie, near Orleans ;  
 Otherwiles, the famish'd English, like pale ghosts,  
 Faintly besiege us one hour in a month.

*Alen.* They want their porridge, and their fat bull-beeves :  
 Either they must be dieted like mules,  
 And have their provender tyed to their mouths,  
 Or piteous they will look, like drowned mice.

*Reig.* Let's raise the siege ; Why live we idly here ?  
 Talbot is taken, whom we wont to fear :  
 Remaineth none, but mad-brain'd Salisbury ;  
 And he may well in fretting spend his gall,  
 Nor men, nor money, hath he to make war.

*Char.* Sound, sound alarum ; we will rush on them.  
 Now for the honour of the forlorn French :  
 Him I forgive my death, that killeth me,  
 When he sees me go back one foot, or fly. [ *Exeunt.*

*Alarums ; Excursions ; afterwards a Retreat.*

*Re-enter CHARLES, ALENÇON, REIGNIER, and others.*

*Char.* Who ever saw the like ? what men have I ?—  
 Dogs ! cowards ! dastards !—I would ne'er have fled,  
 But that they left me 'midst my enemies.

*Reig.* Salisbury is a desperate homicide ;  
 He fighteth as one weary of his life.  
 The other lords, like lions wanting food,  
 Do rush upon us as their hungry prey.<sup>1</sup>

*Alen.* Froissard, a countryman of ours, records,  
 England all Olivers and Rowlands bred,<sup>m</sup>  
 During the time Edward the third did reign.  
 More truly may this now be verified ;

<sup>1</sup> *their hungry prey.*—appears to signify *the prey for which they are hungry*  
 —STEEVENS.

<sup>m</sup> *England all Olivers and Rowlands bred,*] These were two of the most famous  
 in the list of Charlemagne's peers ; and their exploits are rendered so ridicu-  
 lously and equally extravagant by the old romances, that from thence arose that  
 saying amongst our plain and sensible ancestors, of *giving one a Rowland for his*  
*Oliver*, to signify the matching one incredible lie with another.—WARBURTON.

Rather, to oppose one hero to another ; i. e. *To give a person as good a one a*  
*he brings.*—STEEVENS.

For none but Samsons, and Goliasses,  
It sendeth forth to skirmish. One to ten!  
Lean raw-bon'd rascals! who would e'er suppose  
They had such courage and audacity?

*Char.* Let's leave this town; for they are hair-brain'd  
slaves,

And hunger will enforce them to be more eager:  
Of old I know them; rather with their teeth  
The walls they'll tear down, than forsake the seige.

*Reig.* I think, by some odd gimmals<sup>a</sup> or device,  
Their arms are set, like clocks, still to strike on:  
Else ne'er could they hold out so, as they do.  
By my consent, we'll e'en let them alone.

*Alen.* Be it so.

*Enter the Bastard of Orleans.*

*Bast.* Where's the prince Dauphin? I have news for him.

*Char.* Bastard of Orleans,<sup>o</sup> thrice welcome to us.

*Bast.* Methinks, your looks are sad, your cheer<sup>p</sup> ap-  
pall'd;

Hath the late overthrow wrought this offence?  
Be not dismay'd, for succour is at hand:  
A holy maid hither with me I bring,  
Which, by a vision sent to her from heaven,  
Ordained is to raise this tedious siege,  
And drive the English forth the bounds of France.  
The spirit of deep prophecy she hath,  
Exceeding the nine sibyls of old Rome;<sup>q</sup>  
What's past, and what's to come, she can descry.  
Speak, shall I call her in? Believe my words,  
For they are certain and unfallible.

<sup>a</sup> — *gimmals*—] A *gimmel* is a piece of jointed work, where once piece moves within another, whence it is taken at large for an *engine*. It is now by the vulgar called a *gimerack*.—JOHNSON.

<sup>o</sup> *Bastard of Orleans*,] That this in former times was not a term of reproach, see Bishop Hurd's *Letters on Chivalry and Romance*, in the third volume of his *Dialogues*, p. 233, who observing the circumstances of agreement between the heroick and Gothick manners, says that "Bastardy was in credit with both." One of William the conqueror's charters begins, "*Ego Gulielmus cognomento Bastardus*.—VAILLANT.

<sup>p</sup> — *cheer*—] i. e. *Countenance*.

<sup>q</sup> — *nine sibyls of old Rome*;] There were no *nine sibyls* of Rome; but he confounds things, and mistakes this for the nine books of Sibylline oracles, brought to one of the Tarquins.—WARBURTON.

*Char.* Go, call her in: [*Exit Bastard.*] But first to try her skill,

Reignier, stand thou as Dauphin in my place :  
Question her proudly, let thy looks be stern :—  
By this means shall we sound what skill she hath.

[*Retires.*]

*Enter LA PUCELLE, Bastard of Orleans, and others.*

*Reig.* Fair maid, is't thou wilt do these wond'rous feats ?

*Puc.* Reignier, is't thou that thinkest to beguile me ?

Where is the Dauphin?—come, come from behind ;  
I know thee well, though never seen before.

Be not amaz'd, there's nothing hid from me :

In private will I talk with thee apart ;—

Stand back, you lords, and give us leave a while.

*Reig.* She takes upon her bravely at first dash.

*Puc.* Dauphin, I am by birth a shepherd's daughter,  
My wit untrain'd in any kind of art.

Heaven, and our Lady gracious, hath it pleas'd

To shine on my contemptible estate :

Lo, whilst I waited on my tender lambs,

And to sun's parching heat display'd my cheeks,

God's mother deigned to appear to me ;

And, in a vision full of majesty,

Will'd me to leave my base vocation,

And free my country from calamity :

Her aid she promis'd, and assur'd success :

In complete glory she reveal'd herself ;

And, whereas I was black and swart before,

With those clear rays which she infus'd on me,

That beauty am I bless'd with, which you see.

Ask me what question thou canst possible,

And I will answer unpremeditated :

My courage try by combat, if thou dar'st,

And thou shalt find that I exceed my sex.

Resolve on this :<sup>r</sup> Thou shalt be fortunate,

If thou receive me for thy warlike mate.

*Char.* Thou hast astonish'd me with thy high terms ;  
Only this proof I'll of thy valour make,—

<sup>r</sup> Resolve on this:] i. e. Be firmly persuaded of it.—STEEVENS.

In single combat thou shalt buckle with me ;  
 And if thou vanquishest, thy words are true ;  
 Otherwise, I renounce all confidence.

*Puc.* I am prepar'd : here is my keen-edg'd sword,  
 Deck'd with five flower-de-lucus on each side ;  
 The which, at Touraine, in saint Katharine's churchyard,  
 Out of a deal of old iron I chose forth.

*Char.* Then comè o'God's name, I fear no woman.

*Puc.* And, while I live, I'll ne'er fly from a man.

[*They fight.*

*Char.* Stay, stay thy hands ; thou art an Amazon,  
 And fightest with the sword of Deborah.

*Puc.* Christ's mother helps me, else I were too weak.

*Char.* Whoe'er helps thee, 'tis thou that must help me :  
 Impatiently I burn with thy desire ;  
 My heart and hands thou hast at once subdu'd.  
 Excellent Pucelle, if thy name be so,  
 Let me thy servant, and not sovereign, be ;  
 'Tis the French Dauphin sueth to thee thus.

*Puc.* I must not yield to any rites of love,  
 For my profession's sacred from above :  
 When I have chased all thy foes from hence,  
 Then will I think upon a recompense,

*Char.* Mean time, look gracious on thy prostrate thrall.

*Reig.* My lord, methinks, is very long in talk.

*Alen.* Doubtless, he shrives this woman to her smock ;  
 Else ne'er could he so long protract his speech.

*Reig.* Shall we disturb him, since he keeps no mean ?

*Alen.* He may mean more than we poor men do know :  
 These women are shrewd tempters with their tongues.

*Reig.* My lord, where are you ? what devise you on ?  
 Shall we give over Orleans, or no ?

*Puc.* Why, no, I say, distrustful recreants !  
 Fight till the last gasp ; I will be your guard.

*Char.* What she says, I'll confirm ; we'll fight it out.

*Puc.* Assign'd am I to be the English scourge.  
 This night the siege assuredly I'll raise :  
 Expect saint Martin's summer,<sup>s</sup> halcyon days,

<sup>s</sup> *Expect saint Martin's summer,*] That is, expect prosperity after misfortune, like fair weather at Martlemas, after winter has begun.—*JOHNSON.*



Since I have entered into these wars.  
 Glory is like a circle in the water,  
 Which never ceaseth to enlarge itself,  
 Till, by broad spreading, it disperse to nought.  
 With Henry's death, the English circle ends;  
 Dispersed are the glories it included.  
 Now am I like that proud insulting ship,  
 Which Cæsar and his fortune bare at once.

*Char.* Was Mahomet inspired with a dove?<sup>1</sup>  
 Thou with an eagle art inspired then.  
 Helen, the mother of great Constantine,  
 Nor yet saint Philip's daughters,<sup>2</sup> were like thee.  
 Bright star of Venus, fall'n down on the earth,  
 How may I reverently worship thee enough?

*Alen.* Leave off delays, and let us raise the siege.

*Reig.* Woman, do what thou canst to save our honours;  
 Drive them from Orleans, and be immortaliz'd.

*Char.* Presently we'll try:—Come, let's away about it:  
 No prophet will I trust, if she prove false. [Exeunt.]

## SCENE III.

London. *Hill before the Tower.*

*Enter, at the Gates, the Duke of GLOSTER, with his Serving-men, in blue Coats.*

*Glo.* I am come to survey the Tower this day;  
 Since Henry's death, I fear, there is conveyance.<sup>3</sup>  
 Where be these warders; that they wait not here?  
 Open the gates; Gloster it is that calls. [Servants knock.]

*I Ward.* [within.] Who is there that knocks so impudently?

*1 Serv.* It is the noble duke of Gloster.

<sup>1</sup> Was Mahomet inspired with a Dove? Mahomet had a dove, "which he used to feed with wheat out of his ear; which Dove, when it was hungry, lighted on Mahomet's shoulder, and thrust its bill in to find its breakfast; Mahomet persuading the rude and simple Arabians, that it was the Holy Ghost that gave him advice."—See Sir Walter Raleigh's *History of the World*, book i. part 1. chap. 6. *Life of Mahomet*, by Dr. Prideaux.—GREY.

<sup>2</sup> Nor yet saint Philip's daughters,] Meaning the four daughters of Philip mentioned in the Acts.—HANMER.

<sup>3</sup> — conveyance.] i.e. Theft.

2 Ward. [*within.*] Whoe'er he be, you may not be let in.

1 Serv. Answer you so the lord protector, villains?

1 Ward. [*within.*] The Lord protect him! so we answer  
We do no otherwise than we are will'd. [him :

*Glo.* Who willed you? or whose will stands, but mine?  
There's none protector of the realm, but I.—  
Break up the gates,<sup>x</sup> I'll be your warrantize:  
Shall I be flouted thus by dunghill grooms?

Servants *rush at the Tower Gates.* Enter, to the Gates,  
WOODVILLE; the Lieutenant.

Wood. [*within.*] What noise is this? what traitors have  
we here?

*Glo.* Lieutenant, is it you, whose voice I hear?  
Open the gates; here's Gloster that would enter.

Wood. [*within.*] Have patience, noble duke; I may  
not open;

The cardinal of Winchester forbids:

From him I have express commandment,  
That thou, nor none of thine, shall be let in.

*Glo.* Faint-hearted Woodville, prizest him 'fore me?  
Arrogant Winchester? that haughty prelate,  
Whom Henry, our late sovereign, ne'er could brook?  
Thou art no friend to God, or to the king:  
Open the gates, or I'll shut thee out shortly.

1 Serv. Open the gates unto the lord protector;  
Or we'll burst them open, if that you come not quickly.

Enter WINCHESTER, attended by a train of Servants in  
*tawny Coats.*<sup>y</sup>

Win. How now, ambitious Humphry? what means this?

*Glo.* Piel'd priest,<sup>z</sup> dost thou command me to be shut  
out?

Win. I do, thou most usurping proditor,<sup>a</sup>  
And not protector of the king or realm.

<sup>x</sup> Break up the gates,] To break up in Shakspeare's age was the same as to break open.—W<sup>H</sup>ALLEY.

<sup>y</sup> — tawny Coats,] Tawny was a colour worn for mourning, as well as black; and was therefore the suitable and sober habit of any person employed in an ecclesiastical court.—S<sup>T</sup>EEVENS.

<sup>z</sup> Piel'd priest,] Alluding to his shaven crown.—P<sup>O</sup>PE.

<sup>a</sup> — proditor,] i. e. Betrayer.

*Glo.* Stand back, thou manifest conspirator ;  
 Thou, that contriv'dst to murder our dead lord ;  
 Thou, that giv'st whores indulgences to sin :<sup>b</sup>  
 I'll canvass thee in thy broad cardinal's hat,<sup>c</sup>  
 If thou proceed in this thy insolence.

*Win.* Nay, stand thou back, I will not budge a foot ;  
 This be Damascus, be thou cursed Cain,<sup>d</sup>  
 To slay thy brother Abel, if thou wilt.

*Glo.* I will not slay thee, but I'll drive thee back :  
 Thy scarlet robes, as a child's bearing cloth  
 I'll use, to carry thee out of this place.

*Win.* Do what thou dar'st ; I beard thee to thy face.

*Glo.* What ? am I dar'd, and bearded to my face ?—  
 Draw, men, for all this privileged place ;  
 Blue-coats to tawny-coats. Priest, beware your beard ;  
 [GLOSTER and his Men attack the Bishop.

I mean to tug it, and to cuff you soundly :  
 Under my feet I stamp thy cardinal's hat ;  
 In spite of pope, or dignities of church,  
 Here by the cheeks I'll drag thee up and down.

*Win.* Gloster, thou'lt answer this before the pope.

*Glo.* Winchester goose,<sup>e</sup> I cry—a rope ! a rope !  
 Now beat them hence, Why do you let them stay ?—  
 Thee I'll chase thence, thou wolf in sheep's array.—  
 Out, tawny-coats !—out, scarlet hypocrite !

*Here a great Tumult. In the midst of it, Enter the Mayor  
 of London,<sup>f</sup> and Officers.*

*May.* Fye, lords ! that you, being supreme magistrates,  
 Thus contumely should break the peace !

*Glo.* Peace, mayor ; thou know'st little of my wrongs ;

<sup>b</sup> *Thou, that giv'st whores indulgences to sin :*] The public stews were formerly under the district of the bishop of Winchester.—POPE.

<sup>c</sup> — *I'll canvass thee in thy broad cardinal's hat,*] This means, I believe,—*I'll tumble thee into thy great hat, and shake thee, as bran and meal are shaken in a sieve.* To canvass was anciently used for to sift.—STEEVENS.

<sup>d</sup> *This be Damascus, be thou cursed Cain,*] About four miles from Damascus is a high hill, reported to be the same on which Cain slew his brother Abel. Maundrel's *Travels*, p. 131.—POPE.

<sup>e</sup> *Winchester goose,*] A strumpet, or the consequences of her love, was a Winchester goose.—JOHNSON.

<sup>f</sup> — *Mayor of London,*] John Coventry, an opulent mercer, from whom is descended the present earl of Coventry.

Here's Beaufort, that regards nor God nor king,  
Hath here distrain'd the Tower to his use.

*Win.* Here's Gloster too, a foe to citizens ;  
One that still motions war, and never peace,  
O'ercharging your free purses with large fines ;  
That seeks to overthrow religion,  
Because he is protector of the realm ;  
And would have armour here out of the Tower,  
To crown himself king, and suppress the prince.

*Glo.* I will not answer thee with words, but blows.

[*Here they skirmish again.*]

*May.* Nought rests for me, in this tumultuous strife,  
But to make open proclamation :—  
Come, officer, as loud as e'er thou can'st.

*Off.* *All manner of men, assembled here in arms this day, against God's peace and the king's, we charge and command you, in his highness' name, to repair to your several dwelling-places; and not to wear, handle, or use, any sword, weapon, or dagger, henceforward, upon pain of death.*

*Glo.* Cardinal, I'll be no breaker of the law :  
But we shall meet, and break our minds at large.

*Win.* Gloster, we'll meet; to thy dear cost, be sure :  
Thy heart-blood I will have, for this day's work.

*May.* I'll call for clubs,<sup>s</sup> if you will not away :—  
This cardinal is more haughty than the devil.

*Glo.* Mayor, farewell : thou dost but what thou may'st.

*Win.* Abominable Gloster ! guard thy head ;  
For I intend to have it, ere long. [Exeunt.]

*May.* See the coast clear'd, and then we will depart.—  
Good God ! that nobles should such stomachs<sup>h</sup> bear !

I myself fight not once in forty year. [Exeunt.]

<sup>s</sup> *I'll call for clubs,*] That is, for the peace-officers armed with clubs or staves.—MALONE.

<sup>h</sup> — *stomachs*—] *Stomach* is pride, a haughty spirit of resentment.—STEEVENS.

## SCENE IV.

France. *Before Orleans.*

*Enter, on the Walls, the Master-Gunner and his Son.*

*M. Gun.* Sirrah, thou know'st how Orleans is besieg'd ;  
And how the English have the suburbs won.

*Son.* Father, I know ; and oft have shot at them,  
Howe'er, unfortunate, I miss'd my aim.

*M. Gun.* But now thou shalt not. Be thou rul'd by me :  
Chief master gunner am I of this town ;  
Something I must do, to procure me grace.  
The prince's espials<sup>i</sup> have informed me,  
How the English, in the suburbs close intrench'd,  
Went,<sup>k</sup> through a secret grate of iron bars  
In yonder tower, to overpeer the city ;  
And thence discover, how, with most advantage,  
They may vex us, with shot, or with assault.  
To intercept this inconvenience,  
A piece of ordnance 'gainst it I have plac'd ;  
And fully even these three days have I watch'd,  
If I could see them. Now, boy, do thou watch,  
For I can stay no longer.  
If thou spy'st any, run and bring me word ;  
And thou shalt find me at the governor's. [*Exit*

*Son.* Father, I warrant you ; take you no care ;  
I'll never trouble you, if I may spy them.

*Enter, in an upper Chamber of a Tower, the Lords SALISBURY and TALBOT, Sir WILLIAM GLANSDALE, Sir THOMAS GARGRAVE, and others.*

*Sal.* Talbot, my life, my joy, again return'd !  
How wert thou handled, being prisoner ?  
Or by what means got'st thou to be releas'd ?  
Discourse, I pr'ythee, on this turret's top.

*Tal.* The duke of Bedford had a prisoner,  
Called—the brave lord Ponton de Santrailles ;

<sup>i</sup> — espials—] i. e. Spies.

<sup>k</sup> Went,] This is the old reading ; the modern editors read *went*.

For him I was exchange'd and ransomed.  
 But with a baser man of arms by far,  
 Once, in contempt, they would have barter'd me :  
 Which I, disdain'g, scorn'd ; and craved death  
 Rather than I would be so pil'd esteem'd.<sup>1</sup>  
 In fine, redeem'd I was as I desir'd.  
 But, O ! the treacherous Fastolfe wounds my heart !  
 Whom with my bare fists I would execute,  
 If I now had him brought into my power.

*Sal.* Yet tell'st thou not, how thou wert entertain'd.

*Tal.* With scoffs and scorns, and contumelious taunts.  
 In open market-place produc'd they me,  
 To be a publick spectacle to all ;  
 Here, said they, is the terror of the French,  
 The scare-crow that affrights our children so.  
 Then broke I from the officers that led me ;  
 And with my nails digg'd stones out of the ground,  
 To hurl at the beholders of my shame.  
 My grisly countenance made others fly ;  
 None durst come near, for fear of sudden death.  
 In iron walls they deem'd me not secure ;  
 So great fear of my name 'mongst them was spread,  
 That they suppos'd, I could rend bars of steel,  
 And spurn in pieces posts of adamant :  
 Wherefore a guard of chosen shot I had,  
 That walk'd about me every minute-while :  
 And if I did but stir out of my bed,  
 Ready they were to shoot me to the heart.

*Sal.* I grieve to hear what torments you endur'd ;  
 But we will be reveng'd sufficiently.  
 Now it is supper-time in Orleans :  
 Here, through this grate, I can count every one,  
 And view the Frenchmen how they fortify ;  
 Let us look in, the sight will much delight thee.—  
 Sir Thomas Gargrave, and sir William Glansdale !  
 Let me have your express opinions,  
 Where is best place to make our battery next.

<sup>1</sup> — *pil'd esteem'd.*] This word has created much discussion. Mr. M. Mason would read *vile-esteemed* ; Mr. Steevens, *Philistin'd.* Perhaps it is not a misprint, but means *shorn, bare, beaten.* From *to pill, to strip.*

*Gar.* I think, at the north gate; for there stand lords.

*Glan.* And I, here, at the bulwark of the bridge.

*Tal.* For aught I see, this city must be famish'd,  
Or with light skirmishes enfeebled.

[*Shot from the Town.* SALISBURY and  
Sir THOMAS GARGRAVE fall.

*Sal.* O Lord, have mercy on us, wretched sinners!

*Gar.* O Lord, have mercy on me, woeful man!

*Tal.* What chance is this, that suddenly hath cross'd  
us?—

Speak, Salisbury; at least, if thou can'st speak;  
How far'st thou, mirror of all martial men?  
One of thy eyes, and thy cheek's side struck off!<sup>m</sup>—  
Accursed tower! accursed fatal hand,  
That hath contriv'd this woeful tragedy!  
In thirteen battles Salisbury o'ercame;  
Henry the fifth he first train'd to the wars;  
Whilst any trump did sound, or drum struck up:  
His sword did ne'er leave striking in the field.—  
Yet liv'st thou, Salisbury? though thy speech doth fail,  
One eye thou hast, to look to heaven for grace:  
The sun with one eye vieweth all the world.—  
Heaven, be thou gracious to none alive,  
If Salisbury wants mercy at thy hands!—  
Bear hence his body, I will help to bury it.—  
Sir Thomas Gargrave, hast thou any life?  
Speak unto Talbot; nay, look up to him.  
Salisbury, cheer thy spirit with this comfort;  
Thou shalt not die, whiles——  
He beckons with his hand, and smiles on me;  
As who should say, *When I am dead and gone,*  
*Remember to avenge me on the French.*—  
Plantagenet, I will; and Nero-like,  
Play on the lute, beholding the towns burn:  
Wretched shall France be only in my name.

[*Thunder heard; afterwards an Alarum.*

<sup>m</sup> — *thy cheek's side struck off!*—] Camden says in his *Remaines* that the French scarce knew the use of great ordnance, till the siege of Mans in 1455, when a breach was made in the walls of that town by the English, under the conduct of this earl of Salisbury; and that he was the first English gentleman that was slain by a cannon-ball.—MALONE.

What stir is this? what tumult's in the heavens?  
Whence cometh this alarum, and the noise?

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* My lord, my lord, the French have gather'd head:  
The Dauphin, with one Joan la Pucelle join'd,—  
A holy prophethess, new risen up,—  
Is come with a great power to raise the siege.

[SALISBURY groans.

*Tal.* Hear, hear, how dying Salisbury doth groan!  
It irks his heart, he cannot be reveng'd.—  
Frenchmen, I'll be a Salisbury to you:—  
Pucelle or puzzel,<sup>n</sup> dolphin or dogfish,  
Your hearts I'll stamp out with my horse's heels,  
And make a quagmire of your mingled brains.—  
Convey me Salisbury into his tent,  
And then we'll try what these dastard Frenchmen dare.  
[*Exeunt bearing out the bodies.*

#### SCENE V.

*The same. Before one of the Gates.*

*Alarum. Skirmishings.* TALBOT *pursueth the Dauphin,*  
*and driveth him in; then enter JOAN LA PUCELLE,*  
*driving Englishmen before her. Then enter TALBOT.*

*Tal.* Where is my strength, my valour, and my force?  
Our English troops retire, I cannot stay them!  
A woman, clad in armour, chaseth them.

*Enter LA PUCELLE.*

Here, here she comes:—I'll have a bout with thee;  
Devil, or devil's dam, I'll conjure thee:  
Blood will I draw on thee,<sup>o</sup> thou art a witch,  
And straightway give thy soul to him thou serv'st.

*Puc.* Come, come, 'tis only I that must disgrace thee.  
[*They fight.*

<sup>n</sup> *Pucelle or puzzel,*] *Pussel* means a dirty wench or a drab, from *puzza*, i. e. *malus factor*, says Minsheu.—TOLLET.

<sup>o</sup> *Blood will I draw on thee,*] The superstition of these times taught that he that could draw the witch's blood, was free from her power.—JOHNSON.



*Tal.* Heavens, can you suffer hell so to prevail?  
My breast I'll burst with straining of my courage,  
And from my shoulders crack my arms asunder,  
But I will chastise this high-minded strumpet.

*Puc.* Talbot, farewell; thy hour is not yet come:  
I must go victual Orleans forthwith.  
O'ertake me, if thou canst; I scorn thy strength.  
Go, go, cheer up thy hunger-starved men;  
Help Salisbury to make his testament:  
This day is ours, as many more shall be.

[*PUCELLE enters the Town, with Soldiers.*]

*Tal.* My thoughts are whirled like a potter's wheel;  
I know not where I am, nor what I do:  
A witch, by fear, not force, like Hannibal,  
Drives back our troops, and conquers as she lists:  
So bees with smoke, and doves with noisome stench,  
Are from their hives, and houses, driven away.  
They call'd us, for our fierceness, English dogs;  
Now, like to whelps, we crying run away.

[*A short Alarum.*]

Hark, countrymen! either renew the fight,  
Or tear the lions out of England's coat;  
Renounce your soil, give sheep in lions' stead:  
Sheep run not half so timorous from the wolf,  
Or horse, or oxen, from the leopard,  
As you fly from your oft-subdued slaves.

[*Alarum. Another Skirmish.*]

It will not be:—Retire into your trenches:  
You all consented unto Salisbury's death,  
For none would strike a stroke in his revenge.  
Pucelle is enter'd into Orleans,  
In spite of us or aught that we could do.  
O, would I were to die with Salisbury!  
The shame hereof will make me hide my head!

[*Alarum. Retreat. Exeunt TALBOT, and his  
Forces, &c.*]

## SCENE VI.

*The same.*

*Enter, on the Walls, PUCELLE, CHARLES, REIGNIER, ALENÇON, and Soldiers.*

*Puc.* Advance our waving colours on the walls;  
Rescu'd is Orleans from the English wolves:—  
Thus Joan la Pucelle hath perform'd her word.

*Char.* Divinest creature, bright Astræa's daughter,  
How shall I honour thee for this success?  
Thy promises are like Adonis' gardens,  
That one day bloom'd, and fruitful were the next.—  
France, triumph in thy glorious prophetess!—  
Recover'd is the town of Orleans:  
More blessed hap did ne'er befall our state.

*Reig.* Why ring not out the bells throughout the town?  
Dauphin, command the citizens make bonfires,  
And feast and banquet in the open streets,  
To celebrate the joy that God hath given us.

*Alen.* All France will be replete with mirth and joy,  
When they shall hear how we have play'd the men.

*Char.* 'Tis Joan, not we, by whom the day is won;  
For which I will divide my crown with her:  
And all the priests and friars in my realm  
Shall, in procession, sing her endless praise.  
A statelier pyramis to her I'll rear,  
Than Rhodope's,<sup>p</sup> or Memphis', ever was:  
In memory of her, when she is dead,  
Her ashes, in an urn more precious  
Than the rich jewell'd coffer of Darius,<sup>q</sup>

<sup>p</sup> *Than Rhodope's,*] *Rhodope* was a famous strumpet, who acquired great riches by her trade. The least, but most finished of the Egyptian pyramids, (says Pliny, in the 36th book of his *Natural History*, chap. xii.) was built by her. She is said afterwards to have married Psammetichus king of Egypt.—STEEVENS.

<sup>q</sup> — *coffer of Darius,*] When Alexander the Great took the city of Gaza, the metropolis of Syria, amidst the other spoils and wealth of Darius treasured up there, he found an exceeding rich and beautiful little chest or casket, and asked those about him what they thought fittest to be laid up in it. When they had severally delivered their opinions, he told them, he esteemed nothing so worthy to be preserved in it, as Homer's *Iliad*. Vide *Plutarchum in vita Alexandri magni*.—THEOBALD.

Transported shall be at high festivals  
 Before the kings and queens of France.  
 No longer on saint Dennis will we cry,  
 But Joan la Pucelle shall be France's saint.  
 Come in: and let us banquet royally,  
 After this golden day of victory. [*Flourish. Exeunt.*]

## ACT II.

SCENE I.—*The same.*

*Enter, to the Gates, a French Sergeant, and two Sentinels.*

*Serg.* Sirs, take your places, and be vigilant:  
 If any noise, or soldier, you perceive,  
 Near to the walls, by some apparant sign,  
 Let us have knowledge at the court of guard.<sup>r</sup>

*1 Sent.* Sergeant, you shall. [*Exit Sergeant.*] Thus are  
 poor servitors  
 (When others sleep upon their quiet beds)  
 Constrain'd to watch in darkness, rain, and cold.

*Enter TALBOT, BEDFORD, BURGUNDY, and Forces, with scaling Ladders; their Drums beating a dead march.*

*Tal.* Lord regent,—and redoubted Burgundy,—  
 By whose approach, the regions of Artois,  
 Walloon, and Picardy, are friends to us,—  
 This happy night the Frenchmen are secure,  
 Having all day carous'd and banqueted;  
 Embrace we then this opportunity;  
 As fitting best to quittance their deceit,  
 Contriv'd by art, and baleful sorcery.

*Bed.* Coward of France!—how much he wrongs his  
 fame,  
 Despairing of his own men's fortitude,  
 To join with witches, and the help of hell.

*Bur.* Traitors have never other company.—  
 But what's that Pucelle, whom they term so pure?

*Tal.* A maid, they say.

<sup>r</sup> — court of guard.] i. e. Guardroom.

*Bed.* A maid! and be so martial!

*Bur.* Pray God, she prove not masculine ere long;  
If underneath the standard of the French,  
She carry armour as she hath begun.

*Tal.* Well, let them practise and converse with spirits:  
God is our fortress; in whose conquering name,  
Let us resolve to scale their flinty bulwarks.

*Bed.* Ascend, brave Talbot; we will follow thee.

*Tal.* Not all together: better far, I guess,  
That we do make our entrance several ways;  
That, if it chance the one of us do fail,  
The other yet may rise against their force.

*Bed.* Agreed; I'll to yon corner.

*Bur.* And I to this.

*Tal.* And here will Talbot mount, or make his grave.—  
Now, Salisbury! for thee, and for the right  
Of English Henry, shall this night appear  
How much in duty I am bound to both.

[*The English scale the Walls, crying St. George!  
a Talbot! and all enter by the Town.*]

Sent. [*within.*] Arm, arm! the enemy doth make assault!

*The French leap over the Walls in their shirts. Enter several  
ways, BASTARD, ALENÇON, REIGNIER, half ready, and  
half unready.*

*Alen.* How now, my lords? what, all unready so?

*Bast.* Unready? ay, and glad we 'scap'd so well.

*Reig.* 'Twas time, I trow, to wake and leave our beds,  
Hearing alarums at our chamber doors.

*Alen.* Of all exploits, since first I follow'd arms,  
Ne'er heard I of a warlike enterprize  
More venturous, or desperate than this.

*Bast.* I think, this Talbot be a fiend of hell.

*Reig.* If not of hell, the heavens, sure, favour him.

*Alen.* Here cometh Charles; I marvel, how he sped.

*Enter CHARLES and LA PUCELLE.*

*Bast.* Tut! holy Joan was his defensive guard.

*Char.* Is this thy cunning, thou deceitful dame?

Didst thou at first, to flatter us withal,  
 Make us partakers of a little gain,  
 That now our loss might be ten times so much ?

*Puc.* Wherefore is Charles impatient with his friend ?  
 At all times will you have my power alike ?  
 Sleeping, or waking, must I still prevail,  
 Or will you blame and lay the fault on me ?  
 Improvident soldiers ! had your watch been good,  
 This sudden mischief never could have fall'n.

*Char.* Duke of Alençon, this was your default ;  
 That being captain of the watch to-night,  
 Did look no better to that weighty charge.

*Alen.* Had all your quarters been as safely kept,  
 As that whereof I had the government,  
 We had not been thus shamefully surpriz'd.

*Bast.* Mine was secure.

*Reig.* And so was mine, my lord.

*Char.* And, for myself, most part of all this night,  
 Within her quarter, and my own precinct,  
 I was employ'd in passing to and fro,  
 About relieving of the sentinels :  
 Then how, or which way, should they first break in ?

*Puc.* Question, my lords, no farther of the case,  
 How, or which way ; 'tis sure, they found some place  
 But weakly guarded, where the breach was made.  
 And now there rests no other shift but this,—  
 To gather our soldiers, scattered and dispers'd,  
 And lay new platforms<sup>s</sup> to endamage them.

*Alarum.* Enter an English Soldier, crying, a Talbot ! a  
 Talbot ! They fly, leaving their Clothes behind.

*Sold.* I'll be so bold to take what they have left.  
 The cry of Talbot serves me for a sword ;<sup>t</sup>  
 For I have loaded me with many spoils,  
 Using no other weapon but his name. [Exit.]

<sup>s</sup> — platforms—] i. e. Plans, schemes.

<sup>t</sup> The cry of Talbot serves me for a sword ;] Edward Kerke, the old commentator on Spencer's *Pastorals*, observes in his notes on *June*, that lord Talbot's "noblesse bred such a terrour in the hearts of the French, that oftimes greate armies were defeated and put to flight, at the only hearing of his name, inasmuch that the French women, to affray their children, would tell them that the TALLEOT cometh."—T. WARTON.

## SCENE II.

Orleans. *Within the Town.*

*Enter TALBOT, BEDFORD, BURGUNDY, a Captain,  
and others.*

*Bed.* The day begins to break, and night is fled,  
Whose pitchy mantle over-veil'd the earth.  
Here sound retreat, and cease our hot pursuit.

[*Retreat sounded.*]

*Tal.* Bring forth the body of old Salisbury:  
And here advance it in the market-place,  
The middle centre of this cursed town.—  
Now have I paid my vow unto his soul;  
For every drop of blood was drawn from him,  
There hath at least five Frenchmen died to-night.  
And, that hereafter ages may behold  
What ruin happen'd in revenge of him,  
Within their chiefest temple I'll erect  
A tomb, wherein his corpse shall be interr'd;  
Upon the which, that every one may read,  
Shall be engrav'd the sack of Orleans;  
The treacherous manner of his mournful death,  
And what a terror he had been to France.  
But, lords, in all our bloody massacre,  
I muse, we met not with the Dauphin's grace;  
His new-come champion, virtuous Joan of Arc;  
Nor any of his false confederates.

*Bed.* 'Tis thought, lord Talbot, when the fight began,  
Rous'd on the sudden from their drowsy beds,  
They did, amongst the troops of armed men,  
Leap o'er the walls for refuge in the field.

*Bur.* Myself (as far as I could well discern,  
For smoke, and dusky vapours of the night,)  
Am sure, I scar'd the Dauphin, and his trull;  
When arm in arm they both came swiftly running,  
Like a pair of loving turtle-doves,  
That could not live asunder day or night.  
After that things are set in order here,  
We'll follow them with all the power we have.

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* All hail, my lords ! which of this princely train  
Call ye the warlike Talbot, for his acts  
So much applauded through the realm of France ?

*Tal.* Here is the Talbot ; who would speak with him ?

*Mess.* The virtuous lady, countess of Auvergne,  
With modesty admiring thy renown,  
By me entreats, good lord, thou would'st vouchsafe  
To visit her poor castle where she lies ;<sup>u</sup>  
That she may boast, she hath beheld the man  
Whose glory fills the world with loud report.

*Bur.* Is it even so ? Nay, then, I see, our wars  
Will turn into a peaceful comick sport,  
When ladies crave to be encounter'd with.—  
You may not, my lord, despise her gentle suit.

*Tal.* Ne'er trust me then ; for, when a world of men  
Could not prevail with all their oratory,  
Yet hath a woman's kindness over-ruled :—  
And therefore tell her, I return great thanks ;  
And in submission will attend on her.—  
Will not your honours bear me company ?

*Bed.* No, truly ; it is more than manners will :  
And I have heard it said,—Unbidden guests  
Are often welcomest when they are gone.

*Tal.* Well then, alone, since there's no remedy,  
I mean to prove this lady's courtesy.  
Come hither, captain. [*whispers.*]—You perceive my mind.

*Capt.* I do, my lord ; and mean accordingly. [*Exeunt.*

### SCENE III.

Auvergne. *Court of the Castle.*

*Enter the Countess and her Porter.*

*Count.* Porter, remember what I gave in charge ;  
And when you have done so, bring the keys to me.

*Port.* Madam, I will. [*Exit.*

*Count.* The plot is laid : if all things fall out right,

<sup>u</sup> — lies ;] i. e. Dwells.

I shall as famous be by this exploit,  
 As Scythian Thomyris by Cyrus' death.  
 Great is the rumour of this dreadful knight,  
 And his achievements of no less account :  
 Fain would mine eyes be witness with mine ears,  
 To give their censure<sup>x</sup> of these rare reports.

*Enter Messenger and TALBOT.*

*Mess.* Madam,  
 According as your ladyship desir'd,  
 By message crav'd, so is lord Talbot come.

*Count.* And he is welcome. What! is this the man?

*Mess.* Madam, it is.

*Count.* Is this the scourge of France?  
 Is this the Talbot, so much fear'd abroad,  
 That with his name the mothers still their babes?  
 I see, report is fabulous and false:  
 I thought, I should have seen some Hercules,  
 A second Hector, for his grim aspect,  
 And large proportion of his strong-knit limbs.  
 Alas! this is a child, a silly dwarf:  
 It cannot be, this weak and writhled<sup>y</sup> shrimp  
 Should strike such terror to his enemies.

*Tal.* Madam, I have been too bold to trouble you:  
 But, since your ladyship is not at leisure,  
 I'll sort some other time to visit you.

*Count.* What means he now?—Go ask him, whither  
 he goes.

*Mess.* Stay, my lord Talbot; for my lady craves  
 To know the cause of your abrupt departure.

*Tal.* Marry, for that she's in a wrong belief,  
 I go to certify her, Talbot's here.

*Re-enter Porter, with Keys.*

*Count.* If thou be he, then art thou prisoner.

*Tal.* Prisoner! to whom?

*Count.* To me, blood-thirsty lord;  
 And for that cause I train'd thee to my house.

<sup>x</sup> — censure—] i. e. Opinion.

<sup>y</sup> — writhled—] i. e. Wrinkled.



Long time thy shadow hath been thrall to me,  
 For in my gallery thy picture hangs :  
 But now the substance shall endure the like ;  
 And I will chain these legs and arms of thine,  
 That hast by tyranny, these many years,  
 Wasted our country, slain our citizens,  
 And sent our sons and husbands captivate.

*Tal.* Ha, ha, ha !

*Count.* Laughest thou, wretch ? thy mirth shall turn  
 to moan.

*Tal.* I laugh to see your ladyship so fond,<sup>z</sup>  
 To think that you have aught but Talbot's shadow,  
 Whereon to practice your severity.

*Count.* Why, art not thou the man ?

*Tal.* I am indeed.

*Count.* Then have I substance too.

*Tal.* No, no, I am but shadow of myself :  
 You are deceiv'd, my substance is not here ;  
 For what you see, is but the smallest part  
 And least proportion of humanity :  
 I tell you, madam, were the whole frame here,  
 It is of such a spacious lofty pitch,  
 Your roof were not sufficient to contain it.

*Count.* This is a riddling merchant for the nonce ;<sup>a</sup>  
 He will be here, and yet he is not here :  
 How can these contrarieties agree ?

*Tal.* That I will show you presently.

*He winds a Horn. Drums heard; then a Peal of Ordnance.  
 The Gates being forced, enter Soldiers.*

How say you, madam ? are you now persuaded,  
 That Talbot is but shadow of himself ?  
 These are his substance, sinews, arms, and strength,  
 With which he yoketh your rebellious necks ;  
 Razeth your cities, and subverts your towns,  
 And in a moment makes them desolate.

*Count.* Victorious Talbot ! pardon my abuse :

<sup>z</sup> — *fond,*] i. e. *Foolish.*

<sup>a</sup> — *for the nonce ;*] i. e. *For the present occasion,—for the once.* The aptitude of our monosyllables beginning with a vowel, to assume the *n* is well known. See GIFFORD'S *Ben Jonson*, vol. iii. p. 218. note.

I find thou art no less than fame hath bruited,<sup>b</sup>  
 And more than may be gather'd by thy shape.  
 Let my presumption not provoke thy wrath ;  
 For I am sorry, that with reverence  
 I did not entertain thee as thou art.

*Tal.* Be not dismay'd, fair lady ; nor misconstrue  
 The mind of Talbot, as you did mistake  
 The outward composition of his body.  
 What you have done, hath not offended me :  
 No other satisfaction do I crave,  
 But only (with your patience,) that we may  
 Taste of your wine, and see what cates you have ;  
 For soldiers' stomachs always serve them well.

*Count.* With all my heart ; and think me honoured  
 To feast so great a warrior in my house. [Exeunt.]

## SCENE IV.

London. *The Temple Garden.*

*Enter the Earls of SOMERSET, SUFFOLK, and WARWICK ;  
 RICHARD PLANTAGENET, VERNON, and another  
 Lawyer.<sup>c</sup>*

*Plan.* Great lords, and gentlemen, what means this  
 silence ?

Dare no man answer in a case of truth ?

*Suf.* Within the Temple hall we were too loud ;  
 The garden here is more convenient.

*Plan.* Then say at once, If I maintain'd the truth ;  
 Or, else, was wrangling Somerset in the error ?

*Suf.* 'Faith, I have been a truant in the law ;  
 And never yet could frame my will to it ;  
 And, therefore, frame the law unto my will.

*Som.* Judge you, my lord of Warwick, then between us.

*War.* Between two hawks, which flies the higher pitch,  
 Between two dogs, which hath the deeper mouth,  
 Between two blades, which bears the better temper,

<sup>b</sup> — bruited,] i. e. Proclaimed with noise.

<sup>c</sup> — another lawyer.] Read a lawyer. He was probably Roger Neryle, who was afterwards hanged.—RITSON.

Between two horses, which doth bear him best,  
 Between two girls, which hath the merriest eye,  
 I have, perhaps, some shallow spirit of judgment :  
 But in these nice sharp quillets of the law,  
 Good faith, I am no wiser than a daw.

*Plan.* Tut, tut, here is a mannerly forbearance :  
 The truth appears so naked on my side,  
 That any purblind eye may find it out.

*Som.* And on my side it is so well apparell'd,  
 So clear, so shining, and so evident,  
 That it will glimmer through a blind man's eye.

*Plan.* Since you are tongue-ty'd, and so loath to  
 speak,

In dumb significant<sup>d</sup> proclaim your thoughts :  
 Let him, that is a true-born gentleman,  
 And stands upon the honour of his birth,  
 If he suppose that I have pleaded truth,  
 From off this brier pluck a white rose with me.

*Som.* Let him that is no coward, nor no flatterer,  
 But dare maintain the party of the truth,  
 Pluck a red rose from off this thorn with me.

*War.* I love no colours ;<sup>e</sup> and, without all colour  
 Of base insinuating flattery,  
 I pluck this white rose, with Plantagenet.

*Suf.* I pluck this red rose, with young Somerset ;  
 And say withal, I think he held the right.

*Ver.* Stay, lords, and gentlemen ; and pluck no more,  
 Till you conclude—that he, upon whose side  
 The fewest roses are cropp'd from the tree,  
 Shall yield the other in the right opinion.

*Som.* Good master Vernon, it is well objected ;<sup>f</sup>  
 If I have fewest, I subscribe in silence.

*Plan.* And I.

*Ver.* Then, for the truth and plainness of the case,  
 I pluck this pale and maiden blossom here,  
 Giving my verdict on the white rose side.

*Som.* Prick not your finger as you pluck it off ;

<sup>d</sup> — significant—] i. e. Signs, gestures.

<sup>e</sup> I love no colours ;] Colours is here used ambiguously for tints and deceits.—

JOHNSON.

<sup>f</sup> — well objected ;] i. e. Justly proposed.

Lest, bleeding, you do paint the white rose red,  
And fall on my side so against your will.

*Ver.* If I, my lord, for my opinion bleed,  
Opinion shall be surgeon to my hurt,  
And keep me on the side where still I am.

*Som.* Well, well, come on : Who else ?

*Law.* Unless my study and my books be false,  
The argument you held, was wrong in you ;

[To SOMERSET.

In sign whereof, I pluck a white rose too.

*Plan.* Now, Somerset, where is your argument ?

*Som.* Here, in my scabbard ; meditating that,  
Shall die your white rose in a bloody red.

*Plan.* Mean time, your cheeks do counterfeit our roses ;  
For pale they look with fear, as witnessing  
The truth on our side.

*Som.* No, Plantagenet,  
'Tis not for fear ; but anger,—that thy cheeks<sup>g</sup>  
Blush for pure shame, to counterfeit our roses ;  
And yet thy tongue will not confess thy error.

*Plan.* Hath not thy rose a canker, Somerset ?

*Som.* Hath not thy rose a thorn, Plantagenet ?

*Plan.* Ay, sharp and piercing, to maintain his truth ;  
Whiles thy consuming canker eats his falsehood.

*Som.* Well, I'll find friends to wear my bleeding-roses,  
That shall maintain what I have said is true,  
Where false Plantagenet dare not be seen.

*Plan.* Now, by this maiden blossom in my hand,  
I scorn thee and thy fashion,<sup>h</sup> peevish boy.

*Suf.* Turn not thy scorns this way, Plantagenet.

*Plan.* Proud Poole, I will ; and scorn both him and thee.

*Suf.* I'll turn my part thereof into thy throat.

*Som.* Away, away, good William De-la-Poole !

We grace the yeoman, by conversing with him.

*War.* Now, by God's will, thou wrong'st him, So-  
merset ;

<sup>g</sup> — but anger,—that thy cheeks, &c.] i. e. It is not for fear that my cheeks look pale, but for anger ; anger produced by this circumstance, namely, that thy cheeks blush, &c.—MALONE.

<sup>h</sup> — fashion,] i. e. The badge of the red rose worn by Somerset. Malone and Theobald read *faction*.

His grandfather was Lionel, duke of Clarence,<sup>i</sup>  
Third son to the third Edward king of England;  
Spring crestless yeomen<sup>k</sup> from so deep a root?

*Plan.* He bears him on the place's privilege,<sup>l</sup>  
Or durst not, for his craven heart, say thus.

*Som.* By him that made me, I'll maintain my words  
On any plot of ground in Christendom:  
Was not thy father, Richard, earl of Cambridge,  
For treason executed in our late king's days?  
And, by his treason, stand'st not thou attainted,  
Corrupted, and exempt<sup>m</sup> from ancient gentry?  
His trespass yet lives guilty in thy blood;  
And, till thou be restor'd, thou art a yeoman.

*Plan.* My father was attached, not attainted;  
Condemn'd to die for treason, but no traitor;  
And that I'll prove on better men than Somerset,  
Were growing time once ripen'd to my will.  
For your partaker Poole,<sup>n</sup> and you yourself,  
I'll note you in my book of memory,  
To scourge you for this apprehension:<sup>o</sup>  
Look to it well; and say you are well warn'd.

*Som.* Ay, thou shalt find us ready for thee still;  
And know us, by these colours, for thy foes;  
For these my friends, in spite of thee, shall wear.

*Plan.* And, by my soul, this pale and angry rose,  
As cognizance<sup>p</sup> of my blood-drinking hate,  
Will I for ever, and my faction, wear;  
Until it wither with me to my grave,  
Or flourish to the height of my degree.

<sup>i</sup> *His grandfather was Lionel, duke of Clarence,*] Not so. Plantagenet's fraternal grandfather was Edmund of Langley, duke of York. His maternal grandfather was Roger Mortimer, earl of March, who was the son of Philippa, daughter of Lionel, duke of Clarence. The duke therefore was his maternal great great grandfather.—MALONE.

<sup>k</sup> — *crestless yeomen*—] i. e. Those who have no right to arms.—WARBURTON.

<sup>l</sup> *He bears him on the place's privilege,*] The temple, being a religious house, was an asylum, a place of exemption from violence, revenge, and bloodshed.—JOHNSON.

<sup>m</sup> — *exempt*—] i. e. Excluded.

<sup>n</sup> — *partaker*—] i. e. Accomplice, confederate.

<sup>o</sup> — *apprehension* :] i. e. Opinion.

<sup>p</sup> — *cognizance*—] i. e. A badge.

*Suf.* Go forward, and be chok'd with thy ambition!  
And so farewell, until I meet thee next. [Exit.

*Som.* Have with thee, Poole.—Farewell, ambitious  
Richard. [Exit.

*Plan.* How I am brav'd, and must perforce endure it!

*War.* This blot, that they object against your house,  
Shall be wip'd out in the next parliament,  
Call'd for the truce of Winchester and Gloster:  
And, if thou be not then created York,  
I will not live to be accounted Warwick.

Mean time, in signal of my love to thee,  
Against proud Somerset, and William Poole,  
Will I upon thy party wear this rose:  
And here I prophecy,—This brawl to-day,  
Grown to this faction, in the Temple garden,  
Shall send, between the red rose and the white,  
A thousand souls to death and deadly night.

*Plan.* Good master Vernon, I am bound to you,  
That you on my behalf would pluck a flower.

*Ver.* In your behalf still will I wear the same.

*Law.* And so will I.

*Plan.* Thanks, gentle sir.

Come, let us four to dinner: I dare say,  
This quarrel will drink blood another day. [Exeunt.

## SCENE V.

*The same. A Room in the Tower.*

*Enter* MORTIMER,<sup>p</sup> *brought in a Chair by two Keepers.*

*Mor.* Kind keepers of my weak decaying age,  
Let dying Mortimer here rest himself.—  
Even like a man new haled from the rack,  
So fare my limbs with long imprisonment:  
And these grey locks the pursuivants<sup>q</sup> of death,

<sup>p</sup> — *Mortimer,*] Shakspeare has here violated the truth of history. Edmund Mortimer died in Ireland, in the year 1424, and not as a prisoner. He was in the thirty-second year of his age.

<sup>q</sup> — *pursuivants—*] i. e. *Heralds that forerunning death, proclaim his approach.*—JOHNSON.

Nestor-like aged, in an age of care,  
 Argue the end of Edmund Mortimer.  
 These eyes,—like lamps whose wasting oil is spent,—  
 Wax dim, as drawing to their exigent:<sup>r</sup>  
 Weak shoulders, overborne with burd'ning grief;  
 And pithless arms, like to a wither'd vine  
 That droops his sapless branches to the ground:—  
 Yet are these feet—whose strengthless stay is numb,  
 Unable to support this lump of clay,—  
 Swift-winged with desire to get a grave,  
 As witting I no other comfort have.—  
 But tell me keeper, will my nephew come ?

*I Keep.* Richard Plantagenet, my lord, will come.  
 We sent unto the Temple, to his chamber;  
 And answer was return'd, that he will come.

*Mor.* Enough; my soul shall then be satisfied.—  
 Poor gentleman! his wrong doth equal mine.  
 Since Henry Monmouth first began to reign,  
 (Before whose glory I was great in arms,)  
 This loathsome sequestration have I had;  
 And even since then hath Richard been obscur'd,  
 Depriv'd of honour and inheritance:  
 But now, the arbitrator of despairs,  
 Just death, kind umpire\* of men's miseries,  
 With sweet enlargement doth dismiss me hence;  
 I would, his troubles likewise were expir'd,  
 That so he might recover what was lost.

*Enter RICHARD PLANTAGENET.*

*I Keep.* My lord, your loving nephew now is come.

*Mor.* Richard Plantagenet, my friend? Is he come?

*Plan.* Ay, noble uncle, thus ignobly us'd,  
 Your nephew, late-despised Richard, comes.

*Mor.* Direct mine arms, I may embrace his neck,  
 And in his bosom spend my latter gasp:  
 O tell me, when my lips do touch his cheeks,  
 That I may kindly give one fainting kiss.—

<sup>r</sup> — exigent :] i. e. End.

\* — the arbitrator of despairs,

*Just death, kind umpire—*] That is, he that terminates or concludes misery.  
 The expression is harsh, and forced.—JOHNSON.

And now declare, sweet stem from York's great stock,  
Why didst thou say—of late thou wert despis'd?

*Plan.* First, lean thine aged back against mine arm;  
And, in that case, I'll tell thee my disease.  
This day in argument upon a case,  
Some words there grew 'twixt Somerset and me:  
Among which terms, he used his lavish tongue,  
And did upbraid me with my father's death;  
Which obloquy set bars before my tongue,  
Else with the like I had requited him:  
Therefore, good uncle,—for my father's sake,  
In honour of a true Plantagenet,  
And for alliance' sake,—declare the cause  
My father, earl of Cambridge, lost his head.

*Mor.* That cause, fair nephew, that imprison'd me,  
And hath detain'd me, all my flow'ring youth,  
Within a loathsome dungeon, there to pine,  
Was cursed instrument of his decease.

*Plan.* Discover more at large what cause that was;  
For I am ignorant, and I cannot guess.

*Mor.* I will; if that my fading breath permit,  
And death approach not ere my tale be done.  
Henry the fourth, grandfather to this king,  
Depos'd his nephew Richard;<sup>t</sup> Edward's son,  
The first-begotten, and the lawful heir  
Of Edward king, the third of that descent:  
During whose reign, the Percies of the north,  
Finding his usurpation most unjust,  
Endeavour'd my advancement to the throne:  
The reason mov'd these warlike lords to this,  
Was—for that (young king Richard thus remov'd,  
Leaving no heir begotten of his body,)  
I was the next by birth and parentage;  
For by my mother I derived am  
From Lionel duke of Clarence, the third son  
To king Edward the third, whereas he,  
From John of Gaunt doth bring his pedigree,

<sup>t</sup> — *nephew Richard*;] Some of the modern editors read *cousin*, but without necessity. *Nephew* has sometimes the force of the Latin *nepos*, and was anciently used with great laxity.—STEEVENS.



Being but fourth of that heroick line.  
 But mark ; as, in this haughty great attempt,  
 They laboured to plant the rightful heir,  
 I lost my liberty, and they their lives.  
 Long after this, when Henry the fifth,—  
 Succeeding his father Bolingbroke,—did reign,  
 Thy father, earl of Cambridge,—then deriv'd  
 From famous Edmund Langley, duke of York,—  
 Marrying my sister, that thy mother was,  
 Again, in pity of my hard distress,  
 Levied an army ;<sup>u</sup> weening to redeem,  
 And have install'd me in the diadem :  
 But, as the rest, so fell that noble earl,  
 And was beheaded. Thus the Mortimers,  
 In whom the title rested, were suppress'd.

*Plan.* Of which, my lord, your honour is the last.

*Mor.* True ; and thou seest, that I no issue have ;  
 And that my fainting words do warrant death :  
 Thou art my heir ; the rest, I wish thee gather ;<sup>x</sup>  
 And yet be wary in thy studious care.

*Plan.* Thy grave admonishments prevail with me :  
 But yet, methinks, my father's execution  
 Was nothing less than bloody tyranny.

*Mor.* With silence, nephew, be thou politick :  
 Strong fixed is the house of Lancaster,  
 And, like a mountain, not to be remov'd.  
 But now thy uncle is removing hence ;  
 As princes do their courts, when they are cloy'd  
 With long continuance in a settled place.

*Plan.* O, uncle, 'would some part of my young years,  
 Might but redeem the passage of your age !

*Mor.* Thou dost then wrong me ; as the slaught'rer doth,  
 Which giveth many wounds, when one will kill.  
 Mourn not, except thou sorrow for my good ;  
 Only, give order for my funeral ;

<sup>u</sup> *Levied an army ;*] Cambridge levied no army, but was apprehended at Southampton, the night before Henry sailed from that town for France, on the information of this very Edmund Mortimer, earl of March.—MALONE.

<sup>x</sup> *Thou art my heir ; the rest I wish thee gather :*] The sense is—I acknowledge thee to be my heir ; the consequences which may be collected from thence, I recommend it to thee to draw.—HEATH.

And so farewell ; and fair be all thy hopes !  
 And prosperous be thy life, in peace, and war ! [Dies.]

*Plan.* And peace, no war, befall thy parting soul !  
 In prison hast thou spent a pilgrimage,  
 And like a hermit overpass'd thy days.—  
 Well, I will lock his counsel in my breast ;  
 And what I do imagine, let that rest.—  
 Keepers, convey him hence : and I myself  
 Will see his burial better than his life.—

[*Exeunt* Keepers, *bearing out* MORTIMER

Here dies the dusky torch of Mortimer,  
 Chok'd with ambition of the meaner sort :<sup>y</sup>—  
 And, for those wrongs, those bitter injuries,  
 Which Somerset hath offer'd to my house,  
 I doubt not, but with honour to redress :  
 And therefore haste I to the parliament ;  
 Either to be restored to my blood,  
 Or make my ill<sup>z</sup> the advantage of my good. [Exit.]

### ACT III.

SCENE I.—*The same. The Parliament-House.*<sup>a</sup>

*Flourish.* Enter King HENRY, EXETER, GLOSTER, WARWICK, SOMERSET, and SUFFOLK ; the Bishop of WINCHESTER, RICHARD PLANTAGENET, and others. GLOSTER offers to put up a bill ;<sup>b</sup> WINCHESTER snatches it, and tears it.

*Win.* Com'st thou with deep premeditated lines,  
 With written pamphlets studiously devis'd,  
 Humphrey of Gloster ? if thou canst accuse,  
 Or aught intend'st to lay unto my charge,

<sup>y</sup> *Chok'd with ambition of the meaner sort :*] We are to understand the speaker as reflecting on the ill fortune of Mortimer, in being always made a tool of by the Percies of the north in their rebellious intrigues ; rather than in asserting his claim to the crown, in support of his own princely ambition.—WARBURTON.

<sup>z</sup> — *my ill—*] i. e. *My ill usage.*

<sup>a</sup> *The Parliament-House.*] The parliament was held in 1426, at Leicester, though the author of this play has represented it to have been held in London. King Henry was now in the fifth year of his age.—MALONE.

<sup>b</sup> — *put up a bill ;*] i. e. Articles of accusation, for in this sense the word *bill* was sometimes used.—MALONE.

Do it without invention suddenly ;  
 As I with sudden and extemporal speech  
 Purpose to answer what thou canst object. [patience,

*Glo.* Presumptuous priest ! this place commands my  
 Or thou should'st find thou hast dishonour'd me.  
 Think not, although in writing I preferr'd  
 The manner of thy vile outrageous crimes,  
 That therefore I have forg'd, or am not able  
*Verbatim* to rehearse the method of my pen :  
 No, prelate ; such is thy audacious wickedness,  
 Thy lewd, pestiferous, and dissentious pranks,  
 As very infants prattle of thy pride.  
 Thou art a most pernicious usurer ;  
 Froward by nature, enemy to peace ;  
 Lascivious, wanton, more than well beseems  
 A man of thy profession, and degree ;  
 And for thy treachery, What's more manifest ?  
 In that thou laidst a trap to take my life,  
 As well at London bridge, as at the Tower ?  
 Beside, I fear me, if thy thoughts were sifted,  
 The king, thy sovereign, is not quite exempt  
 From envious malice of thy swelling heart.

*Win.* Gloster, I do defy thee.—Lords, vouchsafe  
 To give me hearing what I shall reply.  
 If I were covetous, ambitious, or perverse,  
 As he will have me, How am I so poor ?  
 Or how haps it, I seek not to advance  
 Or raise myself, but keep my wonted calling ?  
 And for dissention, Who preferreth peace  
 More than I do,—except I be provoked ?  
 No, my good lords, it is not that offends ;  
 It is not that, that hath incens'd the duke :  
 It is, because no one should sway but he ;  
 No one, but he, should be about the king ;  
 And that engenders thunder in his breast,  
 And makes him roar these accusations forth.  
 But he shall know, I am as good——

*Glo.*

As good ?

Thou bastard of my grandfather !<sup>c</sup>—

<sup>c</sup> —— *Thou bastard of my grandfather !*] The bishop of Winchester was an

*Win.* Ay, lordly sir ; For what are you, I pray,  
But one imperious in another's throne ?

*Glo.* Am I not the protector, saucy priest ?

*Win.* And am I not a prelate of the church ?

*Glo.* Yes, as an outlaw in a castle keeps,  
And useth it to patronage his theft.

*Win.* Unreverent Gloster !

*Glo.* Thou art reverent  
Touching thy spiritual function, not thy life.

*Win.* This Rome shall remedy.

*War.* Roam thither then.

*Som.* My lord, it were your duty to forbear.

*War.* Ay, see the bishop be not overborne.

*Som.* Methinks, my lord should be religious,  
And know the office that belongs to such.

*War.* Methinks, his lordship should be humbler ;  
It fitteth not a prelate so to plead.

*Som.* Yes, when this holy state is touch'd so near.

*War.* State holy, or unhallow'd, what of that ?  
Is not his grace protector to the king ?

*Plan.* Plantagenet, I see, must hold his tongue ;  
Lest it be said, *Speak, sirrah, when you should ;*  
*Must your bold verdict enter talk with lords ?*

Else would I have a fling at Winchester. [*Aside.*]

*K. Hen.* Uncles of Gloster, and of Winchester,  
The special watchmen of our English weal ;

I would prevail, if prayers might prevail,  
To join your hearts in love and amity.

O, what a scandal is it to our crown,  
That two such noble peers as ye, should jar !

Believe me, lords, my tender years can tell,  
Civil dissention is a viperous worm,

That gnaws the bowels of the commonwealth.—

[*A noise within ; Down with the tawny coats !*  
What tumult's this ?

*War.* An uproar, I dare warrant,  
Bugun through malice of the bishop's men.

[*A noise again ; Stones ! Stones !*

*Enter the Mayor of London, attended.*

*May.* O, my good lords,—and virtuous Henry,—  
Pity the city of London, pity us!  
The bishop and the duke of Gloster's men,  
Forbidden late to carry any weapon,  
Have fill'd their pockets full of pebble-stones;  
And, banding themselves in contráry parts,  
Do pelt so fast at one another's pate,  
That many have their giddy brains knock'd out:  
Our windows are broke down in every street,  
And we, for fear, compell'd to shut our shops.

*Enter, skirmishing, the Retainers of GLOSTER and WIN-  
CHESTER, with bloody pates.*

*K. Hen.* We charge you, on allegiance to ourself,  
To hold your slaught'ring hands, and keep the peace.  
Pray, uncle Gloster, mitigate this strife.

*1 Serv.* Nay, if it be  
Forbidden stones, we'll fall to it with our teeth.

*2 Serv.* Do what ye dare, we are as resolute.

*[Skirmish again.]*

*Glo.* You my household, leave this peevish broil,  
And set this unaccustom'd fight<sup>d</sup> aside.

*1 Serv.* My lord, we know your grace to be a man  
Just and upright; and, for your royal birth,  
Inferior to none, but his majesty:  
And, ere that we will suffer such a prince,  
So kind a father of the commonwealth,  
To be disgraced by an inkhorn mate,<sup>e</sup>  
We, and our wives, and children, all will fight,  
And have our bodies slaughter'd by thy foes.

*2 Serv.* Ay, and the very parings of our nails  
Shall pitch a field, when we are dead. *[Skirmish again.]*

*Glo.* Stay, stay, I say!  
And, if you love me, as you say you do,  
Let me persuade you to forbear a while.

*K. Hen.* O, how this discord doth afflict my soul!—

<sup>d</sup> — unaccustom'd—] i. e. Unseemly, indecent.

<sup>e</sup> — an irkhorn mate,] i. e. A bookman.

Can you, my lord of Winchester, behold  
 My sighs and tears, and will not once relent?  
 Who should be pitiful, if you be not?  
 Or who should study to prefer a peace,  
 If holy churchmen take delight in broils?

*War.* My lord protector, yield;—yield, Winchester;—  
 Except you mean, with obstinate repulse,  
 To slay your sovereign, and destroy the realm.  
 You see what mischief, and what murder too,  
 Hath been enacted through your enmity;  
 Then be at peace, except ye thirst for blood.

*Win.* He shall submit, or I will never yield.

*Glo.* Compassion on the king commands me stoop;  
 Or I would see his heart out, ere the priest  
 Should ever get that privilege of me.

*War.* Behold, my lord of Winchester, the duke  
 Hath banish'd moody discontented fury,  
 As by his smoothed brows it doth appear:  
 Why look you still so stern, and tragical?

*Glo.* Here, Winchester, I offer thee my hand.

*K. Hen.* Fye, uncle Beaufort! I have heard you preach,  
 That malice was a great and grievous sin:  
 And will not you maintain the thing you teach,  
 But prove a chief offender in the same?

*War.* Sweet king!—the bishop hath a kindly gird.<sup>f</sup>—  
 For shame, my lord of Winchester! relent;  
 What, shall a child instruct you what to do?

*Win.* Well, duke of Gloster, I will yield to thee  
 Love for thy love, and hand for hand I give.

*Glo.* Ay; but, I fear me, with a hollow heart.—  
 See here, my friends, and loving countrymen;  
 This token serveth for a flag of truce,  
 Betwixt ourselves, and all our followers:  
 So help me God, as I dissemble not!

*Win.* So help me God, as I intend it not! [*Aside.*]

*K. Hen.* O loving uncle, kind duke of Gloster,  
 How joyful am I made by this contract!—  
 Away, my masters! trouble us no more;  
 But join in friendship, as your lords have done.

<sup>f</sup> — a kindly gird.] i. e. A friendly reproof, or it may mean a kind remorse.

1 *Serv.* Content; I'll to the surgeon's.

2 *Serv.* And so will I.

3 *Serv.* And I will see what physick the tavern affords.  
[*Exeunt Servants, Mayor, &c.*]

*War.* Accept this scroll, most gracious sovereign;  
Which in the right of Richard Plantagenet  
We do exhibit to your majesty.

*Glo.* Well urg'd, my lord of Warwick;—for, sweet  
An if your grace mark every circumstance, [prince,  
You have great reason to do Richard right:  
Especially, for those occasions  
At Eltham-place I told your majesty.

*K. Hen.* And those occasions, uncle, were of force:  
Therefore, my loving lords, our pleasure is,  
That Richard be restored to his blood.

*War.* Let Richard be restored to his blood;  
So shall his father's wrongs be recompens'd.

*Win.* As will the rest, so willeth Winchester.

*K. Hen.* If Richard will be true, not that alone,  
But all the whole inheritance I give,  
That doth belong unto the house of York,  
From whence you spring by lineal descent.

*Plan.* Thy humble servant vows obedience,  
And humble service, till the point of death.

*K. Hen.* Stoop then, and set your knee against my foot:  
And, in reguerdon<sup>s</sup> of that duty done,  
I girt thee with the valiant sword of York:  
Rise, Richard, like a true Plantagenet;  
And rise created princely duke of York.

*Plan.* And so thrive Richard, as thy foes may fall!  
And as my duty springs, so perish they  
That grudge one thought against your majesty!

*All.* Welcome, high prince, the mighty duke of York!

*Som.* Perish, base prince, ignoble duke of York. [*Aside.*]

*Glo.* Now will it best avail your majesty,  
To cross the seas, and to be crown'd in France:  
The presence of a king engenders love  
Amongst his subjects, and his loyal friends;  
As it disanimates his enemies.

“ — reguerdon— ] i. e. *Recompence, return.*

*K. Hen.* When Gloster says the word, king Henry goes ;  
For friendly counsel cuts off many foes.

*Glo.* Your ships already are in readiness.

[*Exeunt all but EXETER.*]

*Exe.* Ay, we may march in England, or in France,  
Not seeing what is likely to ensue :  
This late dissension, grown betwixt the peers,  
Burns under feigned ashes of forg'd love,  
And will at last break out into a flame :  
As fester'd members rot but by degrees,  
Till bones, and flesh, and sinews, fall away,  
So will this base and envious discord breed.  
And now I fear that fatal prophecy,  
Which, in the time of Henry, nam'd the fifth,  
Was in the mouth of every sucking babe,—  
That Henry, born at Monmouth, should win all ;  
And Henry, born at Windsor, should lose all :  
Which is so plain, that Exeter doth wish  
His days may finish ere that hapless time.<sup>b</sup> [Exit.]

## SCENE II.

France. *Before Roüen.*

*Enter LA PUCELLE, disguised ; and Soldiers dressed like  
Countrymen, with Sacks upon their Backs.*

*Puc.* These are the city gates, the gates of Roüen,  
Through which our policy must make a breach :  
Take heed, be wary how you place your words ;  
Talk like the vulgar sort of market-men,  
That come to gather money for their corn.  
If we have entrance, (as, I hope, we shall,)  
And that we find the slothful watch but weak,  
I'll by a sign give notice to our friends,  
That Charles the Dauphin may encounter them.

*1 Sold.* Our sacks shall be a mean to sack the city,  
And we be lords and rulers over Roüen ;  
Therefore we'll knock. [Knocks.]

<sup>b</sup> *His days may finish ere that hapless time.*] The duke of Exeter died shortly after the meeting of this parliament, and the earl of Warwick was appointed governor or tutor to the king in his room.—MALONE.



*Guard.* [within.] *Qui est là?*

*Puc.* *Païsans, pauvres gens de France;*

Poor market-folks, that come to sell their corn.

*Guard.* Enter, go in; the market-bell is rung.

[*Opens the Gates.*

*Puc.* Now, Roüen, I'll shake thy bulwarks to the ground.

[*PUCELLE, &c. enter the City.*

*Enter CHARLES, Bastard of ORLEANS, ALENÇON, and Forces.*

*Char.* Saint Dennis bless this happy stratagem!  
And once again we'll sleep secure in Roüen.

*Bast.* Here enter'd Pucelle, and her practisants;<sup>i</sup>  
Now she is there, how will she specify  
Where is the best and safest passage in?

*Alen.* By thrusting out a torch from yonder tower;  
Which, once discern'd, shows, that her meaning is,—  
No way to that,<sup>k</sup> for weakness, which she enter'd.

*Enter LA PUCELLE on a Battlement: holding out a Torch burning.*

*Puc.* Behold, this is the happy wedding torch,  
That joineth Roüen unto her countrymen:  
But burning fatal to the Talbotites.

*Bast.* See, noble Charles! the beacon of our friend,  
The burning torch in yonder turret stands.

*Char.* Now shine like it a comet of revenge,  
A prophet to the fall of all our foes!

*Alen.* Defer no time, Delays have dangerous ends;  
Enter and cry—*The Dauphin!*—presently,

And then do execution on the watch. [They enter.

*Alarums. Enter TALBOT, and certain English.*

*Tal.* France, thou shalt rue this treason with thy  
If Talbot but survive thy treachery.— [tears,  
*Pucelle, that witch, that damned sorceress,*

<sup>i</sup> Here enter'd Pucelle, and her practisants;] *Practice*, in the language of that time, was *treachery*, and perhaps in the softer sense, *stratagem*. *Practisants* are therefore *confederates in stratagem*.—JOHNSON.

<sup>k</sup> No way to that,] i. e. No way equal to that, no way so fit as that.—JOHNSON.

Hath wrought this hellish mischief unawares,  
That hardly we escap'd the pride<sup>1</sup> of France.

[*Exeunt to the Town.*]

*Alarum. Excursions. Enter from the Town, BEDFORD, brought in sick, in a Chair, with TALBOT, BURGUNDY, and the English Forces. Then, enter on the Walls, LA PUCELLE, CHARLES, Bastard, ALENÇON, and others.*

*Puc.* Good morrow, gallants! want ye corn for bread?  
I think, the duke of Burgundy will fast,  
Before he'll buy again at such a rate:  
'Twas full of darnel;<sup>m</sup> Do you like the taste?

*Bur.* Scoff on, vile fiend, and shameless courtezan!  
I trust, ere long, to choke thee with thine own,  
And make thee curse the harvest of that corn.

*Char.* Your grace may starve, perhaps, before that time.

*Bed.* O, let no words, but deeds, revenge this treason!

*Puc.* What will you do, good grey-beard? break a lance,  
And run a tilt at death within a chair?

*Tal.* Foul fiend of France, and hag of all despite,  
Encompass'd with thy lustful paramours!  
Becomes it thee to taunt his valiant age,  
And twit with cowardice a man half dead?  
Damsel, I'll have a bout with you again,  
Or else let Talbot perish with this shame.

*Puc.* Are you so hot, sir?—Yet, Pucelle, hold thy peace;  
If Talbot do but thunder, rain will follow.—

[*TALBOT, and the rest consult together.*]

God speed the parliament! who shall be the speaker?

*Tal.* Dare ye come forth, and meet us in the field?

*Puc.* Belike, your lordship takes us then for fools,  
To try if that our own be ours, or no.

*Tal.* I speak not to that railing Hecaté,  
But unto thee, Alençon, and the rest;  
Will ye, like soldiers, come and fight it out?

*Alen.* Signior, no.

*Tal.* Signior, hang!—base muleteers of France!

<sup>1</sup> — *pride*—] i. e. *The haughty power.*

<sup>m</sup> — *darnel*;) *Lolium.* A weed growing in the fields.

Like peasant foot-boys do they keep the walls,  
And dare not take up arms like gentlemen.

*Puc.* Captains, away: let's get us from the walls:  
For Talbot means no goodness, by his looks.  
God be wi' you, my lord! we came, sir, but to tell you  
That we are here.

[*Exeunt LA PUCELLE, &c. from the Wall.*]

*Tal.* And there we will be too, ere it be long,  
Or else reproach be Talbot's greatest fame!—  
Vow, Burgundy, by honour of thy house,  
(Prick'd on by publick wrongs, sustain'd in France,)  
Either to get the town again, or die:  
And I,—as sure as English Henry lives,  
And as his father here was conqueror;  
As sure as in this late-betrayed town  
Great Cœur-de-lion's heart was buried;  
So sure I swear, to get the town, or die.

*Bur.* My vows are equal partners with thy vows.

*Tal.* But, ere we go, regard this dying prince,  
The valiant duke of Bedford:—Come, my lord,  
We will bestow you in some better place,  
Fitter for sickness, and for crazy age.

*Bed.* Lord Talbot do not so dishonour me:  
Here will I sit before the walls of Roüen,  
And will be partner of your weal or woe.

*Bur.* Courageous Bedford, let us now persuade you.

*Bed.* Not to be gone from hence; for once I read,  
That stout Pendragon,<sup>a</sup> in his litter, sick,  
Came to the field, and vanquished his foes:  
Methinks, I should revive the soldiers' hearts,  
Because I ever found them as myself.

*Tal.* Undaunted spirit in a dying breast!—  
Then be it so:—Heaven's keep old Bedford safe!—  
And now no more ado, brave Burgundy,  
But gather we our forces out of hand,

<sup>a</sup> That stout Pendragon,] This hero was Uther Pendragon, brother to Aurelius, and father to King Arthur.

Shakspeare has imputed to Pendragon an exploit of Aurelius, "who," says Holinshed, "even sicke of a flixe as he was, caused himself to be carried forth in a litter: with whose presence his people weré so encouraged, that encountering with the Saxons they wau the victorie." *History of Scotland*, p. 99.—

And set upon our boasting enemy.

[*Exeunt* BURGUNDY, TALBOT, and Forces,  
leaving BEDFORD, and others.

*Alarum: Excursions.* Enter Sir JOHN FASTOLFE, and  
a Captain.

*Cap.* Whither away, sir John Fastolfe, in such haste?

*Fast.* Whither away? to save myself by flight;°

We are like to have the overthrow again.

*Cap.* What! will you fly, and leave lord Talbot?

*Fast.*

All the Talbots in the world, to save my life. [Exit.

*Cap.* Cowardly knight! ill fortune follow thee! [Exit.

*Retreat: Excursions.* Enter, from the Town, LA PUCELLE,  
ALENÇON, CHARLES, &c. and exeunt flying.

*Bed.* Now, quiet soul, depart when heaven please;

For I have seen our enemies' overthrow.

What is the trust or strength of foolish man?

They that of late were daring with their scoffs,

Are glad and fain by flight to save themselves.

[Dies,<sup>p</sup> and is carried off in his Chair.

*Alarum: Enter* TALBOT, BURGUNDY, and others.

*Tal.* Lost, and recover'd in a day again!

This is a double honour, Burgundy:

Yet, heavens have glory for this victory!

*Bur.* Warlike and martial Talbot, Burgundy

Enshrines thee in his heart; and there erects

Thy noble deeds, as valour's monument.

*Tal.* Thanks, gentle duke. But where is Pucelle now?

I think her old familiar is asleep:

Now where's the Bastard's braves, and Charles his gleeks?<sup>q</sup>

What, all à-mort?<sup>r</sup> Roüen hangs her head for grief,

° — to save myself by flight;] Sir John Fastolfe fled at the battle of Patay, in the year 1429, but no historian has said that he fled before Roüen. In the old copy of this play he is erroneously called *Falstaffe*; and Malone conjectures, that the exaggerated representation of his cowardice given by the author of this play, induced Shakspeare to give that name to his knight.

<sup>p</sup> Dies,] He died at Roüen, in September, 1435, but not in any action before that town.—MALONE.

<sup>q</sup> — gleeks?] i. e. *Scoffs*; *jeers*.

<sup>r</sup> — all à-mort?] i. e. Quite dispirited; a frequent Gallicism.

That such a valiant company are fled.  
 Now will we take some order<sup>s</sup> in the town,  
 Placing therein some expert officers ;  
 And then depart to Paris, to the king ;  
 For there young Harry, with his nobles, lies.

*Bur.* What wills lord Talbot, pleaseth Burgundy.

*Tal.* But yet, before we go, let's not forget  
 The noble duke of Bedford, late deceas'd,  
 But see his exequies fulfill'd in Rouën ;  
 A braver soldier never couched lance,  
 A gentler heart did never sway in court :  
 But kings, and mightiest potentates, must die ;  
 For that's the end of human misery.

[*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE III.

*The same. The Plains near the City.*

*Enter CHARLES, the Bastard, ALENÇON, LA PUCELLE,  
 and Forces.*

*Puc.* Dismay not, princes, at this accident,  
 Nor grieve that Rouën is so recover'd :  
 Care is no cure, but rather corrosive,  
 For things that are not to be remedied.  
 Let frantick Talbot triumph for a while,  
 And like a peacock sweep along his tail ;  
 We'll pull his plumes, and take away his train,  
 If Dauphin, and the rest, will be but rul'd.

*Char.* We have been guided by thee hitherto,  
 And of thy cunning had no diffidence ;  
 One sudden foil shall never breed distrust.

*Bast.* Search out thy wit for secret policies,  
 And we will make thee famous through the world.

*Alen.* We'll set thy statuë in some holy place,  
 And have thee reverenc'd like a blessed saint ;  
 Employ thee then, sweet virgin, for our good.

*Puc.* Then thus it must be ; this doth Joan devise :  
 By fair persuasions, mix'd with sugar'd words,  
 We will entice the duke of Burgundy  
 To leave the Talbot, and to follow us.

<sup>s</sup> — take some order—] i. e. Make some necessary dispositions.

*Char.* Ay, marry, sweeting, if we could do that,  
France were no place for Henry's warriors;  
Nor should that nation boast it so with us,  
But be extirped<sup>t</sup> from our provinces.

*Alen.* For ever should they be expuls'd<sup>u</sup> from France,  
And not have title to an earldom here.

*Puc.* Your honours shall perceive how I will work,  
To bring this matter to the wished end. [*Drums heard.*  
Hark! by the sound of drum, you may perceive  
Their powers are marching unto Paris-ward.

*An English March. Enter, and pass over at a distance,*  
*TALBOT and his Forces.*

There goes the Talbot, with his colours spread;  
And all the troops of English after him.

*A French March. Enter the Duke of BURGUNDY*  
*and Forces.*

Now, in the rearward, comes the duke, and his;  
Fortune, in favour, makes him lag behind.  
Summon a parley, we will talk with him.

[*A parley sounded.*

*Char.* A parley with the duke of Burgundy.

*Bur.* Who craves a parley with the Burgundy?

*Puc.* The princely Charles of France, thy countryman.

*Bur.* What say'st thou, Charles? for I am marching  
hence.

*Char.* Speak, Pucelle; and enchant him with thy  
words.

*Puc.* Brave Burgundy, undoubted hope of France!  
Stay, let thy humble handmaid speak to thee.

*Bur.* Speak on; but be not over-tedious.

*Puc.* Look on thy country, look on fertile France,  
And see the cities and the towns defac'd  
By wasting ruin of the cruel foe!  
As looks the mother on her lowly babe,  
When death doth close his tender dying eyes,  
See, see, the pining malady of France;

<sup>t</sup> — extirped—] i. e. Rooted out.

<sup>u</sup> — expuls'd—] i. e. Expelled.

Behold the wounds, the most unnatural wounds,  
 Which thou thyself hast given her woful breast!  
 O, turn thy edged sword another way;  
 Strike those that hurt, and hurt not those that help!  
 One drop of blood, drawn from thy country's bosom,  
 Should grieve thee more than streams of foreign gore;  
 Return thee, therefore, with a flood of tears,  
 And wash away thy country's stained spots!

*Bur.* Either she hath bewitch'd me with her words,  
 Or nature makes me suddenly relent.

*Puc.* Besides, all French and France exclaims on thee,  
 Doubting thy birth and lawful progeny.  
 Who join'st thou with, but with a lordly nation,  
 That will not trust thee, but for profit's sake;  
 When Talbot hath set footing once in France,  
 And fashion'd thee that instrument of ill,  
 Who then, but English Henry, will be lord,  
 And thou be thrust out, like a fugitive?  
 Call we to mind,—and mark but this, for proof;—  
 Was not the duke of Orleans thy foe?  
 And was he not in England prisoner?  
 But, when they heard he was thine enemy,  
 They set him free,<sup>x</sup> without his ransom paid,  
 In spite of Burgundy, and all his friends.  
 See then! thou fight'st against thy countrymen,  
 And join'st with them will be thy slaughter-men.  
 Come, come, return; return, thou wand'ring lord;  
 Charles, and the rest, will take thee in their arms.

*Bur.* I am vanquished; these haughty<sup>y</sup> words of hers  
 Have batter'd me like roaring cannon-shot,  
 And made me almost yield upon my knees.—  
 Forgive me, country, and sweet countrymen!  
 And, lords, accept this hearty kind embrace:  
 My forces and my power of men are yours;—  
 So, farewell, Talbot; I'll no longer trust thee.

<sup>x</sup> *They set him free, &c.*] The duke was not liberated till after Burgundy's decline to the French interest; which did not happen, by the way, till some years after the execution of this very Joan la Pucelle; nor was that during the regency of York, but of Bedford.—RITSON:

<sup>y</sup> ——— *haughty*—] This word does not mean *violent* in this place, but *elevated, high-spirited*.—M. MASON.

*Puc.* Done like a Frenchman ; turn, and turn again !<sup>z</sup>

*Char.* Welcome, brave duke ! thy friendship makes us  
' fresh.

*Bast.* And doth beget new courage in our breasts.

*Alen.* Pucelle hath bravely play'd her part in this,  
And doth deserve a coronet of gold.

*Char.* Now let us on, my lords, and join our powers ;  
And seek how we may prejudice the foe. [ *Exeunt.*

#### SCENE IV.

Paris. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter* King HENRY, GLOSTER, and other Lords, VERNON, BASSET, &c. *To them* TALBOT, and some of his Officers.

*Tal.* My gracious prince,—and honourable peers,—  
Hearing of your arrival in this realm,  
I have a while given truce unto my wars,  
To do my duty to my sovereign :  
In sign whereof, this arm—that hath reclaim'd  
To your obedience fifty fortresses,  
Twelve cities, and seven walled towns of strength,  
Besides five hundred prisoners of esteem,—  
Lets fall his sword before your highness' feet ;  
And, with submissive loyalty of heart,  
Ascribes the glory of his conquest got,  
First to my God, and next unto your grace.

*K. Hen.* Is this the lord Talbot, uncle Gloster,  
That hath so long been resident in France ?

*Glo.* Yes, if it please your majesty, my liege.

*K. Hen.* Welcome, brave captain, and victorious lord !  
When I was young, (as yet I am not old,)  
I do remember how my father said,<sup>a</sup>

<sup>z</sup> *Done like a Frenchman ; turn, and turn again !*] The inconstancy of the French was always the subject of satire. I have read a dissertation written to prove that the index of the wind upon our steeples was made in form of a cock, to ridicule the French for their frequent changes.—JOHNSON.

<sup>a</sup> *I do remember how my father said,*] The author of this play was not a very correct historian. Henry was but nine months old when his father died, and never saw him.—MALONE.



A stouter champion never handled sword.  
 Long since we were resolved<sup>b</sup> of your truth,  
 Your faithful service, and your toil in war;  
 Yet never have you tasted our reward,  
 Or been reguerdon'd<sup>c</sup> with so much as thanks,  
 Because till now we never saw your face:  
 Therefore, stand up; and, for these good deserts,  
 We here create you earl of Shrewsbury;  
 And in our coronation take your place.

[*Exeunt* King HENRY, GLOSTER, TALBOT,  
 and Nobles.

*Ver.* Now, sir, to you, that were so hot at sea,  
 Disgracing of these colours that I wear<sup>d</sup>  
 In honour of my noble lord of York,—  
 Dar'st thou maintain the former words thou spak'st?

*Bas.* Yes, sir; as well as you dare patronage  
 The envious barking of your saucy tongue  
 Against my lord, the duke of Somerset.

*Ver.* Sirrah, thy lord I honour as he is.

*Bas.* Why, what is he? as good a man as York.

*Ver.* Hark ye; not so: in witness, take ye that.

[*Strikes him.*

*Bas.* Villain, thou know'st, the law of arms is such,  
 That, who so draws a sword, 'tis present death;  
 Or else this blow should broach thy dearest blood.  
 But I'll unto his majesty, and crave  
 I may have liberty to venge this wrong;  
 When thou shalt see, I'll meet thee to thy cost.

*Ver.* Well, miscreant, I'll be there as soon as you;  
 And, after, meet you sooner than you would. [*Exeunt.*

<sup>b</sup> — resolved,] i. e. Confirmed in opinion of it.

<sup>c</sup> — reguerdon'd—] i. e. Rewarded.

<sup>d</sup> — these colours that I wear—] This was the badge of a rose, and not an officer's scarf.—TOLLETT.

<sup>e</sup> That, who so draws a sword, 'tis present death;] i. e. With a menace in the court, or in the presence chamber.—WARBURTON.

## ACT IV.

SCENE I. *The same. A Room of State.*

*Enter* King HENRY, GLOSTER, EXETER, YORK, SUFFOLK, SOMERSET, WINCHESTER, WARWICK, TALBOT, *the Governour of Paris, and others.*

*Glo.* Lord bishop, set the crown upon his head.

*Win.* God save king Henry, of that name the sixth!

*Glo.* Now, governour of Paris, take your oath,—

[*Governour kneels.*]

That you elect no other king but him :

Esteem none friends, but such as are his friends ;

And none your foes, but such as shall pretend<sup>f</sup>

Malicious practices against his state :

This shall ye do, so help you righteous God !

[*Exeunt Gov. and his Train.*]

*Enter* Sir JOHN FASTOLFE.

*Fast.* My gracious sovereign, as I rode from Calais,

To haste unto your coronation,

A letter was deliver'd to my hands,

Writ to your grace from the duke of Burgundy.

*Tal.* Shame to the duke of Burgundy, and thee !

I vow'd, base knight, when I did meet thee next,

To tear the garter from thy craven's<sup>g</sup> leg, [*plucking it off.*]

(Which I have done) because unworthily

Thou wast installed in that high degree.—

Pardon me, princely Harry, and the rest :

This dastard, at the battle of Patay,

When but in all I was six thousand strong,

And that the French were almost ten to one,—

Before we met, or that a stroke was given,

Like to a trusty squire, did run away ;

In which assault we lost twelve hundred men ;

Myself, and divers gentlemen beside,

<sup>f</sup> — *pretend*—] i. e. *Design, intend.*

<sup>g</sup> — *craven*—] i. e. *Mean, dastard.*

Were there surpriz'd, and taken prisoners.  
Then judge, great lords, if I have done amiss ;  
Or whether that such cowards ought to wear  
This ornament of knighthood, yea, or no.

*Glo.* To say the truth, this fact was infamous,  
And ill beseeeming any common man ;  
Much more a knight, a captain, and a leader.

*Tal.* When first this order was ordain'd, my lords,  
Knights of the garter were of noble birth ;  
Valiant, and virtuous, full of haughty courage,  
Such as were grown to credit by the wars ;  
Not fearing death, nor shrinking for distress,  
But always resolute in most extremes.<sup>h</sup>  
He then, that is not furnish'd in this sort,  
Doth but usurp the sacred name of knight,  
Profaning this most honourable order ;  
And should (if I were worthy to be judge,)  
Be quite degraded, like a hedge-born swain  
That doth presume to boast of gentle blood.

*K. Hen.* Stain to thy countrymen ! thou hear'st thy  
doom :

Be packing therefore, thou that wast a knight ;  
Henceforth we banish thee, on pain of death.

[Exit FASTOLFE.]

And now, my lord protector, view the letter  
Sent from our uncle duke of Burgundy.

*Glo.* What means his grace, that he hath chang'd his  
style ?

[Viewing the superscription.]

No more but, plain and bluntly,—*To the king ?*

Hath he forgot, he is his sovereign ?

Or doth this churlish superscription

Pretend<sup>i</sup> some alteration in good will ?

What's here ?—*I have upon especial cause,—*

[Reads.]

*Mov'd with compassion of my country's wreck,*

*Together with the pitiful complaints*

*Of such as your oppression feeds upon,—*

<sup>h</sup> — most extremes.] i. e. Greatest extremities.

<sup>i</sup> Pretend—] To *pretend* seems to be here used in its Latin sense, i. e. to hold out, to stretch forward. It may mean, however, as in other places, to *design*. Modern editors read *portend*.—STEEVENS.

*Forsaken your pernicious faction,  
And join'd with Charles, the rightful king of France.*

O monstrous treachery! Can this be so;  
That in alliance, amity, and oaths,  
There should be found such false dissembling guile?

*K. Hen.* What! doth my uncle Burgundy revolt?

*Glo.* He doth, my lord; and is become your foe.

*K. Hen.* Is that the worst, this letter doth contain?

*Glo.* It is the worst, and all, my lord, he writes.

*K. Hen.* Why then, lord Talbot there shall talk with him,  
And give him chastisement for this abuse:—

My lord, how say you? are you not content?

*Tal.* Content, my liege? Yes; but that I am prevented,<sup>k</sup>  
I should have begg'd I might have been employ'd.

*K. Hen.* Then gather strength, and march unto him  
straight:

Let him perceive, how ill we brook his treason;  
And what offence it is, to flout his friends.

*Tal.* I go, my lord; in heart desiring still,  
You may behold confusion of your foes. [Exit.

*Enter VERNON and BASSET.*

*Ver.* Grant me the combat, gracious sovereign!

*Bas.* And me, my lord, grant me the combat too!

*York.* This is my servant; Hear him, noble prince!

*Som.* And this is mine; Sweet Henry favour him!

*K. Hen.* Be patient, lords; and give them leave to  
speak.—

Say, gentlemen, What makes you thus exclaim?

And wherefore crave you combat? or with whom?

*Ver.* With him, my lord; for he hath done me wrong.

*Bas.* And I with him; for he hath done me wrong.

*K. Hen.* What is that wrong whereof you both complain?  
First let me know, and then I'll answer you.

*Bas.* Crossing the sea from England into France,  
This fellow here, with envious carping tongue,  
Upbraided me about the rose I wear;  
Saying—the sanguine colour of the leaves  
Did represent my master's blushing cheeks,

<sup>k</sup> — prevented,] i. e. Anticipated; a Latinism.—MALONE.

When stubbornly he did repugn<sup>1</sup> the truth,  
 About a certain question of the law,  
 Argu'd betwixt the duke of York and him ;  
 With other vile and ignominious terms :  
 In confutation of which rude reproach,  
 And in defence of my lord's worthiness,  
 I crave the benefit of law of arms.

*Ver.* And that is my petition, noble lord :  
 For though he seem, with forged quaint conceit,  
 To set a gloss upon his bold intent,  
 Yet know, my lord, I was provok'd by him ;  
 And he first took exceptions at this badge,  
 Pronouncing—that the paleness of this flower  
 Bewray'd the faintness of my master's heart.

*York.* Will not this malice, Somerset, be left ?

*Som.* Your private grudge, my lord of York, will out,  
 Though ne'er so cunningly you smother it.

*K. Hen.* Good Lord ! what madness rules in brain-sick  
 When, for so slight and frivolous a cause, [men ;  
 Such factious emulations shall arise !—  
 Good cousins both, of York and Somerset,  
 Quiet yourselves, I pray, and be at peace.

*York.* Let this dissention first be tried by fight,  
 And then your highness shall command a peace.

*Som.* The quarrel toucheth none but us alone ;  
 Betwixt ourselves let us decide it then.

*York.* There is my pledge ; accept it, Somerset.

*Ver.* Nay, let it rest where it began at first.

*Bas.* Confirm it so, mine honourable lord.

*Glo.* Confirm it so ? Confounded be your strife !  
 And perish ye, with your audacious prate !  
 Presumptuous vassals ! are you not asham'd,  
 With this immodest clamorous outrage  
 To trouble and disturb the king and us ?  
 And you, my lords,—methinks, you do not well,  
 To bear with their perverse objections ;  
 Much less, to take occasion from their mouths  
 To raise a mutiny betwixt yourselves ;  
 Let me persuade you take a better course.

<sup>1</sup> — repugn—] i. e. Resist.

*Eve.* It grieves his highness;—Good my lords; be friends.

*K. Hen.* Come hither, you that would be combatants :  
 Henceforth, I charge you, as you love our favour,  
 Quite to forget this quarrel, and the cause.—  
 And you my lords,—remember where we are;  
 In France, amongst a fickle wavering nation :  
 If they perceive dissention in our looks,  
 And that within ourselves we disagree,  
 How will their grudging stomachs be provok'd  
 To wilful disobedience, and rebel ?  
 Beside, What infamy will there arise,  
 When foreign princes shall be certified,  
 That, for a toy, a thing of no regard,  
 King Henry's peers, and chief nobility,  
 Destroy'd themselves, and lost the realm of France ?  
 O, think upon the conquest of my father,  
 My tender years ; and let us not forego  
 That for a trifle, that was bought with blood !  
 Let me be umpire in this doubtful strife.  
 I see no reason, if I wear this rose, [*putting on a red rose.*  
 That any one should therefore be suspicious  
 I more incline to Somerset, than York :  
 Both are my kinsmen, and I love them both :  
 As well they may upbraid me with my crown,  
 Because, forsooth, the king of Scots is crown'd.  
 But your discretions better can persuade,  
 Than I am able to instruct or teach :  
 And therefore, as we hither came in peace,  
 So let us still continue peace and love.—  
 Cousin of York, we institute your grace  
 To be our regent in these parts of France :—  
 And good my lord of Somerset, unite  
 Your troops of horsemen with his bands of foot ;—  
 And, like true subjects, sons of your progenitors,  
 Go cheerfully together, and digest  
 Your angry choler on your enemies.  
 Ourselves, my lord protector, and the rest,  
 After some respite, will return to Calais ;  
 From thence to England, where I hope ere long

To be presented, by your victories,  
With Charles, Alençon, and that traitorous rout.

[*Florish.* *Exeunt* KING HENRY, GLO. SOM.

WIN. SUF. and BASSET.

*War.* My lord of York, I promise you, the king  
Prettily, methought, did play the orator.

*York.* And so he did ; but yet I like it not,  
In that he wears the badge of Somerset.

*War.* Tush ! that was but his fancy, blame him not ;  
I dare presume, sweet prince, he thought no harm.

*York.* And, if I wist, he did,<sup>m</sup>—But let it rest ;  
Other affairs must now be managed.

[*Exeunt* YORK, WARWICK, and VERNON.

*Exe.* Well didst thou, Richard, to suppress thy voice :  
For, had the passions of thy heart burst out,

I fear we should have seen decipher'd there  
More rancorous spite, more furious raging broils,  
Than yet can be imagin'd or suppos'd.

But howsoe'er, no simple man that sees  
This jarring discord of nobility,  
This should'ring of each other in the court,  
This factious bandying of their favourites,  
But that it doth presage some ill event.

'Tis much,<sup>n</sup> when scepters are in children's hands :

But more, when envy breeds unkind<sup>o</sup> division :

There comes the ruin, there begins confusion. [Exit.

## SCENE II.

France. *Before* Bourdeaux:

*Enter* TALBOT, *with his Forces.*

*Tal.* Go to the gates of Bourdeaux, trumpeter,  
Summon their general unto the wall.

<sup>m</sup> *And, if I wist, he did,—* i. e. *And, if I thought he did.*

<sup>n</sup> *— 'Tis much,]*—*'Tis an alarming circumstance, a thing of great consequence,*  
*or of much weight.*—STEEVENS.

<sup>o</sup> *— unkind—* i. e. *Unnatural.*

*Trumpet sounds a Parley. Enter on the Walls, the General of the French Forces, and others.*

English John Talbot, captains, calls you forth,  
 Servant in arms to Harry king of England;  
 And thus he would,—Open your city gates,  
 Be humble to us; call my sovereign yours,  
 And do him homage as obedient subjects,  
 And I'll withdraw me and my bloody power:  
 But, if you frown upon this proffer'd peace,  
 You tempt the fury of my three attendants,  
 Lean famine, quartering steel, and climbing fire;  
 Who, in a moment, even with the earth  
 Shall lay your stately and air-braving towers,  
 If you forsake the offer of their love.

*Gen.* Thou ominous and fearful owl of death,  
 Our nation's terror, and their bloody scourge!  
 The period of thy tyranny approacheth.  
 On us thou canst not enter, but by death:  
 For, I protest, we are well fortified,  
 And strong enough to issue out and fight:  
 If thou retire, the Dauphin, well appointed,  
 Stands with the snares of war to tangle thee:  
 On either hand thee there are squadrons pitch'd,  
 To wall thee from the liberty of flight;  
 And no way canst thou turn thee for redress,  
 But death doth front thee with apparent spoil,  
 And pale destruction meets thee in the face.  
 Ten thousand French have ta'en the sacrament,  
 To rive their dangerous artillery<sup>p</sup>  
 Upon no Christian soul but English Talbot.  
 Lo! there thou stand'st, a breathing valiant man,  
 Of an invincible unconquer'd spirit:  
 This is the latest glory of thy praise,  
 That I, thy enemy, due<sup>a</sup> thee withal;

<sup>p</sup> *To rive their dangerous artillery—*] *To rive* their artillery means only to *fire* their artillery. *To rive* is to *burst*: and a cannon, when fired, has so much the appearance of bursting, that, in the language of poetry, it may well be said to burst. We say, a cloud bursts, when it thunders.—M. MASON.

<sup>a</sup> — *due*—] i. e. *Endue*, *deck*, *grace*.



For ere the glass, that now begins to run,  
 Finish the process of his sandy hour,  
 These eyes, that see thee now well coloured,  
 Shall see thee wither'd, bloody, pale, and dead.

[*Drum afar off.*]

Hark! hark! the Dauphin's drum, a warning bell,  
 Sings heavy musick to thy timorous soul;  
 And mine shall ring thy dire departure out.

[*Exeunt General, &c. from the Walls.*]

*Tal.* He fables not, I hear the enemy;—  
 Out, some light horsemen, and peruse their wings.—  
 O, negligent and heedless discipline!  
 How are we park'd, and bounded in a pale;  
 A little herd of England's timorous deer,  
 Maz'd with a yelping kennel of French curs!  
 If we be English deer, be then in blood:<sup>r</sup>  
 Not rascal-like,<sup>s</sup> to fall down with a pinch;  
 But rather moody-mad, and desperate stags,  
 Turn on the bloody hounds with heads of steel,  
 And make the cowards stand aloof at bay:  
 Sell every man his life as dear as mine,  
 And they shall find dear deer of us, my friends.—  
 God, and saint George! Talbot, and England's right!  
 Prosper our colours in this dangerous fight! [*Exeunt.*]

### SCENE III.

*Plains in Gascony.*

*Enter YORK, with Forces; to him a Messenger.*

*York.* Are not the speedy scouts return'd again,  
 That dogg'd the mighty army of the Dauphin?

*Mess.* They are return'd, my lord: and give it out,  
 That he is march'd to Bourdeaux with his power,  
 To fight with Talbot: As he march'd along,  
 By your espials were discovered  
 Two mightier troops than that the Dauphin led; [deaux.  
 Which join'd with him, and made their march for Bour-

<sup>r</sup> — in blood:] i. e. In high spirits, of true mettle.

<sup>s</sup> Not rascal-like,] A rascal deer is the term of chase for lean poor deer.—  
 JOHNSON.

*York.* A plague upon that villain Somerset;  
That thus delays my promised supply  
Of horsemen, that were levied for this siege!  
Renowned Talbot doth expect my aid;  
And I am lowted<sup>t</sup> by a traitor villain,  
And cannot help the noble chevalier:  
God comfort him in this necessity!  
If he miscarry, farewell wars in France.

*Enter Sir WILLIAM LUCY.*

*Lucy.* Thou princely leader of our English strength,  
Never so needful on the earth of France,  
Spur to the rescue of the noble Talbot;  
Who now is girdled with a waist of iron,  
And hemm'd about with grim destruction:  
To Bourdeaux, warlike duke! to Bourdeaux, York!  
Else, farewell Talbot, France, and England's honour.

*York.* O God! that Somerset—who in proud heart  
Doth stop my cornets—were in Talbot's place!  
So should we save a valiant gentleman,  
By forfeiting a traitor and a coward.  
Mad ire, and wrathful fury, makes me weep,  
That thus we die, while remiss traitors sleep.

*Lucy.* O, send some succour to the distress'd lord!

*York.* He dies, we lose; I break my warlike word:  
We mourn, France smiles; we lose, they daily get;  
All 'long of this vile traitor Somerset.

*Lucy.* Then, God take mercy on brave Talbot's soul!  
And on his son, young John; whom, two hours since,  
I met in travel toward his warlike father!  
This seven years did not Talbot see his son;  
And now they meet where both their lives are done.<sup>u</sup>

*York.* Alas! what joy shall noble Talbot have,  
To bid his young son welcome to his grave?  
Away! vexation almost stops my breath,  
That sunder'd friends greet in the hour of death.—  
Lucy, farewell: no more my fortune can,  
But curse the cause I cannot aid the man.—

<sup>t</sup> — lowted—] i. e. Fooled, disgraced.

<sup>u</sup> — done.] i. e. Ended.

Maine, Blois, Poitiers, and Tours, are won away,  
'Long all of Somerset, and his delay. [Exit.

*Lucy.* Thus while the vulture<sup>x</sup> of sedition  
Feeds in the bosom of such great commanders,  
Sleeping neglecton doth betray to loss  
The conquest of our scarce-cold conqueror,  
That ever-living man of memory,  
Henry the fifth:—Whiles they each other cross,  
Lives, honours, lands, and all, hurry to loss. [Exit.

## SCENE IV.

*Other Plains of Gascony.*

*Enter SOMERSET, with his Forces; an Officer of TALBOT'S  
with him.*

*Som.* It is too late; I cannot send them now:  
This expedition was by York, and Talbot,  
Too rashly plotted; all our general force  
Might with a sally of the very town  
Be buckled with: the over-daring Talbot  
Hath sullied all his gloss of former honour,  
By this unheedful, desperate, wild adventure:  
York set him on to fight, and die in shame,  
That, Talbot dead, great York might bear the name.

*Off.* Here is sir William Lucy, who with me  
Set from our o'er match'd forces forth for aid.

*Enter Sir WILLIAM LUCY.*

*Som.* How now, sir William? whither were you sent?

*Lucy.* Whither, my lord? from bought and sold lord  
Talbot;<sup>y</sup>

Who, ring'd about<sup>z</sup> with bold adversity,  
Cries out for noble York and Somerset,  
To beat assailing death from his weak legions.  
And whiles the honourable captain there

<sup>x</sup> — *the vulture*—] Alluding to the tale of Prometheus.—JOHNSON.  
<sup>y</sup> — *from bought and sold lord Talbot;*] i. e. From one utterly ruined by  
the treacherous practices of others.—MALONE.

<sup>z</sup> — *ring'd about*—] i. e. *Environed*.

Drops bloody sweat from his war-wearied limbs,  
 And, in advantage ling'ring,<sup>a</sup> looks for rescue,  
 You, his false hopes, the trust of England's honour,  
 Keep off aloof with worthless emulation.<sup>b</sup>

Let not your private discord keep away  
 The levied succours that should lend him aid,  
 Whiles he, renowned noble gentleman,  
 Yields up his life unto a world of odds :  
 Orleans the Bastard, Charles, and Burgundy,  
 Alençon, Reignier, compass him about,  
 And Talbot perisheth by your default.

*Som.* York set him on, York should have sent him aid.

*Lucy.* And York as fast upon your grace exclaims ;  
 Swearing that you withhold his levied host,  
 Collected for this expedition.

*Som.* York lies ; he might have sent and had the horse :  
 I owe him little duty, and less love ;  
 And take foul scorn, to fawn on him by sending.

*Lucy.* The fraud of England, not the force of France,  
 Hath now entrapp'd the noble-minded Talbot :  
 Never to England shall he bear his life ;  
 But dies, betray'd to fortune by your strife.

*Som.* Come, go ; I will despatch the horsemen straight :  
 Within six hours they will be at his aid.

*Lucy.* Too late comes rescue ; he is ta'en, or slain :  
 For fly he could not, if he would have fled ;  
 And fly would Talbot never, though he might.

*Som.* If he be dead, brave Talbot then adieu !

*Lucy.* His fame lives in the world, his shame in you.

[*Exeunt.*

<sup>a</sup> — *in advantage ling'ring,*] Protracting his resistance by the advantage of a strong post.—JOHNSON.

<sup>b</sup> — *emulation.*] In this line, *emulation* signifies merely *rivalry*, not struggle for superior excellence.—JOHNSON.

## SCENE V.

*The English Camp near Bourdeaux.*

*Enter TALBOT and JOHN his Son.*

*Tal.* O young John Talbot! I did send for thee,  
To tutor thee in stratagems of war;  
That Talbot's name might be in thee reviv'd,  
When sapless age, and weak unable limbs,  
Should bring thy father to his drooping chair.  
But,—O malignant and ill-boding stars!—  
Now thou art come unto a feast of death,  
A terrible and unavoided<sup>c</sup> danger;  
Therefore, dear boy, mount on my swiftest horse;  
And I'll direct thee how thou shalt escape  
By sudden flight: come, dally not, begone.

*John.* Is my name Talbot? and am I your son?  
And shall I fly? O, if you love my mother,  
Dishonour not her honourable name,  
To make a bastard, and a slave of me:  
The world will say,—He is not Talbot's blood,  
That basely fled, when noble Talbot stood.<sup>d</sup>

*Tal.* Fly, to revenge my death, if I be slain.

*John.* He, that flies so, will ne'er return again.

*Tal.* If we both stay, we both are sure to die.

*John.* Then let me stay; and, father, do you fly:  
Your loss is great, so your regard<sup>e</sup> should be;  
My worth unknown, no loss is known in me.  
Upon my death the French can little boast;  
In yours they will, in you all hopes are lost.  
Flight cannot stain the honour you have won;  
But mine it will, that no exploit have done:  
You fled for vantage, every one will swear;  
But, if I bow, they'll say—it was for fear.

<sup>c</sup> — *unavoided*—] For *unavoidable*.—MALONE.

<sup>d</sup> — *noble Talbot stood*.] For what reason this scene is written in rhyme, I cannot guess. If Shakspeare had not in other plays mingled his rhymes and blank verses in the same manner, I should have suspected that this dialogue had been a part of some other poem which was never finished, and that being loath to throw his labour away, he inserted it here.—JOHNSON.

<sup>e</sup> — *your regard*—] Your care of your own safety.

There is no hope that ever I will stay,  
 If, the first hour, I shrink, and run away.  
 Here, on my knee, I beg mortality,  
 Rather than life preserv'd with infamy.

*Tal.* Shall all thy mother's hopes lie in one tomb?

*John.* Ay, rather than I'll shame my mother's womb.

*Tal.* Upon my blessing I command thee go.

*John.* To fight I will, but not to fly the foe.

*Tal.* Part of thy father may be sav'd in thee.

*John.* No part of him, but will be shame in me.

*Tal.* Thou never had'st renown, nor canst not lose it.

*John.* Yes, your renowned name; Shall flight abuse it?

*Tal.* Thy father's charge shall clear thee from that  
 stain.

*John.* You cannot witness for me, being slain.

If death be so apparent, then both fly.

*Tal.* And leave my followers here, to fight, and die?

My age was never tainted with such shame.

*John.* And shall my youth be guilty of such blame?

No more can I be sever'd from your side,

Than can yourself yourself in twain divide:

Stay, go, do what you will, the like do I;

For live I will not, if my father die.

*Tal.* Then here I take my leave of thee, fair son,

Born to eclipse<sup>f</sup> thy life this afternoon,

Come, side by side together live and die;

And soul with soul from France to heaven fly. [*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE VI.

### *A Field of Battle.*

*Alarum:* *Excursions, wherein TALBOT'S Son is hemmed  
 about, and TALBOT rescues him.*

*Tal.* Saint George and victory! fight, soldiers, fight:  
 The regent hath with Talbot broke his word,  
 And left us to the rage of France his sword.

<sup>f</sup> ————— fair son,

Born to eclipse, &c.] An apparent quibble between *son* and *sun*.—STEEVENS.

Where is John Talbot?—pause, and take thy breath;  
I gave thee life, and rescu'd thee from death.

*John.* O twice my father! twice am I thy son:  
The life, thou gav'st me first, was lost and done;  
Till with thy warlike sword, despite of fate,  
To my determin'd<sup>e</sup> time thou gav'st new date.

*Tal.* When from the Dauphin's crest thy sword struck  
fire,

It warm'd thy father's heart with proud desire  
Of bold-fac'd victory. Then leaden age,  
Quicken'd with youthful spleen, and warlike rage,  
Beat down Alençon, Orleans, Burgundy,  
And from the pride of Gallia rescu'd thee.  
The ireful bastard Orleans—that drew blood  
From thee, my boy; and had the maidenhood  
Of thy first fight—I soon encountered;  
And, interchanging blows, I quickly shed  
Some of his bastard blood; and, in disgrace,  
Bespoke him thus: *Contaminated, base,  
And misbegotten blood I spill of thine,  
Mean and right poor; for that pure blood of mine,  
Which thou didst force from Talbot, my brave boy:—*  
Here purposing the Bastard to destroy,  
Came in strong rescue. Speak, thy father's care;  
Art not thou weary, John? How didst thou fare?  
Wilt thou yet leave the battle, boy, and fly,  
Now thou art seal'd the son of chivalry?  
Fly, to revenge my death, when I am dead;  
The help of one stands me in little stead.  
O, too much folly is it, well I wot,  
To hazard all our lives in one small boat.  
I to-day die not with Frenchmen's rage,  
To-morrow I shall die with mickle age:  
By me they nothing gain, an if I stay,  
'Tis but the short'ning of my life one day:  
In thee thy mother dies, our household's name,  
My death's revenge, thy youth, and England's fame:  
All these, and more, we hazard by thy stay;  
All these are sav'd, if thou wilt fly away.

<sup>e</sup> — determin'd—] i. e. Ended.

*John.* The sword of Orleans hath not made me smart,  
 These words of yours draw life-blood from my heart :  
 On that advantage, bought with such a shame,  
 (To save a paltry life, and slay bright fame,)<sup>b</sup>  
 Before young Talbot from old Talbot fly,  
 The coward horse, that bears me, fall and die !  
 And like me<sup>i</sup> to the present boys of France ;  
 To be shame's scorn, and subject of mischance !  
 Surely, by all the glory you have won,  
 An if I fly, I am not Talbot's son :  
 Then talk no more of flight, it is no boot ;  
 If son to Talbot, die at Talbot's foot.

*Tal.* Then follow thou thy desperate sire of Crete,  
 Thou Icarus ; thy life to me is sweet :  
 If thou wilt fight, fight by thy father's side ;  
 And, commendable prov'd, let's die in pride. [ *Exeunt.*

## SCENE VII.

*Another part of the same.*

*Alarum : Excursions. Enter TALBOT wounded, supported by a Servant.*

*Tal.* Where is my other life ?—mine own is gone ;—  
 O, where's young Talbot ? where is valiant John ?—  
 Triumphant death, smear'd with captivity!<sup>k</sup>  
 Young Talbot's valour makes me smile at thee :—  
 When he perceiv'd me shrink, and on my knee,  
 His bloody sword he brandish'd over me,  
 And, like a hungry lion, did commence  
 Rough deeds of rage, and stern impatience ;  
 But when my angry guardant stood alone,  
 Tend'ring my ruin,<sup>l</sup> and assail'd of none,

<sup>b</sup> On that advantage, bought with such a shame,  
 (To save a paltry life, and slay bright fame,)] The sense is—Before young  
 Talbot fly from his father, (in order to save his life while he destroys his cha-  
 racter, on, or for the sake of, the advantages you mention, namely, preserving  
 our household's name, &c. may my coward horse drop down dead !—MALONE.

<sup>i</sup> — like me—] i. e. Compare me.

<sup>k</sup> — Triumphant death, smear'd with captivity!] That is, death stained and  
 dishonoured with captivity.—JOHNSON.

<sup>l</sup> Tend'ring my ruin,] Watching me with tenderness in my fall.—JOHNSON.



Dizzy-ey'd fury, and great rage of heart,  
 Suddenly made him from my side to start  
 Into the clust'ring battle of the French :  
 And in that sea of blood my boy did drench  
 His overmounting spirit ; and there died  
 My Icarus, my blossom, in his pride.

*Enter Soldiers, bearing the Body of JOHN TALBOT.<sup>m</sup>*

*Serv.* O my dear lord ! lo, where your son is borne !

*Tal.* Thou antick death,<sup>n</sup> which laugh'st us here to  
 scorn,

Anon, from thy insulting tyranny,  
 Coupled in bonds of perpetuity,  
 Two Talbot's, winged through the lither<sup>o</sup> sky,  
 In thy despite, shall 'scape mortality.  
 O thou whose wounds become hard-favour'd death,  
 Speak to thy father, ere thou yield thy breath :  
 Brave death by speaking, whether he will, or no ;  
 Imagine him a Frenchman, and thy foe.—  
 Poor boy ! he smiles, methinks ; as who should say—  
 Had death been French, then death had died to-day.  
 Come, come, and lay him in his father's arms ;  
 My spirit can no longer bear these harms.  
 Soldiers, adieu ! I have what I would have,  
 Now my old arms are young John Talbot's grave. [*Dies.*]

*Alarums.* *Exeunt Soldiers and Servant, leaving the two Bodies.* *Enter CHARLES, ALENÇON, BURGUNDY, Bastard, LA PUCELLE, and Forces.*

*Char.* Had York and Somerset brought rescue in,  
 We should have found a bloody day of this.

*Bast.* How the young whelp of Talbot's, raging wood,<sup>p</sup>  
 Did flesh his puny sword in Frenchmen's blood !<sup>q</sup>

<sup>m</sup> — *John Talbot.*] This John Talbot was the eldest son of the first earl by his second wife, and was viscount Lisle, when he was killed with his father, in endeavouring to relieve Chatillon, after the battle of Bourdeaux, in the year 1453. He was created viscount Lisle in 1451. John, the earl's eldest son by his first wife, was slain at the battle of Northampton in 1460.—MALONE.

<sup>n</sup> *Thou antick death,*] The fool, or antick of the play, made sport by mocking the graver personages.

<sup>o</sup> — *lither*—] i. e. *Flexible* or *yielding*.

<sup>p</sup> — *raging wood,*] i. e. *Raging mad*.

<sup>q</sup> — *in Frenchmen's blood !*] The return of rhyme where young Talbot is

*Puc.* Once I encounter'd him, and thus I said,  
*Thou maiden youth be vanquish'd by a maid:*  
 But—with a proud, majestic high scorn,—  
 He answered thus; *Young Talbot was not born*  
*To be the pillage of a giglot<sup>r</sup> wench:*  
 So, rushing in the bowels of the French,  
 He left me proudly, as unworthy fight.

*Bur.* Doubtless he would have made a noble knight:  
 See, where he lies inersed in the arms  
 Of the most bloody nurser of his harms.

*Bast.* Hew them to pieces, hack their bones asunder;  
 Whose life was England's glory, Gallia's wonder.

*Char.* O, no; forbear: for that which we have fled  
 During the life, let us not wrong it dead.

*Enter Sir WILLIAM LUCY, attended; a French Herald  
 preceding.*

*Lucy.* Herald,  
 Conduct me to the Dauphin's tent; to know  
 Who hath obtain'd the glory of the day.

*Char.* On what submissive message art thou sent?

*Lucy.* Submission, Dauphin? 'tis a mere French word;  
 We English warriors wot not what it means.  
 I come to know what prisoners thou hast ta'en,  
 And to survey the bodies of the dead.

*Char.* For prisoners ask'st thou? hell our prison is.  
 But tell me whom thou seek'st.

*Lucy.* Where is the great Alcides of the field,  
 Valiant lord Talbot, earl of Shrewsbury?  
 Created, for his rare success in arms,  
 Great earl of Washford,<sup>s</sup> Waterford, and Valence;  
 Lord Talbot of Goodrig and Urchinfield,  
 Lord Strange of Blackmere, lord Verdun of Alton,  
 Lord Cromwell of Wingfield, lord Furnival of Sheffield,

again mentioned, and in no other place, strengthens the suspicion that these verses were originally part of some other work, and were copied here only to save trouble of composing new.—JOHNSON.

<sup>r</sup> — giglot—] i. e. *Wanton*, a *strumpet*.

<sup>s</sup> — Washford.] i. e. *Wexford*. This list of titles is taken from the epitaph formerly fixed on Lord Talbot's tomb in Rouen in Normandy. Numerous as this list is, the epitaph has one more, "Lord Lovetoft of Worsop."—MALONE.

The thrice victorious lord of Falconbridge ;  
 Knight of the noble order of saint George,  
 Worthy saint Michael, and the golden fleece ;  
 Great marshal to Henry the sixth,  
 Of all his wars within the realm of France ?

*Puc.* Here is a silly stately style indeed !  
 The Turk, that two and fifty kingdoms hath,  
 Writes not so tedious a style as this.—  
 Him, that thou magnifiest with all these titles,  
 Stinking, and fly-blown, lies here at our feet.

*Lucy.* Is Talbot slain ; the Frenchmen's only scourge,  
 Your kingdom's terrour and black Nemesis ?  
 O, were mine eye-balls into bullets turn'd,  
 That I, in rage, might shoot them at your faces !  
 O, that I could but call these dead to life !  
 It were enough to fright the realm of France :  
 Were but his picture left among you here,  
 It would amaze the proudest of you all.  
 Give me their bodies ; that I may bear them hence,  
 And give them burial as beseems their worth.

*Puc.* I think, this upstart is old Talbot's ghost,  
 He speaks with such a proud commanding spirit.  
 For God's sake, let him have 'em ; to keep them here,  
 They would but stink, and putrefy the air.

*Char.* Go, take their bodies hence.

*Lucy.* I'll bear them hence :  
 But from their ashes shall be rear'd  
 A phoenix that shall make all France afraid.

*Char.* So we be rid of them, do with 'em what thou wilt.  
 And now to Paris, in this conquering vein ;  
 All will be ours, now bloody Talbot's slain. [Exeunt.

## ACT V.

SCENE I.—London. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter King HENRY, GLOSTER, and EXETER.*

*K. Hen.* Have you perus'd the letters from the pope,  
 The emperor, and the earl of Armagnac ?

*Glo.* I have, my lord ; and their intent is this,—  
They humbly sue unto your excellence,  
To have a godly peace concluded of,  
Between the realms of England and of France.

*K. Hen.* How doth your grace affect their motion ?

*Glo.* Well, my good lord ; and as the only means  
To stop effusion of our Christian blood,  
And 'stablish quietness on every side.

*K. Hen.* Ay, marry, uncle : for I always thought,  
It was both impious and unnatural,  
That such immanity<sup>t</sup> and bloody strife  
Should reign among professors of one faith.

*Glo.* Beside, my lord,—the sooner to effect,  
And surer bind, this knot of amity,—  
The earl of Armagnac—near knit to Charles,  
A man of great authority in France,—  
Proffers his only daughter to your grace  
In marriage with a large and sumptuous dowry.

*K. Hen.* Marriage, uncle ! alas ! my years are young,<sup>u</sup>  
And fitter is my study and my books,  
Than wanton dalliance with a paramour.  
Yet, call the ambassadors ; and, as you please,  
So let them have their answers every one :  
I shall be well content with any choice,  
Tends to God's glory, and my country's weal.

*Enter a Legate, and Two Ambassadors, with WINCHESTER, in a Cardinal's Habit.*

*Exe.* What ! is my lord of Winchester install'd,  
And call'd unto a cardinal's degree !<sup>x</sup>  
Then, I perceive, that will be verified,  
Henry the fifth did sometime prophecy,—  
*If once he come to be a cardinal,*  
*He'll make his cap co-equal with the crown.*

<sup>t</sup> — immanity—] i. e. Barbarity, savageness.

<sup>u</sup> — my years are young ;] He was twenty-four years old.—MALONE.

<sup>x</sup> *What ! is my lord of Winchester install'd,*  
*And call'd unto a cardinal's degree !]* This argues a great forgetfulness in the poet. In the first act, Gloster says,

“ I'll canvas thee in thy broad cardinal's hat :”

and it is strange that the duke of Exeter should not know of his advancement.  
—STEEVENS.

*K. Hen.* My lords ambassadors, your several suits  
Have been consider'd and debated on.  
Your purpose is both good and reasonable :  
And, therefore, are we certainly resolv'd  
To draw conditions of a friendly peace ;  
Which, by my lord of Winchester, we mean  
Shall be transported presently to France.

*Glo.* And for the proffer of my lord your master,—  
I have inform'd his highness so at large,  
As—liking of the lady's virtuous gifts,  
Her beauty, and the value of her dower,—  
He doth intend she shall be England's queen.

*K. Hen.* In argument and proof of which contráct,  
Bear her this jewel, [*to the Ambass.*] pledge of my affection.  
And so, my lord protector, see them guarded,  
And safely brought to Dover ; where, inshipp'd,  
Commit them to the fortune of the sea.

[*Exeunt King HENRY and Train ; GLOSTER,  
EXETER, and Ambassadors.*]

*Win.* Stay, my lord legate ; you shall first receive  
The sum of money, which I promised  
Should be deliver'd to his holiness  
For clothing me in these grave ornaments.

*Leg.* I will attend upon your lordship's leisure.

*Win.* Now, Winchester will not submit, I trow,  
Or be inferior to the proudest peer.  
Humphrey of Gloster, thou shalt well perceive,  
That, neither in birth,<sup>y</sup> or for authority,  
The bishop will be overborne by thee :  
I'll either make thee stoop, and bend thy knee,  
Or sack this country with-a mutiny. [*Exeunt.*]

<sup>y</sup> *That, neither in birth,*] I would read—*for* birth. That is, thou shalt not rule me, though thy birth is legitimate, and thy authority supreme.—JOHNSON.

## SCENE II.

France. *Plains in Anjou.*

*Enter CHARLES, BURGUNDY, ALENÇON, LA PUCELLE, and Forces, marching.*

*Char.* These news, my lords, may cheer our drooping  
'Tis said, the stout Parisians do revolt, [spirits :  
And turn again unto the warlike French.

*Alen.* Then march to Paris, royal Charles of France,  
And keep not back your powers in dalliance.

*Puc.* Peace be amongst them, if they turn to us ;  
Else, ruin combat with their palaces !

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* Success unto our valiant general,  
And happiness to his accomplices !

*Char.* What tidings send our scouts ? I pr'ythee, speak.

*Mess.* The English army, that divided was  
Into two parts, is now conjoin'd in one ;  
And means to give you battle presently.

*Char.* Somewhat too sudden, sirs, the warning is ;  
But we will presently provide for them.

*Bur.* I trust the ghost of Talbot is not there ;  
Now he is gone, my lord, you need not fear.

*Puc.* Of all base passions, fear is most accurs'd :  
Command the conquest, Charles, it shall be thine ;  
Let Henry fret, and all the world repine.

*Char.* Then on, my lords ; And France be fortunate !  
[*Exeunt.*

## SCENE III.

*The same. Before Angiers.*

*Alarums : Excursions. Enter LA PUCELLE.*

*Puc.* The regent conquers, and the Frenchmen fly.—  
Now help, ye charming spells, and periapts ;<sup>z</sup>  
And ye choice spirits that admonish me,

<sup>z</sup> — ye charming spells, and periapts ;] *Periapts* were worn about the necks as preservatives from disease or danger. Of these, the first chapter of *St. John's Gospel* was deemed most efficacious.—STEEVENS.

And give me signs of future accidents ! [Thunder.  
 You speedy helpers, that are substitutes  
 Under the lordly monarch of the north,<sup>a</sup>  
 Appear and aid me in this enterprize !

*Enter Fiends.*

This speedy quick appearance argues proof  
 Of your accustom'd diligence to me.  
 Now, ye familiar spirits, that are cull'd  
 Out of the powerful regions under earth,  
 Help me this once, that France may get the field.

[*They walk about, and speak not.*

O, hold me not with silence over-long !  
 Where<sup>b</sup> I was wont to feed you with my blood,  
 I'll lop a member off, and give it you,  
 In earnest of a further benefit ;  
 So you do condescend to help me now.—

[*They hang their heads.*

No hope to have redress ?—My body shall  
 Pay recompense, if you will grant my suit.

[*They shake their heads.*

Cannot my body, nor blood-sacrifice,  
 Entreat you to your wonted furtherance ?  
 Then take my soul ; my body, soul, and all,  
 Before that England give the French the foil.

[*They depart.*

See ! they forsake me. Now the time is come,  
 That France must vail<sup>c</sup> her lofty-plumed crest,  
 And let her head fall into England's lap.  
 My ancient incantations are too weak,  
 And hell too strong for me to buckle with :  
 Now, France, thy glory droopeth to the dust. [Exit.

*Alarums. Enter French and English, fighting. LA PUCELLE and YORK fight hand to hand. LA PUCELLE is taken. The French fly.*

*York.* Damsel of France, I think I have you fast :

<sup>a</sup> — monarch of the north,] The north was always supposed to be the particular habitation of bad spirits. Milton, therefore, assembles the rebel angels in the north.—JOHNSON.

<sup>b</sup> Where—] i. e. *Whereas.*

<sup>c</sup> — vail—] i. e. *Lower.*

Unchain your spirits now with spelling charms,  
 And try if they can gain your liberty.—  
 A goodly prize, fit for the devil's grace!  
 See, how the ugly witch doth bend her brows,  
 As if, with Circe, she would change my shape.

*Puc.* Chang'd to a worser shape thou canst not be.

*York.* O, Charles the Dauphin is a proper man;  
 No shape but his can please your dainty eye.

*Puc.* A plaguing mischief light on Charles, and thee!  
 And may ye both be suddenly surpriz'd  
 By bloody hands, in sleeping on your beds!

*York.* Fell banning<sup>d</sup> hag! enchantress, hold thy tongue.

*Puc.* I pr'ythee, give me leave to curse a while.

*York.* Curse, miscreant, when thou comest to the stake.  
 [*Exeunt.*]

*Alarums.* Enter SUFFOLK, leading in Lady MARGARET.

*Suf.* Be what thou wilt, thou art my prisoner.

[*Gazes on her.*]

O, fairest beauty, do not fear, nor fly;  
 For I will touch thee but with reverent hands,  
 And lay them gently on thy tender side.  
 I kiss these fingers [*kissing her hand.*] for eternal peace:  
 Who art thou? say, that I may honour thee.

*Mar.* Margaret is my name; and daughter to a king,  
 The king of Naples, whosoe'er thou art.

*Suf.* An earl I am, and Suffolk am I call'd.  
 Be not offended, nature's miracle,  
 Thou art allotted to be ta'en by me:  
 So doth the swan her downy cygnets save,  
 Keeping them prisoners underneath her wings.  
 Yet if this servile usage once offend,  
 Go, and be free again, as Suffolk's friend.

[*She turns away as going.*]

O, stay!—I have no power to let her pass;  
 My hand would free her, but my heart says—no.  
 As plays the sun upon the glassy streams,<sup>e</sup>

<sup>d</sup> — banning—] i. e. Cursing.

<sup>e</sup> As plays the sun upon the glassy streams, &c.] This comparison, made between things which seem sufficiently unlike, is intended to express the softness and



Twinkling another counterfeited beam,  
 So seems this gorgeous beauty to mine eyes.  
 Fain would I woo her, yet I dare not speak :  
 I'll call for pen and ink, and write my mind :  
 Fye, De la Poole ! disable not thyself ;<sup>f</sup>  
 Hast not a tongue ? is she not here thy prisoner ?  
 Wilt thou be daunted at a woman's sight ?  
 Ay ; beauty's princely majesty is such,  
 Confounds the tongue, and makes the senses rough.<sup>g</sup>

*Mar.* Say, earl of Suffolk,—if thy name be so,—  
 What ransom must I pay before I pass ?  
 For, I perceive, I am thy prisoner.

*Suf.* How canst thou tell, she will deny thy suit,  
 Before thou make a trial of her love ? [*Aside.*

*Mar.* Why speak'st thou not ? what ransom must I pay ?

*Suf.* She's beautiful ; and therefore to be woo'd :  
 She is a woman ; therefore to be won. [*Aside.*

*Mar.* Wilt thou accept of ransome, yea, or no ?

*Suf.* Fond man ! remember, that thou hast a wife :  
 Then how can Magaret be thy paramour ? [*Aside.*

*Mar.* I were best leave him, for he will not hear.

*Suf.* There all is marr'd ; there lies a cooling card.

*Mar.* He talks at random ; sure, the man is mad.

*Suf.* And yet a dispensation may be had.

*Mar.* And yet I would that you would answer me.

*Suf.* I'll win this lady Margaret. For whom ?  
 Why, for my king : Tush : that's a wooden thing.<sup>h</sup>

*Mar.* He talks of wood : It is some carpenter.

*Suf.* Yet so my fancy<sup>i</sup> may be satisfied,  
 And peace established between these realms.  
 But there remains a scruple in that too :  
 For though her father be the king of Naples,

delicacy of lady Margaret's beauty, which delighted but did not dazzle ; which was bright, but gave no pain by its lustre.—JOHNSON.

<sup>f</sup> — disable not thyself ;] Do not represent thyself so weak. To *disable* the judgment of another was, in that age, the same as to destroy its credit or authority.—JOHNSON.

<sup>g</sup> — and makes the senses rough.] The meaning of this word is not very obvious. Sir Thomas Hanmer reads—*crouch*.—MALONE.

<sup>h</sup> — a wooden thing.] i. e. An awkward business, an undertaking not likely to succeed.—STEEVENS.

<sup>i</sup> — my fancy—] i. e. My love.

Duke of Anjou and Maine, yet is he poor,  
And our nobility will scorn the match. [Aside.

*Mar.* Hear ye, captain? Are you not at leisure?

*Suf.* It shall be so, disdain they ne'er so much:  
Henry is youthful, and will quickly yield.—  
Madam, I have a secret to reveal.

*Mar.* What though I be enthralld? he seems a knight,  
And will not any way dishonour me. [Aside.

*Suf.* Lady, vouchsafe to listen what I say.

*Mar.* Perhaps, I shall be rescu'd by the French;  
And then I need not crave his courtesy. [Aside.

*Suf.* Sweet madam, give me hearing in a cause—

*Mar.* Tush! women have been captivate ere now.  
[Aside.

*Suf.* Lady, wherefore talk you so?

*Mar.* I cry you mercy, 'tis but *quid* for *quo*.

*Suf.* Say, gentle princess, would you not suppose  
Your bondage happy, to be made a queen?

*Mar.* To be a queen in bondage, is more vile,  
Than is a slave in base servility;  
For princes should be free.

*Suf.* And so shall you,  
If happy England's royal king be free.

*Mar.* Why, what concerns his freedom unto me?

*Suf.* I'll undertake to make thee Henry's queen;  
To put a golden scepter in thy hand,  
And set a precious crown upon thy head,  
If thou will condescend to be my—

*Mar.* What?

*Suf.* His love.

*Mar.* I am unworthy to be Henry's wife.

*Suf.* No, gentle madam; I unworthy am  
To woo so fair a dame to be his wife,  
And have no portion in the choice myself.  
How say you, madam; are you so content?

*Mar.* An if my father please, I am content.

*Suf.* Then call our captains, and our colours, forth:  
And, madam, at your father's castle walls  
We'll crave a parley, to confer with him.

[Troops come forward.]

*A parley sounded. Enter REIGNIER, on the Walls.*

*Suf.* See, Reignier, see, thy daughter prisoner.

*Reig.* To whom?

*Suf.* To me.

*Reig.* Suffolk, what remedy?

I am a soldier : and unapt to weep,  
Or, to exclaim on fortune's fickleness.

*Suf.* Yes, there is remedy enough, my lord :  
Consent, (and, for thy honour, give consent,)  
Thy daughter shall be wedded to my king ;  
Whom I with pain have woo'd and won thereto ;  
And this her easy-held imprisonment  
Hath gain'd thy daughter princely liberty.

*Reig.* Speaks Suffolk as he thinks ?

*Suf.* Fair Margaret knows,  
That Suffolk doth not flatter, face,<sup>k</sup> or feign.

*Reig.* Upon thy princely warrant, I descend,  
To give thee answer to thy just demand.

*[Exit, from the Walls.*

*Suf.* And here I will expect thy coming.

*Trumpets sounded. Enter REIGNIER, below.*

*Reig.* Welcome, brave earl, into our territories ;  
Command in Anjou what your honour pleases.

*Suf.* Thanks, Reignier, happy for so sweet a child,  
Fit to be made companion with a king :  
What answer makes your grace unto my suit ?

*Reig.* Since thou dost deign to woo her little worth,  
To be the princely bride of such a lord ;  
Upon condition I may quietly  
Enjoy mine own, the county Maine, and Anjou,  
Free from oppression, or the stroke of war,  
My daughter shall be Henry's, if he please.

*Suf.* That is her ransome, I deliver her ;  
And those two counties, I will undertake,  
Your grace shall well and quietly enjoy.

*Reig.* And I again,—in Henry's royal name,

<sup>k</sup> — *face,*] i. e. Carry a false appearance : play the hypocrite.—JOHNSON.

As deputy unto that gracious king,  
Give thee her hand, for sign of plighted faith.

*Suf.* Reignier of France, I give the kingly thanks,  
Because this is in traffick of a king :

And yet, methinks, I could be well content  
To be mine own attorney in this case.

[*Aside.*

I'll over then to England with this news,

And make this marriage to be solemniz'd ;

So, farewell, Reignier ! Set this diamond safe

In golden palaces, as it becomes.

*Reig.* I do embrace thee, as I would embrace  
The Christian prince, king Harry, were he here.

*Mar.* Farewell, my lord ! Good wishes, praise, and  
prayers,

Shall Suffolk ever have of Margaret.

[*Going.*

*Suf.* Farewell, sweet madam ! but hark you, Margaret ;  
No princely commendations to my king ?

*Mar.* Such commendations as become a maid,  
A virgin, and his servant, say to him.

*Suf.* Words sweetly plac'd, and modestly directed.  
But, madam, I must trouble you again,—  
No loving token to his majesty ?

*Mar.* Yes, my good lord ; a pure unspotted heart,  
Never yet taint with love, I send the king.

*Suf.* And this withal.

[*Kisses her.*

*Mar.* That for thyself ; I will not so presume,  
To send such peevish<sup>1</sup> tokens to a king.

[*Exeunt REIGNIER and MARGARET.*

*Suf.* O, wert thou for myself !—But, Suffolk, stay ;  
Thou may'st not wander in that labyrinth ;  
There Minotaurs, and ugly treasons, lurk.  
Solicit Henry with her wond'rous praise :  
Bethink thee on her virtues that surmount ;  
Mad,<sup>m</sup> natural graces that extinguish art ;  
Repeat their semblance often on the seas,  
That, when thou com'st to kneel at Henry's feet,  
Thou may'st bereave him of his wits with wonder. [*Erit.*

<sup>1</sup> — peevish—] i. e. *Childish.*

<sup>m</sup> *Mad,*] i. e. *Wild, uncultivated* : some of the editors have changed the word to *her.*

## SCENE IV.

*Camp of the Duke of York, in Anjou.*

*Enter YORK, WARWICK, and others.*

*York.* Bring forth that sorceress, condemn'd to burn.

*Enter LA PUCELLE, guarded, and a Shepherd.*

*Shep.* Ah, Joan! this kills thy father's heart outright!  
Have I sought every country far and near,  
And, now it is my chance to find thee out,  
Must I behold thy timeless<sup>n</sup> cruel death?  
Ah, Joan, sweet daughter Joan, I'll die with thee!

*Puc.* Decrepit miser!<sup>o</sup> base ignoble wretch!  
I am descended of a gentler blood;  
Thou art no father, nor no friend, of mine.

*Shep.* Out, out!—My lords, an please you, 'tis not so;  
I did beget her, all the parish knows:  
Her mother liveth yet, can testify,  
She was the first fruit of my bachelorship.

*War.* Graceless! wilt thou deny thy parentage?

*York.* This argues what her kind of life hath been;  
Wicked and vile; and so her death concludes.

*Shep.* Fye, Joan! that thou wilt be so obstacle!<sup>p</sup>  
God knows, thou art a collop of my flesh;  
And for thy sake have I shed many a tear:  
Deny me not, I pr'ythee, gentle Joan.

*Puc.* Peasant, avaunt!—You have suborn'd this man,  
Of purpose to obscure my noble birth.

*Shep.* 'Tis true, I gave a noble to the priest,  
The morn that I was weddēd to her mother.—  
Kneel down and take my blessing, good my girl.  
Wilt thou not stoop? Now cursed be the time  
Of thy nativity! I would, the milk  
Thy mother gave thee, when thou suck'dst her breast,

<sup>n</sup> ——— timeless—] i. e. *Untimely*.

<sup>o</sup> *Decrepit miser!*] *Miser* has no relation to avarice in this passage, but simply means a miserable creature.—STEEVENS.

<sup>p</sup> ——— *that thou wilt be so obstacle!*] A vulgar corruption of *obstinate*, which I think has oddly lasted since our author's time till now.—JOHNSON.

Had been a little ratsbane for thy sake !  
 Or else, when thou didst keep my lambs a-field,  
 I wish some ravenous wolf had eaten thee !  
 Dost thou deny thy father, cursed drab ?  
 O, burn her, burn her ; hanging is too good. [Exit.

*York.* Take her away ; for she hath liv'd too long,  
 To fill the world with vicious qualities.

*Puc.* First, let me tell you whom you have condemn'd ;  
 Not me begotten of a shepherd swain,  
 But issu'd from the progeny of kings ;  
 Virtuous, and holy ; chosen from above,  
 By inspiration of celestial grace,  
 To work exceeding miracles on éarth.  
 I never had to do with wicked spirits :  
 But you,—that are polluted with your lusts,  
 Stain'd with the guiltless blood of innocents,  
 Corrupt and tainted with a thousand vices,—  
 Because you want the grace that others have,  
 You judge it straight a thing impossible  
 To compass wonders, but by help of devils.  
 No, misconceiv'd !<sup>4</sup> Joan of Arc hath been  
 A virgin from her tender infancy,  
 Chaste and immaculate in very thought ;  
 Whose maiden blood, thus rigorously effus'd  
 Will cry for vengeance at the gates of heaven.

*York.* Ay, ay ;—away with her to execution.

*War.* And hark ye, sirs ; because she is a maid,  
 Spare for no fagots, let there be enough ;  
 Place barrels of pitch upon the fatal stake,  
 That so her torture may be shortened.

*Puc.* Will nothing turn your unrelenting hearts ?—  
 Then, Joan, discover thine infirmity ;  
 That warranteth by law to be thy privilege.—  
 I am with child, ye bloody homicides :  
 Murder not then the fruit within my womb,  
 Although ye hale me to a violent death.

*York.* Now heaven forefend ! the holy maid with  
 child ?

<sup>4</sup> *No, misconceiv'd !*] i. e. No, ye misconceivers, ye who mistake me and my qualities.—STEEVENS.

*War.* The greatest miracle that e'er ye wrought :  
Is all your strict preciseness come to this ?

*York.* She and the Dauphin have been juggling :  
I did imagine what would be her refuge.

*War.* Well, go to : we will have no bastards live ;  
Especially, since Charles must father it.

*Puc.* You are deceiv'd ; my child is none of his ;  
It was Alençon, that enjoyed my love.

*York.* Alençon ! that notorious Machiavel !<sup>r</sup>  
It dies, an if it had a thousand lives.

*Puc.* O, give me leave, I have deluded you ;  
'Twas neither Charles, nor yet the duke I nam'd,  
But Reignier, king of Naples, that prevail'd.

*War.* A married man ! that's most intolerable.

*York.* Why, here's a girl ! I think she knows not well,  
There were so many, whom she may accuse.

*War.* It's sign, she hath been liberal and free.

*York.* And, yet, forsooth, she is a virgin pure.—  
Strumpet, thy words condemn thy brat, and thee :  
Use no entreaty, for it is in vain.

*Puc.* Then lead me hence ;—with whom I leave my curse :  
May never glorious sun reflex his beams  
Upon the country where you make abode !  
But darkness and the gloomy shade of death  
Environ you ; till mischief, and despair,  
Drive you to break your necks, or hang yourselves !

[*Exit, guarded.*]

*York.* Break thou in pieces, and consume to ashes,  
Thou foul accursed minister of hell !

*Enter Cardinal BEAUFORT, attended.*

*Car.* Lord regent, I do greet your excellence  
With letters of commission from the king.  
For know, my lords, the states of Christendom,  
Mov'd with remorse of these outrageous broils,  
Have earnestly implor'd a general peace  
Betwixt our nation and the aspiring French ;

<sup>r</sup> — *Machiavel !*] He is mentioned somewhat before his time ; but his character made so deep an impression on the dramatic writers of Shakspeare's age, that he is many times prematurely spoken of.—JOHNSON and STEEVENS.

And here at hand the Dauphin, and his train,  
Approacheth, to confer about some matter.

*York.* Is all our travail turn'd to this effect?

After the slaughter of so many peers,  
So many captains, gentlemen, and soldiers,  
That in this quarrel have been overthrown,  
And sold their bodies for their country's benefit,  
Shall we at last conclude effeminate peace?  
Have we not lost most part of all the towns,  
By treason, falsehood, and by treachery,  
Our great progenitors had conquered?—  
O, Warwick, Warwick! I foresee with grief  
The utter loss of all the realm of France.

*War.* Be patient, York: if we conclude a peace,  
It shall be with such strict and severe covenants  
As little shall the Frenchmen gain thereby.

*Enter CHARLES, attended; ALENÇON, Bastard,  
REIGNIER, and others.*

*Char.* Since, lords of England, it is thus agreed,  
That peaceful truce shall be proclaim'd in France,  
We come to be informed by yourselves  
What the conditions of that league must be.

*York.* Speak, Winchester; for boiling choler chokes  
The hollow passage of my poison'd voice,  
By sight of these our baleful<sup>s</sup> enemies.

*Win.* Charles, and the rest, it is enacted thus:  
That—in regard king Henry gives consent,  
Of mere compassion, and of lenity,  
To ease your country of distressful war,  
And suffer you to breathe in fruitful peace,—  
You shall become true liegemen to his crown:  
And, Charles, upon condition thou wilt swear  
To pay him tribute, and submit thyself,  
Thou shalt be plac'd as viceroy under him,  
And still enjoy thy regal dignity.

*Alen.* Must he be then as shadow of himself?  
Adorn his temples with a coronet;

<sup>s</sup> — baleful—] i. e. Full of mischief.



And yet, in substance and authority,  
Retain but privilege of a private man?  
This proffer is absurd and reasonless.

*Char.* 'Tis known, already that I am possess'd  
With more than half the Gallian territories,  
And therein reverenc'd for their lawful king:  
Shall I, for lucre of the rest unvanquish'd,  
Detract so much from that prerogative,  
As to be call'd but viceroy of the whole?  
No, lord ambassador; I'll rather keep  
That which I have, than, coveting for more,  
Be cast from possibility of all.

*York.* Insulting Charles! hast thou by secret means  
Used intercession to obtain a league;  
And, now the matter grows to compromise,  
Stand'st thou aloof upon comparison?<sup>t</sup>  
Either accept the title thou usurp'st,  
Of benefit<sup>u</sup> proceeding from our king,  
And not of any challenge of desert,  
Or we will plague thee with incessant wars.

*Reig.* My lord, you do not well in obstinacy  
To cavil in the course of this contract:  
If once it be neglected, ten to one,  
We shall not find like opportunity.

*Alen.* To say the truth, it is your policy,  
To save your subjects from such massacre,  
And ruthless slaughters, as are daily seen  
By our proceeding in hostility:  
And therefore take this compact of a truce,  
Although you break it when your pleasure serves.

[*Aside to CHARLES.*]

*War.* How say'st thou, Charles? shall our condition  
stand?

*Char.* It shall:  
Only reserv'd, you claim no interest  
In any of our towns of garrison.

<sup>t</sup> — upon comparison?] Do you stand to compare your present state, a state which you have neither right or power to maintain, with the terms which we offer?—JOHNSON.

<sup>u</sup> Of benefit—] Benefit is here a term of law. Be content to live as the beneficiary of our king.—JOHNSON.

*York.* Then swear allegiance to his majesty ;  
As thou art knight, never to disobey,  
Nor be rebellious to the crown of England,  
Thou, nor thy nobles, to the crown of England.—

[*CHARLES, and the rest, give tokens of fealty.*

So, now dismiss your army when ye please ;  
Hang up your ensigns, let your drums be still,  
For here we entertain a solemn peace.

[*Exeunt.*

### SCENE V.

London. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter King HENRY, in conference with SUFFOLK ;  
GLOSTER and EXETER following.*

*K. Hen.* Your wond'rous rare description, noble earl,  
Of beauteous Margaret hath astonish'd me :  
Her virtues, graced with external gifts,  
Do breed love's settled passions in my heart :  
And like as rigour in tempestuous gusts  
Provokes the mightiest hulk against the tide ;  
So am I driven,\* by breath of her renown,  
Either to suffer shipwreck, or arrive  
Where I may have fruition of her love.

*Suf.* Tush ! my good lord ! this superficial tale  
Is but a preface of her worthy praise :  
The chief perfections of that lovely dame,  
(Had I sufficient skill to utter them,)  
Would make a volume of enticing lines,  
Able to ravish any dull conceit.  
And, which is more, she is not so divine,  
So full replete with choice of all delights,  
But, with as humble lowliness of mind,  
She is content to be at your command ;  
Command, I mean, of virtuous chaste intents,  
To love and honour Henry as her lord.

*K. Hen.* And otherwise will Henry ne'er presume.

\* *So am I driven,*] This simile is somewhat obscure ; he seems to mean, that as a ship is driven against the tide by the wind, so he is driven by love against the current of his interest.—*JOHNSON.*

Therefore, my lord protector, give consent,  
That Margaret may be England's royal queen.

*Glo.* So should I give consent to flatter sin.  
You know, my lord, your highness is betroth'd  
Unto another lady of esteem ;  
How shall we then dispense with that contract,  
And not deface your honour with reproach ?

*Suf.* As doth a ruler with unlawful oaths ;  
Or one, that, at a triumph<sup>y</sup> having vow'd  
To try his strength, forsaketh yet the lists  
By reason of his adversary's odds :  
A poor earl's daughter is unequal odds,  
And therefore may be broke without offence.

*Glo.* Why, what, I pray, is Margaret more than that ?  
Her father is no better than an earl,  
Although in glorious titles he excel.

*Suf.* Yes, my good lord, her father is a king,  
The king of Naples, and Jerusalem ;  
And of such great authority in France,  
As his alliance will confirm our peace,  
And keep the Frenchmen in allegiance.

*Glo.* And so the earl of Armagnac may do,  
Because he is near kinsman unto Charles.

*Exe.* Beside, his wealth doth warrant liberal dower ;  
While Reignier sooner will receive, than give.

*Suf.* A dower, my lords ! disgrace not so your king,  
That he should be so abject, base, and poor,  
To choose for wealth, and not for perfect love.  
Henry is able to enrich his queen,  
And not to seek a queen to make him rich :  
So worthless peasants bargain for their wives,  
As market-men for oxen, sheep, or horse.  
Marriage is a matter of more worth,  
Than to be dealt in by attorneyship ;  
Not whom we will, but whom his grace affects,  
Must be companion of his nuptial bed :  
And therefore, lords, since he affects her most,  
It most of all these reasons bindeth us,

<sup>y</sup> — at a triumph—] A *triumph*, in the age of Shakspeare, signified a publick exhibition, such as a *mask*, a *revel*, &c.—STEEVENS.

In our opinions she should be preferr'd.  
 For what is wedlock forced, but a hell,  
 An age of discord and continual strife?  
 Whereas the contrary bringeth forth bliss,  
 And is a pattern of celestial peace.  
 Whom should we match, with Henry, being a king,  
 But Margaret, that is daughter to a king?  
 Her peerless feature, joined with her birth,  
 Approves her fit for none, but for a king:  
 Her valiant courage, and undaunted spirit,  
 (More than in women commonly is seen,)  
 Will answer our hope in issue of a king;  
 For Henry, son unto a conqueror,  
 Is likely to beget more conquerors,  
 If with a lady of so high resolve,  
 As is fair Margaret, he be link'd in love.  
 Then yield, my lords; and here conclude with me,  
 That Margaret shall be queen, and none but she.

*K. Hen.* Whether it be through force of your report,  
 My noble lord of Suffolk; or for that  
 My tender youth was never yet attain'd  
 With any passion of inflaming love,  
 I cannot tell; but this I am assur'd,  
 I feel such sharp dissention in my breast,  
 Such fierce alarums both of hope and fear,  
 As I am sick with working of my thoughts.  
 Take, therefore, shipping; post, my lord, to France;  
 Agree to any covenants; and procure  
 That lady Margaret do vouchsafe to come  
 To cross the seas to England, and be crown'd  
 King Henry's faithful and anointed queen:  
 For your expences and sufficient charge,  
 Among the people gather up a tenth.  
 Be gone, I say; for, till you do return,  
 I rest perplexed with a thousand cares.—  
 And you, good uncle, banish all offence:  
 If you do censure<sup>z</sup> me by what you were,  
 Not what you are, I know it will excuse  
 This sudden execution of my will.

<sup>z</sup> — censure—] i. e. Judge, estimate.

And so conduct me, where from company,  
I may revolve and ruminare my grief.<sup>a</sup> [Exit.

*Glo.* Ay, grief, I fear me, both at first and last.

[*Exeunt* GLOSTER and EXETER.]

*Suf.* Thus Suffolk hath prevail'd : and thus he goes,  
As did the youthful Paris once to Greece ;  
With hope to find the like event in love,  
But prosper better than the Trojan did.  
Margaret shall now be queen, and rule the king ;  
But I will rule both her, the king, and realm. [Exit.<sup>b</sup>

<sup>a</sup> ——— *ruminare my grief.*] *Grief* in the first line is taken generally for *pain* or *uneasiness* : in the second specially for *sorrow*.

<sup>b</sup> Of this play, whoever may have been the author, it is certain that it was once extremely popular. It is evidently alluded to by Nashe, in a tract entitled *Pierce Pennilesse his Supplication, &c.* 1592, where he says, "How would it have joyed brave Talbot, the terror of the French, to think that after he had lain two hundred years in his tomb, he should triumph again on the stage, and have his bones new embalmed with teares of ten thousand spectators at least, at several times, who, in the tragedian that represents his person, imagine they behold him fresh bleeding."



613

SECOND PART OF  
KING HENRY VI.

---

THIS play, which was first printed in its present form in the folio of 1623, was founded on an old play of Marlowe's, called *The First Part of the Contention of the two famous houses of York and Lancaster*. In what year this meagre original was produced, is, perhaps, now impossible to be discovered. It was published in 1594; but Shakspeare is supposed to have amplified and improved the rude sketch of his predecessor two or three years earlier.

Mr. Malone has been at the trouble of carefully comparing the play of Marlowe with the drama which Shakspeare formed out of it; and distinguishing by different marks the alterations made by our great poet. These marks are continued in the present edition. The lines which Shakspeare adopted from the old play, without any alteration, are printed in the usual manner; those speeches which he altered or expanded, are distinguished by inverted commas; and to all the lines entirely composed by himself, asterisks are prefixed.

This play opens with Henry's marriage, which was in the twenty-third year of his reign, A. D. 1445; and closes with the first battle fought at St. Alban's and won by the York faction, in the thirty-third year of his reign, A. D. 1455: so that it comprizes the history and transactions of ten years.

## PERSONS REPRESENTED.

*King HENRY the Sixth.*

HUMPHREY, *duke of GLOSTER, his uncle.*

Cardinal BEAUFORT, *bishop of Winchester, great uncle to the king.*

RICHARD PLANTAGENET, *duke of York.*

EDWARD and RICHARD, *his sons.*

Duke of SOMERSET,

Duke of SUFFOLK,

Duke of BUCKINGHAM,

Lord CLIFFORD,

Young CLIFFORD, *his son,*

Earl of SALISBURY,

Earl of WARWICK,

Lord SCALES, *governor of the Tower.* Lord SAY.

Sir HUMPHREY STAFFORD, *and his brother.* Sir JOHN STANLEY.

*A Sea-Captain, Master, and Master's Mate, and WALTER WHITMORE.*

*Two Gentlemen, prisoners with Suffolk.*

*A Herald.* VAUX.

HUME and SOUTHWELL, *two priests.*

BOLINGBROKE, *a conjurer.* *A Spirit raised by him.*

THOMAS HORNER, *an armourer.* PETER, *his man.*

*Clerk of Chatham.* Mayor of Saint Alban's.

SIMPCOX, *an impostor.* *Two Murderers.*

JACK CADE, *a rebel.*

GEORGE, JOHN, DICK, SMITH, *the weaver,* MICHAEL, &c. *his followers.*

ALEXANDER IDEN, *a Kentish gentleman.*

MARGARET, *queen to King Henry.*

ELEANOR, *duchess of Gloster.*

MARGERY JOURDAIN, *a witch.* *Wife to Simpcox.*

*Lords, Ladies, and Attendants; Petitioners, Aldermen, a Beadle, Sheriff, and Officers; Citizens, Prentices, Falconers, Guards, Soldiers, Messengers, &c.*

SCENE, *dispersedly in various parts of England.*







J. M. Wright

C. Heath

## KING HENRY VI<sup>TH</sup>

QUEEN MARGARET - Give me thy hand

*Second Part Act III Sc. 11*

*London: Herbert Jennings & William Chapin, 62, Chancery Lane*

SECOND PART OF  
KING HENRY VI.

ACT I.

SCENE I.—London. *A Room of State in the Palace.*

*Flourish of Trumpets: then Hautboys. Enter, on one side, King HENRY, Duke of GLOSTER, SALISBURY, WARWICK, and Cardinal BEAUFORT; on the other, Queen MARGARET, led in by SUFFOLK; YORK, SOMERSET, BUCKINGHAM, and others following.*

*Suf.* As by your high<sup>a</sup> imperial majesty, -  
I had in charge at my depart for France,  
As procurator to your excellence,  
To marry princess Margaret for your grace;  
So, in the famous ancient city, Tours,—  
In presence of the kings of France and Sicil,  
The dukes of Orleans, Calaber, Bretagne, and Alençon,  
' Seven earls, twelve barons, twenty reverend bishops,—  
' I have perform'd my task, and was espous'd:  
' And humbly now upon my bended knee,  
In sight of England and her lordly peers,  
Deliver up my title in the queen  
To your most gracious hands, that are the substance  
Of that great shadow I did represent;  
The happiest gift that ever marquess gave,  
The fairest queen that ever king receiv'd.

' *K. Hen.* Suffolk, arise.—Welcome, queen Margaret:  
' I can express no kinder sign of love,  
' Than this kind kiss.—O Lord, that lends me life,

<sup>a</sup> *As by your high, &c.]* It is apparent that this play begins where the former ends, and continues the series of transactions of which it presupposes the first part already known. This is a sufficient proof that the second and third parts were not written without dependance on the first, though they were printed as containing a complete period of history.—JOHNSON.

‘ Lend me a heart replete with thankfulness !  
 ‘ For thou hast given me, in this beauteous face,  
 ‘ A world of earthly blessings to my soul,  
 \* If sympathy of love unite our thoughts.

‘ *Q. Mar.* Great king of England, and my gracious lord ;  
 ‘ The mutual conference<sup>b</sup> that my mind hath had—  
 ‘ By day, by night ; waking, and in my dreams ;  
 ‘ In courtly company, or at my beads,—  
 ‘ With you mine alder-liefest<sup>c</sup> sovereign,  
 ‘ Makes me the bolder to salute my king  
 ‘ With ruder terms ; such as my wit affords,  
 ‘ And over-joy of heart doth minister.

‘ *K. Hen.* Her sight did ravish : but her grace in speech,  
 ‘ Her words y-clad with wisdom’s majesty,  
 ‘ Makes me, from wondering, fall to weeping joys ;  
 ‘ Such is the fulness of my heart’s content.—  
 ‘ Lords, with one cheerful voice welcome my love.

*All.* Long live queen Margaret, England’s happiness !

*Q. Mar.* We thank you all. [Flourish.]

*Suf.* My lord protector, so it please your grace,  
 Here are the articles of contracted peace,  
 Between our sovereign, and the French king Charles,  
 ‘ For eighteen months concluded by consent.

*Glo.* [*reads.*] *Imprimis, It is agreed between the French king, Charles, and William de la Poole, marquess of Suffolk, ambassador for Henry king of England,—that the said Henry shall espouse the lady Margaret, daughter unto Reignier king of Naples, Sicilia, and Jerusalem ; and crown her queen of England, ere the thirtieth of May next ensuing.—Item,—That the dutchy of Anjou and the county of Maine, shall be released and delivered to the king her father—*

*K. Hen.* Uncle, how now ?

*Glo.* Pardon me, gracious lord ;  
 Some sudden qualm hath struck me at the heart,  
 And dimm’d mine eyes, that I can read no further.

*K. Hen.* Uncle of Winchester, I pray, read on.

<sup>b</sup> *The mutual conference—*] I am the bolder to address you, having already familiarized you to my imagination.—JOHNSON.

<sup>c</sup> — *alder-liefest—*] i. e. *Beloved above all things, dearest of all.* From *alder* the genitive case plural of *all* ; and *lief*, dear.—STEEVENS.

*Win.* Item,—*It is further agreed between them,—that the dutchies of Anjou and Maine shall be released and delivered over to the king her father ; and she sent over of the king of England's own proper cost and charges, without having dowry.*

*K. Hen.* They please us well.—Lord marquess, kneel down ;

We here create thee the first duke of Suffolk,  
And girt thee with the sword.—

Cousin of York, we here discharge your grace  
From being regent in the parts of France,  
Till term of eighteen months be full expired.—

Thanks, uncle Winchester, Gloster, York, and Buckingham,  
Somerset, Salisbury, and Warwick ;

We thank you all for this great favour done,  
In entertainment to my princely queen.

Come, let us in ; and with all speed provide  
To see her coronation be perform'd.

[*Exeunt King, Queen, and SUFFOLK.*]

*Glo.* Brave peers of England, pillars of the state,

- ‘ To you duke Humphrey must unload his grief,
- ‘ Your grief, the common grief of all the land.
- ‘ What ! did my brother Henry spend his youth,
- ‘ His valour, coin, and people, in the wars ?
- ‘ Did he so often lodge in open field,
- ‘ In winter's cold, and summer's parching heat,
- ‘ To conquer France, his true inheritance ?
- ‘ And did my brother Bedford toil his wits,
- ‘ To keep by policy what Henry got ?
- ‘ Have you yourselves, Somerset, Buckingham,
- ‘ Brave York, Salisbury, and victorious Warwick,
- ‘ Receiv'd deep scars in France and Normandy ?
- ‘ Or hath mine uncle Beaufort, and myself,
- ‘ With all the learned council of the realm,
- ‘ Studied so long, sat in the council-house,
- ‘ Early and late, debating to and fro
- ‘ How France and Frenchmen might be kept in awe ?
- ‘ And hath his highness in his infancy
- ‘ Been crown'd in Paris, in despite of foes ?
- ‘ And shall these labours, and these honours, die ?
- ‘ Shall Henry's conquest, Bedford's vigilance,

‘ Your deeds of war, and all our counsel, die ?  
 ‘ O peers of England, shameful is this league !  
   Fatal this marriage ! cancelling your fame :  
 ‘ Blotting your names from books of memory :  
 ‘ Razing the characters of your renown ;  
 ‘ Defacing monuments of conquer’d France ;  
 ‘ Undoing all, as all had never been !

\* *Car.* Nephew, what means this passionate discourse ?

\* This peroration with such circumstance ?<sup>d</sup>

\* For France, ’tis ours ; and we will keep it still.

\* *Glo.* Ay, uncle, we will keep it, if we can ;

\* But now it is impossible we should :

Suffolk, the new-made duke that rules the roast,

‘ Hath given the dutchies of Anjou and Maine

\* Unto the poor king Reignier, whose large style

\* Agrees not with the leanness of his purse.

\* *Sal.* Now, by the death of him that died for all,

\* These counties were the keys of Normandy :—

But wherefore weeps Warwick, my valiant son ?

‘ *War.* For grief, that they are past recovery :

‘ For were there hope to conquer them again,

‘ My sword should shed hot blood, mine eyes no tears.

‘ Anjou and Maine ! myself did win them both ;

‘ Those provinces these arms of mine did conquer :

‘ And are the cities, that I got with wounds,

‘ Deliver’d up again with peaceful words ?

‘ Mort Dieu !

\* *York.* For Suffolk’s duke—may he be suffocate,

\* That dims the honour of this warlike isle !

\* France should have torn and rent my very heart,

\* Before I would have yielded to this league.

‘ I never read but England’s kings have had

‘ Large sums of gold, and dowries, with their wives :

‘ And our king Henry gives away his own,

‘ To match with her that brings no vantages.

\* *Glo.* A proper jest, and never heard before,

\* That Suffolk should demand a whole fifteenth,

\* For costs and charges in transporting her !

<sup>d</sup> This peroration with such circumstance ?] This speech crowded with so many instances of aggravation.—JOHNSON.

\* She should have staid in France, and starv'd in France

\* Before——

\* *Car.* My lord of Gloster, now you grow too hot ;

\* It was the pleasure of my lord the king.

\* *Glo.* My lord of Winchester, I know your mind ;

‘ ’Tis not my speeches that you do mislike,

‘ But ’tis my presence that doth trouble you.

‘ Rancour will out : Proud prelate, in thy face

‘ I see thy fury : If I longer stay,

‘ We shall begin our ancient bickerings.—

Lordings, farewell ; and say, when I am gone,

I prophesied—France will be lost ere long.

[*Exit.*

*Car.* So, there goes our protector in a rage.

’Tis known to you, he is mine enemy :

\* Nay, more, an enemy unto you all ;

\* And no great friend, I fear me, to the king.

\* Consider, lords,—he is the next of blood,

\* And heir apparent to the English crown ;

\* Had Henry got an empire by his marriage,

\* And all the wealthy kingdoms of the west,

\* There’s reason he should be displeas’d at it.

\* Look to it, lords ; let not his smoothing words

\* Bewitch your hearts ; be wise, and circumspect.

‘ What though the common people favour him,

‘ Calling him—*Humphrey, the good duke of Gloster ;*

‘ Clapping their hands, and crying with loud voice—

‘ *Jesu maintain your royal excellence !*

‘ With—*God preserve the good duke Humphrey !*

‘ I fear me, lords, for all this flattering gloss,

‘ He will be found a dangerous protector.

\* *Buck.* Why should he then protect our sovereign,

\* He being of age to govern of himself?—

‘ Cousin of Somerset, join you with me,

‘ And all together—with the duke of Suffolk,—

‘ We’ll quickly hoise duke Humphrey from his seat.

\* *Car.* This weighty business will not brook delay ;

\* I’ll to the duke of Suffolk presently.

[*Exit.*

‘ *Som.* Cousin of Buckingham, though Humphrey’s  
pride,

‘ And greatness of his place be grief to us,

- ‘ Yet let us watch the haughty cardinal;
- ‘ His insolence is more intolerable
- ‘ Than all the princes in the land beside;
- ‘ If Gloster be displac’d, he’ll be protector.

*Buck.* Or thou, or I, Somerset, will be protector,

- \* Despight duke Humphrey, or the cardinal.

[*Exeunt* BUCKINGHAM and SOMERSET.]

*Sal.* Pride went before, ambition follows him.

- ‘ While these do labour for their own preferment,
- ‘ Behoves it us to labour for the realm.
- ‘ I never saw but Humphrey duke of Gloster
- ‘ Did bear him like a noble gentleman.
- ‘ Oft have I seen the haughty cardinal—
- ‘ More like a soldier, than a man o’the church,
- ‘ As stout, and proud, as he were lord of all,—
- ‘ Swear like a ruffian, and demean himself
- ‘ Unlike the ruler of a common-weal.—
- ‘ Warwick, my son, the comfort of my age!
- ‘ Thy deeds, thy plainness, and thy house-keeping,
- ‘ Hath won the greatest favour of the commons,
- ‘ Excepting none but good duke Humphrey.—
- ‘ And, brother York,<sup>e</sup> thy acts in Ireland,
- ‘ In bringing them to civil discipline;
- ‘ Thy late exploits, done in the heart of France,
- ‘ When thou wert regent for our sovereign,
- ‘ Have made thee fear’d, and honour’d, of the people:—
- ‘ Join we together, for the publick good;
- ‘ In what we can, to bridle and suppress
- ‘ The pride of Suffolk, and the cardinal,
- ‘ With Somerset’s and Buckingham’s ambition;
- ‘ And, as we may, cherish duke Humphrey’s deeds,
- ‘ While they do tend the profit of the land.

\* *War.* So God help Warwick, as he loves the land,

- \* And common profit of his country!

<sup>e</sup> — brother York,] Richard Plantagenet duke of York, married Cicely, the daughter of Ralf Nevil, earl of Westmoreland. Richard Nevil, earl of Salisbury, was son to the earl of Westmoreland by his second wife, Alice, the only daughter of Thomas Montacute, earl of Salisbury. In consequence of this alliance he obtained the title of Salisbury in 1423. In speaking of York’s “acts in Ireland” Shakspeare is guilty of an anachronism. The present scene is 1445, but Richard duke of York was not viceroy of Ireland till 1449.—



\* *York.* And so says York, for he hath greatest cause.

*Sal.* Then let's make haste away, and look unto the main.

*War.* Unto the main! O father, Maine is lost;

\* That Maine, which by main force Warwick did win,

\* And would have kept, so long as breath did last:

Main chance, father, you meant; but I meant Maine;

Which I will win from France, or else be slain.

[*Exeunt* WARWICK and SALISBURY.]

*York.* Anjou and Maine are given to the French;

\* Paris is lost; the state of Normandy

\* Stands on a tickle<sup>f</sup> point, now they are gone:

\* Suffolk concluded on the articles;

\* The peers agreed; and Henry was well pleas'd,

\* To change two dukedoms for a duke's fair daughter.

\* I cannot blame them all; What is't to them?

\* 'Tis thine they give away, and not their own.

\* Pirates may make cheap pennyworths of their pillage,

\* And purchase friends, and give to courtezans,

\* Still revelling, like lords, till all be gone:

\* While as the silly owner of the goods

\* Weeps over them, and wrings his hapless hands,

\* And shakes his head, and trembling stands aloof,

\* While all is shar'd, and all is borne away:

\* Ready to starve, and dare not touch his own.

\* So York must sit, and fret, and bite his tongue,

\* While his own lands are bargain'd for, and sold.

\* Methinks, the realms of England, France, and Ireland,

\* Bear that proportion to my flesh and blood,

\* As did the fatal brand Althea burn'd,

\* Unto the prince's heart of Calydon.<sup>g</sup>

Anjou and Maine, both given unto the French!

Cold news for me; for I had hope of France,

Even as I have of fertile England's soil.

A day will come, when York shall claim his own;

And therefore I will take the Nevils' parts,

<sup>f</sup> — *tickle*—] *Tickle* is very frequently used in the sense of *ticklish*, by poets contemporary with Shakspeare.—STEEVENS.

<sup>g</sup> — *the prince's heart of Calydon*.] According to the fable, Meleager's life was to continue only so long as a certain firebrand should last. His mother Althea having thrown it into the fire, he expired in great torments.—MALONE.

And make a show of love to proud duke Humphrey,  
 And, when I spy advantage, claim the crown,  
 For that's the golden mark I seek to hit:  
 Nor shall proud Lancaster usurp my right,  
 Nor hold the sceptre in his childish fist,  
 Nor wear the diadem upon his head,  
 Whose church-like humours fit not for a crown.  
 Then, York, be still awhile, till time do serve:  
 Watch thou, and wake, when others be asleep,  
 To pry into the secrets of the state;  
 Till Henry, surfeiting in joys of love,  
 With his new bride, and England's dear-bought queen,  
 And Humphrey with the peers be fall'n at jars:  
 Then will I raise aloft the milk-white rose,  
 With whose sweet smell the air shall be perfum'd;  
 And in my standard bear the arms of York,  
 To grapple with the house of Lancaster;  
 And, force perforce, I'll make him yield the crown,  
 Whose bookish rule hath pull'd fair England down.

[*Exit.*]

## SCENE II.

*The same. A Room in the Duke of Gloster's House.*

*Enter GLOSTER and the Duchess.*

*Duch.* Why droops my lord, like over-ripen'd corn,  
 Hanging the head at Ceres' plenteous load?  
 \* Why doth the great duke Humphrey knit his brows,  
 \* As frowning at the favours of the world?  
 \* Why are thine eyes fix'd to the sullen earth,  
 \* Gazing on that which seems to dim thy sight?  
 ' What see'st thou there? king Henry's diadem,  
 \* Enchas'd with all the honours of the world?  
 \* If so, gaze on, and grovel on thy face,  
 \* Until thy head be circled with the same.  
 ' Put forth thy hand, reach at the glorious gold:—  
 ' What, is't too short? I'll lengthen it with mine:  
 \* And, having both together heav'd it up,  
 \* We'll both together lift our heads to heaven;

- \* And never more abase our sight so low,  
 \* As to vouchsafe one glance unto the ground.  
 ‘ *Glo.* O Nell, sweet Nell, if thou dost love thy lord,  
 ‘ Banish the canker of ambitious thoughts :  
 \* And may that thought, when I imagine ill  
 \* Against my king and nephew, virtuous Henry,  
 \* Be my last breathing in this mortal world !  
 ‘ My troublous dream this night doth make me sad.  
*Duch.* What dream’d my lord ? tell me, and I’ll requite  
 ‘ With the sweet rehearsal of my morning’s dream. [it  
 ‘ *Glo.* Methought, this staff, mine office-badge in court,  
 ‘ Was broke in twain ; by whom, I have forgot,  
 ‘ But, as I think, it was by the cardinal ;  
 ‘ And, on the pieces of the broken wand  
 ‘ Were plac’d the heads of Edmond duke of Somerset,  
 ‘ And William de la Poole first duke of Suffolk.  
 ‘ This was my dream ; what it doth bode, God knows,  
 ‘ *Duch.* Tut, this was nothing but an argument,  
 That he that breaks a stick of Gloster’s grove,  
 ‘ Shall lose his head for his presumption.  
 ‘ But list to me, my Humphrey, my sweet duke :  
 ‘ Methought, I sat in seat of majesty,  
 ‘ In the cathedral church of Westminster,  
 ‘ And in that chair where kings and queens are crown’d ;  
 ‘ Where Henry, and dame Margaret, kneel’d to me,  
 ‘ And on my head did set the diadem.  
 ‘ *Glo.* Nay, Eleanor, then must I chide outright :  
 \* Presumptuous dame, ill-nurtur’d Eleanor !<sup>h</sup>  
 Art thou not second woman in the realm :  
 And the protector’s wife, belov’d of him ?  
 \* Hast thou not worldly pleasure at command,  
 \* Above the reach or compass of thy thought ?  
 And wilt thou still be hammering treachery,  
 \* To tumble down thy husband and thyself,  
 \* From top of honour to disgrace’s feet ?  
 Away from me, and let me hear no more.  
 ‘ *Duch.* What, what, my lord ! are you so cholerick  
 ‘ With Eleanor, for telling but her dream ?

<sup>h</sup> — ill-nurtur’d—] i. e. Ill-educated.

‘ Next time, I’ll keep my dreams unto myself,  
 ‘ And not be check’d.  
 ‘ *Glo.* Nay, be not angry, I am pleas’d again.

*Enter a Messenger.*

‘ *Mes.* My lord protector, ’tis his highness’ pleasure,  
 ‘ You do prepare to ride unto St. Alban’s,  
 ‘ Whereas<sup>i</sup> the king and queen do mean to hawk.

*Glo.* I go—Come, Nell, thou wilt ride with us?

‘ *Duch.* Yes, good my lord, I’ll follow presently.

[*Exeunt GLOSTER and Messenger.*

‘ Follow I must, I cannot go before,  
 \* While Gloster bears this base and humble mind.  
 \* Were I a man, a duke, and next of blood,  
 \* I would remove these tedious stumbling-blocks,  
 \* And smooth my way upon their headless necks:  
 \* And, being a woman, I will not be slack  
 \* To play my part in fortune’s pageant.  
 ‘ Where are you there? sir John!<sup>j</sup> nay, fear not, man,  
 ‘ We are alone; here’s none but thee, and I.

*Enter HUME.*

*Hume.* Jesu preserve your royal majesty!

‘ *Duch.* What say’st thou, majesty! I am but grace.

*Hume.* But, by the grace of God, and Hume’s advice,  
 ‘ Your grace’s title shall be multiplied.

‘ *Duch.* What say’st thou, man? hast thou as yet con-  
 ‘ With Margery Jourdain, the cunning witch: [ferr’d  
 ‘ And Roger Bolingbroke, the conjurer?  
 ‘ And will they undertake to do me good?

‘ *Hume.* This they have promised,—to show your high-  
 ‘ A spirit rais’d from depth of under ground, [ness  
 ‘ That shall make answer to such questions,  
 ‘ As by your grace shall be propounded him.

‘ *Duch.* It is enough; I’ll think upon the questions:  
 ‘ When from Saint Alban’s we do make return,

<sup>i</sup> Whereas—] *Whereas* is the same as *where*; and seems to be brought into use only on account of its being a dissyllable.—STEEVENS.

<sup>j</sup> — Sir John!] A title frequently bestowed on the clergy. See notes to the *Merry Wives of Windsor*, act 1. sc. 1.

- ‘ We’ll see these things effected to the full.  
 ‘ Here, Hume, take this reward ; make merry, man,  
 ‘ With thy confederates in this weighty cause.
- [*Exit* Duchess.]
- \* *Hume.* Hume must make merry with the duchess’  
 gold ;  
 ‘ Marry, and shall. But how now, sir John Hume ?  
 ‘ Seal up your lips, and give no words but—mum !  
 ‘ The business asketh silent secrecy.  
 \* Dame Eleanor gives gold, to bring the witch :  
 \* Gold cannot come amiss, were she a devil.  
 ‘ Yet have I gold, flies from another coast :  
 ‘ I dare not say, from the rich cardinal,  
 ‘ And from the great and new-made duke of Suffolk ;  
 ‘ Yet I do find it so : for, to be plain,  
 ‘ They, knowing dame Eleanor’s aspiring humour,  
 ‘ Have hired me to undermine the duchess,  
 ‘ And buz these conjurations in her brain.  
 \* They say, A crafty knave does need no broker ;<sup>k</sup>  
 \* Yet am I Suffolk and the cardinal’s broker.  
 \* Hume, if you take not heed, you shall go near  
 \* To call them both—a pair of crafty knaves.  
 \* Well, so it stands ; And thus, I fear, at last,  
 \* Hume’s knavery will be the duchess’ wreck ;  
 \* And her attainure will be Humphrey’s fall :  
 \* Sort how it will,<sup>l</sup> I shall have gold for all.
- [*Exit.*]

## SCENE III.

*The same. A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter* PETER, *and others, with Petitions.*

- ‘ 1 *Pet.* My masters, let’s stand close ; my lord pro-  
 ‘ tector will come this way by and by, and then we may  
 ‘ deliver our supplications in the quill.<sup>m</sup>  
 ‘ 2 *Pet.* Marry, the Lord protect him, for he’s a good  
 ‘ man ! Jesu bless him !

<sup>k</sup> — *A crafty knave does need no broker ;*] This is a proverbial expression, meaning, *A crafty knave needs no hands but his own.*

<sup>l</sup> *Sort how it will,*] Let the issue be what it will.—*JOHNSON.*

<sup>m</sup> — *in the quill.*] In form and order like a quilted ruff.—*NARES’ Glossary.*

*Enter* SUFFOLK, and Queen MARGARET.

\* 1 *Pet.* Here 'a comes, methinks, and the queen with  
\*him : I'll be the first, sure.

' 2 *Pet.* Come back, fool ; this is the duke of Suffolk,  
' and not my lord protector.

' *Suf.* How now, fellow ? would'st any thing with me ?

' 1 *Pet.* I pray, my lord, pardon me ! I took ye for my  
' lord protector.

' *Q. Mar.* [reading the superscription.] *To my lord*  
' *protector !* are your supplications to his lordship ? let me  
' see them : What is thine ?

' 1 *Pet.* Mine is, an't please your grace, against John  
' Goodman, my lord cardinal's man, for keeping my house,  
' and lands, and wife, and all, from me.

' *Suf.* Thy wife too ? that is some wrong, indeed.—  
' What's your's ?—What's here ! [reads.] *Against the duke*  
' *of Suffolk, for enclosing the commons of Melford.*—How  
' now, sir knave ?

' 2 *Pet.* Alas, sir, I am but a poor petitioner of our  
' whole township.

' *Peter.* [presenting his petition.] Against my master,  
' Thomas Horner, for saying, That the duke of York was  
' rightful heir to the crown.

' *Q. Mar.* What say'st thou ? Did the duke of York  
' say, he was rightful heir to the crown ?

' *Peter.* That my master was ? No, forsooth : my  
' master said, That he was ; and that the king was an  
' usurper.

' *Suf.* Who is there ? [*Enter* Servants.]—Take this  
' fellow in, and send for his master with a pursuivant  
' presently :—we'll hear more of your matter before the  
' king. [*Exeunt* Servants, with PETER.]

' *Q. Mar.* And as for you, that love to be protected  
' Under the wings of our protector's grace,  
' Begin your suits anew, and sue to him.

[*Tears the petition.*]

' Away, base cullions !—Suffolk, let them go.

\* *All.* Come, let's be gone. [*Exeunt* Petitioners.]

\* *Q. Mar.* My lord of Suffolk, say, is this the guise,

- \* Is this the fashion in the court of England ?
- \* Is this the government of Britain's isle,
- \* And this the royalty of Albion's king ?
- \* What, shall king Henry be a pupil still,
- \* Under the surly Gloster's governance ?
- \* Am I a queen in title and in style,
- \* And must be made a subject to a duke ?
- ‘ I tell thee, Poole, when in the city Tours
- ‘ Thou ran'st a tilt in honour of my love,
- ‘ And stol'st away the ladies' hearts of France ;
- ‘ I thought king Henry had resembled thee,
- ‘ In courage, courtship, and proportion :
- ‘ But all his mind is bent to holiness,
- \* To number *Ave-Maries* on his beads :
- \* His champions are—the prophets and apostles ;
- \* His weapons, holy saws of sacred writ :
- \* His study is his tilt-yard, and his loves
- \* Are brazen images of canoniz'd saints.
- \* I would, the college of cardinals
- \* Would choose him pope, and carry him to Rome,
- \* And set the triple crown upon his head ;
- \* That were a state fit for his holiness.

‘ *Suf.* Madam, be patient : as I was cause  
 ‘ Your highness came to England, so will I  
 ‘ In England work your grace's full content.

Q. *Mar.* Beside the haught protector, have we  
 Beaufort,

- \* The imperious churchman ; Somerset, Buckingham,
- \* And grumbling York : and not the least of these,
- \* But can do more in England than the king.

\* *Suf.* And he of these, that can do most of all,  
 \* Cannot do more in England than the Nevils :  
 \* Salisbury, and Warwick, are no simple peers.

‘ Q. *Mar.* Not all these lords do vex me half so much,  
 ‘ As that proud dame, the lord protector's wife.  
 ‘ She sweeps it through the court with troops of ladies,  
 ‘ More like an empress than duke Humphrey's wife ;  
 Strangers in court do take her for the queen :  
 \* She bears a duke's revenues on her back,  
 \* And in her heart she scorns our poverty :

- \* Shall I not live to be aveng'd on her ?  
 \* Contemptuous base-born callat as she is,  
 ' She vaunted 'mongst her minions t'other day,  
 The very train of her worst wearing-gown  
 Was better worth than all my father's lands,  
 \* Till Suffolk gave two dukedoms<sup>n</sup> for his daughter.  
 ' *Suf.* Madam, myself have lim'd a bush for her ;  
 \* And plac'd a quire of such enticing birds,  
 \* That she will light to listen to the lays,  
 \* And never mount to trouble you again.  
 \* So, let her rest : And, madam, list to me ;  
 \* For I am bold to counsel you in this.  
 \* Although we fancy not the cardinal,  
 \* Yet must we join with him, and with the lords,  
 \* Till we have brought duke Humphrey in disgrace.  
 \* As for the duke of York,—this late complaint<sup>o</sup>  
 \* Will make but little for his benefit :  
 \* So, one by one, we'll weed them all at last,  
 \* And you yourself shall steer the happy helm.

*Enter King HENRY, YORK, and SOMERSET, conversing with him ; Duke and Duchess of GLOSTER, Cardinal BEAUFORT, BUCKINGHAM, SALISBURY, and WARWICK.*

- ' *K. Hen.* For my part, noble lords, I care not which ;  
 ' Or Somerset, or York, all's one to me.  
 ' *York.* If York have ill demean'd himself in France,  
 ' Then let him be deny'd<sup>p</sup> the regentship.  
 ' *Som.* If Somerset be unworthy of the place,  
 ' Let York be regent, I will yield to him.  
 ' *War.* Whether your grace be worthy, yea, or no,  
 ' Dispute not that : York is the worthier.  
 ' *Car.* Ambitious Warwick, let thy betters speak.  
*War.* The cardinal's not my better in the field.  
 ' *Buck.* All in this presence are thy betters, Warwick.  
*War.* Warwick may live to be the best of all.

<sup>n</sup> — two dukedoms—] The duchies of Anjou and Maine, which Henry surrendered to Reignier, on his marriage with Margaret.—MALONE.

<sup>o</sup> — this late complaint—] i. e. Of Peter the armourer's man.—JOHNSON.

<sup>p</sup> — deny'd—] Denied.



- \* *Sal.* Peace, son ;—and show some reason, Buck-
- \* Why Somerset should be preferr'd in this. [ingham,
- \* *Q. Mar.* Because the king, forsooth, will have it so.
- ‘ *Glo.* Madam, the king is old enough himself
- ‘ To give his censure ;<sup>a</sup> these are no women’s matters.
- ‘ *Q. Mar.* If he be old enough, what needs your grace
- ‘ To be protector of his excellence ?
- ‘ *Glo.* Madam, I am protector of the realm ;
- ‘ And, at his pleasure, will resign my place.
- ‘ *Suf.* Resign it then, and leave thine insolence.
- ‘ Since thou wert king, (as who is king, but thou ?)
- ‘ The commonwealth hath daily run to wreck :
- \* The Dauphin hath prevail’d beyond the seas ;
- \* And all the peers and nobles of the realm
- \* Have been as bondmen to thy sovereignty.
- \* *Car.* The commons hast thou rack’d ; the clergy’s
- \* Are lank and lean with thy extortions. [bags
- \* *Som.* Thy sumptuous buildings, and thy wife’s attire,
- \* Have cost a mass of publick treasury.
- \* *Buck.* Thy cruelty in execution,
- \* Upon offenders, hath exceeded law,
- \* And left thee to the mercy of the law.
- \* *Q. Mar.* Thy sale of offices, and towns in France,—
- \* If they were known, as the suspect is great,—
- \* Would make thee quickly hop without thy head.
- [*Exit GLOSTER. The Queen drops her Fan.*
- ‘ Give me my fan : What, minion ! can you not ?
- [*Gives the Duchess a box on the ear.*
- ‘ I cry you mercy, madam ; Was it you ?
- ‘ *Duch.* Was’t I ? yea, it was, proud French-woman :
- ‘ Could I come near your beauty with my nails,
- I’d set my ten commandments in your face.
- ‘ *K. Hen.* Sweet aunt, be quiet ; ’twas against her will.
- ‘ *Duch.* Against her will ! Good king, look to’t in time ;
- ‘ She’ll hamper thee, and dandle thee like a baby :
- \* Though in this place most master wear no breeches,
- She shall not strike dame Eleanor unreveng’d.
- [*Exit Duchess.*
- \* *Buck.* Lord cardinal, I will follow Eleanor,

<sup>a</sup> — *his censure ;*] Through all these plays *censure* is used in an indifferent sense, simply for judgment or opinion.—JOHNSON.

- \* And listen after Humphrey, how he proceeds :
- \* She's tickled now: her fume can need no spurs,
- \* She'll gallop fast enough to her destruction.

[Exit BUCKINGHAM.]

*Re-enter GLOSTER.*

- \* *Glo.* Now, lords, my choler being over-blown,
- \* With walking once about the quadrangle,
- \* I come to talk of commonwealth affairs.
- \* As for your spiteful false objections,
- \* Prove them, and I lie open to the law :
- \* But God in mercy so deal with my soul,
- \* As I in duty love my king and country!
- \* But, to the matter that we have in hand :—
- \* I say, my sovereign, York is meetest man
- \* To be your regent in the realm of France.

- \* *Suf.* Before we make election, give me leave
- ‘ To show some reason, of no little force,
- ‘ That York is most unmeet of any man.
- ‘ *York.* I'll tell thee, Suffolk, why I am unmeet.

- ‘ First, For I cannot flatter thee in pride :
- \* Next, If I be appointed for the place,
- \* My lord of Somerset will keep me here,
- \* Without discharge, money, or furniture,
- \* Till France be won into the Dauphin's hands.
- \* Last time, I danc'd attendance on his will,
- \* Till Paris was besieg'd, famish'd, and lost.

- \* *War.* That I can witness; and a fouler fact
- \* Did never traitor in the land commit.

*Suf.* Peace, head-strong Warwick!

*War.* Image of pride, why should I hold my peace?

*Enter Servants of SUFFOLK, bringing in HORNER  
and PETER.*

- Suf.* Because here is a man accus'd of treason :
- Pray God, the duke of York excuse himself!

\* *York.* Doth any one accuse York for a traitor?

\* *K. Hen.* What mean'st thou, Suffolk? tell me: What  
are these?

- ‘ *Suf.* Please it your majesty, this is the man
- ‘ That doth accuse his master of high treason :

‘ His words were these;—that Richard, duke of York,  
Was rightful heir unto the English crown ;

‘ And that your majesty was an usurper.

‘ *K. Hen.* Say, man, were these thy words ?

*Hor.* An’t please your majesty, I never said nor thought  
any such matter : God is my witness, I am falsely accused  
by the villain.

‘ *Pet.* By these ten bones, my lords, [*holding up his  
hands,*] he did speak them to me in the garret one night,  
‘ as we were scouring my lord of York’s armour.

\* *York.* Base dunghill villain, and mechanical,

\* I’ll have thy head for this thy traitor’s speech :—

‘ I do beseech your royal majesty,

‘ Let him have all the rigour of the law.

*Hor.* Alas, my lord, hang me, if ever I spake the words.  
My accuser is my prentice ; and when I did correct him  
for his fault the other day, he did vow upon his knees he  
would be even with me : I have good witness of this ;  
therefore, I beseech your majesty, do not cast away an  
honest man for a villain’s accusation.

*K. Hen.* Uncle, what shall we say to this in law ?

‘ *Glo.* This doom, my lord, if I may judge.

‘ Let Somerset be regent o’er the French,

‘ Because in York this breeds suspicion :

‘ And let these have a day appointed them

‘ For single ‘combat, in convenient place ;

‘ For he hath witness of his servant’s malice :

‘ This is the law, and this duke Humphrey’s doom.

*K. Hen.* Then be it so. My lord of Somerset,  
We make your grace lord regent o’er the French.

*Som.* I humbly thank your royal majesty.

*Hor.* And I accept the combat willingly,

*Pet.* Alas, my lord, I cannot fight : \* for God’s sake,  
\* pity my case ! the spite of man prevaieth against me.

\* O, Lord have mercy upon me ! I shall never be able to

\* fight a blow : O Lord, my heart !

*Glo.* Sirrah, or you must fight, or else be hang’d.

‘ *K. Hen.* Away with them to prison : and the day  
‘ Of combat shall be the last of the next month.—

\* Come, Somerset, we’ll see thee sent away. [*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE IV.

*The same. The Duke of Gloster's Garden.*

*Enter* MARGERY JOURDAIN, HUME, SOUTHWELL,  
and BOLINGBROKE.

\* *Hume.* Come, my masters: the duchess, I tell you,  
\* expects performance of your promises.

\* *Boling.* Master Hume, we are therefore provided:  
\* Will her ladyship behold and hear our exorcisms?<sup>r</sup>

\* *Hume.* Ay; What else? fear you not her courage.

\* *Boling.* I have heard her reported to be a woman of  
\* an invincible spirit: But it shall be convenient, master  
\* Hume, that you be by her aloft, while we be busy below;  
\* and so, I pray you, go in God's name, and leave us.  
\* [*Exit* HUME.] ' Mother Jourdain, be you prostrate, and  
\* grovel on the earth:—\* John Southwell, read you; and  
\* let us to our work.

*Enter* Duchess, *above.*

\* *Duch.* Well said, my masters; and welcome all,  
\* To this geer; the sooner the better.

\* *Boling.* Patience, good lady; wizards know their  
times:

Deep night, dark night, the silent of the night,  
' The time of night when Troy was set on fire;  
' The time when screech-owls cry, and ban-dogs<sup>s</sup> howl,  
' And spirits walk, and ghosts break up their graves,  
' That time best fits the work we have in hand.  
' Madam, sit you, and fear not; whom we raise,  
' We will make fast within a hallow'd verge.

[*Here they perform the Ceremonies appertaining, and make  
the Circle; Bolingbroke, or Southwell, reads, Conjuro  
te, &c. It thunders and lightens terribly; then the  
Spirit riseth.*

<sup>r</sup> — *our exorcisms?*] The word *exorcise*, and its derivatives, are used by Shakspeare in an uncommon sense. In all other writers it means to *lay spirits*, but in these plays it invariably means to *raise them*.—M. MASON.

<sup>s</sup> — *ban-dogs*.—] A correspondent in the supplement to *The Gentleman's Magazine*, for 1789, who signs himself D. T. says, "Shakspeare's *ban-dog* is simply a *village-dog* or *mastiff*, which was formerly called a *band-dog*, per synecopen, *bandog*."—STEVENS. Cole, in his *Dict.* 1679, renders *ban-dog*, *canis catenatus*.—MALONE.

\* *Spir.* Adsum,

\* *M. Jourd.* Asmath,

\* By the eternal God, whose name and power

\* Thou tremblest at, answer that I shall ask;

\* For, till thou speak, thou shalt not pass from hence.

\* *Spir.* Ask what thou wilt; That I had said and done!<sup>1</sup>

Boling. *First, of the king. What shall of him become?*

[Reading out of a Paper.

*Spir.* The duke yet lives, that Henry shall depose;

But him outlive, and die a violent death.

[As the Spirit speaks, SOUTHWELL writes the answer.

Boling. *What fait awaits the duke of Suffolk?*

*Spir.* By water shall he die, and take his end.

Boling. *What shall befall the duke of Somerset?*

*Spir.* Let him shun castles;

Safer shall he be upon the sandy plains,

Than where castles mounted stand.

‘ Have done, for more I hardly can endure.

*Boling.* Descend to darkness, and the burning lake:

‘ False fiend, avoid!

[Thunder and lightning. Spirit descends.

*Enter YORK and BUCKINGHAM, hastily, with their Guards, and others.*

‘ *York.* Lay hands upon these traitors, and their trash.

‘ Beldame, I think, we watch’d you at an inch.—

‘ What, madam, are you there? the king and common-weal.

‘ Are deeply indebted for this piece of pains;

‘ My lord protector will, I doubt not,

‘ See you well guerdon’d<sup>2</sup> for these good deserts.

\* *Duch.* Not half so bad as thine to England’s king,

\* Injurious duke; that threat’st where is no cause.

\* *Buck.* True, madam, none at all. What call you this?

[Shewing her the Papers.

<sup>1</sup> — That I had said and done!] It was anciently believed that spirits, who were raised by incantations, remained above ground, and answered questions with reluctance. See both Lucan and Statius.—STEEVENS.

— guerdon’d—] i. e. Rewarded.

‘ Away with them ; let them be clapp’d up close,  
 ‘ And kept asunder :—You, madam, shall with us :—  
 ‘ Stafford, take her to thee.—

[*Exit Duchess, from above.*

‘ We’ll see your trinkets here all forth-coming ;

‘ All.—Away !

[*Exeunt Guards, with SOUTH. BOLING. &c.*

\* *York.* Lord Buckingham, methinks, you watch’d her  
 well :

\* A pretty plot, well chosen to build upon !

Now, pray, my lord, let’s see the devil’s writ.

What have we here ?

[*Reads.*

*The duke yet lives that Henry shall depose.*

*But him outlive, and die a violent death.*

\* Why, this is just,

\* *Aio te, Æacida, Romanos vincere posse.*

Well, to the rest :

*Tell me, what fate awaits the duke of Suffolk ?*

*By water shall he die, and take his end.—*

*What shall betide the duke of Somerset ?*

*Let him shun castles ;*

*Safer shall he be upon the sandy plains,*

*Than where castles mounted stand.*

\* Come, come, my lords ;

\* These oracles are hardly attain’d,

\* And hardly understood.

‘ The king is now in progress toward Saint Alban’s,

‘ With him, the husband of this lovely lady :

‘ Thither go these news, as fast as horse can carry them ;

‘ A sorry breakfast for my lord protector.

‘ *Buck.* Your grace shall give me leave, my lord of York,

‘ To be the post, in hope of his reward.

‘ *York.* At your pleasure, my good lord.—Who’s within  
 there, ho !

*Enter a Servant.*

‘ Invite my lords of Salisbury, and Warwick,

‘ To sup with me to-morrow night.—Away ! [*Exeunt.*

## ACT II.

## SCENE I. Saint Alban's.

*Enter* King HENRY, Queen MARGARET, GLOSTER, Cardinal, and SUFFOLK, with Falconers *hollaing*.

- ‘ Q. Mar. Believe me, lords, for flying at the brook.<sup>x</sup>  
 ‘ I saw not better sport these seven years’ day :  
 ‘ Yet, by your leave, the wind was very high ;  
 And, ten to one, old Joan had not gone out.  
 ‘ K. Hen. But what a point, my lord, your falcon made,  
 ‘ And what a pitch she flew above the rest !—  
 ‘ To see how God in all his creatures works !  
 \* Yea, man and birds, are fain<sup>y</sup> of climbing high.  
 Suf. No marvel, an it like your majesty,  
 My lord protector’s hawks do tower so well ;  
 They know, their master loves to be aloft,  
 \* And bears his thoughts above his falcon’s pitch.  
 ‘ Glo. My lord, ’tis but a base ignoble mind  
 ‘ That mounts no higher than a bird can soar.  
 ‘ Car. I thought as much ; he’d be above the clouds.  
 ‘ Glo. Ay, my lord cardinal ; How think you by that ?  
 Were it not good, your grace could fly to heaven ?  
 \* K. Hen. The treasury of everlasting joy !  
 ‘ Car. Thy heaven is on earth ; thine eyes and thoughts  
 ‘ Beat on a crown,<sup>z</sup> the treasure of the heart ;  
 Pernicious protector, dangerous peer,  
 That smooth’st it so with king and commonweal !  
 ‘ Glo. What, cardinal, is your priesthood grown pe-  
 rémptory ?  
 \* *Tantane animis cælestibus iræ ?*  
 ‘ Churchmen so hot ? good uncle, hide such malice ;  
 ‘ With such holiness can you do it ?<sup>a</sup>

<sup>x</sup> — *for flying at the brook,*] The falconer’s term for hawking at water-fowl.  
 —JOHNSON.

<sup>y</sup> — *fain*—] *Fain*, in this place, signifies *fond*.—STEEVENS.

<sup>z</sup> *Beat on a crown,*]—is equivalent to an expression which is still used to *hammer*, i. e. to work in the mind.—STEEVENS.

<sup>a</sup> — *can you do it?*] The old play, quarto, 1600, reads, “ Good uncle can you dote ?—MALONE.

‘ *Suf.* No malice, sir ; no more than well becomes  
‘ So good a quarrel, and so bad a peer.

*Glo.* As who, my lord ?

*Suf.* Why, as you, my lord ;  
An’t like your lordly lord-protectorship.

*Glo.* Why, Suffolk, England knows thine insolence.

*Q. Mar.* And thy ambition, Gloster.

*K. Hen.* I pr’ythee, peace,  
Good queen : and whet not on these furious peers,  
For blessed are the peacemakers on earth.

*Car.* Let me be blessed for the peace I make,  
Against this proud protector, with my sword !

*Glo.* ‘Faith, holy uncle, ’would ’twere come to that !

[*Aside to the Cardinal.*

‘ *Car.* Marry, when thou dar’st. [*Aside.*

‘ *Glo.* Make up no factious numbers for the matter,  
‘ In thine own person answer thy abuse. [*Aside.*

‘ *Car.* Ay, where thou dar’st not peep : an if thou  
dar’st,

‘ This evening, on the east side of the grove. [*Aside.*

‘ *K. Hen.* How now, my lords ?

‘ *Car.* Believe me, cousin Gloster,  
‘ Had not your man put up the fowl so suddenly,  
‘ We had had more sport.—Come with thy two-hand  
sword. [*Aside to GLO.*

*Glo.* True, uncle.

*Car.* Are you advis’d ?—the east side of the grove ?

*Glo.* Cardinal, I am with you. [*Aside.*

*K. Hen.* Why, how now, uncle Gloster !

‘ *Glo.* Talking of hawking : nothing else, my lord.—  
Now, by God’s mother, priest, I’ll shave your crown for  
this,

\* Or all my fence<sup>b</sup> shall fail. [*Aside.*

\* *Car. Medice teipsum ;* } [*Aside.*  
‘ Protector, see to’t well, protect yourself. }

*K. Hen.* The winds grow high ; so do your stomachs,  
\* How irksome is this musick to my heart ! [*lords.*

\* When such strings jar, what hope of harmony ?

\* I pray, my lords, let me compound this strife.

<sup>b</sup> — fence—] i. e. *The art of defence.*



*Enter an Inhabitant of Saint Alban's, crying,*  
A miracle!<sup>c</sup>

*Glo.* What means this noise?

Fellow, what miracle dost thou proclaim?

*Inhab.* A miracle! a miracle!

*Suf.* Come to the king, and tell him what miracle.

*Inhab.* Forsooth, a blind man at Saint Alban's shrine,  
Within this half hour, hath receiv'd his sight;  
A man, that ne'er saw in his life before.

' *K. Hen.* Now, God be prais'd! that to believing souls  
' Gives light in darkness, comfort in despair!

*Enter the Mayor of Saint Alban's, and his Brethren; and*  
*SIMPSON, borne between two Persons in a Chair; his*  
*Wife and a great Multitude following.*

\* *Car.* Here comes the townsmen on procession,

\* To present your highness with the man.

\* *K. Hen.* Great is his comfort in this earthly vale,

\* Although by his sight his sin be multiplied.

\* *Glo.* Stand by, my masters, bring him near the king,

\* His highness' pleasure is to talk with him.

\* *K. Hen.* Good fellow, tell us here the circumstance,

\* That we for thee may glorify the Lord.

What, hast thou been long blind, and now restor'd?

*Simp.* Born blind, an't please your grace.

*Wife.* Ay, indeed, was he.

*Suf.* What woman is this?

*Wife.* His wife, an't like your worship.

*Glo.* Had'st thou been his mother, thou could'st have  
better told.

*K. Hen.* Where wert thou born?

*Simp.* At Berwick in the north, an't like your grace.

' *K. Hen.* Poor soul! God's goodness hath been great  
to thee:

' Let never day nor night unhallow'd pass,

' But still remember what the Lord hath done.

<sup>c</sup> — *crying, A miracle!*] This scene is founded on a story which Sir Thomas More has related, and which he says was communicated to him by his father. The impostor's name is not mentioned, but he was detected by Humphrey duke of Gloster, and in the manner here represented. See his Works, p. 134, edit. 1557.—MALONE.

- \* *Q. Mar.* Tell me, good fellow, cam'st thou here by  
 \* Or of devotion, to this holy shrine? [chance,  
 ' *Simp.* God knows, of pure devotion: being call'd  
 ' A hundred times, and oft'ner, in my sleep  
 ' By good Saint Alban; who said,—*Simpcox, come;*  
 ' *Come, offer at my shrine, and I will help thee.*  
 \* *Wife.* Most true, forsooth; and many time and oft  
 \* Myself have heard a voice to call him so.  
*Car.* What, art thou lame?  
*Simp.* Ay, God Almighty help me!  
*Suf.* How cam'st thou so?  
*Simp.* A fall off of a tree.  
*Wife.* A plum-tree, master.  
*Glo.* How long hast thou been blind?  
*Simp.* O, born so, master.  
*Glo.* What, and would'st climb a tree?  
*Simp.* But that in all my life, when I was a youth.  
 \* *Wife.* Too true; and bought his climbing very dear.  
 \* *Glo.* 'Mass, thou lov'dst plums well, that would'st  
 venture so.  
 ' *Simp.* Alas, good master, my wife desir'd some  
 damsons,  
 ' And made me climb, with danger of my life.  
 \* *Glo.* A subtle knave! but yet it shall not serve.—  
 ' Let me see thine eyes:—wink now; now open them:—  
 ' In my opinion, yet thou see'st not well.  
 ' *Simp.* Yes, master, clear as day; I thank God, and  
 Saint Alban.  
*Glo.* Say'st thou me so? What colour is this cloak of?  
*Simp.* Red, master; red as blood.  
*Glo.* Why, that's well said: What colour is my gown  
 of?  
*Simp.* Black, forsooth; coal-black, as jet.  
*K. Hen.* Why then, thou know'st what colour jet is of?  
*Suf.* And yet, I think, jet did he never see.  
*Glo.* But cloaks, and gowns, before this day, a many.  
 \* *Wife.* Never, before this day, in all his life.  
*Glo.* Tell me, sirrah, what's my name?  
*Simp.* Alas, master, I know not.  
*Glo.* What's his name?

*Simp.* I know not.

*Glo.* Nor his?

*Simp.* No, indeed, master.

*Glo.* What's thine own name?

*Simp.* Saunder Simpcox, an if it please you, master.

*Glo.* Then, Saunder, sit thou there, the lying'st knave  
In Christendom. If thou hadst been born blind,  
Thou might'st as well have known our names, as thus  
To name the several colours we do wear.  
Sight may distinguish of colours; but suddenly  
To nominate them all, 's impossible.—

My lords, Saint Alban here hath done a miracle;  
And would ye not think that cunning to be great,  
That could restore this cripple to his legs again?

*Simp.* O, master, that you could!

*Glo.* My masters of Saint Alban's, have you not beadles  
in your town, and things called whips?

*May.* Yes, my lord, if it please your grace.

*Glo.* Then send for one presently.

*May.* Sirrah, go fetch the beadle hither straight.

[*Exit an Attendant.*]

*Glo.* Now fetch me a stool hither by and by. [*A stool  
brought out.*] Now, sirrah, if you mean to save yourself  
from whipping, leap me over this stool, and run away.

*Simp.* Alas, master, I am not able to stand alone; You  
go about to torture me in vain.

*Re-enter Attendant, with the Beadle.*

*Glo.* Well, sir, we must have you find your legs.  
Sirrah beadle, whip him till he leap over that same stool.

*Bead.* I will, my lord.—Come on, sirrah; off with your  
doublet quickly.

*Simp.* Alas, master, what shall I do? I am not able  
to stand.

[*After the Beadle hath hit him once, he leaps over the  
Stool, and runs away; and the People follow, and  
cry, A miracle!*]

\* *K. Hen.* O God, see'st thou this, and bear'st so long?

\* *Q. Mar.* It made me laugh, to see the villain run.

\* *Glo.* Follow the knave; and take this drab away.

\* *Wife.* Alas, sir, we did it for pure need.

*Glo.* Let them be whipped through every market town, till they come to Berwick, whence they came.

[*Exeunt* Mayor, Beadle, Wife, &c.]

‘ *Car.* Duke Humphrey has done a miracle to-day.

‘ *Suf.* True; made the lame to leap, and fly away.

‘ *Glo.* But you have done more miracles than I:

‘ You made, in a day, my lord, whole towns to fly.

*Enter* BUCKINGHAM.

‘ *K. Hen.* What tidings with our cousin Buckingham?

‘ *Buck.* Such as my heart doth tremble to unfold.

‘ A sort of naughty persons, lewdly bent,<sup>d</sup>—

‘ Under the countenance and confederacy

‘ Of lady Eleanor, the protector’s wife,

‘ The ringleader and head of all this rout,—

‘ Have practis’d dangerously against your state,

‘ Dealing with witches, and with conjurers:

‘ Whom we have apprehended in the fact;

‘ Raising up wicked spirits from under ground,

‘ Demanding of king Henry’s life and death,

‘ And other of your highness’ privy council,

‘ As more at large your grace shall understand.

‘ *Car.* And so, my lord protector, by this means

‘ Your lady is forthcoming<sup>e</sup> yet at London.

‘ This news, I think, hath turn’d your weapon’s edge;

‘ ’Tis like, my lord, you will not keep your hour.

[*Aside to* GLOSTER.]

‘ *Glo.* Ambitious churchman, leave to afflict my heart!

\* Sorrow and grief have vanquish’d all my powers:

\* And vanquish’d as I am, I yield to thee,

\* Or to the meanest groom.

\* *K. Hen.* O God, what mischiefs work the wicked ones;

\* Heaping confusion on their own heads thereby!

\* *Q. Mar.* Gloster, see here the tainture of thy nest:

\* And, look, thyself be faultless, thou wert best.

<sup>d.</sup> A sort—lewdly bent,—] *Lewdly*, in this place, and in some others, does not signify wantonly, but wickedly.—STEEVENS. A sort is a company.—MALONE.

• *Your lady is forthcoming*—] That is, Your lady is in custody.—JOHNSON.

- ‘ *Glo.* Madam, for myself, to heaven I do appeal,  
 ‘ How I have lov’d my king, and commonweal:  
 ‘ And for my wife, I know not how it stands;  
 ‘ Sorry am I to hear what I have heard;  
 ‘ Noble she is; but if she have forgot  
 ‘ Honour and virtue, and convers’d with such  
 ‘ As, like to pitch, defile nobility,  
 ‘ I banish her my bed, and company;  
 ‘ And give her, as a prey, to law and shame,  
 ‘ That hath dishonour’d Gloster’s honest name.  
 ‘ *K. Hen.* Well, for this night, we will repose us here:  
 ‘ To-morrow, toward London, back again,  
 ‘ To look into this business thoroughly,  
 ‘ And call these foul offenders to their answers;  
 ‘ And poise the cause in justice’ equal scales,  
 ‘ Whose beam stands sure, whose rightful cause prevails.  
 [Flourish. *Exeunt.*

## SCENE II.

London. *The Duke of York’s Garden.*

*Enter YORK, SALISBURY, and WARWICK.*

- ‘ *York.* Now, my good lords of Salisbury and Warwick,  
 ‘ Our simple supper ended, give me leave,  
 ‘ In this close walk, to satisfy myself,  
 ‘ In craving your opinion of my title,  
 ‘ Which is infallible,<sup>f</sup> to England’s crown.

\* *Sal.* My lord, I long to hear it at full.

*War.* Sweet York, begin: and if thy claim be good,  
 The Nevils are thy subjects to command.

*York.* Then thus:

- ‘ Edward the third, my lords, had seven sons;  
 ‘ The first, Edward the Black Prince, prince of Wales;  
 ‘ The second, William of Hatfield; and the third,  
 ‘ Lionel, duke of Clarence; next to whom  
 ‘ Was John of Gaunt, the duke of Lancaster:  
 ‘ The fifth, was Edmond Langley, duke of York;

<sup>f</sup> *Which is infallible,*] i. e. Their opinion is infallible.

- ‘ The sixth, was Thomas of Woodstock, duke of Gloster ;  
 ‘ William of Windsor was the seventh, and last.  
 ‘ Edward, the Black Prince, died before his father ;  
 ‘ And left behind him Richard, his only son,  
 ‘ Who, after Edward the third’s death, reigned as king ;  
 ‘ Till Henry Bolingbroke, duke of Lancaster,  
 ‘ The eldest son and heir of John of Gaunt,  
 ‘ Crown’d by the name of Henry the fourth,  
 ‘ Seiz’d on the realm ; depos’d the rightful king ;  
 ‘ Sent his poor queen to France, from whence she came,  
 ‘ And him to Pomfret ; where, as all you know,  
 ‘ Harmless Richard was murder’d traitorously.  
 \* *War.* Father, the duke hath told the truth ;  
 \* Thus got the house of Lancaster the crown.  
 \* *York.* Which now they hold by force, and not by  
     right ;  
 \* For Richard, the first son’s heir being dead,  
 \* The issue of the next son should have reign’d.  
 \* *Sal.* But William of Hatfield died without an heir.  
 \* *York.* The third son, duke of Clarence, (from whose  
     line  
 \* I claim the crown,) had issue—Philippe, a daughter,  
 \* Who married Edmund Mortimer, earl of March,  
 \* Edmund had issue—Roger, earl of March :  
 \* Roger had issue—Edmund, Anne, and Eleanor.  
 ‘ *Sal.* This Edmund,<sup>g</sup> in the reign of Bolingbroke,  
 ‘ As I have read, laid claim unto the crown ;  
 ‘ And, but for Owen Glendower, had been king,  
 ‘ Who kept him in captivity, till he died.  
 \* But, to the rest.  
 ‘ *York.* His eldest sister, Anne,  
 ‘ My mother, being heir unto the crown,  
 ‘ Married Richard, earl of Cambridge ; who was son  
 ‘ To Edmond Langley, Edward the third’s fifth son.  
 ‘ By her I claim the kingdom : she was heir

<sup>g</sup> *This Edmund, &c.]* In act ii. sc. 5. of the last play, York, to whom this is spoken, is present at the death of Edmund Mortimer in prison ; and the reader will recollect him to have been married to Owen Glendower’s daughter, in the First Part of King Henry IV. But the dramatic poets have been strangely mistaken respecting him. He was not “kept in captivity till he died,” for he appears to have been at liberty during the whole reign of Henry V. and to have been trusted and employed by him.—RITSON and MALONE.

' To Roger, earl of March ; who was the son  
 ' Of Edmund Mortimer ; who married Philippe,  
 ' Sole daughter unto Lionel, duke of Clarence :  
 ' So, if the issue of the elder son  
 ' Succeed before the younger, I am king.  
 ' *War.* What plain proceedings are more plain than  
     this ?

' Henry doth claim the crown from John of Gaunt,  
 ' The fourth son ; York claims it from the third.  
 ' Till Lionel's issue fails, his should not reign :  
 ' It fails not yet ; but flourishes in thee,  
 ' And in thy sons, fair slips of such a stock.—  
 ' Then, father Salisbury, kneel we both together ;  
 ' And, in this private plot,<sup>h</sup> be we the first,  
 ' That shall salute our rightful sovereign  
 ' With honour of his birthright to the crown.

*Both.* Long live our sovereign Richard, England's  
     king !

' *York.* We thank you, lords. But I am not your king  
 ' Till I be crown'd ; and that my sword be stain'd  
 ' With heart-blood of the house of Lancaster ;  
 \* And that's not suddenly to be perform'd ;  
 \* But with advice, and silent secrecy.  
 \* Do you, as I do, in these dangerous days,  
 \* Wink at the duke of Suffolk's insolence,  
 \* At Beaufort's pride, at Somerset's ambition,  
 \* At Buckingham, and all the crew of them,  
 \* Till they have snar'd the shepherd of the flock,  
 \* That virtuous prince, the good duke Humphrey :  
 \* 'Tis that they seek ; and they, in seeking that,  
 \* Shall find their deaths, if York can prophecy.

\* *Sal.* My lord, break we off ; we know your mind at  
     full.

' *War.* My heart assures me, that the earl of Warwick  
 ' Shall one day make the duke of York a king.

' *York.* And, Nevil, this I do assure myself,—  
 ' Richard shall live to make the earl of Warwick  
 ' The greatest man in England, but the king. [ *Exeunt.* ]

<sup>h</sup> — private plot,] Sequestered spot of ground.—MALONE.

## SCENE III.

*The same. A Hall of Justice.*

*Trumpets sounded. Enter King HENRY, Queen MARGARET, GLOSTER, YORK, SUFFOLK, and SALISBURY; the Duchess of GLOSTER, MARGERY JOURDAIN, SOUTHWELL, HUME, and BOLINGBROKE, under guard.*

‘ *K. Hen.* Stand forth, dame Eleanor Cobham, Gloster’s wife:

‘ In sight of God, and us, your guilt is great;

‘ Receive the sentence of the law, for sins

‘ Such as by God’s book are adjudg’d to death.—

\* You four, from hence to prison back again;

[*To JOURD. &c.*

\* From thence, unto the place of execution:

\* The witch in Smithfield shall be burn’d to ashes,

\* And you three shall be strangled on the gallows.

‘ You, madam, for you are more nobly born,

‘ Despoiled of your honour in your life,

‘ Shall, after three days’ open penance done,

‘ Live in your country here, in banishment,

‘ With sir John Stanley, in the isle of Man.

‘ *Duch.* Welcome is banishment, welcome were my death.

\* *Glo.* Eleanor, the law, thou seest, hath judged thee;

\* I cannot justify whom the law condemns.—

[*Exeunt the Duchess, and the other Prisoners, guarded.*

‘ Mine eyes are full of tears, my heart of grief.

‘ Ah, Humphrey, this dishonour in thine age

‘ Will bring thy head with sorrow to the ground!—

‘ I beseech your majesty, give me leave to go;

‘ Sorrow would solace, and mine age would ease.<sup>i</sup>

‘ *K. Hen.* Stay, Humphrey duke of Gloster: ere thou go,

‘ Give up thy staff; Henry will to himself

<sup>i</sup> *Sorrow would solace, and mine age would ease.] Would stands here for would have, or requires.*



‘ Protector be : and God shall be my hope,  
 ‘ My stay, my guide, and lantern to my feet ;  
 ‘ And go in peace, Humphrey ; no less belov’d,  
 ‘ Than when thou wert protector to thy king.

\* *Q. Mar.* I see no reason, why a king of years

\* Should be to be protected like a child.—

‘ God and king Henry govern England’s helm :

‘ Give up your staff, sir, and the king his realm.

‘ *Glo.* My staff ?—here, noble Henry, is my staff :

‘ As willingly do I the same resign,

‘ As ere thy father Henry made it mine :

And even as willingly at thy feet I leave it,

As others would ambitiously receive it.

‘ Farewell, good king : when I am dead and gone,

May honourable peace attend thy throne ! [*Exit.*

\* *Q. Mar.* Why, now is Henry king, and Margaret  
 queen ;

\* And Humphrey, duke of Gloster, scarce himself,

\* That bears so shrewd a maim ; two pulls at once,—

\* His lady banish’d, and a limb lopp’d off ;

\* This staff of honour raught :<sup>k</sup>—There let it stand,

‘ Where it best fits to be, in Henry’s hand.

\* *Suf.* Thus droops this lofty pine, and hangs his  
 sprays ;

\* Thus Eleanor’s pride dies in her youngest days.<sup>l</sup>

‘ *York.* Lords, let him go,—Please it your majesty,

‘ This is the day appointed for the combat ;

‘ And ready are the appellant and defendant,

‘ The armourer and his man, to enter the lists,

‘ So please your highness to behold the fight.

\* *Q. Mar.* Ay, good my lord ; for purposely therefore

\* Left I the court, to see this quarrel tried.

‘ *K. Hen.* O’ God’s name, see the lists and all things  
 fit ;

‘ Here let them end it, and God defend the right !

<sup>k</sup> — raught :—] Snatched, reached, attained.—*TODD’S Johnson.*

[*Thus Eleanor’s pride dies in her youngest days.*] This expression has no meaning, if we suppose that the word *her* refers to Eleanor, who certainly was not a young woman. We must therefore suppose that the pronoun *her*, refers to *pride*, and stands for *its* ; a license frequently practised by Shakspeare.—*M. MASON.*

- \* *York*. I never saw a fellow worse bested,<sup>m</sup>  
 \* Or more afraid to fight, than is the appelliant,  
 \* The servant of this armourer, my lords.

*Enter, on one side, HORNER, and his Neighbours, drinking to him so much that he is drunk; and he enters bearing his staff with a sand-bag fastened to it;<sup>n</sup> a drum before him: at the other side, PETER, with a drum and a similar staff; accompanied by Prentices drinking to him.*

1 *Neigh*. Here, neighbour Horner, I drink to you in a cup of sack; And fear not, neighbour, you shall do well enough.

2 *Neigh*. And here, neighbour, here's a cup of charneco.<sup>o</sup>

3 *Neigh*. And here's a pot of good double beer, neighbour: drink, and fear not your man.

*Hor*. Let it come, i'faith, and I'll pledge you all; And a fig for Peter!

1 *Pren*. Here, Peter, I drink to thee; and be not afraid.

2 *Pren*. Be merry, Peter, and fear not thy master: fight for credit of the prentices.

*Peter*. I thank you all: \* drink, and pray for me, \* I pray you; for, I think, I have taken my last \* draught in this world.\*—Here, Robin, an if I die, I give thee my apron; and, Will, thou shalt have my hammer:—and here, Tom, take all the money that I have.—O Lord, bless me, I pray God! for I am never able to deal with my master, he hath learnt so much fence already.

*Sal*. Come, leave your drinking, and fall to blows.—Sirrah, what's thy name?

*Peter*. Peter, forsooth.

*Sal*. Peter! what more?

<sup>m</sup> — *worse bested,*] In a worse plight.—JOHNSON.

<sup>n</sup> — *with a sand-bag fastened to it;*] As, according to the old laws of duels, knights were to fight with the lance and sword; so those of inferior rank fought with an ebon staff or battoon, to the farther end of which was fixed a bag crammed hard with sand.—WARBURTON.

<sup>o</sup> — *a cup of charneco.*] A common name for a sort of sweet wine.—WARBURTON. *Charneco* is the name of a village near Lisbon where this wine was made. See the *European Magazine*, for March, 1794.—STEEVENS.

*Peter.* Thump.

*Sal.* Thump! then see thou thump thy master well.

*Hor.* Masters, I am come hither, as it were, upon my man's instigation, to prove him a knave, and myself an honest man: \* and touching the duke of \* York,—will take my death, I never meant him any ill, nor the king, nor the queen: \* And therefore, Peter, have at thee with a downright blow, as Bevis of Southampton fell upon Ascapart.

\* *York.* Despatch;—this knave's tongue begins to double.<sup>p</sup>

\* Sound trumpets, alarum to the combatants.

[*Alarum.* They fight, and PETER strikes down his Master.

*Hor.* Hold, Peter, hold! I confess, I confess treason.

[*Dies.*

\* *York.* Take away his weapon:—Fellow, thank God, \* and the good wine in thy master's way.

\* *Peter.* O God! have I overcome mine enemies in this presence? O Peter, thou hast prevailed in right!

*K. Hen.* Go, take hence that traitor from our sight; For, by his death, we do perceive his guilt:<sup>q</sup> And God, in justice, hath reveal'd to us The truth and innocence of this poor fellow, Which he had thought to have murder'd wrongfully.— Come, fellow, follow us for thy reward. [Exeunt.

#### SCENE IV.

*The same. A Street.*

*Enter GLOSTER and Servants, in mourning Cloaks.*

\* *Glo.* Thus, sometimes, hath the brightest day a cloud;  
\* And, after summer, evermore succeeds  
\* Barren winter, with his wrathful nipping cold:

<sup>p</sup> — this knave's tongue begins to double.] Shakspeare has deserted his authority, Holinshed, in making the armourer confess treason.—STEVENS.

<sup>q</sup> For, by his death, we do perceive his guilt:] According to the ancient usage of the duel, the vanquished person not only lost his life but his reputation, and his death was always regarded as a certain evidence of his guilt.—BOWLE.

\* So cares and joys abound, as seasons fleet.  
Sirs, what's o'clock?

*Serv.* Ten, my lord.

' *Glo.* Ten is the hour that was appointed me,  
' To watch the coming of my punish'd duchess;  
' Uneath<sup>r</sup> may she endure the flinty streets,  
' To tread them with her tender-feeling feet.  
Sweet Nell, ill can thy noble mind abrook  
The abject people, gazing on thy face,  
With envious<sup>t</sup> looks still laughing at thy shame;  
That erst did follow thy proud chariot wheels,  
When thou didst ride in triumph through the streets.  
\* But, soft! I think, she comes; and I'll prepare  
\* My tear-stain'd eyes to see her miseries.

*Enter the Duchess of GLOSTER, in a white sheet, with papers pinned upon her back, her feet bare, and a taper burning in her hand; Sir JOHN STANLEY, a Sheriff, and Officers.*

*Serv.* So please your grace, we'll take her from the sheriff.

' *Glo.* No, stir not, for your lives; let her pass by.

*Duch.* Come you, my lord, to see my open shame?  
Now thou dost penance too. Look, how they gaze!  
' See, how the giddy multitude do point,  
' And nod their heads, and throw their eyes on thee!  
' Ah, Gloster, hide thee from their hateful looks;  
' And, in thy closet pent up, rue my shame,  
And ban<sup>u</sup> thine enemies, both mine and thine.

*Glo.* Be patient, gentle Nell; forget this grief.

*Duch.* Ah, Gloster, teach me to forget myself:  
For, whilst I think I am thy married wife,  
And thou a prince, protector of this land,  
' Methinks, I should not thus be led along,  
Mail'd up in shame,<sup>x</sup> with papers on my back;

<sup>r</sup> ——— *fleet.*] *Change.*

<sup>s</sup> *Uneath*—] i. e. Scarcely.—*POPE.*

<sup>t</sup> ——— *envious*—] i. e. Malicious.      <sup>u</sup> ——— *ban*—] *Curse.*

<sup>x</sup> *Mail'd up in shame,*] Wrapped up, bundled up in disgrace; alluding to the sheet of penance.—*JOHNSON.*

\* And follow'd with a rabble, that rejoice  
 \* To see my tears, and hear my deep-fet<sup>v</sup> groans.  
 The ruthless flint doth cut my tender feet;  
 And, when I start, the envious people laugh,  
 And bid me be advised how I tread.  
 ' Ah, Humphrey, can I bear this shameful yoke?  
 \* Trow'st thou, that e'er I'll look upon the world;  
 \* Or count them happy, that enjoy the sun?  
 \* No; dark shall be my light, and night my day;  
 \* To think upon my pomp, shall be my hell.  
 Sometime I'll say, I am duke Humphrey's wife;  
 And he a prince, and ruler of the land:  
 Yet so he rul'd, and such a prince he was,  
 As he stood by, whilst I, his forlorn duchess,  
 ' Was made a wonder, and a pointing stock,  
 To every idle rascal follower.  
 But be thou mild, and blush not at my shame;  
 Nor stir at nothing, till the axe of death  
 Hang over thee, as, sure, it shortly will.  
 For Suffolk,—he that can do all in all  
 ' With her, that hateth thee, and hates us all,—  
 And York, and impious Beaufort, that false priest,  
 Have all lim'd bushes to betray thy wings,  
 And, fly thou how thou canst, they'll tangle thee:  
 \* But fear not thou, until thy foot be snar'd,  
 \* Nor never seek prevention of thy foes.  
 \* *Glo.* Ah, Nell, forbear; thou aimest all awry;  
 \* I must offend, before I be attainted:  
 \* And had I twenty times so many foes,  
 \* And each of them had twenty times their power,  
 \* All these could not procure me any scathe,<sup>z</sup>  
 \* So long as I am loyal, true, and crimeless.  
 ' Would'st have me rescue thee from this reproach?  
 ' Why, yet thy scandal were not wip'd away,  
 ' But I in danger for the breach of law.  
 ' Thy greatest help is quiet, gentle Nell:  
 ' I pray thee, sort thy heart to patience;  
 ' These few days' wonder will be quickly worn.

<sup>v</sup> — deep-fet—] i. e. Deep fetched.

<sup>z</sup> — scathe,] i. e. Harm, or mischief.

*Enter a Herald.*

*Her.* I summon your grace to his majesty's parliament, holden at Bury the first of this next month.

*Glo.* And my consent ne'er ask'd herein before!  
This is close dealing.—Well, I will be there.

[*Exit Herald.*

My Nell, I take my leave:—and, master sheriff,  
Let not her penance exceed the king's commission.

' *Sher.* An't please your grace, here my commission  
' And sir John Stanley is appointed now [stays :  
' To take her with him to the isle of Man.

' *Glo.* Must you, sir John, protect my lady here?

' *Stan.* So am I given in charge, may't please your  
grace.

*Glo.* Entreat her not the worse, in that I pray  
You use her well: the world may laugh again:<sup>a</sup>  
And I may live to do you kindness, if  
You do it her. And so, sir John, farewell.

*Duch.* What gone, my lord; and bid me not farewell?

' *Glo.* Witness my tears, I cannot stay to speak.

[*Exeunt GLOSTER and Servants.*

' *Duch.* Art thou gone too? \* All comfort go with  
\* For none abides with me: my joy is—death; [thee!  
\* Death, at whose name I oft have been afeard,  
\* Because I wish'd this world's eternity.—

' Stanley, I pr'ythee, go, and take me hence;

' I care not whither, for I beg no favour,

' Only convey me where thou art commanded.

\* *Stan.* Why, madam, that is to the isle of Man;  
\* There to be used according to your state.

\* *Duch.* That's bad enough, for I am but reproach:  
\* And shall I then be us'd reproachfully?

\* *Stan.* Like to a duchess, and duke Humphrey's lady,  
\* According to that state you shall be used.

' *Duch.* Sheriff, farewell, and better than I fare;  
' Although thou hast been conduct of my shame!<sup>b</sup>

<sup>a</sup> — the world may laugh again:] That is, the world may look again favourably upon me.—JOHNSON.

<sup>b</sup> — conduct—] i. e. Conductor.

- ‘ *Sher.* It is my office ; and, madam, pardon me.  
 ‘ *Duch.* Ay, ay, farewell ; thy office is discharg’d.—  
 ‘ Come, Stanley, shall we go ?  
 ‘ *Stan.* Madam, your penance done, throw off this sheet,  
 ‘ And go we to attire you for our journey.  
 ‘ *Duch.* My shame will not be shifted with my sheet :  
 \* No, it will hang upon my richest robes,  
 \* And show itself, attire me how I can.  
 \* Go, lead the way ; I long to see my prison.<sup>c</sup> [*Exeunt.*

## ACT III.

SCENE I.—*The Abbey at Bury.*

*Enter to the Parliament, King HENRY, Queen MARGARET, Cardinal BEAUFORT, SUFFOLK, YORK, BUCKINGHAM, and others.*

- ‘ *K. Hen.* I muse,<sup>d</sup> my lord of Gloster is not come :  
 ‘ ’Tis not his wont to be the hindmost man,  
 ‘ Whate’er occasion keeps him from us now.  
 ‘ *Q. Mar.* Can you not see ? or will you not observe  
 ‘ The strangeness of his alter’d countenance ?  
 ‘ With what a majesty he bears himself ;  
 ‘ How insolent of late he is become,  
 ‘ How proud, peremptory, and unlike himself ?  
 ‘ We know the time, since he was mild and affable ;  
 ‘ And, if we did but glance a far-off look,  
 ‘ Immediately he was upon his knee,  
 ‘ That all the court admir’d him for submission ;  
 ‘ But meet him now, and, be it in the morn,  
 ‘ When every one will give the time of day,  
 ‘ He knits his brow, and shows an angry eye,  
 ‘ And passeth by with stiff unbowed knee,  
 ‘ Disdaining duty that to us belongs.  
 ‘ Small curs are not regarded, when they grin ;  
 ‘ But great men tremble, when the lion roars ;

<sup>c</sup> — *I long to see my prison.*] This impatience of a high spirit is very natural. It is not so dreadful to be imprisoned, as it is desirable in a state of disgrace to be sheltered from the scorn of gazers.—JOHNSON.

<sup>d</sup> *I muse,*] i. e. *Wonder.*

' And Humphrey is no little man in England.  
 ' First, note, that he is near you in descent ;  
 ' And should you fall, he is the next will mount.  
 ' Me seemeth<sup>e</sup> then, it is no policy,—  
 ' Respecting what a rancorous mind he bears,  
 ' And his advantage following your decease,—  
 ' That he should come about your royal person,  
 ' Or be admitted to your highness' council,  
 ' By flattery hath he won the commons' hearts ;  
 ' And, when he please to make commotion,  
 ' 'Tis to be fear'd, they all will follow him.  
 ' Now 'tis the spring, and weeds are shallow-rooted ;  
 ' Suffer them now, and they'll o'ergrow the garden,  
 ' And choke the herbs for want of husbandry.  
 ' The reverent care, I bear unto my lord,  
 ' Made me collect<sup>f</sup> these dangers in the duke.  
 ' If it be fond,<sup>g</sup> call it a woman's fear ;  
 ' Which fear if better reasons can supplant,  
 ' I will subscribe and say—I wrong'd the duke.  
 ' My lord of Suffolk,—Buckingham,—and York,—  
 ' Reprove my allegation, if you can ;  
 ' Or else conclude my words effectual.

' *Suf.* Well hath your highness seen into this duke ;  
 ' And, had I first been put to speak my mind,  
 I think, I should have told your grace's tale.<sup>h</sup>

\* The duchess, by his subornation,  
 \* Upon my life, began her devilish practices :  
 \* Or if he were not privy to those faults,  
 \* Yet, by reputed of his high descent,<sup>i</sup>  
 \* (As next the king, he was successive heir,)  
 \* And such high vaunts of his nobility,  
 \* Did instigate the bedlam brain-sick duchess,  
 \* By wicked means to frame our sovereign's fall.

<sup>e</sup> *Me seemeth*—] That is, it seemeth to me, a word more grammatical than *methinks*, which has, I know not how, intruded into its place.—JOHNSON.

<sup>f</sup> — *collect*—] i. e. *Assemble by observation*.

<sup>g</sup> — *fond*,] i. e. *Weak, foolish*.

<sup>h</sup> — *your grace's tale*.] Suffolk uses *highness* and *grace* promiscuously to the queen. *Majesty* was not the settled title till the time of King James the First.—JOHNSON.

<sup>i</sup> — *reputing of his high descent*,] i. e. *Valuing himself upon his high descent*.—STEEVENS.



Smooth runs the water, where the brook is deep ;  
 \* And in his simple show he harbours treason.  
 The fox barks not, when he would steal the lamb.  
 No, no, my sovereign ; Gloster is a man  
 Unsounded yet, and full of deep deceit.

\* *Car.* Did he not, contrary to form of law,  
 \* Devise strange deaths for small offences done ?

*York.* And did he not, in his protectorship,  
 \* Levy great sums of money through the realm,  
 \* For soldiers' pay in France, and never sent it ?  
 \* By means whereof, the towns each day revolted.

\* *Buck.* Tut ! These are petty faults to faults unknown,  
 \* Which time will bring to light in smooth duke Hum-  
 phrey.

\* *K. Hen.* My lords, at once : The care you have of us,  
 \* To mow down thorns that would annoy our foot,  
 \* Is worthy praise : But shall I speak my conscience ?  
 \* Our kinsman Gloster is as innocent  
 \* From meaning treason to our royal person,  
 \* As is the sucking lamb, or harmless dove :  
 \* The duke is virtuous, mild ; and too well given,  
 \* To dream on evil, or to work my downfall.

\* *Q. Mar.* Ah, what's more dangerous than this fond  
 affiance !  
 \* Seems he a dove ? his feathers are but borrow'd,  
 \* For he's disposed as the hateful raven.  
 \* Is he a lamb ? his skin is surely lent him,  
 \* For he's inclin'd as are the ravenous wolves.  
 \* Who cannot steal a shape, that means deceit ?  
 \* Take heed, my lord ; the welfare of us all  
 \* Hangs on the cutting short that fraudulent man.

*Enter* SOMERSET.

\* *Som.* All health unto my gracious sovereign !

*K. Hen.* Welcome, lord Somerset. What news from  
 France ?

' *Som.* That all your interest in those territories  
 ' Is utterly bereft you ; all is lost.

*K. Hen.* Cold news, lord Somerset : But God's will be  
 done !

*York.* Cold news for me; for I had hope of France,  
As firmly as I hope for fertile England.

\* Thus are my blossoms blasted in the bud,

\* And caterpillars eat my leaves away:

\* But I will remedy this gear<sup>k</sup> ere long,

\* Or sell my title for a glorious grave.

[*Aside.*]

*Enter GLOSTER.*

\* *Glo.* All happiness unto my lord the king!  
Pardon, my liege, that I have staid so long.

*Suf.* Nay, Gloster, know, that thou art come too soon,  
' Unless thou wert more loyal than thou art;  
I do arrest thee of high treason here.

*Glo.* Well, Suffolk, yet thou shalt not see me blush,  
Nor change my countenance for this arrest:

\* A heart unspotted is not easily daunted.

\* The purest spring is not so free from mud,

\* As I am clear from treason to my sovereign:

Who can accuse me? wherein am I guilty?

*York.* 'Tis thought, my lord, that you took bribes of  
And, being protector, stay'd the soldiers' pay; [*France,*  
By means whereof, his highness hath lost France.

*Glo.* Is it but thought so? What are they, that think it?

' I never robb'd the soldiers of their pay,

' Nor ever had one penny bribe from France.

' So help me God, as I have watch'd the night,—

' Ay, night by night,—in studying good for England!

' That do it that e'er I wrested from the king,

' Or any groat I hoarded to my use,

' Be brought against me at my trial day!

' No! many a pound of mine own proper store,

' Because I would not tax the needy commons,

' Have I dispursed to the garrisons,

' And never ask'd for restitution.

\* *Car.* It serves you well, my lord, to say so much.

\* *Glo.* I say no more than truth, so help me God!

*York.* In your protectorship, you did devise  
Strange tortures for offenders, never heard of,  
That England was defam'd by tyranny.

<sup>k</sup> — gear—] A general word for *things* or *matters*.—JOHNSON.

*Glo.* Why, 'tis well known, that whiles I was protector,  
Pity was all the fault that was in me ;

\* For I should melt at an offender's tears,

\* And lowly words were ransome for their fault.

' Unless it were a bloody murderer,

' Or foul felonious thief, that fleec'd poor passengers,

' I never gave them condign punishment :

' Murder, indeed, that bloody sin, I tortur'd

' Above the felon, or what trespass else.

' *Suf.* My lord, these faults are easy, quickly answer'd :

' But mightier crimes are laid unto your charge,

' Whereof you cannot easily purge yourself.

' I do arrest you in his highness' name ;

' And here commit you to my lord cardinal

' To keep, until your further time of trial.

' *K. Hen.* My lord of Gloster, 'tis my special hope,

' That you will clear yourself from all suspects ;<sup>l</sup>

My conscience tells me, you are innocent.

*Glo.* Ah, gracious lord, these days are dangerous !<sup>\*</sup>

\* Virtue is chok'd with foul ambition,

\* And charity chas'd hence by rancour's hand ;

\* Foul subornation is predominant,

\* And equity exil'd your highness' land.

\* I know, their complot is to have my life ;

' And, if my death might make this island happy,

' And prove the period of their tyranny,

' I would expend it with all willingness :

' But mine is made the prologue to their play ;

' For thousands more, that yet suspect no peril,

' Will not conclude their plotted tragedy.

' Beaufort's red sparkling eyes blab his heart's malice,

' And Suffolk's cloudy brow his stormy hate ;

' Sharp Buckingham unburdens with his tongue

' The envious load that lies upon his heart :

' And dogged York, that reaches at the moon,

' Whose overweening arm I have pluck'd back,

' By false accuse<sup>m</sup> doth level at my life :—

' And you, my sovereign lady, with the rest,

' Causeless have laid disgraces on my head ;

<sup>l</sup> — suspects ;] i. e. *Suspitions.*

<sup>m</sup> — accuse—] i. e. *Accusation.*

\* And, with your best endeavour, have stirr'd up  
 \* My liefest<sup>n</sup> liege to be mine enemy :—  
 \* Ay, all of you have laid your heads together,  
 \* Myself had notice of your conventicles,  
 \* And all to make away my guiltless life :  
 ‘ I shall not want false witness to condemn me,  
 ‘ Nor store of treasons to augment my guilt ;  
 ‘ The ancient proverb will be well affected,—  
 A staff is quickly found to beat a dog.

\* *Car.* My liege, his railing is intolerable :

\* If those, that care to keep your royal person  
 \* From treason's secret knife, and traitors' rage,  
 \* Be thus upbraided, chid, and rated at,  
 \* And the offender granted scope of speech,  
 \* 'Twill make them cool in zeal unto your grace.

*Suf.* Hath he not twit our sovereign lady here,  
 ‘ With ignominious words, though clerkly couch'd,  
 ‘ As if she had suborned some to swear  
 ‘ False allegations to o'erthrow his state ?

‘ *Q. Mar.* But I can give the loser leave to chide.

*Glo.* Far truer spoke, than meant : I lose, indeed ;—  
 ‘ Beshrew the winners, for they played me false !  
 \* And well such losers may have leave to speak.

*Buck.* He'll wrest the sense, and hold us here all day :  
 ‘ Lord cardinal, he is your prisoner.

‘ *Car.* Sirs, take away the duke, and guard him sure.

*Glo.* Ah, thus king Henry throws away his crutch,  
 Before his legs be firm to bear his body :  
 ‘ Thus is the shepherd beaten from thy side,  
 ‘ And wolves are gnarling who shall gnaw thee first.  
 ‘ Ah, that my fear were false ! ah, that it were !  
 ‘ For, good king Henry, thy decay I fear.

[*Exeunt Attendants, with GLOSTER.*

*K. Hen.* My lords, what to your wisdoms seemeth best,  
 Do, or undo, as if ourself were here.

*Q. Mar.* What, will your highness leave the parliament ?

*K. Hen.* Ay, Margaret ; my heart is drown'd with grief,  
 \* Whose flood begins to flow within mine eyes ;

- \* My body round engirt with misery ;  
 \* For what's more miserable than discontent ?—  
 \* Ah, uncle Humphrey ! in thy face I see  
 \* The map of honour, truth, and loyalty ;  
 \* And yet, good Humphrey ! is the hour to come,  
 \* That e'er I prov'd thee false, or fear'd thy faith.  
 \* What low'ring star now envies thy estate,  
 \* That these great lords, and Margaret our queen,  
 \* Do seek subversion of thy harmless life ?  
 \* Thou never didst them wrong, nor no man wrong :  
 \* And as the butcher takes away the calf,  
 \* And binds the wretch, and beats it when it strays,  
 \* Bearing it to the bloody slaughter-house ;  
 \* Even so, remorseless, have they borne him hence.  
 \* And as the dam runs lowing up and down,  
 \* Looking the way her harmless young one went,  
 \* And can do nought but wail her darling's loss :  
 \* Even so myself bewails good Gloster's case,  
 \* With sad unhelpful tears ; and with dimm'd eyes  
 \* Look after him, and cannot do him good ;  
 \* So mighty are his vowed enemies.  
 ' His fortunes I will weep ; and, 'twixt each groan,  
 ' Say—*Who's a traitor, Gloster he is none.* [Exit.  
 \* Q. Mar. Free lords,<sup>o</sup> cold snow melts with the sun's  
 hot beams.  
 \* Henry my lord is cold in great affairs,  
 \* Too full of foolish pity : and Gloster's show  
 \* Beguiles him, as the mournful crocodile  
 \* With sorrow snares relenting passengers ;  
 \* Or as the snake, roll'd in a flowering bank,<sup>p</sup>  
 \* With shining checker'd slough, doth sting a child,  
 \* That, for the beauty, thinks it excellent.  
 \* Believe me, lords, were none more wise than I,  
 \* (And yet, herein, I judge mine own wit good,)  
 ' This Gloster should be quickly rid the world,  
 ' To rid us from the fear we have of him.

<sup>o</sup> Free lords, &c.] By this she means (as may be seen by the sequel), you who are not bound up to such precise regards of religion as is the king ; but are men of the world, and know how to live.—WARBURTON.

<sup>p</sup> — in a flowering bank,] i. e. In the flowers growing on a bank.—MALONE.

- \* *Car.* That he should die, is worthy policy :
- \* But yet we want a colour for his death :
- \* 'Tis meet, he be condemn'd by course of law.
- \* *Suf.* But, in my mind, that were no policy :
- \* The king will labour still to save his life,
- \* The commons haply rise to save his life ;
- \* And we yet have but trivial argument,
- \* More than mistrust, that shows him worthy death.
- \* *York.* So that, by this, you would not have him die.
- \* *Suf.* Ah, York, no man alive so fain as I.
- \* *York.* 'Tis York that hath more reason for his death.<sup>a</sup>—
- \* But, my lord cardinal, and you, my lord of Suffolk,—
- \* Say as you think, and speak it from your souls,—
- \* Wer't not all one, an empty eagle were set
- \* To guard the chicken from a hungry kite,
- \* As place duke Humphrey for the king's protector ?
- Q. *Mar.* So the poor chicken should be sure of death.
- ‘ *Suf.* Madam, 'tis true : And wer't not madness then,
- ‘ To make the fox surveyor of the fold ?
- ‘ Who being accus'd a crafty murderer,
- ‘ His guilt should be but idly posted over,
- ‘ Because his purpose is not executed.
- ‘ No ; let him die, in that he is a fox,
- ‘ By nature prov'd an enemy to the flock,
- ‘ Before his chaps be stain'd with crimson blood ;
- ‘ As Humphrey, prov'd by reasons, to my liege.<sup>r</sup>
- ‘ And do not stand on quilllets, how to slay him :
- ‘ Be it by gins, by snares, by subtilty,

<sup>a</sup> 'Tis York that hath more reason for his death.—] Duke Humphrey stood between him and the crown ; which he proposed to himself as the termination of his ambitious views.—STEEVENS.

<sup>r</sup> No ; let him die, in that he is a fox,

By nature prov'd an enemy to the flock,

Before his chaps be stain'd with crimson blood ;

As Humphrey, prov'd by reasons, to my liege.] The meaning of the speaker is not hard to be discovered, but his expression is very much perplexed. He means that the fox may be lawfully killed, as being known to be by nature an enemy to sheep, even before he has actually killed them ; so Humphrey may be properly destroyed, as being proved by arguments to be the king's enemy, before he has committed any actual crime.

Some may be tempted to read *treasons* for *reasons*, but the drift of the argument is to show that there may be *reason* to kill him before any *treason* has broken out.—JOHNSON.

- ‘ Sleeping, or waking, ’tis no matter how,  
 ‘ So he be dead; for that is good deceit  
 ‘ Which mates<sup>s</sup> him first, that first intends deceit.  
 \* *Q. Mar.* Thrice-noble Suffolk, ’tis resolutely spoke.  
 \* *Suf.* Not resolute, except so much were done;  
 \* For things are often spoke, and seldom meant:  
 \* But, that my heart accordeth with my tongue,—  
 \* Seeing the deed is meritorious,  
 \* And to preserve my sovereign from his foe,—  
 \* Say but the word, and I will be his priest.  
 \* *Car.* But I would have him dead, my lord of Suffolk,  
 \* Ere you can take due orders for a priest:  
 \* Say, you consent, and censure well the deed,<sup>t</sup>  
 \* And I’ll provide his executioner,  
 \* I tender so the safety of my liege.  
 \* *Suf.* Here is my hand, the deed is worthy doing.  
 \* *Q. Mar.* And so say I.  
 \* *York.* And I: and now we three have spoke it,  
 \* It skills not<sup>u</sup> greatly who impugns our doom.

*Enter a Messenger.*

- ‘ *Mess.* Great lords, from Ireland am I come amain,  
 ‘ To signify—that rebels there are up,  
 ‘ And put the Englishmen unto the sword:  
 \* Send succours, lords, and stop the rage betime,  
 \* Before the wound do grow incurable;  
 \* For, being green, there is great hope of help.  
 \* *Car.* A breach, that craves a quick expedient<sup>x</sup> stop!  
 ‘ What counsel give you in this weighty cause?  
 ‘ *York.* That Somerset be sent as regent thither;  
 ‘ ’Tis meet, that lucky ruler be employ’d;  
 ‘ Witness the fortune he hath had in France.  
 ‘ *Som.* If York, with all his far-fet policy,  
 ‘ Had been the regent there instead of me,  
 ‘ He never would have staid in France so long.

<sup>s</sup> — mates—] i. e. *Confounds*, from *amativ*, Fr.

<sup>t</sup> — and censure well the deed,] That is, approve the deed, judge the deed good.—JOHNSON.

<sup>u</sup> *It skills not*—] It is of no importance.

<sup>x</sup> — expedient—] i. e. *Expeditious*.

- ‘ *York.* No, not to lose it all, as thou hast done :  
 ‘ I rather would have lost my life betimes,  
 \* Than bring a burden of dishonour home,  
 \* By staying there so long, till all were lost.  
 \* Show me one scar charácterd on thy skin :  
 \* Men’s flesh preserv’d so whole, do seldom win.  
 \* *Q. Mar.* Nay then, this spark will prove a raging fire,  
 \* If wind and fuel be brought to feed it with :—  
 \* No more, good York ;—sweet Somerset, be still ;—  
 \* Thy fortune, York, hadst thou been regent there,  
 \* Might happily have prov’d far worse than his.

*York.* What, worse than naught? nay, then a shame  
 take all!

- ‘ *Som.* And, in the number, thee, that wishest shame!  
 ‘ *Car.* My lord of York, try what your fortune is.  
 ‘ The uncivil kernes of Ireland are in arms,  
 ‘ And temper clay with blood of Englishmen :  
 ‘ To Ireland will you lead a band of men,  
 ‘ Collected choicely, from each county some,  
 ‘ And try your hap against the Irishmen?  
 \* *York.* I will, my lord, so please his majesty.  
 \* *Suf.* Why, our authority is his consent ;  
 \* And, what we do establish, he confirms :  
 \* Then, noble York, take thou this task in hand.  
 \* *York.* I am content : Provide me soldiers, lords,  
 ‘ Whiles I take order for mine own affairs.  
 ‘ *Suf.* A charge, lord York, that I will see perform’d.  
 ‘ But now return we to the false duke Humphrey.  
 ‘ *Car.* No more of him ; for I will deal with him,  
 ‘ That, henceforth, he shall trouble us no more.  
 ‘ And so break off ; the day is almost spent :  
 ‘ Lord Suffolk, you and I must talk of that event.  
 ‘ *York.* My lord of Suffolk, within fourteen days,  
 ‘ At Bristol I expect my soldiers ;  
 ‘ For there I’ll ship them all for Ireland.

*Suf.* I’ll see it truly done, my lord of York.

[*Exeunt all but YORK.*

- ‘ *York.* Now, York, or never, steel thy fearful thoughts,  
 ‘ And change misdoubt to resolution :  
 \* Be that thou hop’st to be ; or what thou art



- \* Resign to death, it is not worth the enjoying :
- \* Let pale-fac'd fear keep with the mean-born man,  
 \* And find no harbour in a royal heart.
- \* Faster than spring-time showers, comes thought on  
 thought ;
- \* And not a thought, but thinks on dignity.
- \* My brain, more busy than the labouring spider,  
 \* Weaves tedious snares to trap mine enemies.
- \* Well, nobles, well, 'tis politickly done,  
 \* To send me packing with an host of men :
- \* I fear me, you but warm the starved snake,  
 \* Who, cherish'd in your breasts, will sting your hearts.
- 'Twas men I lack'd, and you will give them me :
- ' I take it kindly ; yet, be well assur'd  
 ' You put sharp weapons in a madman's hands.  
 ' Whiles I in Ireland nourish a mighty band,  
 \* I will stir up in England some black storm,  
 \* Shall blow ten thousand souls to heaven, or hell :
- \* And this fell tempest shall not cease to rage  
 \* Until the golden circuit on my head,  
 \* Like to the glorious sun's transparent beams,  
 \* Do calm the fury of this mad-bred flaw.<sup>y</sup>
- ' And, for a minister of my intent,  
 ' I have seduc'd a head-strong Kentishman,  
 ' John Cade of Ashford,  
 ' To make commotion, as full well he can,  
 ' Under the title of John Mortimer.
- \* In Ireland have I seen this stubborn Cade  
 \* Oppose himself against a troop of kernes ;<sup>z</sup>  
 \* And fought so long, till that his thighs with darts  
 \* Were almost like a sharp-quilled porcupine :
- \* And, in the end being rescu'd, I have seen him  
 \* Caper upright like a wild Mórisco,<sup>a</sup>  
 \* Shaking the bloody darts, as he his bells.  
 \* Full often, like a shag-hair'd crafty kerne,  
 \* Hath he conversed with the enemy ;

<sup>y</sup> — *mad-bred flaw.*] *Flaw* is a sudden violent gust of wind.—JOHNSON.

<sup>z</sup> — *a troop of kernes* ;] *Kernes* were light-armed Irish foot-soldiers.—STEEVENS.

<sup>a</sup> — *a wild Mórisco.*] A Moor in a military dance, now called *morris*, that is, a Moorish dance.—JOHNSON.

- \* And undiscover'd come to me again,
- \* And given me notice of their villainies.
- \* This devil here shall be my substitute ;
- \* For that John Mortimer, which now is dead,
- \* In face, in gait, in speech, he doth resemble :
- ‘ By this I shall perceive the commons’ mind,
- ‘ How they affect the house and claim of York.
- ‘ Say, he be taken, rack’d, and tortur’d ;
- ‘ I know, no pain, they can inflict upon him,
- ‘ Will make him say—I mov’d him to those arms.
- ‘ Say, that he thrive, (as ’tis great like he will,)
- ‘ Why, then from Ireland come I with my strength,
- ‘ And reap the harvest which that rascal sow’d :
- ‘ For, Humphrey being dead, as he shall be,
- ‘ And Henry put apart, the next for me. [Exit.

## SCENE II.

Bury. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter certain Murderers, hastily.*

- 1 *Mur.* Run to my lord of Suffolk ; let him know,
- \* We have despatch’d the duke, as he commanded.
- \* 2 *Mur.* O, that it were to do !—What have we done ?
- \* Didst ever hear a man so penitent ?

*Enter SUFFOLK.*

- ‘ 1 *Mur.* Here comes my lord.
- ‘ *Suf.* Now, sirs, have you
- ‘ Despatch’d this thing ?
- ‘ 1 *Mur.* Ay, my good lord, he’s dead.
- ‘ *Suf.* Why, that’s well said. Go, get you to my
- house ;
- ‘ I will reward you for this venturous deed.
- ‘ The king and all the peers are here at hand :—
- ‘ Have you laid fair the bed ? are all things well,
- ‘ According as I gave directions ?
- ‘ 1 *Mur.* ’Tis, my good lord.
- ‘ *Suf.* Away, be gone ! [Exeunt Murderers.

*Enter King HENRY, Queen MARGARET, Cardinal BEAUFORT, SOMERSET, Lords, and others.*

- ‘ *K. Hen.* Go, call our uncle to our presence straight :  
 ‘ Say, we intend to try his grace to-day,  
 If he be guilty, as ’tis published.  
 ‘ *Suf.* I’ll call him presently, my noble lord. [*Exit.*  
 ‘ *K. Hen.* Lords, take your places ;—And, I pray  
 you all,  
 ‘ Proceed no straiter ’gainst our uncle Gloster,  
 ‘ Than from true evidence, of good esteem,  
 ‘ He be approv’d in practice culpable.  
 \* *Q. Mar.* God forbid any malice should prevail,  
 \* That faultless may condemn a nobleman !  
 \* Pray God, he may acquit him of suspicion !  
 \* *K. Hen.* I thank thee, Margaret ; these words content me much.—

*Re-enter SUFFOLK.*

- ‘ How now ? why look’st thou pale ? why tremblest thou ?  
 ‘ Where is our uncle ? what is the matter, Suffolk ?  
*Suf.* Dead in his bed, my lord ; Gloster is dead.  
 \* *Q. Mar.* Marry, God forefend !  
 \* *Car.* God’s secret judgment :—I did dream to-night,  
 \* The duke was dumb, and could not speak a word.  
 [*The King swoons.*  
 ‘ *Q. Mar.* How fares my lord ?—Help, lords ! the king  
 is dead.  
 \* *Som.* Rear up his body ; wring him by the nose.  
 \* *Q. Mar.* Run, go, help, help !—O, Henry, ope thine  
 eyes !  
 \* *Suf.* He doth revive again ;—Madam, be patient.  
 \* *K. Hen.* O heavenly God !  
 \* *Q. Mar.* How fares my gracious lord ?  
*Suf.* Comfort, my sovereign ! gracious Henry, comfort !  
*K. Hen.* What, doth my lord of Suffolk comfort me ?  
 Came he right now<sup>b</sup> to sing a raven’s note,  
 \* Whose dismal tune bereft my vital powers ;  
 And thinks he, that the chirping of a wren,

<sup>b</sup> — right now—] Just now, even now.—JOHNSON.

‘ By crying comfort from a hollow breast,  
 ‘ Can chase away the first-conceived sound ?  
 \* Hide not thy poison with such sugar’d words.  
 \* Lay not thy hands on me ; forbear, I say ;  
 \* Their touch affrights me, as a serpent’s sting.  
 Thou baleful messenger, out of my sight !  
 ‘ Upon thy eye-balls murderous tyranny  
 ‘ Sits in grim majesty, to fright the world.  
 ‘ Look not upon me, for thine eyes are wounding :—  
 ‘ Yet do not go away ;—Come, basilisk,  
 ‘ And kill the innocent gazer with thy sight ;  
 \* For in the shade of death I shall find joy ;  
 \* In life, but double death, now Gloster’s dead.

*Q. Mar.* Why do you rate my lord of Suffolk thus ?

\* Although the duke was enemy to him,  
 \* Yet he, most christian like, laments his death :  
 \* And for myself,—foe as he was to me,  
 \* Might liquid tears, or heart-offending groans,  
 \* Or blood-consuming sighs recall his life,  
 \* I would be blind with weeping, sick with groans,  
 \* Look pale as primrose, with blood-drinking sighs,  
 \* And all to have the noble duke alive.  
 ‘ What know I how the world may deem of me ?  
 ‘ For it is known, we were but hollow friends ;  
 ‘ It may be judg’d, I made the duke away :  
 \* So shall my name with slander’s tongue be wounded,  
 \* And princes’ courts be fill’d with my reproach.  
 \* This get I by his death : Ah me, unhappy !  
 \* To be a queen, and crown’d with infamy !

‘ *K. Hen.* Ah, woe is me for Gloster, wretched man !

*Q. Mar.* Be woe for me,<sup>c</sup> more wretched than he is.

What, dost thou turn away, and hide thy face ?

I am no loathsome leper, look on me.

\* What, art thou, like the adder, waxen deaf ?  
 \* Be poisonous too, and kill thy forlorn queen.  
 \* Is all thy comfort shut in Gloster’s tomb ?  
 \* Why, then dame Margaret was ne’er thy joy :  
 \* Erect his statue then, and worship it,

<sup>c</sup> *Be woe for me,*] That is, Let not woe be to thee for Gloster, but or me.—  
 JOHNSON.

- \* And make my image but an alehouse sign.  
 Was I, for this, nigh wreck'd upon the sea ;  
 ' And twice by awkward wind from England's bank  
 ' Drove back again unto my native clime ?  
 What boded this, but well-forewarning wind  
 Did seem to say,—Seek not a scorpion's nest,  
 \* Nor set no footing on this unkind shore ?  
 \* What did I then, but curs'd the gentle gusts,  
 \* And he that loos'd them from their brazen caves ;  
 \* And bid them blow towards England's blessed shore,  
 \* Or turn our stern upon a dreadful rock ?  
 \* Yet Æolus would not be a murderer,  
 \* But left that hateful office unto thee :  
 \* The pretty vaulting sea refus'd to drown me :  
 \* Knowing, that thou would'st have me drown'd on  
     shore, .  
 \* With tears as salt as sea through thy unkindness :  
 \* The splitting rocks cow'rd in the sinking sands,<sup>d</sup>  
 \* And would not dash me with their ragged sides ;  
 \* Because thy flinty heart, more hard than they,  
 \* Might in thy palace perish<sup>e</sup> Margaret.  
 \* As far as I could ken thy chalky cliffs,  
 \* When from the shore the tempest beat us back,  
 \* I stood upon the hatches in the storm :  
 \* And when the dusky sky began to rob  
 \* My earnest-gaping sight of thy land's view,  
 \* I took a costly jewel from my neck,—  
 \* A heart it was, bound in with diamonds,—  
 \* And threw it towards thy land ;—the sea receiv'd it ;  
 \* And so, I wish'd, thy body might my heart :  
 \* And even with this, I lost fair England's view,  
 \* And bid mine eyes be packing with my heart ;  
 \* And call'd them blind and dusky spectacles,  
 \* For losing ken of Albion's wished coast.  
 \* How often have I tempted Suffolk's tongue  
 \* (The agent of thy foul inconstancy,)

<sup>d</sup> *The splitting rocks, &c.*] The sense seems to be this :—The rocks hid themselves in the sands, which sunk to receive them into their bosom.—STEEVENS.

<sup>e</sup> — *perish*—] The word is here used actively.

- \* To sit and witch me, as Ascanius did,
- \* When he to madding Dido, would unfold
- \* His father's acts, commenc'd in burning Troy ?
- \* Am I not witch'd like her ? or thou not false like him ?
- \* Ah me, I can no more ! Die Margaret !
- \* For Henry weeps, that thou dost live so long.

*Noise within. Enter WARWICK and SALISBURY. The Commons press to the door.*

- ‘ War. It is reported, mighty sovereign,
- ‘ That good duke Humphrey traitorously is murder'd
- ‘ By Suffolk and the cardinal Beaufort's means.
- ‘ The commons, like an angry hive of bees,
- ‘ That want their leader, scatter up and down,
- ‘ And care not who they sting in his revenge.
- ‘ Myself have calm'd their spleenful mutiny,
- ‘ Until they hear the order of his death.

*K. Hen.* That he is dead, good Warwick, 'tis too true ;  
But how he died, God knows, not Henry :

- ‘ Enter his chamber, view his breathless corpse,
- ‘ And comment then upon his sudden death.

*War.* That I shall do, my liege :—Stay, Salisbury,  
With the rude multitude, till I return.

[WARWICK goes into an inner Room, and  
SALISBURY retires.]

- \* *K. Hen.* O Thou that judgest all things, stay my thoughts ;
- \* My thoughts, that labour to persuade my soul,
- \* Some violent hands were laid on Humphrey's life !
- \* If my suspect be false, forgive me, God ;
- \* For judgment only doth belong to thee !
- \* Fain would I go to chafe his paly lips
- \* With twenty thousand kisses, and to drain
- \* Upon his face an ocean of salt tears ;
- \* To tell my love unto his dumb deaf trunk,
- \* And with my fingers feel his hand unfeeling :
- \* But all in vain are these mean obsequies ;
- \* And, to survey his dead and earthy image,
- \* What were it but to make my sorrow greater ?

*The folding Doors of an inner Chamber are thrown open, and GLOSTER is discovered dead in his bed: WARWICK and others standing by it.*

\* *War.* Come hither, gracious sovereign, view this  
body.

\* *K. Hen.* That is to see how deep my grave is made:

\* For, with his soul, fled all my worldly solace:

\* For seeing him, I see my life in death,

‘ *War.* As surely as my soul intends to live

‘ With that dread King, that took our state upon him

‘ To free us from his Father’s wrathful curse,

‘ I do believe that violent hands were laid

‘ Upon the life of this thrice-famed duke.

*Suf.* A dreadful oath, sworn with a solemn tongue!

‘ What instance gives lord Warwick for his vow?

‘ *War.* See, how the blood is settled in his face!

Oft have I seen a timely-parted ghost,<sup>e</sup>

‘ Of ashy semblance, meager, pale, and bloodless,

‘ Being all descended<sup>f</sup> to the labouring heart;

‘ Who, in the conflict that it holds with death,

‘ Attracts the same for aidance ’gainst the enemy;

‘ Which with the heart there cools, and ne’er returneth

‘ To blush and beautify the cheek again.

‘ But, see, his face is black, and full of blood;

‘ His eye-balls further out than when he liv’d,

‘ Staring full ghastly like a strangled man:

‘ His hair uprear’d, his nostrils stretch’d with struggling;

‘ His hands abroad display’d, as one that grasp’d

‘ And tugg’d for life, and was by strength subdu’d.

‘ Look on the sheets, his hair, you see, is sticking;

‘ His well-proportioned beard made rough and rugged,

‘ Like to the summer’s corn by tempest lodg’d.

‘ It cannot be, but he was murder’d here:

‘ The least of all these signs were probable.

<sup>e</sup> ——— *timely-parted ghost,*]—means a *body* that has become inanimate in the common course of nature; to which violence has not brought a *timeless* end.—MALONE.

<sup>f</sup> *Being all descended*—] i. e. “The *blood* being all descended,” the substantive being comprised in the adjective *bloodless*.—M. MASON.

‘ *Suf.* Why, Warwick, who should do the duke to death ?

‘ Myself, and Beaufort, had him in protection ;

‘ And we, I hope, sir, are no murderers.

‘ *War.* But both of you were vow’d duke Humphrey’s foes ;

‘ And you, forsooth, had the good duke to keep :

‘ ’Tis like, you would not feast him like a friend ;

‘ And ’tis well seen, he found an enemy.

‘ *Q. Mar.* Then you, belike, suspect these noblemen

‘ As guilty of duke Humphrey’s timeless death.

*War.* Who finds the heifer dead, and bleeding fresh,  
And sees fast by a butcher with an axe,  
But will suspect, ’twas he that made the slaughter ?  
Who finds the partridge in the puttock’s nest,  
But may imagine how the bird was dead,  
Although the kite soar with unbloodied beak ?  
Even so suspicious is this tragedy.

‘ *Q. Mar.* Are you the butcher, Suffolk ; where’s your knife ?

Is Beaufort term’d a kite ? where are his talons ?

*Suf.* I wear no knife, to slaughter sleeping men ;  
But here’s a vengeful sword, rusted with ease,  
That shall be scoured in his rancorous heart,  
That slanders me with murder’s crimson badge :  
Say, if thou dar’st, proud lord of Warwickshire,  
That I am faulty in duke Humphrey’s death.

[*Exeunt Cardinal, Som. and others.*]

*War.* What dares not Warwick, if false Suffolk dare him ?

*Q. Mar.* He dares not calm his contumelious spirit,  
Nor cease to be an arrogant controller,  
Though Suffolk dare him twenty thousand times.

*War.* Madam, be still ; with reverence may I say ;  
For every word, you speak in his behalf,  
Is slander to your royal dignity.

‘ *Suf.* Blunt-witted lord, ignoble in demeanour !  
If ever lady wrong’d her lord so much,  
Thy mother took into her blameful bed  
Some stern untutor’d churl, and noble stock



Was graft with crab-tree slip; whose fruit thou art,  
And never of the Nevils' noble race.

*War.* But that the guilt of murder bucklers thee,  
And I should rob the deathsman of his fee,  
Quitting thee thereby of ten thousand shames,  
And that my sovereign's presence makes me mild,  
I would, false murderous coward, on thy knee  
Make thee beg pardon for thy passed speech,  
And say—It was thy mother that thou mean'st,  
That thou thyself wast born in bastardy:  
And, after all this fearful homage done,  
Give thee thy hire, and send thy soul to hell,  
Pernicious bloodsucker of sleeping men!

*Suf.* Thou shalt be waking, while I shed thy blood,  
If from this presence thou dar'st go with me.

*War.* Away even now, or I will drag thee hence:

\* Unworthy though thou art, I'll cope with thee,  
\* And do some service to duke Humphrey's ghost.

[*Exeunt* SUFFOLK and WARWICK.]

\* *K. Hen.* What stronger breast-plate than a heart  
untainted?

\* Thrice is he arm'd, that hath his quarrel just;  
\* And he but naked, though lock'd up in steel,  
\* Whose conscience with injustice is corrupted.

[*A Noise within.*]

*Q. Mar.* What noise is this?

*Re-enter* SUFFOLK and WARWICK, *with their  
Weapons drawn.*

*K. Hen.* Why, how now, lords? your wrathful weapons  
drawn

‘ Here in our presence? dare you be so bold?—  
‘ Why, what tumultuous clamour have we here?

*Suf.* The traitorous Warwick, with the men of Bury,  
Set all upon me, mighty sovereign.

*Noise of a Croud within.* *Re-enter* SALISBURY.

\* *Sal.* Sirs, stand apart; the king shall know your  
mind.— [*Speaking to those within.*]

Dread lord, the commons send you word by me,  
 Unless false Suffolk straight be done to death,  
 Or banished fair England's territories,  
 ' They will by violence tear him from your palace,  
 \* And torture him with grievous ling'ring death.  
 They say, by him the good duke Humphrey died ;  
 ' They say, in him they fear your highness' death ;  
 ' And mere instinct of love, and loyalty,—  
 ' Free from a stubborn opposite intent,  
 ' As being thought to contradict your liking,—  
 ' Makes them thus forward in his banishment.  
 \* They say, in care of your most royal person,  
 \* That, if your highness should intend to sleep,  
 \* And charge—that no man should disturb your rest,  
 \* In pain of your dislike, or pain of death ;  
 \* Yet notwithstanding such a strait edict,  
 \* Were there a serpent seen, with forked tongue,  
 \* That slyly glided towards your majesty,  
 \* It were but necessary you were wak'd ;  
 \* Lest, being suffer'd in that harmful slumber,  
 \* The mortal worm<sup>g</sup> might make the sleep eternal :  
 \* And therefore do they cry, though you forbid,  
 \* That they will guard you, whe'r you will, or no,  
 \* From such fell serpents as false Suffolk is ;  
 \* With whose envenomed and fatal sting,  
 \* Your loving uncle, twenty times his worth,  
 \* They say, is shamefully bereft of life.

*Commons*, [*within.*] An answer from the king, my lord  
 of Salisbury.

*Suf.* 'Tis like, the commons, rude unpolish'd hinds,  
 Could send such message to their sovereign :  
 But you, my lord, were glad to be employ'd,  
 To show how quaint<sup>h</sup> an orator you are :  
 But all the honour Salisbury hath won,  
 Is—that he was the lord ambassador,  
 Sent from a sort<sup>i</sup> of tinkers to the king.

*Commons*, [*within.*] An answer from the king, or we'll  
 all break in.

<sup>g</sup> *The mortal worm—*] i. e. *The fatal, the deadly worm.*

<sup>h</sup> ——— *quaint—*] i. e. *Dextrous, artificial.*

<sup>i</sup> ——— *a sort—*] i. e. *A company.*

† *K. Hen.* Go, Salisbury, and tell them all from me,  
 † I thank them for their tender loving care :  
 † And had I not been 'cited so by them,  
 † Yet did I purpose 'as they do entreat ;  
 † For sure, my thoughts do hourly prophesy  
 † Mischance unto my state by Suffolk's means.  
 † And therefore,—by His majesty I swear,  
 † Whose far unworthy deputy I am,—  
 † He shall not breathe infection in this air<sup>k</sup>  
 † But three days longer, on the pain of death.

[*Exit SALISBURY.*]

† *Q. Mar.* O Henry, let me plead for gentle Suffolk !

† *K. Hen.* Ungentle queen, to call him gentle Suffolk.  
 † No more, I say ; if thou dost plead for him,  
 † Thou wilt but add increase unto my wrath.  
 † Had I but said, I would have kept my word ;  
 † But, when I swear, it is irrevocable :—

\* If, after three days' space, thou here be'st found

\* On any ground that I am ruler of,

\* The world shall not be ransome for thy life.—

† Come, Warwick, come, good Warwick, go with me ;

† I have great matters to impart to thee.

[*Exeunt K. HENRY, WARWICK, Lords, &c.*]

† *Q. Mar.* Mischance, and sorrow, go along with you !

† Heart's discontent, and sour affliction,

† Be playfellows to keep you company !

† There's two of you ; the devil make a third !

† And threefold vengeance tend upon your steps !

\* *Suf.* Cease, gentle queen, these execrations,

\* And let thy Suffolk take his heavy leave.

† *Q. Mar.* Fye, coward woman, and soft-hearted wretch !

† Hast thou not spirit to curse thine enemies ?

*Suf.* A plague upon them ! wherefore should I curse them ?  
 Would curses kill, as doth the mandrake's groan,<sup>1</sup>

<sup>k</sup> — breathe infection in this air—] i. e. He shall not contaminate this air with his infected breath.—MALONE.

<sup>1</sup> *Would curses kill, as doth the mandrake's groan,*] The fabulous accounts of the plant called a *mandrake* give it an inferior degree of animal life, and relate, that when it is torn from the ground it groans, and that this groan being certainly fatal to him that is offering such unwelcome violence, the practice of those who gather mandrakes is to tie one end of a string to the plant, and the other to a dog, upon whom the fatal groan discharges its malignity.—JOHNSON.

' I would invent as bitter-searching terms,  
 \* As curst, as harsh, and horrible to hear,  
 Deliver'd strongly through my fixed teeth,  
 ' With full as many signs of deadly hate,  
 As lean-fac'd Envy in her loathsome cave :  
 My tongue should stumble in mine earnest words :  
 Mine eyes should sparkle like the beaten flint :  
 My hair be fix'd on end, as one distract ;  
 Ay, every joint should seem to curse and ban :  
 And even now my burden'd heart would break,  
 Should I not curse them, Poison be their drink !  
 Gall, worse than gall, the daintiest that they taste !  
 Their sweetest shade, a grove of cypress trees !<sup>m</sup>  
 Their chiefest prospect, murdering basilisks !  
 Their softest touch, as smart as lizards' stings !<sup>n</sup>  
 Their musick, frightful as the serpent's hiss ;  
 And boding screech-owls make the concert full !  
 All the foul terrors in dark-seated hell—

Q. *Mar.* Enough, sweet Suffolk ; thou torment'st thyself ;

- \* And these dread curses—like the sun 'gainst glass,
- \* Or like an overcharged gun,—recoil,
- \* And turn the force of them upon thyself.

*Suf.* You bade me ban, and will you bid me leave ?<sup>o</sup>  
 Now, by the ground that I am banish'd from,  
 Well could I curse away a winter's night,  
 Though standing naked on a mountain top,  
 Where biting cold would never let grass grow,  
 And think it but a minute spent in sport.

\* Q. *Mar.* O, let me entreat thee, cease ! Give me thy hand,

- \* That I may dew it with my mournful tears ;
- \* Nor let the rain of heaven wet this place,

<sup>m</sup> — *cypress trees!*] Cypress was employed in the funeral rites of the Romans, and hence is always mentioned as an ill-boding plant.—STEEVENS.

<sup>n</sup> — *murdering basilisks!—lizards' stings!*] It has been said of the *basilisk* that it has the power of destroying by a single glance of the eye. A *lizard* has no sting, but is quite inoffensive.—STEEVENS.

<sup>o</sup> *You bade me ban, and will you bid me leave?*] This inconsistency is very common in real life. Those who are vexed to impatience, are angry to see others less disturbed than themselves, but when others begin to rave, they immediately see in them what they could not find in themselves, the deformity and folly of useless rage.—JOHNSON.

- \* To wash away my woeful monuments.  
 ‘ O, could this kiss be printed in thy hand ;  
[Kisses his hand.]
 \* That thou might'st think upon these by the seal,  
 ‘ Through whom a thousand sighs are breath'd for thee !<sup>p</sup>  
 ‘ So, get thee gone, that I may know my grief ;  
 ‘ 'Tis but surmis'd whilst thou art standing by,  
 \* As one that surfeits thinking on a want.  
 ‘ I will repeal thee, or, be well assured,  
 ‘ Adventure to be banished myself :  
 \* And banished I am, if but from thee.  
 \* Go, speak not to me ; even now be gone.—  
 \* O, go not yet !—Even thus two friends condemn'd  
 \* Embrace, and kiss, and take ten thousand leaves,  
 \* Loather a hundred times to part than die.  
 \* Yet now farewell ; and farewell life with thee !  
*Suf.* Thus is poor Suffolk ten times banished,  
 Once by the king, and three times thrice by thee.  
 ‘ 'Tis not the land I care for, wert thou hence ;  
 \* A wilderness is populous enough,  
 \* So Suffolk had thy heavenly company :  
 \* For where thou art, there is the world itself,  
 \* With every several pleasure in the world ;  
 \* And where thou art not, desolation.  
 \* I can no more :—Live thou to joy thy life ;  
 \* Myself no joy in nought, but that thou liv'st.

*Enter VAUX.*

- ‘ *Q. Mar.* Whither goes Vaux so fast ? what news,  
 I pr'ythee ?  
 ‘ *Vaux.* To signify unto his majesty,  
 That cardinal Beaufort is at point of death :  
 ‘ For suddenly a grievous sickness took him,  
 ‘ That makes him gasp, and stare, and catch the air,  
 ‘ Blaspheming God, and cursing men on earth.  
 ‘ Sometime, he talks as if duke Humphrey's ghost  
 ‘ Were by his side ; sometime, he calls the king,

<sup>p</sup> *That thou might'st think upon these by the seal,  
 Through whom a thousand sighs, &c.]* That by the impression of my kiss for  
 ever remaining on thy hand, thou mightest think on those lips through which a  
 thousand sighs will be breathed for thee.—JOHNSON.

And whispers to his pillow, as to him,

\* The secrets of his overcharged soul :

‘ And I am sent to tell his majesty,

‘ That even now he cries aloud for him.

‘ *Q. Mar.* Go, tell this heavy message to the king.

[*Exit VAUX.*]

‘ Ah me! what is this world? what news are these?

‘ But wherefore grieve I at an hour’s poor loss,<sup>a</sup>

‘ Omitting Suffolk’s exile, my soul’s treasure?

‘ Why only, Suffolk, mourn I not for thee,

‘ And with the southern clouds contend in tears:

‘ Theirs for the earth’s increase, mine for my sorrows?

‘ Now, get thee hence: The king, thou know’st, is  
coming;

‘ If thou be found by me, thou art but dead.

‘ *Suf.* If I depart from thee, I cannot live:

‘ And in thy sight to die, what were it else,

But like a pleasant slumber in thy lap?

Here could I breathe my soul into the air,

‘ As mild and gentle as the cradle-babe,

Dying with mother’s dug between its lips:

Where,† from thy sight, I should be raging mad,

‘ And cry out for thee to close up mine eyes,

‘ To have thee with thy lips to stop my mouth;

‘ So should’st thou either turn my flying soul,

‘ Or I should breathe it so into thy body,

And then it liv’d in sweet Elysium.

To die by thee, were but to die in jest;

From thee to die, were torture more than death:

O, let me stay, befall what may befall.

‘ *Q. Mar.* Away! though parting be a fretful corrosive,

‘ It is applied to a deathful wound.

‘ To France, sweet Suffolk: Let me hear from thee;

‘ For wheresoe’er thou art in this world’s globe,

I’ll have an Iris<sup>‡</sup> that shall find thee out.

<sup>a</sup> — an hour’s poor loss,] i. e. That Beaufort has died an hour before his time, who, being an old man, could not have had a long time to live.—STEEVENS.

<sup>†</sup> Where,] In the preambles of almost all the statutes made during the first twenty years of queen Elizabeth’s reign, the word *where* is employed instead of *whence*. It is so used here.—MALONE.

<sup>‡</sup> I’ll have an Iris—] Iris was the messenger of Juno.—JOHNSON.

*Suf.* I go.

*Q. Mar.* And take my heart with thee.

*Suf.* A jewel, lock'd into the woeful'st cask  
That ever did contain a thing of worth.  
Even as a splitted bark, so sunder we;  
This way fall I to death.

*Q. Mar.*

This way for me.

[*Exeunt severally.*]

### SCENE III.

London. *Cardinal Beaufort's Bed-chamber.*

*Enter King HENRY, SALISBURY, WARWICK, and others.*  
*The Cardinal in bed; Attendants with him.*

\* *K. Hen.* How fares my lord? speak, Beaufort, to thy  
sovereign.

‘ *Car.* If thou be'st death, I'll give thee England's  
treasure,

‘ Enough to purchase such another island,

‘ So thou wilt let me live, and feel no pain.

\* *K. Hen.* Ah, what a sign it is of evil life,

\* When death's approach is seen so terrible!

\* *War.* Beaufort, it is thy sovereign speaks to thee.

\* *Car.* Bring me unto my trial, when you will.

‘ Died he not in his bed? where should he die?

Can I make men live, whe'r they will or no?—

\* O! torture me no more, I will confess.—

‘ Alive again? then show me where he is;

‘ I'll give a thousand pound to look upon him.—

\* He hath no eyes, the dust hath blinded them.—

‘ Comb down his hair; look! look! it stands upright,

‘ Like lime-twigs set to catch my winged soul!—

‘ Give me some drink; and bid the apothecary

‘ Bring the strong poison that I bought of him.

\* *K. Hen.* O thou eternal Mover of the heavens,

\* Look with a gentle eye upon this wretch!

\* O, beat away the busy meddling fiend,

\* That lays strong siege upon this wretch's soul,

\* And from his bosom purge this black despair!

‘ *War.* See, how the pangs of death do make him grin.

- \* *Sal.* Disturb him not, let him pass peaceably.  
 \* *K. Hen.* Peace to his soul, if God's good pleasure be!  
 ' Lord cardinal, if thou think'st on heaven's bliss,  
 ' Hold up thy hand, make signal of thy hope.—  
 ' He dies, and makes no sign; O God, forgive him!  
 ' *War.* So bad a death argues a monstrous life.  
 ' *K. Hen.* Forbear to judge, for we are sinners all.—  
 ' Close up his eyes, and draw the curtain close;  
 ' And let us all to meditation. [*Exeunt.*]

## ACT IV.

SCENE I.—Kent. *The Sea-shore near Dover.*<sup>a</sup>

*Firing heard at Sea. Then enter from a Boat, a Captain, a Master, a Master's-Mate, WALTER WHITMORE, and others; with them SUFFOLK, and other Gentlemen, prisoners.*

- \* *Cap.* The gaudy, blabbing, and remorseful day\*  
 \* Is crept into the bosom of the sea;

<sup>a</sup> *Exeunt.*] This is one of the scenes which have been applauded by the critics, and which will continue to be admired when prejudices shall cease, and bigotry give way to impartial examination. These are beauties that rise out of nature and of truth; the superficial reader cannot miss them, the profound can image nothing beyond them.—JOHNSON. The passage from Hall's Chronicle, on which this scene is founded, represents the cardinal as rather philosophizing than penitent. "Doctor John Baker, his pryvie counsailler and his chapellayn, wrote, that lying on his death-bed he said these words: 'Why should I dye, having so much riches? If the whole realme would save my life, I am able either by pollicie to get it, or by riches to bye it. Fye, will not death be hyred, nor will money do nothyng? When my nephew of Bedford died, I thought myselfe half up the whele, but when I sawe myne other nephew of Gloucester disceased, then I thought myselfe able to be equal with kinges, and so thought to increase my treasure in hope to have worne a trypple crowne. But I se nowe the world fayleth me, and so I am deceyved; praying you all to pray for me.'"

<sup>a</sup> *The Sea-shore near Dover.*] The circumstance on which this scene is founded, is thus related by Hall, in his Chronicle: "But fortune would not that this flagitious person (the duke of Suffolk, who being impeached by the commons was banished for five years) should so escape; for when he was shipped to be transported into France, he was encountered with a ship of war appertaining to the duke of Exeter, the constable of the Tower of London, called, *The Nicholas of the Tower*. The captain of the same bark with small fight entered into the duke's ship, and perceiving his person present, brought him to Dover road, and then on the one side of a cock-boat, caused his head to be stricken off, and left his body with the head upon the sands of Dover; which corse was there found by a chaplain of his, and conveyed to Wingfield college, in Suffolk, and there buried."—MALONE.

\* *The gaudy, blabbing, and remorseful day.*—] The epithet *blabbing* applied to the day by a man about to commit murder, is exquisitely beautiful. Guilt



- \* And now loud-howling wolves arouse the jades  
 \* That drag the tragick melancholy night :  
 \* Who with their drowsy, slow, and flagging wings  
 \* Clip dead men's graves,<sup>y</sup> and from their misty claws  
 \* Breathe foul contagious darkness in the air.  
 \* Therefore, bring forth the soldiers of our prize ;  
 \* For, whilst our pinnace anchors in the Downs,  
 \* Here shall they make their ransome on the sand,  
 \* Or with their blood stain this discolour'd shore.—  
 ' Master, this prisoner freely give I thee ;—  
 ' And thou that art his mate, make boot of this ;—  
 ' The other [*pointing to SUFFOLK.*] Walter Whitmore, is  
 thy share.  
 ' 1 *Gent.* What is my ransome, master ? let me know.  
 ' *Mast.* A thousand crowns, or else lay down your  
 head.  
 ' *Mate.* And so much shall you give, or off goes yours.  
 \* *Cap.* What, think you much to pay two thousand  
 crowns,  
 \* And bear the name and port of gentlemen ?—  
 \* Cut both the villains' throats ; for die you shall ;  
 \* The lives of those which we have lost in fight,  
 \* Cannot be counterpois'd with such a petty sum.  
 \* 1 *Gent.* I'll give it, sir ; and therefore spare my life.  
 \* 2 *Gent.* And so will I, and write home for it straight.  
 ' *Whit.* I lost mine eye in laying the prize aboard,  
 ' And therefore, to revenge it, shalt thou die ; [*to SUR.*  
 ' And so should these, if I might have my will.  
 \* *Cap.* Be not so rash : take ransome, let him live.  
 ' *Suf.* Look on my George, I am a gentleman ;  
 ' Rate me at what thou wilt, thou shalt be paid.  
 ' *Whit.* And so am I ; my name is—Walter Whitmore.  
 ' How now ? why start'st thou ? what, doth death affright ?

is afraid of light, considers darkness as a natural shelter, and makes night the confidant of those actions which cannot be trusted to the *tell-tale day*.—  
 JOHNSON. *Remorseful* is *pitiful*.

<sup>y</sup> ——— the jades

*That drag the tragick melancholy night ;*

*Who with their drowsy, slow, and flagging wings*

*Clip dead men's graves,]*

The wings of the jades that drag night appears an unnatural image, till it is remembered that the chariot of the night is supposed, by Shakspeare, to be drawn by dragons.—JOHNSON.

- ‘ *Suf.* Thy name affrights me, in whose sound is death.  
 ‘ A cunning man did calculate my birth,  
 ‘ And told me—that by *Water* I should die :  
 ‘ Yet let not this make thee be bloody minded ;  
 ‘ Thy name is—*Gualtier*, being rightly sounded.  
 ‘ *Whit.* *Gualtier*, or *Walter*, which it is, I care not ;  
 ‘ Ne’er yet did base dishonour blur our name,  
 ‘ But with our sword we wip’d away the blot ;  
 ‘ Therefore, when merchant-like I sell revenge,  
 ‘ Broke be my sword, my arms torn and defac’d,  
 ‘ And I proclaim’d a coward through the world !

[*Lays hold on* SUFFOLK.]

‘ *Suf.* Stay, Whitmore ; for thy prisoner is a prince,  
 The duke of Suffolk, William de la Pole.

‘ *Whit.* The duke of Suffolk, muffled up in rags !

*Suf.* Ay, but these rags are no part of the duke ;  
 Jove sometime went disguis’d, And why not I ?

*Cap.* But Jove was never slain, as thou shalt be.

‘ *Suf.* Obscure and lowly swain, king Henry’s blood,  
 The honourable blood of Lancaster,

‘ Must not be shed by such a jaded<sup>z</sup> groom.

Hast thou not kiss’d thy hand, and held my stirrup ?

‘ Bare-headed plodded by my foot-cloth mule,

‘ And thought thee happy when I shook my head ?

‘ How often hast thou waited at my cup,

‘ Fed from my trencher, kneel’d down at the board,

‘ When I have feasted with queen Margaret ?

\* Remember it, and let it make thee crest-fall’n ;

\* Ay, and allay this thy abortive pride :<sup>a</sup>

\* How in our voiding lobby hast thou stood,

\* And duly waited for my coming forth ?

‘ This hand of mine hath writ in thy behalf,

‘ And therefore shall it charm thy riotous tongue.

\* *Whit.* Speak, captain, shall I stab the forlorn swain ?

\* *Cap.* First let my words stab him, as he hath me.

\* *Suf.* Base slave ! thy words are blunt, and so art  
 thou.

<sup>z</sup> — *jaded*—] i. e. *Employed in vile offices.*—TODD’S *Johnson*.

<sup>a</sup> — *abortive pride* :] *Pride that has had birth too soon ; pride issuing before its time.*—JOHNSON.

‘ *Cap.* Convey him hence, and on our long-boat’s side  
 ‘ Strike off his head.

*Suf.* Thou dar’st not for thy own.

*Cap.* Yes, Poole.

*Suf.* Poole?

*Cap.* Poole? sir Poole? lord Poole?<sup>b</sup>

‘ Ay, kennel, puddle, sink; whose filth and dirt  
 ‘ Troubles the silver spring where England drinks.  
 ‘ Now will I dam up this thy yawning mouth,  
 ‘ For swallowing the treasure of the realm:  
 ‘ Thy lips, that kiss’d the queen, shall sweep the ground:  
 ‘ And thou, that smil’dst at good duke Humphrey’s death,  
 ‘ Against the senseless winds shalt grin in vain,  
 \* Who, in contempt, shall hiss at thee again:  
 \* And wedded be thou to the hags of hell,  
 \* For daring to affy<sup>c</sup> a mighty lord  
 \* Unto the daughter of a worthless king,  
 \* Having neither subject, wealth, nor diadem.  
 \* By devilish policy art thou grown great,  
 \* And, like ambitious Sylla, overgorg’d  
 \* With gobbets of thy mother’s bleeding heart.  
 \* By thee, Arjou and Maine were sold to France:  
 \* The false revolting Normans, thorough thee,  
 \* Disdain to call us lord; and Picardy  
 \* Hath slain their governors, surpriz’d our forts,  
 \* And sent the ragged soldiers wounded home.  
 \* The princely Warwick, and the Nevils all,—  
 \* Whose dreadful swords were never drawn in vain,—  
 \* As hating thee, are rising up in arms:  
 \* And now the house of York—thrust from the crown,  
 \* By shameful murder of a guiltless king,  
 \* And lofty proud encroaching tyranny,—  
 \* Burns with revenging fire; whose hopeful colours  
 \* Advance our half-fac’d sun, striving to shine,  
 \* Under the which is writ—*Invitis nubibus*.  
 \* The commons here in Kent are up in arms:  
 \* And, to conclude, reproach, and beggary,

<sup>b</sup> — *sir Poole? lord Poole?*] The old copy reads, *sir Poole? lord?* The additional repetition of the name is adopted from a note of Dr. Johnson.

<sup>c</sup> — *to affy*—] *To affy* is to betroth in marriage.—STEEVENS.

- \* Is crept into the palace of our king,  
 \* And all by thee :—Away ! convey him hence.  
 \* *Suf.* O that I were a god, to shoot forth thunder  
 \* Upon these paltry, servile, abject drudges !  
 \* Small things make base men proud : ‘ this villain here,  
 ‘ Being captain of a pinnace,<sup>d</sup> threatens more  
 ‘ Than Bargulus the strong Illyrian pirate.<sup>e</sup>  
 ‘ Drones suck not eagles’ blood, but rob bee-hives.  
 ‘ It is impossible, that I should die  
 ‘ By such a lowly vassal as thyself.  
 ‘ Thy words move rage, and not remorse, in me :  
 ‘ I go of message from the queen to France ;  
 ‘ I charge thee, waft me safely cross the channel.  
 ‘ *Cap.* Walter,——  
 ‘ *Whit.* Come, Suffolk, I must waft thee to thy death.  
 \* *Suf.* *Gelidus timor occupat artus* :—’tis thee I fear.  
 ‘ *Whit.* Thou shalt have cause to fear, before I leave  
 thee.  
 ‘ What, are ye daunted now ? now will ye stoop ?  
 ‘ *1 Gent.* My gracious lord, entreat him, speak him fair.  
 ‘ *Suf.* Suffolk’s imperial tongue is stern and rough,  
 ‘ Us’d to command, untaught to plead for favour.  
 ‘ Far be it, we should honour such as these  
 ‘ With humble suit : no, rather let my head  
 ‘ Stoop to the block, than these knees bow to any,  
 ‘ Save to the God of heaven, and to my king ;  
 ‘ And sooner dance upon a bloody pole,  
 ‘ Than stand uncover’d to the vulgar groom.  
 \* True nobility is exempt from fear :—  
 ‘ More can I bear, than you dare execute.  
 ‘ *Cap.* Hale him away, and let him talk no more.<sup>f</sup>  
 ‘ *Suf.* Come, soldiers, show what cruelty ye can,  
 ‘ That this my death may never be forgot !—

<sup>d</sup> — a pinnace,] A pinnace did not anciently signify, as at present, a man of war’s boat, but a ship of small burthen.—STEEVENS.

<sup>e</sup> — Bargulus, &c.] *Bargulus, Illyrius latro, de quo est apud Theopompum, magnas opes habuit.* CICERO de Officiis, lib. ii. cap. 11.—WARBURTON.

<sup>f</sup> *Hale him away, &c.*] The difference between the previous and the present sentiments of the captain may be thus accounted for. First he strives to intimidate his prisoners into a ready payment of their ransom ; afterwards his natural disposition inclines him to mercy ; till he is provoked by the upbraodings of Suffolk.—STEEVENS.

- ‘ Great men oft die by vile bezonians :<sup>g</sup>  
 ‘ A Roman sworder and banditto slave,<sup>h</sup>  
 ‘ Murder’d sweet Tully ; Brutus’ bastard hand<sup>i</sup>  
 ‘ Stabb’d Julius Cæsar ; savage islanders,  
 ‘ Pompey the great :<sup>k</sup> and Suffolk dies by pirates.

[*Exit* SUP. with WHIT. and others.]

Cap. And as for these whose ransome we have set,  
 It is our pleasure, one of them depart :—  
 Therefore come you with us, and let him go.

[*Exeunt all but the first Gentleman.*]

*Re-enter* WHITMORE, with SUFFOLK’S Body.

- ‘ Whit. There let his head and lifeless body lie,  
 ‘ Until the queen his mistress bury it. [Exit.  
 ‘ I Gent. O barbarous and bloody spectacle !  
 ‘ His body will I bear unto the king :  
 ‘ If he revenge it not, yet will his friends ;  
 ‘ So will the queen, that living held him dear.

[*Exit, with the Body.*]

## SCENE II.

Blackheath.

*Enter* GEORGE BEVIS and JOHN HOLLAND.

- ‘ Geo. Come, and get thee a sword, though made of a  
 ‘ lath ; they have been up these two days.  
 ‘ John. They have the more need to sleep now then.  
 ‘ Geo. I tell thee, Jack Cade the clothier means to  
 ‘ dress the commonwealth, and turn it, and set a new nap  
 ‘ upon it.  
 John. So he had need, for ’tis threadbare. Well, I say,

<sup>g</sup> — bezonians :] i. e. Beggars. From *besogno*, or *besognoso*, Ital. Cotgrave thus explains the French word *bisogne* ; “ a bison. Also a filthie knave, or clowne, a raskall, *bisonian*,” &c.—NARES’ *Glossary*.

<sup>h</sup> *A Roman sworder and banditto slave,*] i. e. Herennius, a centurion, and Popilius Lænas, tribune of the soldiers.—STEEVENS.

<sup>i</sup> — Brutus’ bastard hand—] Brutus was the son of Servilia, who had been concubine to Julius Cæsar.—STEEVENS.

<sup>k</sup> *Pompey the great :*] The poet seems to have confounded the story of Pompey with some other.—JOHNSON.

it was never merry world in England, since gentlemen came up.<sup>1</sup>

\* *Geo.* O miserable age! Virtue is not regarded in  
\* handicrafts-men.

‘ *John.* The nobility think scorn to go in leather  
‘ aprons.

\* *Geo.* Nay more, the king’s council are no good  
\* workmen.

\* *John.* True; And yet it is said,—Labour in thy vo-  
\* cation: which is as much to say, as,—let the magis-  
\* trates be labouring men; and therefore should we be  
\* magistrates.

\* *Geo.* Thou hast hit it: for there’s no better sign of a  
\* brave mind, than a hard hand.

\* *John.* I see them! I see them! There’s Best’s son,  
\* the tanner of Wingham:—

\* *Geo.* He shall have the skins of our enemies, to make  
\* dog’s leather of.

*John.* And Dick the butcher,—

\* *Geo.* Then is sin struck down like an ox, and ini-  
\* quity’s throat cut like a calf.

\* *John.* And Smith the weaver.

\* *Geo.* *Argo*, their thread of life is spun.

\* *John.* Come, come, let’s fall in with them.

*Drum.* Enter CADE, DICK the Butcher, SMITH the Weaver,  
and others in great number.

‘ *Cade.* We John Cade, so termed of our supposed  
‘ father, for our enemies shall fall before us<sup>m</sup>—

*Dick.* Or rather, of stealing a cade of herrings.<sup>n</sup>

[*Aside.*

‘ *Cade.* Inspired with the spirit of putting down kings  
‘ and princes,—Command silence.

*Dick.* Silence!

<sup>1</sup> — since gentlemen came up.] i. e. Came into fashion.

<sup>m</sup> — our enemies shall fall before us.] He alludes to his name *Cade*, from *cado*, Lat. *to fall*. He has too much learning for his character.—JOHNSON. This line in the original follows the speech of Dick the butcher, instead of preceding it. The transposition which I have made, was recommended by Tyrwhitt, and approved by Malone.

<sup>n</sup> — a cade of herrings.] i. e. A barrel of herrings.

*Cade.* My father was a Mortimer,—

*Dick.* He was an honest man, and a good bricklayer.

[*Aside.*

‘ *Cade.* My mother a Plantagenet,—

‘ *Dick.* I knew her well, she was a midwife. [ *Aside.*

‘ *Cade.* My wife descended of the Lacies,—

*Dick.* She was, indeed, a pedlar’s daughter, and sold many laces. [ *Aside.*

‘ *Smith.* But, now of late, not able to travel with her furred pack,<sup>o</sup> she washes bucks here at home. [ *Aside.*

‘ *Cade.* Therefore am I of an honourable house.

*Dick.* Ay, by my faith, the field is honourable; and there was he born, under a hedge; for his father had never a house, but the cage. [ *Aside.*

\* *Cade.* Valiant I am.

\* *Smith.* ‘A must needs; for beggary is valiant. [ *Aside.*

*Cade.* I am able to endure much.

*Dick.* No question of that; for I have seen him whipped three market-days together. [ *Aside.*

*Cade.* I fear neither sword nor fire.

*Smith.* He need not fear the sword, for his coat is of proof.<sup>p</sup> [ *Aside.*

*Dick.* But, methinks, he should stand in fear of fire, being burnt i’ the hand for stealing of sheep. [ *Aside.*

*Cade.* Be brave then; for your captain is brave, and vows reformation. There shall be, in England, seven half-penny loaves sold for a penny: the three-hooped pot shall have ten hoops;<sup>q</sup> and I will make it felony, to drink small beer: all the realm shall be in common, and in Cheapside shall my palfry go to grass. And, when I am king, (as king I will be)—

*All.* God save your majesty!

‘ *Cade.* I thank you, good people:—there shall be no

<sup>o</sup> — *furred pack,*] A wallet or knapsack of skin with the hair outward.—  
JOHNSON.

<sup>p</sup> — *for his coat is of proof.*] A quibble between two senses of the word; one as being able to resist, the other as being *well-tried*, that is, long worn.—  
HANMER.

<sup>q</sup> — *the three-hooped pot shall have ten hoops;*] Pots being anciently made with staves, bound together with hoops, as barrels are. The quart pot had usually three hoops.—NARES’ *Glossary.*

‘ money ;’ all shall eat and drink on my score ; and I will  
 ‘ apparel them all in one livery, that they may agree like  
 ‘ brothers, and worship me their lord.

‘ *Dick.* The first thing we do, let’s kill all the lawyers.

*Cade.* Nay, that I mean to do. Is not this a lamentable thing, that of the skin of an innocent lamb should be made parchment? that parchment, being scribbled o’er, should undo a man? Some say, the bee stings : but I say, ’tis the bee’s wax, for I did but seal once to a thing, and I was never mine own man since. How now? who’s there?

*Enter some, bringing in the Clerk of Chatham.*<sup>s</sup>

*Smith.* The clerk of Chatham : he can write and read, and cast accompt.

*Cade.* O monstrous!

*Smith.* We took him setting of boys’ copies.

*Cade.* Here’s a villain!

*Smith.* H’as a book in his pocket, with red letters in’t.

*Cade.* Nay, then he is a conjurer.

*Dick.* Nay, he can make obligations,<sup>t</sup> and write court-hand.

‘ *Cade.* I am sorry for’t ; the man is a proper man, on  
 ‘ mine honour ; unless I find him guilty, he shall not die,  
 ‘ —Come hither, sirrah, I must examine thee : What is  
 ‘ thy name?

*Clerk.* Emmanuel.

*Dick.* They use to write it on the top of letters ;<sup>u</sup>—  
 ’Twill go hard with you.

<sup>r</sup> — *there shall be no money ;*] To mend the world by banishing money is an old contrivance of those who did not consider that the quarrels and mischiefs which arise from money, as the sign or ticket of riches, must, if money were to cease, arise immediately from riches themselves, and could never be at an end till every man was contented with his own share of the goods of life.—JOHNSON.

<sup>s</sup> — *Clerk of Chatham.*] The person who is here represented as clerk of Chatham, was one *Thomas Bayly*, a reputed necromancer or fortune-teller, at Whitechapel. He had formerly been a bosom friend of *Cade’s*, and of the same profession. *W. Wyrcester*, p. 471.—RITSON.

<sup>t</sup> — *obligations,*] That is, *bonds*.—MALONE.

<sup>u</sup> — *They use to write it on the top of letters ;*] i. e. Of letters missive, and such like publick acts. See *Mabillon’s Diplomata*.—WARBURTON.



‘ *Cade*. Let me alone:—Dost thou use to write thy name? or hast thou a mark to thyself, like an honest plain-dealing man?

*Clerk*. Sir, I thank God, I have been so well brought up, that I can write my name.

‘ *All*. He hath confessed: away with him; he’s a villain, and a traitor.

‘ *Cade*. Away with him, I say: hang him with his pen and inkhorn about his neck.

[*Exeunt some with the Clerk.*]

*Enter MICHAEL.*

‘ *Mich*. Where’s our general?

‘ *Cade*. Here I am, thou particular fellow.

‘ *Mich*. Fly, fly, fly, sir Humphrey Stafford and his brother are hard by, with the king’s forces.

‘ *Cade*. Stand, villain, stand, or I’ll fell thee down: He shall be encountered with a man as good as himself: He is but a knight, is ’a?

‘ *Mich*. No.

‘ *Cade*. To equal him, I will make myself a knight presently; Rise up sir John Mortimer. Now have at him.

*Enter Sir HUMPHREY STAFFORD, and WILLIAM his Brother, with Drum and Forces.*

\* *Staf*. Rebellious hinds, the filth and scum of Kent,

\* Mark’d for the gallows,—lay your weapons down,

\* Home to your cottages, forsake this groom;—

\* The king is merciful, if you revolt.

\* *W. Staf*. But angry, wrathful, and inclin’d to blood,

\* If you go forward: Therefore yield, or die.

*Cade*. As for these silken-coated slaves, I pass not;<sup>x</sup>

It is to you, good people, that I speak,

\* O’er whom, in time to come, I hope to reign;

\* For I am rightful heir unto the crown.

‘ *Staf*. Villain, thy father was a plasterer;

‘ And thou thyself, a shearman,<sup>y</sup> Art thou not?

<sup>x</sup> — *I pass not* ;] I pay them no regard.—JOHNSON.

<sup>y</sup> — *a shearman*,] i. e. A man who shears the woollen cloth in manufacturing it,

*Cade.* And Adam was a gardener.

‘ *W. Staf.* And what of that ?

*Cade.* Marry, this :—Edmund Mortimer, earl of March, Married the duke of Clarence’ daughter ;—Did he not ?

‘ *Staf.* Ay, sir.

*Cade.* By her, he had two children at one birth.

*W. Staf.* That’s false.

‘ *Cade.* Ay, there’s the question ; but, I say, ’tis true :

‘ The elder of them, being put to nurse,

‘ Was by a beggar-woman stol’n away ;

‘ And, ignorant of his birth and parentage,

‘ Became a bricklayer, when he came to age :

‘ His son am I ; deny it, if you can.

*Dick.* Nay, ’tis too true ; therefore he shall be king.

*Smith.* Sir, he made a chimney in my father’s house, and the bricks are alive at this day to testify it ; therefore, deny it not.

\* *Staf.* And will you credit this base drudge’s words,

\* That speaks he knows not what ?

\* *All.* Ay, marry, will we ; therefore get ye gone.

*W. Staf.* Jack Cade, the duke of York hath taught you this.

\* *Cade.* He lies, for I invented it myself. [*Aside.*—Go to, sirrah, Tell the king from me, that—for his father’s sake, Henry the fifth, in whose time boys went to span-counter<sup>2</sup> for French crowns,—I am content he shall reign ; but I’ll be protector over him.

‘ *Dick.* And, furthermore, we’ll have the lord Say’s head, for selling the dukedom of Maine.

‘ *Cade.* And good reason, for thereby is England maimed, and fain to go with a staff, but that my puissance holds it up. Fellow kings, I tell you, that that lord Say hath gelded the commonwealth, and made it an eunuch : and more than that, he can speak French, and therefore he is a traitor.

‘ *Staf.* O gross and miserable ignorance !

‘ *Cade.* Nay, answer, if you can : The Frenchmen are our enemies : go to then, I ask but this ; Can he, that

<sup>2</sup> — *span-counter*—] A play at which money is thrown within a span or mark.—*TODD’S Johnson.*

‘ speaks with the tongue of an enemy, be a good counsellor, or no?

\* *All.* No, no; and therefore we’ll have his head.

\* *W. Staf.* Well, seeing gentle words will not prevail,

\* Assail them with the army of the king.

‘ *Staf.* Herald, away: and, throughout every town,

‘ Proclaim them traitors that are up with Cade;

‘ That those, which fly before the battle ends,

‘ May, even in their wives’ and children’s sight,

‘ Be hang’d up for example at their doors:—

‘ And you, that be the king’s friends, follow me.

[*Exeunt the Two STAFFORDS, and Forces.*

\* *Cade.* And you, that love the commons, follow me.—

\* Now show yourselves men, ’tis for liberty.

\* We will not leave one lord, one gentleman:

\* Spare none, but such as go in clouted shoon;

\* For they are thrifty honest men, and such

\* As would (but that they dare not,) take our parts.

\* *Dick.* They are all in order, and march toward us.

\* *Cade.* But then are we in order, when we are most out of order. Come, march forward. [*Exeunt.*

### SCENE III.

*Another Part of Blackheath.*

*Alarums.* *The two Parties enter, and fight, and both the STAFFORDS are slain.*

‘ *Cade.* Where’s Dick, the butcher of Ashford?

‘ *Dick.* Here, sir.

‘ *Cade.* They fell before thee like sheep and oxen, and thou behavedst thyself as if thou hadst been in thine own slaughter-house: therefore thus will I reward thee,—The Lent shall be as long again as it is; and thou shalt have a license to kill for a hundred lacking one.

‘ *Dick.* I desire no more.

\* *Cade.* And, to speak truth, thou deservest no less.

\* This monument of the victory will I bear;<sup>a</sup> and the

<sup>a</sup> *This monument of the victory, &c.]* Here Cade must be supposed to take off

\* bodies shall be dragged at my horse' heels, till I do  
 \* come to London, where we will have the mayor's sword  
 \* borne before us.

\* *Dick*. If we mean to thrive and do good, break open  
 \* the gaols, and let out the prisoners.

\* *Cade*. Fear not that, I warrant thee. Come, let's  
 \* march towards London. [*Exeunt*.]

## SCENE IV.

London. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter King HENRY, reading a Supplication; the Duke of BUCKINGHAM, and Lord SAY with him: at a distance Queen MARGARET, mourning over SUFFOLK'S Head.*

\* *Q. Mar*. Oft have I heard—that grief softens the  
 \* And makes it fearful and degenerate; [mind,  
 \* Think therefore on revenge, and cease to weep.

\* But who can cease to weep, and look on this?

\* Here may his head lie on my throbbing breast:

\* But where's the body that I should embrace?

‘ *Buck*. What answer makes your grace to the rebels’  
 ‘ supplication?

\* *K. Hen*. I'll send some holy bishop to entreat:

‘ For God forbid, so many simple souls

‘ Should perish by the sword! And I myself,

‘ Rather than bloody war should cut them short,

‘ Will parley with Jack Cade their general.—

‘ But stay, I'll read it over once again.

\* *Q. Mar*. Ah, barbarous villains! hath this lovely face

\* Rul'd, like a wandering planet, over me:

\* And could it not enforce them to relent,

\* That were unworthy to behold the same?

‘ *K. Hen*. Lord Say, Jack Cade hath sworn to have thy  
 head.

‘ *Say*. Ay, but I hope, your highness shall have his.

*K. Hen*. How now, madam? Still

Staffords' armour. So Holinshed: "Jack Cade, upon his victory against the Staffords, apparreled himself in Sir Humphrey's brigantine, set full of gilt nails, and so in some glory returned again to London."—STEEVENS.

Lamenting, and mourning for Suffolk's death?  
 I fear, my love, if that I had been dead,  
 Thou wouldest not have mourn'd so much for me.

*Q. Mar.* No, my love, I should not moura, but die for thee.

*Enter a Messenger.*

\* *K. Hen.* How now! what news? why com'st thou in such haste?

‘ *Mess.* The rebels are in Southwark; Fly, my lord!  
 ‘ Jack Cade proclaims himself lord Mortimer,  
 ‘ Descended from the duke of Clarence' house;  
 ‘ And calls your grace usurper, openly,  
 ‘ And vows to crown himself in Westminster.  
 ‘ His army is a ragged multitude  
 ‘ Of hinds and peasants, rude and merciless:  
 ‘ Sir Humphrey Stafford and his brother's death  
 ‘ Hath given them heart and courage to proceed;  
 ‘ All scholars, lawyers, courtiers, gentlemen,  
 ‘ They call—false caterpillars, and intend their death.

\* *K. Hen.* O graceless men! they know not what they do.

‘ *Buck.* My gracious lord, retire to Kenelworth,  
 ‘ Until a power be rais'd to put them down.

\* *Q. Mar.* Ah! were the duke of Suffolk now alive,  
 \* These Kentish rebels would be soon appeas'd.

‘ *K. Hen.* Lord Say, the traitors hate thee,  
 ‘ Therefore away with us to Kenelworth.

‘ *Say.* So might your grace's person be in danger;  
 ‘ The sight of me is odious in their eyes;  
 ‘ And therefore in this city will I stay,  
 ‘ And live alone as secret as-I may.

*Enter another Messenger.*

\* 2 *Mess.* Jack Cade hath gotten London-bridge; the citizens

\* Fly and forsake their houses:  
 \* The rascal people, thirsting after prey,  
 \* Join with the traitor; and they jointly swear,  
 \* To spoil the city, and your royal court.

\* *Buck.* Then linger not, my lord; away, take horse.

\* *K. Hen.* Come, Margaret ; God, our hope, will succour us.

\* *Q. Mar.* My hope is gone, now Suffolk is deceas'd.

\* *K. Hen.* Farewell, my lord ; [*to lord SAY.*] trust not the Kentish rebels.

\* *Buck.* Trust no body, for fear you be betray'd.

‘ *Say.* The trust I have is in mine innocence,  
‘ And therefore am I bold and resolute. [*Exeunt.*

### SCENE V.

*The same. The Tower.*

*Enter Lord SCALES, and others, on the Walls. Then enter certain Citizens, below.*

*Scales.* How now ? is Jack Cade slain ?

1 *Cit.* No, my lord, nor likely to be slain ; for they have won the bridge, killing all those that withstand them : The lord mayor craves aid of your honour from the Tower, to defend the city from the rebels.

*Scales.* Such aid as I can spare, you shall command ;  
But I am troubled here with them myself,  
The rebels have assay'd to win the Tower.  
But get you to Smithfield, and gather head,  
And thither I will send you Matthew Gough :  
Fight for your king, your country, and your lives ;  
And so farewell, for I must hence again. [*Exeunt.*

### SCENE VI.

*The same. Cannon-street.*

*Enter JACK CADE, and his Followers. He strikes his Staff on London-stone.*

*Cade.* Now is Mortimer lord of this city. And here, sitting upon London-stone, I charge and command, that, of the city's cost, the pissing-conduit run nothing but claret wine this first year of our reign. And now, henceforward, it shall be treason for any that calls me other than—lord Mortimer.

*Enter a Soldier, running.*

*Sold.* Jack Cade ! Jack Cade !

*Cade.* Knock him down there. [*They kill him.*<sup>b</sup>

\* *Smith.* If this fellow be wise, he'll never call you Jack

\* *Cade* more ; I think, he hath a very fair warning.

*Dick.* My lord, there's an army gathered together in Smithfield.

*Cade.* Come then, let's go fight with them : But, first go and set London-bridge on fire ;<sup>c</sup> and, if you can, burn down the Tower too. Come, let's away. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE VII.

*The same.* Smithfield.

*Alarum.* *Enter, on one side, CADE and his Company ; on the other, Citizens, and the King's Forces, headed by MATTHEW GOUGH. They fight ; the Citizens are routed, and MATTHEW GOUGH<sup>d</sup> is slain.*

*Cade.* So, sirs :—Now go some and pull down the Savoy ;<sup>e</sup> others to the inns of court ; down with them all.

*Dick.* I have a suit unto your lordship.

*Cade.* Be it a lordship, thou shalt have it for that word.

' *Dick.* Only, that the laws of England may come out  
' of your mouth.

' *John.* Mass, 'twill be sore law then ; for he was  
' thrust in the mouth with a spear, and 'tis not whole yet.

[*Aside.*

' *Smith.* Nay, John, it will be stinking law ; for his  
' breath stinks with eating toasted cheese. [*Aside.*

' *Cade.* I have thought upon it, it shall be so. Away,

<sup>b</sup> *They kill him.*] So Holinshed, p. 634. " He also put to execution in Southwark divers persons, some for breaking his ordinance, and other being his old acquaintance, lest they should bewraie his base lineage, disparaging him for his usurped surname of Mortimer."—STEEVENS.

<sup>c</sup> — *London-bridge on fire ;*] The houses on London-bridge were burnt in this rebellion, and many of the inhabitants perished.—MALONE.

<sup>d</sup> — *Matthew Gough.*] " A man of great wit and much experience in feats of chivalrie, the which in continual warres had spent his time in serving of the king and his father." *Holinshed*, p. 635.—STEEVENS.

<sup>e</sup> — *pull down the Savoy ;*] This trouble had been saved Cade's reformers by his predecessor Wat Tyler. It was re-edified by Henry VII.—RITSON.

‘ burn all the records of the realm ; my mouth shall be  
‘ the parliament of England.

\* *John*. Then we are like to have biting statutes, un-  
\* less his teeth be pulled out. [*Aside*.

\* *Cade*. And henceforward all things shall be in com-  
\* mon.

*Enter a Messenger.*

‘ *Mess*. My lord, a prize, a prize ! here’s the lord Say,  
‘ which sold the towns in France ; \* he that made us pay  
\* one and twenty fifteens,<sup>f</sup> and one shilling to the pound,  
\* the last subsidy.

*Enter GEORGE BEVIS, with the Lord SAY.*

‘ *Cade*. Well, he shall be beheaded for it ten times,—  
‘ Ah, thou say, thou serge,<sup>g</sup> nay, thou buckram lord ! now  
‘ art thou within point-blank of our jurisdiction regal.  
‘ What canst thou answer to my majesty, for giving up  
‘ of Normandy unto monsieur Basimecu, the dauphin of  
‘ France ? Be it known unto thee, by these presence, even  
‘ the presence of lord Mortimer, that I am the besom that  
‘ must sweep the court clean of such filth as thou art.  
‘ Thou hast most traitorously corrupted the youth of the  
‘ realm, in erecting a grammar-school : and whereas, be-  
‘ fore, our fore-fathers had no other books but the score  
‘ and the tally, thou hast caused printing to be used ;<sup>h</sup>  
‘ and, contrary to the king, his crown and dignity, thou  
‘ hast built a paper-mill. It will be proved to thy face,  
‘ that thou hast men about thee, that usually talk of a  
‘ noun, and a verb ; and such abominable words, as no  
‘ Christian ear can endure to hear. Thou hast appointed  
‘ justices of peace, to call poor men before them about  
‘ matters they were not able to answer. Moreover, thou  
‘ hast put them in prison ; and because they could not  
‘ read, thou hast hanged them ;<sup>i</sup> when, indeed, only for

<sup>f</sup> — one and twenty fifteens,] A *fifteen* was the thirtieth part of all the moveables or personal property of each subject.—MALONE.

<sup>g</sup> — thou say, thou serge,] *Say* was the old word for *silk* ; on this depends the series of degradation, from *say* to *serge*, from *serge* to *buckram*.—JOHNSON.

<sup>h</sup> — printing to be used ;] Shakspeare is a little too early with this accusation.—JOHNSON.

<sup>i</sup> — because they could not read, thou hast hanged them ;] That is, they were hanged because they could not claim the benefit of clergy.—JOHNSON.



‘ that cause they have been most worthy to live. Thou dost ride on a foot-cloth,<sup>k</sup> dost thou not ?

*Say.* What of that ?

*Cade.* Marry, thou oughtest not to let thy horse wear a cloak,<sup>l</sup> when honest men than thou go in their hose and doublets.

\* *Dick.* And work in their shirt too ; as myself, for example, that am a butcher.

*Say.* You men of Kent,—

*Dick.* What say you of Kent ?

‘ *Say.* Nothing but this : ’Tis *bona terra, mala gens.*

‘ *Cade.* Away with him, away with him ! he speaks Latin.

\* *Say.* Hear me but speak, and bear me where you will.

‘ Kent, in the commentaries Cæsar writ,

‘ Is term’d the civil’st place of all this isle :

‘ Sweet is the country, because full of riches ;

‘ The people liberal, valiant, active, wealthy ;

‘ Which makes me hope you are not void of pity.

‘ I sold not Maine, I lost not Normandy :

\* Yet, to recover them, would lose my life.

\* Justice with favour have I always done ;

\* Prayers and tears have mov’d me, gifts could never.

\* When have I aught exacted at your hands ?

\* Bent<sup>m</sup> to maintain the king, the realm, and you,

\* Large gifts have I bestow’d on learned clerks,

\* Because my book preferr’d me to the king ;

\* And—seeing ignorance is the curse of God,

\* Knowledge the wing wherewith we fly to heaven,—

\* Unless you be possess’d with devilish spirits,

\* You cannot but forbear to murder me.

\* This tongue hath parley’d unto foreign kings

\* For your behoof,—

\* *Cade.* Tut ! when struck’st thou one blow in the field ?

<sup>k</sup> ——— *Thou dost ride on a foot cloth,*] A *foot-cloth* was a kind of housing, which covered the body of the horse, and almost reached the ground. It was sometimes made of velvet, and bordered with gold lace.—MALONE.

<sup>l</sup> ——— *to let thy horse wear a cloak,*] This is a reproach truly characteristic. Nothing gives so much offence to the lower ranks of mankind, as the sight of superfluities merely ostentatious.—JOHNSON.

<sup>m</sup> *Bent*—] The old copy reads *Kent*, which renders the whole passage unintelligible: the emendation was suggested by Steevens.

- \* *Say.* Great men have reaching hands: oft have I struck
- \* Those that I never saw, and struck them dead.
- \* *Geo.* O monstrous coward! what, to come behind folks?
- \* *Say.* These cheeks are pale for watching for your good.
- \* *Cade.* Give him a box o'the ear, and that will make
- \* 'em red again.
- \* *Say.* Long sitting to determine poor men's causes Hath made me full of sickness and diseases.
- \* *Cade.* Ye shall have a hempen caudle then, and the
- \* pap of a hatchet.
- ‘ *Dick.* Why dost thou quiver, man?
- ‘ *Say.* The palsy, and not fear, provoketh me.
- ‘ *Cade.* Nay, he nods at us; as who should say, I'll be even with you. I'll see if his head will stand steadier on a pole, or no: Take him away, and behead him.
- \* *Say.* Tell me wherein I have offended most?
- \* Have I affected wealth, or honour; speak?
- \* Are my chests fill'd up with extorted gold?
- \* Is my apparel sumptuous to behold?
- \* Whom have I injur'd, that ye seek my death?
- \* These hands are free from guiltless blood-shedding,
- \* This breast from harbouring foul deceitful thoughts.
- ‘ O, let me live!
- \* *Cade.* I feel remorse in myself with his words: but
- \* I'll bridle it; he shall die, an it be but for pleading so
- \* well for his life. Away with him! he has a familiar,
- \* under his tongue;<sup>n</sup> he speaks not o'God's name. ‘Go,
- ‘ take him away, I say, and strike off his head presently:
- ‘ and then break into his son-in-law's house, sir James
- ‘ Cromer,<sup>o</sup> and strike off his head, and bring them both
- ‘ upon two poles hither.
- All.* It shall be done.

<sup>n</sup> — a familiar—] i. e. A dæmon who was supposed to attend at call.—  
STEEVENS.

<sup>o</sup> — sir James Cromer,] It was William Crowmer, sheriff of Kent, whom Cade put to death. Lord Say and he had been previously sent to the Tower, and both, at least the former, convicted of treason, at Cade's mock commission of oyer and terminer at Guildhall. See *W. Wyrcester*, p. 470.—RITSON.

- \* *Say*. Ah, countrymen! if when you make your prayers,  
 \* God should be so obdurate as yourselves,  
 \* How would it fare with your departed souls?  
 \* And therefore yet relent, and save my life.  
 \* *Cade*. Away with him, and do as I command ye.

[*Exeunt some, with Lord SAY.*

- ‘ The proudest peer in the realm shall not wear a head on  
 ‘ his shoulders, unless he pay me tribute; there shall not  
 ‘ a maid be married, but she shall pay to me her maiden-  
 ‘ head ere they have it: Man shall hold of me *in capite*;  
 ‘ and we charge and command, that their wives be as free  
 ‘ as heart can wish, or tongue can tell.  
 ‘ *Dick*. My lord, when shall we go to Cheapside, and  
 ‘ take up commodities upon our bills?<sup>p</sup>  
 ‘ *Cade*. Marry, presently.  
 ‘ *All*. O brave!

*Re-enter Rebels, with the heads of Lord SAY and his Son-in-law.*

- ‘ *Cade*. But is not this braver?—Let them kiss one another, for they loved well, when they were alive. Now part them again, lest they consult about the giving up of some more towns in France. Soldiers, defer the spoil of the city until night: for with these borne before us, instead of maces, will we ride through the streets; and, at every corner, have them kiss.—Away! [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE VIII.

Southwark.

*Alarum. Enter CADE, and all his Rabblement.*

- \* *Cade*. Up Fish-street! down Saint Magnus’ corner!  
 \* kill and knock down! throw them into the Thames!—  
 . [A Parley sounded, then a Retreat.  
 \* What noise is this I hear? Dare any be so bold to  
 \* sound retreat or parley, when I command them kill?

<sup>p</sup> — take up commodities upon our bills?] Perhaps this is an equivoque alluding to the *brown bills*, or halberds, with which the commons were anciently armed.—PERCY.

*Enter* BUCKINGHAM, and Old CLIFFORD, with Forces.

‘ *Buck.* Ay, here they be that dare and will disturb thee :

‘ Know, Cade, we come ambassadors from the king  
‘ Unto the commons, whom thou hast misled ;  
‘ And here pronounce free pardon to them all,  
‘ That will forsake thee, and go home in peace.

‘ *Clif.* What say ye, countrymen ? will ye relent,  
‘ And yield to mercy, whilst ’tis offer’d you ;  
‘ Or let a rabble lead you to your deaths ?  
‘ Who loves the king, and will embrace his pardon,  
‘ Fling up his cap, and say—God save his majesty !  
‘ Who hateth him, and honours not his father,  
‘ Henry the fifth, that made all France to quake,  
‘ Shake he his weapon at us, and pass by.

‘ *All.* God save the king ! God save the king !

‘ *Cade.* What, Buckingham, and Clifford, are ye so  
‘ brave ?—And you, base peasants, do ye believe him ?  
‘ will you needs be hanged with your pardons about your  
‘ necks ? Hath my sword therefore broke through London  
‘ Gates, that you should leave me at the White Hart in  
‘ Southwark ? I thought, ye would never have given out  
‘ these arms, till you had recovered your ancient freedom :  
‘ but you are all recreants, and dastards ; and delight to  
‘ live in slavery to the nobility. Let them break your  
‘ backs with burdens, take your houses over you heads,  
‘ ravish your wives and daughters before your faces : For  
‘ me,—I will make shift for one ; and so—God’s curse  
‘ light upon you all !

‘ *All.* We’ll follow Cade, we’ll follow Cade.

‘ *Clif.* Is Cade the son of Henry the fifth,  
‘ That thus you do exclaim—you’ll go with him ?  
‘ Will he conduct you through the heart of France,  
‘ And make the meanest of you earls and dukes ?  
‘ Alas, he hath no home, no place to fly to ;  
‘ Nor knows he how to live, but by the spoil,  
‘ Unless by robbing of your friends, and us.  
‘ Were’t not a shame, that whilst you live at jar,  
‘ The fearful French, whom you late vanquished,

' Should make a start o'er seas and vanquish you ?  
 ' Methinks, already, in this civil broil,  
 ' I see them lording it in London streets.  
 ' Crying—*Villageois!* unto all they meet.  
 ' Better, ten thousand base-born Cades miscarry,  
 ' Than you should stoop unto a Frenchman's mercy.  
 ' To France, to France, and get what you have lost ;  
 ' Spare England, for it is your native coast :  
 ' Henry hath money, you are strong and manly ;  
 ' God on our side, doubt not of victory.  
 ' *All.* A Clifford ! a Clifford ! we'll follow the king, and  
 ' Clifford.

' *Cade.* Was ever feather so lightly blown to and fro, as  
 ' this multitude ? the name of Henry the fifth hailes them  
 ' to an hundred mischiefs, and makes them leave me de-  
 ' solate. I see them lay their heads together, to surprize  
 ' me : my sword make way for me, for here is no staying.  
 ' —In despite of the devils and hell, have through the  
 ' very midst of you ! and heavens and honour be witness,  
 ' that no want of resolution in me, but only my followers'  
 ' base and ignominious treasons, makes me betake me to  
 ' my heels. [*Exit.*

' *Buck.* What, is he fled ? go some, and follow him ;  
 ' And he that brings his head unto the king,  
 ' Shall have a thousand crowns for his reward.—  
[*Exeunt some of them.*

' Follow me, soldiers ; we'll devise a mean  
 ' To reconcile you all unto the king. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE IX.

*Kenelworth Castle.*

*Enter King HENRY, Queen MARGARET, and SOMERSET,  
on the Terrace of the Castle.*

\* *K. Hen.* Was ever king, that joy'd an earthly throne,  
 \* And could command no more content than I ?  
 \* No sooner was I crept out of my cradle,  
 \* But I was made a king, at nine months old :

- \* Was never subject long'd to be a king,
- \* As I do long and wish to be a subject.

*Enter* BUCKINGHAM *and* CLIFFORD.

- \* *Buck.* Health, and glad tidings, to your majesty!
- \* *K. Hen.* Why, Buckingham, is the traitor Cade sur-
- \* Or is he but retir'd to make him strong? [priz'd?

*Enter, below, a great number of CADE'S Followers, with  
Halters about their Necks.*

- ‘ *Clif.* He's fled, my lord, and all his powers do yield;
- ‘ And humbly thus, with halters on their necks,
- ‘ Expect your highness' doom, of life, or death.
- ‘ *K. Hen.* Then, heaven, set ope thy everlasting gates,
- ‘ To entertain my vows of thanks and praise!—
- ‘ Soldiers, this day have you redeem'd your lives,
- ‘ And show'd how well you love your prince and country;
- ‘ Continue still in this so good a mind,
- ‘ And Henry, though he be infortunate,
- ‘ Assure yourselves, will never be unkind:
- ‘ And so, with thanks, and pardon to you all,
- ‘ I do dismiss you to your several countries.
- All.* God save the king! God save the king!

*Enter a Messenger.*

- \* *Mess.* Please it your grace to be advértised,
- \* The duke of York is newly come from Ireland:
- \* And with a puissant and a mighty power,
- \* Of gallowglasses, and stout kernes,<sup>1</sup>
- \* Is marching hitherward in proud array;
- \* And still proclaimeth, as he comes along,
- \* His arms are only to remove from thee
- ‘ The duke of Somerset, whom he terms a traitor.
- \* *K. Hen.* Thus stands my state, 'twixt Cade and York  
distress'd;
- \* Like to a ship, that, having 'scap'd a tempest,
- \* Is straightway calm'd and boarded with a pirate;

<sup>1</sup> *Of gallowglasses, and stout kernes,*] These were two orders of foot-soldiers among the Irish.—STEEVENS. See note to *Macbeth*, act i. sc. 2.

- \* But now is Cade driven back, his men dispers'd ;  
 \* And now is York in arms to second him.—  
 \* I pray thee, Buckingham, go forth and meet him :  
 \* And ask him, what's the reason of these arms.  
 \* Tell him, I'll send duke Edmund to the Tower ;—  
 \* And, Somerset, we will commit thee thither,  
 \* Until his army be dismiss'd from him.  
 \* *Som.* My lord,  
 \* I'll yield myself to prison willingly,  
 \* Or unto death to do my country good.  
 \* *K. Hen.* In any case, be not too rough in terms ;  
 \* For he is fierce, and cannot brook hard language.  
 \* *Buck.* I will, my lord ; and doubt not so to deal,  
 \* As all things shall redound unto your good.  
 \* *K. Hen.* Come, wife, let's in, and learn to govern  
     better ;  
 \* For yet may England curse my wretched reign. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE X.

Kent. Iden's Garden.<sup>r</sup>*Enter CADE.*

- \* *Cade.* Fye on ambition ! fye on myself ; that have a  
 \* sword, and yet am ready to famish ! These five days  
 \* have I hid me in these woods ; and durst not peep out,  
 \* for all the country is lay'd for me ; but now I am so  
 \* hungry, that if I might have a lease of my life for a  
 \* thousand years, I could stay no longer. Wherefore,  
 \* on a brick wall have I climbed into this garden ; to see  
 \* if I can eat grass, or pick a sallet another while, which  
 \* is not amiss to cool a man's stomach this hot weather.  
 \* And, I think, this word sallet was born to do me good :  
 \* for, many a time, but for a sallet,<sup>s</sup> my brain-pan had  
 \* been cleft with a brown bill ; and many a time, when I  
 \* have been dry, and bravely marching, it hath served me  
 \* instead of a quart pot to drink in ; And now the word  
 \* sallet must serve me to feed on.

<sup>r</sup> Kent. *Iden's Garden.*] This Iden was the new sheriff of Kent, who had followed Cade from Rochester. *W. Worcester*, p. 472.—RITSON.

<sup>s</sup> — sallet,] i. e. *A kind of helmet, from sallade, Fr.*

*Enter IDEN, with Servants.*

‘ *Iden.* Lord, who would live turmoiled in the court,  
 ‘ And may enjoy such quiet walks as these?  
 ‘ This small inheritance, my father left me,  
 ‘ Contenteth me, and is worth a monarchy.  
 ‘ I seek not to wax great by others’ waning;  
 ‘ Or gather wealth, I care not with what envy;<sup>†</sup>  
 ‘ Sufficeth, that I have maintains my state,  
 ‘ And sends the poor well pleased from my gate.

‘ *Cade.* Here’s the lord of the soil come to seize me for  
 ‘ a stray, for entering his fee-simple without leave. Ah,  
 ‘ villain, thou wilt betray me, and get a thousand crowns  
 ‘ of the king for carrying my head to him; but I’ll make  
 ‘ thee eat iron like an ostrich, and swallow my sword like  
 ‘ a great pin, ere thou and I part.

‘ *Iden.* Why, rude companion, whatsoe’er thou be,  
 ‘ I know thee not; Why then should I betray thee?  
 ‘ Is’t not enough, to break into my garden,  
 ‘ And, like a thief, to come to rob my grounds,  
 ‘ Climbing my walls in spite of me the owner,  
 ‘ But thou wilt brave me with these saucy terms?

*Cade.* Brave thee? ay, by the best blood that ever was  
 broached, and beard thee too. Look on me well: I have  
 eat no meat these five days: yet, come thou and thy five  
 men, and if I do not leave you all as dead as a door nail,  
 I pray God, I may never eat grass more.

‘ *Iden.* Nay, it shall ne’er be said, while England stands,  
 That Alexander Iden, an esquire of Kent,  
 Took odds to combat a poor famish’d man.  
 ‘ Oppose thy steadfast gazing eyes to mine,  
 ‘ See if thou canst outface me with thy looks.  
 ‘ Set limb to limb, and thou art far the lesser;  
 ‘ Thy hand is but a finger to my fist;  
 ‘ Thy leg a stick, compared with this truncheon;  
 ‘ My foot shall fight with all the strength thou hast;  
 ‘ And if mine arm be heaved in the air,  
 ‘ Thy grave is digg’d already in the earth.

<sup>†</sup> Or *gather wealth, I care not with what envy;*] i. e. Or accumulate riches, without regarding the *envy* or odium, that I may incur in the acquisition. *Envy* is often used in this sense by old writers.—MALONE.



‘ As for more words, whose greatness answers words,  
‘ Let this my sword report what speech forbears.”

\* *Cade*. By my valour, the most complete champion  
\* that ever I heard.—‘ Steel, if thou turn the edge, or cut  
‘ not out the burly-boned clown in chines of beef ere thou  
‘ sleep in thy sheath, I beseech God on my knees, thou  
‘ mayest be turned to hobnails. [*They fight. CADE falls.*]  
‘ O, I am slain! famine, and no other, hath slain me: let  
‘ ten thousand devils come against me, and give me but  
‘ the ten meals I have lost, and I’d defy them all. Wither,  
‘ garden; and be henceforth a burying place to all that  
‘ do dwell in this house, because the unconquered soul of  
‘ Cade is fled.

‘ *Iden*. Is’t Cade that I have slain, that monstrous trai-  
‘ sword, I will hallow thee for this thy deed, [tor?  
‘ And hang thee o’er my tomb, when I am dead :

\* Ne’er shall this blood be wiped from thy point ;

\* But thou shalt wear it as a herald’s coat,

\* To emblaze the honour that thy master got.

‘ *Cade*. *Iden*, farewell ; and be proud of thy victory ;  
‘ Tell Kent from me, she hath lost her best man, and ex-  
‘ hort all the world to be cowards ; for I, that never  
‘ feared any, am vanquished by famine, not by valour.

[*Dies*.

\* *Iden*. How much thou wrong’st me,<sup>x</sup> heaven, be my  
judge.

\* Die, damned wretch, the curse of her that bare thee !

\* And as I thrust thy body in with my sword,

\* So wish I, I might thrust thy soul to hell.<sup>y</sup>

<sup>u</sup> *As for more words, whose greatness answers words,*

*Let this my sword report what speech forbears.*] Sir Thomas Haumer and after him, Dr. Warburton, read :

*As for more words, let this my sword report*

*(Whose greatness answers words) what speech forbears.*

It seems to be a poor praise of a sword, that *its greatness answers words*, whatever be the meaning of the expression. The old reading, though somewhat obscure, seems to me more capable of explanation. *For more words, whose pomp and tumour may answer words, and only words, I shall forbear them, and refer the rest to my sword.*—JOHNSON.

<sup>x</sup> *How much thou wrong’st me,*] That is, in undervaluing his prowess.

<sup>y</sup> *So wish I, I might thrust thy soul to hell, &c.*] Not to dwell upon the wickedness of this horrid wish, with which *Iden* debases his character, the whole speech is wild and confused. To draw a man by his heels, headlong, is somewhat difficult ; nor can I discover how the dunghill would be his grave, if his

- ‘ Hence will I drag thee headlong by the heels  
 ‘ Unto a dunghill, which shall be thy grave,  
 ‘ And there cut off thy most ungracious head;  
 ‘ Which I will bear in triumph to the king,  
 ‘ Leaving thy trunk for crows to feed upon.

[*Exit, dragging out the Body.*]

## ACT V.

SCENE I.—*The same. Fields between Dartford and Blackheath.*

*The King's Camp on one side. On the other, enter YORK attended, with Drum and Colours: his Forces at some distance.*

- ‘ *York.* From Ireland thus comes York, to claim his  
 ‘ And pluck the crown from feeble Henry's head: [right,  
 ‘ Ring, bells, aloud; burn, bonfires, clear and bright;  
 ‘ To entertain great England's lawful king.  
 Ah, *sancta majestas!* who would not buy thee dear?  
 ‘ Let them obey, that know not how to rule;  
 ‘ This hand was made to handle nought but gold:  
 ‘ I cannot give due action to my words,  
 ‘ Except a sword, or scepter balance it.<sup>z</sup>  
 ‘ A scepter shall it have, have I a soul;<sup>a</sup>  
 ‘ On which I'll toss the flower-de-luce of France.

*Enter BUCKINGHAM.*

- ‘ Whom have we here? Buckingham, to disturb me?  
 ‘ The king hath sent him, sure: I must dissemble:  
 ‘ *Buck.* York, if thou meanest well, I greet thee well.  
 ‘ *York.* Humphrey of Buckingham, I accept thy  
     greeting.  
 ‘ Art thou a messenger, or come of pleasure?

trunk were left to be fed upon by crows. These I conceive not to be the faults of corruption, but negligence, and therefore do not attempt correction.—JOHNSON. By *headlong* the poet means, with his head trailing on the ground.—MALONE.

<sup>z</sup> — *balance it,*] That is, balance my hand.—JOHNSON.

<sup>a</sup> *A scepter shall it have, have I a soul;*] York means to say—If I have a soul, my hand shall not be without a sceptre.—STEEVENS.

‘ *Buck.* A messenger, from Henry, our dread liege,  
 ‘ To know the reason of these arms in peace ;  
 ‘ Or why, thou—being a subject as I am,—  
 ‘ Against thy oath and true allegiance sworn,  
 ‘ Should’st raise so great a power without his leave,  
 ‘ Or dare to bring thy force so near the court.

‘ *York.* Scarce can I speak, my choler is so

great.

‘ O, I could hew up rocks, and fight with flint,  
 ‘ I am so angry at these abject terms ;  
 ‘ And now, like Ajax Telamonius,  
 ‘ On sheep or oxen could I spend my fury !  
 ‘ I am far better born than is the king ;  
 ‘ More like a king, more kingly in my thoughts :  
 ‘ But I must make fair weather yet a while,  
 ‘ Till Henry be more weak, and I more

strong.—

} *Aside.*

‘ O Buckingham, I pr’ythee, pardon me,  
 ‘ That I have given no answer all this while,  
 ‘ My mind was troubled with deep melancholy.  
 ‘ The cause why I have brought this army hither,  
 ‘ Is—to remove proud Somerset from the king,  
 ‘ Seditious to his grace, and to the state.

‘ *Buck.* That is too much presumption on thy part :

‘ But if thy arms be to no other end,  
 ‘ The king hath yielded unto thy demand ;  
 ‘ The duke of Somerset is in the Tower.

*York.* Upon thine honour, is he prisoner ?

*Buck.* Upon mine honour he is prisoner.

‘ *York.* Then, Buckingham, I do dismiss my powers.—

‘ Soldiers, I thank you all ; disperse yourselves ;

‘ Meet me to-morrow in Saint George’s field,

‘ You shall have pay, and every thing you wish.

\* And let my sovereign, virtuous Henry,

\* Command my eldest son,—nay, all my sons,

\* As pledges of my fealty and love,

\* I’ll send them all as willing as I live ;

\* Lands, goods, horse, armour, any thing I have

‘ Is his to use, so Somerset may die.

- ‘ *Buck.* York, I commend this kind submission :  
 ‘ We twain will go into his highness’ tent.

*Enter King HENRY, attended.*

- ‘ *K. Hen.* Buckingham, doth York intend no harm  
 to us,  
 ‘ That thus he marcheth with thee arm in arm ?  
 \* *York.* In all submission and humility,  
 \* *York* doth present himself unto your highness.  
 \* *K. Hen.* Then what intend these forces thou dost  
 bring ?  
 ‘ *York.* To heave the traitor Somerset from hence ;  
 ‘ And fight against the monstrous rebel Cade,  
 ‘ Who since I heard to be discomfited.

*Enter IDEN, with CADE’S Head.*

- ‘ *Iden.* If one so rude, and of so mean condition,  
 ‘ May pass into the presence of a king,  
 ‘ Lo, I present your grace a traitor’s head,  
 ‘ The head of Cade, whom I in combat slew.  
 ‘ *K. Hen.* The head of Cade ?—Great God, how just  
 art thou !—  
 ‘ O, let me view his visage being dead,  
 ‘ That living wrought me such exceeding trouble.  
 ‘ Tell me, my friend, art thou the man that slew him ?  
 ‘ *Iden.* I was, an’t like your majesty.  
 ‘ *K. Hen.* How art thou call’d ? and what is thy de-  
 gree ?  
 ‘ *Iden.* Alexander Iden, that’s my name ;  
 ‘ A poor esquire of Kent, that loves his king.  
 \* *Buck.* So please it you, my lord, ’twere not amiss  
 \* He were created knight for his good service.  
 ‘ *K. Hen.* Iden, kneel down ; [*he kneels.*] Rise up a  
 knight.  
 ‘ We give thee for reward a thousand marks ;  
 ‘ And will, that thou henceforth attend on us.  
 ‘ *Iden.* May Iden live to merit such a bounty,  
 ‘ And never live but true unto his liege !

- ‘ *K. Hen.* See, Buckingham! Somerset comes with the queen;  
 ‘ Go, bid her hide him quickly from the duke.

*Enter Queen MARGARET and SOMERSET.*

- ‘ *Q. Mar.* For thousand Yorks he shall not hide his head,  
 ‘ But boldly stand, and front him to his face.  
 ‘ *York.* How now! Is Somerset at liberty?  
 ‘ Then, York, unloose thy long-imprison’d thoughts,  
 ‘ And let thy tongue be equal with thy heart.  
 ‘ Shall I endure the sight of Somerset?—  
 ‘ False king! why hast thou broken faith with me,  
 ‘ Knowing how hardly I can brook abuse?  
 ‘ King did I call thee? no, thou art not king;  
 ‘ Not fit to govern and rule multitudes,  
 ‘ Which dar’st not, no, nor canst not rule a traitor.  
 ‘ That head of thine doth not become a crown;  
 ‘ Thy hand is made to grasp a palmer’s staff,  
 ‘ And not to grace an awful princely scepter.  
 ‘ That gold must round engirt these brows of mine;  
 ‘ Whose smile and frown, like to Achilles’ spear,  
 ‘ Is able with the change to kill and cure.  
 ‘ Here is a hand to hold a scepter up,  
 ‘ And with the same to act controlling laws.  
 ‘ Give place; by heaven, thou shalt rule no more  
 ‘ O’er him, whom heaven created for thy ruler.  
 ‘ *Som.* O monstrous traitor!—I arrest thee, York,  
 ‘ Of capital treason ’gainst the king and crown:  
 \* Obey, audacious traitor; kneel for grace.  
 \* *York.* Would’st have me kneel? first let me ask of  
 \* If they can brook I bow a knee to man.— [these,  
 \* Sirrah, call in my sons to be my bail;  
 [Exit an Attendant.  
 \* I know, ere they will have me go to ward,  
 \* They’ll pawn their swords for my enfranchisement.  
 ‘ *Q. Mar.* Call hither Clifford; bid him come amain,  
 [Exit BUCKINGHAM.

<sup>b</sup> — of these.] York evidently means his sons, whom he had just called for.—M. MASON.

- \* To say, if that the bastard boys of York
- \* Shall be the surety for their traitor father.
- \* *York.* O blood-bespotted Neapolitan,
- \* Outcast of Naples, England's bloody scourge!
- ‘ The sons of York, thy betters in their birth,
- ‘ Shall be their father's bail; and bane to those
- ‘ That for my surety will refuse the boys.

*Enter EDWARD and RICHARD PLANTAGENET, with Forces, at one side; at the other, with Forces also, old CLIFFORD and his Son.*

- \* See, where they come; I'll warrant they'll make it good.
- \* *Q. Mar.* And here come Clifford, to deny their bail.
- ‘ *Clif.* Health and all happiness to my lord the king.
- [*Kneels.*]
- ‘ *York.* I thank thee, Clifford: Say, what news with
- ‘ Nay, do not fright us with an angry look: [thee?
- ‘ We are thy sovereign, Clifford, kneel again;
- ‘ For thy mistaking so, we pardon thee.
- ‘ *Clif.* This is my king, York, I do not mistake;
- ‘ But thou mistak'st me much, to think I do:—
- ‘ To Bedlam with him! is the man grown mad?
- ‘ *K. Hen.* Ay, Clifford; a bedlam and ambitious humour
- ‘ Makes him oppose himself against his king.
- ‘ *Clif.* He is a traitor; let him to the Tower,
- ‘ And chop away that factious pate of his.
- ‘ *Q. Mar.* He is arrested, but will not obey;
- ‘ His sons, he says, shall give their words for him.
- ‘ *York.* Will you not, sons?
- ‘ *Edw.* Ay, noble father, if our words will serve.
- ‘ *Rich.* And if words will not, then our weapons shall.
- \* *Clif.* Why, what a brood of traitors have we here!
- \* *York.* Look in a glass, and call thy image so;
- \* I am thy king, and thou a false-heart traitor.—
- ‘ Call hither to the stake my two brave bears,
- \* That, with the very shaking of their chains,
- \* They may astonish these fell lurking curs;
- \* Bid Salisbury, and Warwick, come<sup>c</sup> to me.

<sup>c</sup> *Call hither to the stake, my two brave bears,—*

*Bid Salisbury, and Warwick, come—*] The Nevils, earls of Warwick, had a bear and ragged staff for their cognizance.—Sir J. HAWKINS.

*Drums. Enter WARWICK and SALISBURY, with Forces.*

‘ *Clif.* Are these thy bears? we’ll bait thy bears to death,

‘ And manacle the bear-ward in their chains,

‘ If thou dar’st bring them to the baiting-place.

\* *Rich.* Oft have I seen a hot o’er-weening cur

\* Run back and bite, because he was withheld;

\* Who, being suffer’d<sup>d</sup> with the bear’s fell paw,

\* Hath clapp’d his tail between his legs, and cry’d:

\* And such a piece of service will you do,

\* If you oppose yourselves to match lord Warwick.

\* *Clif.* Hence, heap of wrath, foul indigested lump,

\* As crooked in thy manners as thy shape!

\* *York.* Nay, we shall heat you thoroughly anon.

\* *Clif.* Take heed, lest by your heat you burn yourselves.

\* *K. Hen.* Why, Warwick, hath thy knee forgot to bow?

\* Old Salisbury,—shame to thy silver hair,

\* Thou mad misleader of thy brain-sick son!—

\* What, wilt thou on thy death-bed play the ruffian,

\* And seek for sorrow with thy spectacles?

\* O, where is faith? O, where is loyalty?

\* If it be banish’d from the frosty head,

\* Where shall it find a harbour in the earth?—

\* Wilt thou go dig a grave to find out war,

\* And shame thine honourable age with blood?

\* Why art thou old, and want’st experience?

\* Or wherefore dost abuse it, if thou hast it?

\* For shame! in duty bend thy knee to me,

\* That bows unto the grave with mickle age.

\* *Sal.* My lord, I have consider’d with myself

\* The title of this most renowned duke;

\* And in my conscience do repute his grace

\* The rightful heir to England’s royal seat.

<sup>d</sup> — being suffer’d—] Being suffered to approach to the bear’s fell paw. Such may be the meaning. I am not, however, sure, but the poet meant, being in a state of *sufferance* or pain.—MALONE.

\* *K. Hen.* Hast thou not sworn allegiance unto me ?

\* *Sal.* I have.

\* *K. Hen.* Canst thou dispense with heaven for such an oath ?

\* *Sal.* It is great sin, to swear unto a sin ;

\* But greater sin, to keep a sinful oath.

\* Who can be bound by any solemn vow

\* To do a murderous deed, to rob a man,

\* To force a spotless virgin's chastity,

\* To reave the orphan of his patrimony,

\* To wring the widow from her custom'd right ;

\* And have no other reason for this wrong,

\* But that he was bound by a solemn oath ?

*Q. Mar.* A subtle traitor needs no sophister.

‘ *K. Hen.* Call Buckingham, and bid him arm himself.

‘ *York.* Call Buckingham, and all the friends thou hast,

‘ I am resolv'd for death, or dignity.

‘ *Clif.* The first I warrant thee, if dreams prove true.

‘ *War.* You were best to go to bed, and dream again,

To keep thee from the tempest of the field.

*Clif.* I am resolv'd to bear a greater storm,

Than any thou canst conjure up to-day :

And that I'll write upon thy burgonet,\*

Might I but know thee by thy household badge.

*War.* Now, by my father's badge, old Nevil's crest,

The rampant bear chain'd to the ragged staff,

This day I'll wear aloft my burgonet,

(As on a mountain-top the cedar shows,

That keeps his leaves in spite of any storm,)

Even to affright thee with the view thereof.

*Clif.* And from thy burgonet I'll rend thy bear,

And tread it under foot with all contempt,

‘ Despight the bearward that protects the bear.

‘ *Y. Clif.* And so to arms, victorious father,

‘ To quell the rebels, and their 'complices.

*Rich.* Fye! charity, for shame! speak not in spite,

For you shall sup with *Jesu Christ* to-night.

\* — burgonet,] i. e. A helmet.



‘ *Y. Clif.* Foul stigmatick,<sup>f</sup> that’s more than thou canst tell.

‘ *Rich.* If not in heaven, you’ll surely sup in hell.

[*Exeunt severally.*]

## SCENE II.

Saint Albar’s.

*Alarums : Excursions. Enter WARWICK.*

*War.* Clifford of Cumberland, ’tis Warwick calls !  
And if thou dost not hide thee from the bear,  
Now,—when the angry trumpet sounds alarm,  
And dead men’s cries do fill the empty air,—  
Clifford, I say, come forth and fight with me !  
Proud northern lord, Clifford of Cumberland,  
Warwick is hoarse with calling thee to arms.

*Enter YORK.*

‘ How now, my noble lord ? what all a-foot ?

‘ *York.* The deadly-handed Clifford slew my steed ;

‘ But match to match I have encounter’d him,

‘ And made a prey for carrion kites and crows

‘ Even of the bonny beast he lov’d so well.

*Enter CLIFFORD.*

‘ *War.* Of one or both of us the time is come.

*York.* Hold, Warwick, seek thee out some other chace,  
For I myself must hunt this deer to death.

*War.* Then, nobly, York ; ’tis for a crown thou fight’st.—

‘ As I intend, Clifford, to thrive to-day,

It grieves my soul to leave thee unassail’d.

[*Exit WARWICK.*]

‘ *Clif.* What seest thou in me, York ? why dost thou pause ?

‘ *York.* With thy brave bearing should I be in love,

‘ But that thou art so fast mine enemy.

<sup>f</sup> *Foul stigmatick,*] A *stigmatick* is one on whom nature has set a mark of deformity ; a stigma.—STEEVENS.

‘ *Clif.* Nor should thy prowess want praise and esteem,  
 ‘ But that ’tis shown ignobly, and in treason.

‘ *York.* So let it help me now against thy sword,

‘ As I in justice and true right express it!

‘ *Clif.* My soul and body on the action both!—

‘ *York.* A dreadful lay!<sup>s</sup>—address thee instantly.

[*They fight, and CLIFFORD falls.*

‘ *Clif.* *La fin couronne les œuvres.*

[*Dies.*<sup>b</sup>

‘ *York.* Thus war hath given thee peace, for thou art still.

‘ Peace with his soul, heaven, if it be thy will. [Exit.

*Enter young CLIFFORD.*

\* *Y. Clif.* Shame and confusion! all is on the rout;

\* Fear frames disorder, and disorder wounds

\* Where it should guard. O war, thou son of hell,

\* Whom angry heavens do make their minister,

\* Throw in the frozen bosoms of our part

\* Hot coals of vengeance!—Let no soldier fly:

\* He that is truly dedicate to war,

\* Hath no self-love; nor he, that loves himself,

\* Hath not essentially, but by circumstance,

\* The name of valour.—O, let the vile world end,

[*Seeing his dead Father.*

\* And the promised flames<sup>i</sup> of the last day

\* Knit earth and heaven together!

\* Now let the general trumpet blow his blast,

\* Particularities and petty sounds

\* To cease!<sup>k</sup> Wast thou ordain’d, dear father,

\* To lose thy youth in peace, and to achieve<sup>l</sup>

\* The silver livery of advised<sup>m</sup> age;

<sup>s</sup> *A dreadful lay!*] A dreadful wager; a tremendous stake.—JOHNSON.

<sup>b</sup> *Dies.*] Our author, in making Clifford fall by the hand of York, has departed from the truth of history; a practice not uncommon to him when he does his utmost to make his characters considerable. This circumstance, however, serves to prepare the reader or spectator for the vengeance afterwards taken by Clifford’s son on York and Rutland.

It is remarkable, that at the beginning of the third part of this historical play, the poet has forgot this occurrence, and there represents Clifford’s death as it really happened.—PENCY.

<sup>i</sup> — *promised*—] i. e. Sent before their time. The sense is, let the flames reserved for the last day be sent now.—WARBURTON.

<sup>k</sup> *To cease!*]—is to stop. <sup>l</sup> — *to achieve*]—is to obtain.

<sup>m</sup> — *advised*—] i. e. Wise, experienced.

- \* And, in thy reverence, and thy chair-days, thus  
 \* To die in ruffian battle?—Even at this sight,  
 \* My heart is turn'd to stone : and, while 'tis mine,  
 \* It shall be stony. York not our old men spares ;  
 \* No more will I their babes : tears virginal  
 \* Shall be to me even as the dew to fire ;  
 \* And beauty, that the tyrant oft reclaims,  
 \* Shall to my flaming wrath be oil and flax.  
 \* Henceforth, I will not have to do with pity :  
 \* Meet I an infant of the house of York,  
 \* Into as many gobbets will I cut it,  
 \* As wild Medea young Absyrtus did ;<sup>n</sup>  
 \* In cruelty will I seek out my fame.  
 ' Come, thou new ruin of old Clifford's house ;  
[Taking up the Body.]
 ' As did Æneas old Anchises bear,  
 ' So bear I thee upon my manly shoulders ;  
 \* But then Æneas bare a living load,  
 \* Nothing so heavy as these woes of mine. [Exit.]

*Enter* RICHARD PLANTAGENET *and* SOMERSET, *fighting,*  
*and SOMERSET is killed.*

*Rich.* So, lie thou there ;—

- ' For, underneath an alehouse' paltry sign,  
 The Castle in Saint Alban's, Somerset  
 Hath made the wizard famous in his death.<sup>o</sup>  
 \* Sword, hold thy temper : heart, be wrathful still :  
 \* Priests pray for enemies, but princes kill. [Exit.]

*Alarums : Excursions. Enter* King HENRY, Queen  
 MARGARET, *and others, retreating.*

- ' *Q. Mar.* Away, my lord! you are slow ; for shame,  
 away !

<sup>n</sup> *As wild Medea, &c.*] When Medea fled with Jason from Colchos, she murdered her brother Absyrtus, and cut his body into several pieces, that her father might be prevented for some time from pursuing her. See Ovid. *Trist.* lib. iii. el. 9.—MALONE.

<sup>o</sup> The death of Somerset here accomplishes that equivocal prediction given by Jourdain, the witch, concerning this duke : which we met with in the first act of this play :

“ Let him shun castles ;  
 Safer shall he be upon the sandy plains,  
 Than where castles mounted stand.”

i. e. The representation of a castle, mounted for a sign.—THEOBALD.

- \* *K. Hen.* Can we outrun the heavens? good Margaret,  
stay.
- \* *Q. Mar.* What are you made of? you'll not fight,  
nor fly:
- \* Now is it manhood, wisdom, and defence,  
\* To give the enemy way; and to secure us  
\* By what we can, which can no more but fly.  
[*Alarum afar off.*]
- \* If you be ta'en, we then should see the bottom  
\* Of all our fortunes: but if we haply scape,  
\* (As well we may, if not through your neglect,)  
\* We shall to London get: where you are lov'd;  
\* And where this breach, now in our fortunes made,  
\* May readily be stopp'd.

*Enter young CLIFFORD.*

- \* *Y. Clif.* But that my heart's on future mischief set,  
\* I would speak blasphemy ere bid you fly;  
\* But fly you must; uncurable discomfit  
\* Reigns in the hearts of all our present parts.<sup>p</sup>  
\* Away, for your relief! and we will live  
\* To see their day, and them our fortune give:  
\* Away, my lord, away! [Exit.]

### SCENE III.

*Fields near Saint Alban's.*

*Alarum: Retreat. Flourish; then enter YORK, RICHARD PLANTAGENET, WARWICK, and Soldiers, with Drum and Colours.*

- \* *York.* Of Salisbury, who can report of him;  
\* That winter lion, who, in rage, forgets  
\* Aged contusions and all brush of time;<sup>q</sup>  
\* And like a gallant in the brow of youth,<sup>r</sup>  
\* Repairs him with occasion? this happy day

<sup>p</sup> — *parts.*] i. e. *Party*; the words were synonymous.

<sup>q</sup> — *brush of time*;) i. e. The gradual detrition of time.—STEEVENS.

<sup>r</sup> — *the brow of youth,*] i. e. *The height of youth*, as the *brow* of a hill is its summit.—STEEVENS.

\* Is not itself, nor have we won one foot,

\* If Salisbury be lost.

‘ *Rich.*

My noble father,

‘ Three times to-day I holp him to his horse,

‘ Three times bestrid him,<sup>s</sup> thrice I led him off,

‘ Persuaded him from any further act :

‘ But still, where danger was, still there I met him ;

\* And like rich hangings in a homely house,

\* So was his will in his old feeble body.

\* But, noble as he is, look where he comes.

*Enter SALISBURY.*

‘ *Sal.* Now, by my sword, well hast thou fought to-day ;

‘ By the mass, so did we all.—I thank you, Richard :

‘ God knows, how long it is I have to live ;

‘ And it hath pleas’d him, that three times to-day

‘ You have defended me from imminent death.—

\* Well, lords, we have not got that which we have :<sup>t</sup>

\* ’Tis not enough our foes are this time fled,

\* Being opposites of such repairing nature.<sup>u</sup>

‘ *York.* I know, our safety is to follow them ;

‘ For, as I hear, the king is fled to London,

‘ To call a present court of parliament.

‘ Let us pursue him, ere the writs go forth :—

‘ What says lord Warwick ? shall we after them ?

*War.* After them ! nay, before them, if we can.

Now by my faith, lords, ’twas a glorious day :

Saint Alban’s battle, won by famous York,

Shall be eterniz’d in all age to come.—

Sound, drums and trumpets ;—and to London all :

And more such days as these to us befall ! [*Exeunt.*

<sup>s</sup> *Three times bestrid him,*] That is, three times I saw him fallen, and, striding over him, defended him till he recovered.—JONNSON.

<sup>t</sup> *Well, lords, we have not got that which we have:]* i. e. We have not secured, we are not sure of retaining, that which we have acquired.—MALONE.

<sup>u</sup> *Being opposites of such repairing nature.]* Being enemies that are likely so soon to rally and recover themselves from this defeat. *To repair*, in our author’s language, is *to renovate*.—MALONE.

408





M. No. 24



- 23

THIRD PART OF  
KING HENRY VI.

---

THIS historical drama, like the preceding one, was not printed in its present form till it appeared in the folio edition of our author's works, in 1623. It was formed on a play by Marlowe, or by Marlowe, Peele, and Greene, called *The True Tragedy of Richard Duke of York, and the good King Henry the Sixth; or, The Second Part of the Contention of York and Lancaster*. Shakspeare's alteration of this original play was made, according to Malone, in 1591.

The lines which he retained as he found them, are, as in the previous play, printed in the usual manner; those speeches which he altered or expanded, are distinguished by inverted commas; and to all the lines entirely composed by Shakspeare, asterisks are prefixed.

The play opens just after the first battle of Saint Albans, [May 23, 1455,] wherein the York faction carried the day; and closes with the murder of King Henry VI. and the birth of prince Edward, afterwards Edward V. [November 4, 1471.] So that this history takes in the space of full sixteen years.

PERSONS REPRESENTED.

King HENRY the Sixth.

EDWARD, *prince of Wales, his son.*

LEWIS XI. *king of France.*

Duke of SOMERSET. Duke of EXETER. }  
 Earl of OXFORD. Earl of NORTHUM- } *lords on King*  
 BERLAND. Earl of WESTMORELAND. } *HENRY'S side.*  
 Lord CLIFFORD.

RICHARD PLANTAGENET, *duke of York.*

EDWARD, *earl of March, afterwards*

*King Edward IV.*

EDMUND, *earl of Rutland,* } *his sons.*

GEORGE, *afterwards duke of Clarence,*

RICHARD, *afterwards duke of Gloucester,*

*Duke of NORFOLK,*

*Marquis of MONTAGUE,*

*Earl of WARWICK,*

*Earl of PEMBROKE,*

*Lord HASTINGS,*

*Lord STAFFORD,*

*Sir JOHN MORTIMER,* } *uncles to the duke of YORK.*

*Sir HUGH MORTIMER,* }

*HENRY, earl of Richmond, a youth.*

*Lord RIVERS, brother to Lady Grey. Sir WILLIAM*

*STANLEY. Sir JOHN MONTGOMERY. Sir JOHN*

*SOMERVILLE. Tutor to Rutland. Mayor of York.*

*Lieutenant of the Tower. A Nobleman. Two Keepers. A*

*Huntsman. A Son that has killed his father. A Father*

*that has killed his son.*

Queen MARGARET.

*Lady GREY, afterwards queen to Edward IV.*

*BONA, sister to the French queen.*

*Soldiers, and other Attendants on King Henry and King  
 Edward, Messengers, Watchmen, &c.*

SCENE, *during part of the third act, in France; during all  
 the rest of the play, in England.*

THIRD PART OF  
KING HENRY VI.<sup>a</sup>

---

ACT I.

SCENE I.—London. *The Parliament-House.*

*Drums. Some Soldiers of YORK'S Party break in. Then, Enter the Duke of YORK, EDWARD, RICHARD, NORFOLK, MONTAGUE, WARWICK, and others, with white Roses in their Hats.*

*War.* I WONDER, how the king escap'd our hands.

*York.* While we pursu'd the horsemen of the north,  
He slyly stole away, and left his men :  
Whereat the great lord of Northumberland,  
Whose warlike ears could never brook retreat,  
' Cheer'd up the drooping army ; and himself,  
' Lord Clifford, and lord Stafford, all a-breast,  
' Charg'd our main battle's front, and, breaking in,  
' Were by the swords of common soldiers slain.<sup>b</sup>

*Edw.* Lord Stafford's father, duke of Buckingham,  
' Is either slain, or wounded dangerous :  
I cleft his beaver with a downright blow ;  
' That this is true, father, behold his blood.

*[Showing his bloody Sword.*

*Mont.* And, brother, here's the earl of Wiltshire's  
blood, *[To YORK, shewing his.*  
Whom I encounter'd as the battles join'd.

<sup>a</sup> *Third Part of King Henry VI.*] This play is only divided from the former for the convenience of exhibition ; for the series of action is continued without interruption, nor are any two scenes of any play more closely connected than the last scene of this play with the last of the former.—JOHNSON.

<sup>b</sup> *Were by the swords of common soldiers slain.*] This is an inadvertency: the elder Clifford was slain by York, and his son lives to revenge his death.—M. MASON.

*Rich.* Speak thou for me, and tell them what I did.<sup>c</sup>

[*Throwing down the duke of SOMERSET'S Head.*]

\* *York.* Richard hath best deserv'd of all my sons.—

What, is your grace dead, my lord of Somerset?

*Norf.* Such hope have all the line of John of Gaunt!

*Rich.* Thus do I hope to shake king Henry's head.

*War.* And so do I.—Victorious prince of York,

Before I see thee seated on that throne

Which now the house of Lancaster usurps,

I vow by heaven, these eyes shall never close.

This is the palace of the fearful king,

' And this the regal seat : possess it, York ;

For it is thine, and not king Henry's heirs'.

*York.* Assist me then, sweet Warwick, and I will ;

' For hither we have broken in by force.

*Norf.* We'll all assist you ; he, that flies, shall die.

*York.* Thanks, gentle Norfolk,—Stay by me, my lords ;—

' And, soldiers, stay, and lodge by me this night.

*War.* And, when the king comes, offer him no violence,

' Unless he seek to thrust you out by force. [*They retire.*]

\* *York.* The queen, this day, here holds her parliament,

\* But little thinks, we shall be of her council :

\* By words, or blows, here let us win our right.

*Rich.* Arm'd as we are, let's stay within this house.

*War.* The bloody parliament shall this be call'd,

Unless Plantagenet, duke of York, be king ;

And bashful Henry depos'd, whose cowardice

Hath made us by-words to our enemies.

' *York.* Then leave me not, my lords ; be resolute ;

I mean to take possession of my right.

*War.* Neither the king, nor he that loves him best,

' The proudest he that holds up Lancaster,

Dares stir a wing, if Warwick shake his bells.<sup>d</sup>

<sup>c</sup> — and tell them what I did.] At the time of the first battle of St. Alban's, at which Richard is represented in the last scene of the preceding play to have fought, he was but one year old, having been born at Fotheringay Castle, Oct. 21, 1454. At the time to which the third scene of the first act of this play is referred, he was but six years old, and in the fifth act, in which Henry is represented as having been killed by him in the Tower, not more than sixteen years and eight months.—MALONE.

<sup>d</sup> — if Warwick shake his bells.] The allusion is to falconry. The hawks had sometimes little bells hung upon them, perhaps to dare the birds ; that is, to fright them from rising.—JOHNSON.

‘ I’ll plant Plantagenet, root him up who dares :—  
Resolve thee, Richard ; claim the English crown.

[WARWICK leads YORK to the Throne, who  
seats himself.

*Flourish.* Enter KING HENRY, CLIFFORD, NORTHUMBERLAND, WESTMORELAND, EXETER, and others, with red Roses in their Hats.

*K. Hen.* My lords, look where the sturdy rebel sits,  
Even in the chair of state ! belike, he means,  
(Back’d by the power of Warwick, that false peer,)  
To aspire unto the crown, and reign as king.—  
Earl of Northumberland, he slew thy father ;—  
And thine, lord Clifford ; and you both have vow’d re-  
venge

On him, his sons, his favourites, and his friends.

‘ *North.* If I be not, heavens, be reveng’d on me !

*Clif.* The hope thereof makes Clifford mourn in steel.

*West.* What, shall we suffer this ? let’s pluck him down :

‘ My heart for anger burns, I cannot brook it.

*K. Hen.* Be patient, gentle earl of Westmoreland.

*Clif.* Patience is for poltroons, and such as he ;  
He durst not sit there, had your father liv’d.

My gracious lord, here in the parliament

Let us assail the family of York.

*North.* Well hast thou spoken, cousin ; be it so.

*K. Hen.* Ah, know you not, the city favours them,  
And they have troops of soldiers at their beck ?

*Ere.* But when the duke is slain, they’ll quickly fly.

*K. Hen.* Far be the thought of this from Henry’s heart,  
To make a shambles of the parliament-house !  
Cousin of Exeter, frowns, words, and threats,  
Shall be the war that Henry means to use.—

[*They advance to the duke.*

Thou factious duke of York, descend my throne,  
And kneel for grace and mercy at my feet ;  
I am thy sovereign.

*York.* Thou art deceiv’d, I am thine.

*Ere.* For shame, come down ; he made thee duke of  
York.

*York.* 'Twas my inheritance, as the earldom was.<sup>e</sup>

*Exe.* Thy father was a traitor to the crown.

*War.* Exeter, thou art a traitor to the crown,

In following this usurping Henry.

*Clif.* Whom should he follow, but his natural king?

*War.* True, Clifford; and that's Richard, duke of York.

' *K. Hen.* And shall I stand, and thou sit in my throne?

' *York.* It must and shall be so. Content thyself.

*War.* Be duke of Lancaster, let him be king.

*West.* He is both king and duke of Lancaster;

And that the lord of Westmoreland shall maintain.

*War.* And Warwick shall disprove it. You forget,  
That we are those, which chas'd you from the field,  
And slew your fathers, and with colours spread  
March'd through the city to the palace gates.

' *North.* Yes, Warwick, I remember it to my grief;  
And, by his soul, thou and thy house shall rue it.

' *West.* Plantagenet, of thee, and these thy sons,  
Thy kinsmen, and thy friends, I'll have more lives,  
Than drops of blood were in my father's veins.

' *Clif.* Urge it no more: lest that, instead of words,  
I send thee, Warwick, such a messenger,  
As shall revenge his death, before I stir.

' *War.* Poor Clifford! how I scorn his worthless  
threats!

*York.* Will you, we show our title to the crown?

' If not, our swords shall plead it in the field.

*K. Hen.* What title hast thou, traitor, to the crown?

Thy father was, as thou art, duke of York;<sup>f</sup>

Thy grandfather, Roger Mortimer, earl of March:

I am the son of Henry the fifth,

Who made the Dauphin and the French to stoop,

And seiz'd upon their towns and provinces.

*War.* Talk not of France, sith<sup>g</sup> thou hast lost it all.

<sup>e</sup> — as the earldom was.] He means that the throne was as much his inheritance as the earldom of March, to both of which he derived a title from his mother Anne Mortimer, wife of the earl of Cambridge.

<sup>f</sup> Thy father was, as thou art, duke of York;] This is a mistake. His father was earl of Cambridge, and was never duke of York, being beheaded in the lifetime of his elder brother Edward duke of York, who fell in battle at Agincourt.—MALONE.

<sup>g</sup> — sith—] i. e. Since.

*K. Hen.* The lord protector lost it, and not I ;  
When I was crown'd, I was but nine months old.

*Rich.* You are old enough now, and yet, methinks  
you lose :—

Father, tear the crown from the usurper's head.

*Edw.* Sweet father, do so ; set it on your head.

*Mont.* Good brother, [*to YORK,*] as thou lov'st and  
honour'st arms,

Let's fight it out, and not stand cavilling thus.

*Rich.* Sound drums and trumpets, and the king will fly.

*York.* Sons, peace !

*K. Hen.* Peace thou ! and give king Henry leave to  
speak.

*War.* Plantagenet shall speak first :—hear him, lords ;  
And be you silent and attentive too,  
For he, that interrupts him, shall not live.

' *K. Hen.* Think'st thou, that I will leave my kingly  
throne,

Wherein my grandsire, and my father, sat ?

No : first shall war unpeople this my realm ;

' Ay, and their colours—often borne in France ;

And now in England, to our heart's great sorrow,—

Shall be my winding-sheet.—Why faint you, lords ?

' My title's good, and better far than his.

*War.* But prove it, Henry, and thou shalt be king.

*K. Hen.* Henry the fourth by conquest got the crown.

*York.* 'Twas by rebellion against his king.

*K. Hen.* I know not what to say ; my title's weak.

Tell me, may not a king adopt an heir ?

*York.* What then ?

' *K. Hen.* An if he may, then am I lawful king :

' For Richard, in the view of many lords,

Resign'd the crown to Henry the fourth ;

Whose heir my father was, and I am his.

*York.* He rose against him, being his sovereign,  
And made him to resign his crown perforce.

*War.* Suppose, my lords, he did it unconstrain'd,  
Think you, 'twere prejudicial to his crown ?<sup>h</sup>

<sup>h</sup> ——— *prejudicial to his crown ?*] i. e. To the prerogative of the crown.—  
STEEVENS.

*Exe.* No; for he could not so resign his crown,  
But that the next heir should succeed and reign.

*K. Hen.* Art thou against us, duke of Exeter?

*Exe.* His is the right, and therefore pardon me.

\* *York.* Why whisper you, my lords, and answer not?

*Exe.* My conscience tells me, he is lawful king.

*K. Hen.* All will revolt from me, and turn to him.

*North.* Plantagenet, for all the claim thou lay'st,  
Think not, that Henry shall be so depos'd.

‘ *War.* Depos'd he shall be, in despite of all.

*North.* Thou art deceiv'd: 'tis not thy southern power,  
‘ Of Essex, Norfolk, Suffolk, nor of Kent,—  
Which makes thee thus presumptuous and proud,—  
Can set the duke up, in despite of me.

*Clif.* King Henry, be thy title right or wrong,  
Lord Clifford vows to fight in thy defence:

May that ground gape, and swallow me alive,

‘ Where I shall kneel to him that slew my father!

‘ *K. Hen.* O Clifford, how thy words revive my heart!

*York.* Henry of Lancaster, resign thy crown:—  
What mutter you, or what conspire you, lords?

*War.* Do right unto this princely duke of York;  
Or I will fill the house with armed men,  
And, o'er the chair of state, where now he sits,  
Write up his title with usurping blood.

[*He stamps, and the Soldiers show themselves.*]

‘ *K. Hen.* My lord of Warwick, hear me but one  
word;—

‘ Let me, for this my life-time, reign as king.

*York.* Confirm the crown to me, and to mine heirs,  
And thou shalt reign in quiet while thou liv'st.

*K. Hen.* I am content: Richard Plantagenet,  
Enjoy the kingdom after my decease.

*Clif.* What wrong is this unto the prince your son?

*War.* What good is this to England, and himself?

*West.* Base, fearful, and despairing Henry!

‘ *Clif.* How hast thou injur'd both thyself and us?

*West.* I cannot stay to hear these articles.

*North.* Nor I.

*Clif.* Come, cousin, let us tell the queen these news.



\* *West.* Farewell, faint-hearted and degenerate king,

\* In whose cold blood no spark of honour bides.

*North.* Be thou a prey unto the house of York,

‘ And die in bands for this unmanly deed !

*Clif.* In dreadful war may'st thou be overcome !

Or live in peace, abandon'd, and despis'd !

[*Exeunt* NORTHUMBERLAND, CLIFFORD,  
and WESTMORELAND.

\* *War.* Turn this way, Henry, and regard them not.

*Exe.* They seek revenge,<sup>i</sup> and therefore will not yield.

*K. Hen.* Ah, Exeter !

*War.* Why should you sigh, my lord ?

*K. Hen.* Not for myself, lord Warwick, but my son,

Whom I unnaturally shall disinherit.

But, be it as it may :—I here entail

‘ The crown to thee, and to thine heirs for ever ;

Conditionally, that here thou take an oath

To cease this civil war, and, whilst I live,

To honour me as thy king and sovereign ;

\* And neither by treason, nor hostility,

\* To seek to put me down, and reign thyself.

*York.* This oath I willingly take, and will perform.

[*Coming from the Throne.*

*War.* Long live king Henry !—Plantagenet embrace him.

*K. Hen.* And long live thou, and these thy forward sons !

*York.* Now York and Lancaster are reconcil'd.

*Exe.* Accurs'd be he, that seeks to make them foes !

[*Senet. The Lords come forward.*

‘ *York.* Farewell, my gracious lord ; I'll to my castle.<sup>k</sup>

*War.* And I'll keep London, with my soldiers.

*Norf.* And I to Norfolk, with my followers.

*Mont.* And I unto the sea, from whence I came.

[*Exeunt* YORK, and his Sons, WARWICK, NORFOLK,  
MONTAGUE, Soldiers, and Attendants.

<sup>i</sup> *They seek revenge,*] They go away, not because they doubt the justice of this determination, but because they have been conquered, and seek to be revenged. They are not influenced by principle, but passion.—JOHNSON.

<sup>k</sup> — I'll to my castle.] Sandal Castle, near Wakefield, in Yorkshire.—MALONE.

\* *K. Hen.* And I, with grief and sorrow, to the court.

*Enter* QUEEN MARGARET *and the Prince of WALES.*

*Exe.* Here comes the queen, whose looks bewray<sup>1</sup> her  
I'll steal away. [anger :

*K. Hen.* Exeter, so will I. [Going.

' *Q. Mar.* Nay, go not from me, I will follow thee.

*K. Hen.* Be patient, gentle queen, and I will stay.

' *Q. Mar.* Who can be patient in such extremes ?

\* Ah, wretched man ! 'would I had died a maid,

\* And never seen thee, never borne thee son,

\* Seeing thou hast prov'd so unnatural a father !

\* Hath he deserv'd to lose his birthright thus ?

\* Had'st thou but lov'd him half so well as I ;

\* Or felt that pain which I did for him once ;

\* Or nourish'd him, as I did with my blood ;

\* Thou wouldst have left thy dearest heart-blood there,

\* Rather than made that savage duke thine heir,

\* And disinherited thine only son.

\* *Prince.* Father, you cannot disinherit me :

\* If you be king, why should not I succeed ?

\* *K. Hen.* Pardon me, Margaret ;—pardon me, sweet  
son ;—

\* The earl of Warwick, and the duke, enforc'd me.

\* *Q. Mar.* Enforc'd thee ! art thou king, and wilt be  
forc'd ?

I shame to hear thee speak. Ah, timorous wretch !

Thou hast undone thyself, thy son, and me ;

' And given unto the house of York such head,

\* As thou shalt reign but by their sufferance.

\* To entail him and his heirs unto the crown,

\* What is it, but to make thy sepulchre,<sup>m</sup>

\* And creep into it far before thy time ?

\* Warwick is chancellor, and the lord of Calais ;

Stern Faulconbridge<sup>n</sup> commands the narrow seas ;

<sup>1</sup> ——— *bewray*—] i. e. *Betray, discover.*

<sup>m</sup> *What is it, but to make thy sepulchre,*] The queen's reproach is founded on a position long received among politicians, that the loss of a king's power is soon followed by loss of life.—JOHNSON.

<sup>n</sup> *Stern Faulconbridge*—] The person here meant was Thomas Nevil, bastard son to the Lord Faulconbridge. He was appointed by Warwick vice-admiral of the sea, and had in charge so to keep the passage between Dover and Calais,

The duke is made protector of the realm ;  
 ‘ And yet shall thou be safe ? \* such safety finds  
 \* The trembling lamb, environed with wolves.  
 ‘ Had I been there, which am a silly woman,  
 ‘ The soldiers should have toss’d me on their pikes,  
 ‘ Before I would have granted to that act.  
 \* But thou prefer’st thy life before thine honour :  
 ‘ And, seeing thou dost, I here divorce myself,  
 ‘ Both from thy table, Henry, and thy bed,  
 ‘ Until that act of parliament be repealed,  
 ‘ Whereby my son is disinherited.

The northern lords, that have forsworn thy colours,  
 Will follow mine, if once they see them spread :

‘ And spread they shall be ; to thy foul disgrace,  
 ‘ And utter ruin of the house of York,  
 ‘ Thus do I leave thee :—Come, son, let’s away ;  
 ‘ Our army’s ready ; come, we’ll after them.

*K. Hen.* Stay, gentle Margaret, and hear me speak.

*Q. Mar.* Thou hast spoke too much already ; get thee gone.

*K. Hen.* Gentle son Edward, thou wilt stay with me ?

*Q. Mar.* Ay, to be murder’d by his enemies.

*Prince.* When I return with victory from the field,  
 I’ll see your grace : till then, I’ll follow her.

*Q. Mar.* Come, son, away ; we may not linger thus.

[*Exeunt* QUEEN MARGARET, and the Prince.

‘ *K. Hen.* Poor queen ! how love to me, and to her son,  
 ‘ Hath made her break out into terms of rage !  
 ‘ Reveng’d may she be on that hateful duke ;  
 \* Whose haughty spirit, winged with desire,  
 \* Will coast<sup>o</sup> my crown, and, like an empty eagle,  
 \* Tire on the flesh of me,<sup>p</sup> and of my son !  
 \* The loss of those three lords<sup>q</sup> torments my heart :

that none which either favoured King Henry or his friends should escape un-  
 taken or undrowned : such at least were his instructions with respect to the  
 friends of King Edward, after the rupture between him and Warwick. On  
 Warwick’s death he fell into poverty, and robbed both by sea and land as well  
 friends as enemies.—RITSON.

<sup>o</sup> — coast—] i. e. *To keep close to, or pursue.* The old copy reads *cost*, the  
 emendation is Warburton’s.

<sup>p</sup> *Tire*—] i. e. *Fasten, or fix the talons, from the French tirer.*—JOHNSON.

<sup>q</sup> — those three lords—] That is, of Northumberland, Westmoreland, and  
 Clifford, who had left him in disgust.—JOHNSON.

\* I'll write unto them, and entreat them fair;—

\* Come, cousin, you shall be the messenger.

\* *Exe.* And I, I hope, shall reconcile them all.

[*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE II.

*A Room in Sandal Castle, near Wakefield, in Yorkshire.*

*Enter EDWARD, RICHARD, and MONTAGUE.*

' *Rich.* Brother, though I be youngest, give me leave.

*Edw.* No, I can better play the orator.

*Mont.* But I have reasons strong and forcible.

*Enter YORK.*

' *York.* Why, how now, sons and brother, at a strife?

' What is your quarrel? how began it first?

' *Edw.* No quarrel, but a slight contention.

*York.* About what?

' *Rich.* About that which concerns your grace, and us;

' The crown of England, father, which is yours.

' *York.* Mine, boy? not till king Henry be dead.

\* *Rich.* Your right depends not on his life, or death.

\* *Edw.* Now you are heir, therefore enjoy it now:

\* By giving the house of Lancaster leave to breathe,

\* It will outrun you, father, in the end.

' *York.* I took an oath, that he should quietly reign.

' *Edw.* But, for a kingdom, any oath may be broken:

' I'd break a thousand oaths, to reign one year.

' *Rich.* No; God forbid, your grace should be forsworn.

' *York.* I shall be, if I claim by open war.

' *Rich.* I'll prove the contrary, if you'll hear me speak.

' *York.* Thou canst not, son; it is impossible.

' *Rich.* An oath is of no moment,<sup>r</sup> being not took

' Before a true and lawful magistrate,

' That hath authority over him that swears:

<sup>r</sup> *An oath is of no moment,*] The obligation of an oath is here eluded by very despicable sophistry. A lawful magistrate alone has the power to exact an oath, but the oath derives no part of its force from the magistrate. The plea against the obligation of an oath obliging to maintain an usurper, taken from the unlawfulness of the oath itself in the foregoing play, was rational and just.

‘ Henry had none, but did usurp the place ;  
 ‘ Then, seeing ’twas he that made you to depose,  
 ‘ Your oath, my lord, is vain and frivolous.  
 ‘ Therefore, to arms. \* And, father, do but think,  
 \* How sweet a thing it is to wear a crown ;  
 \* Within whose circuit is Elysium,  
 \* And all that poets feign of bliss and joy.  
 \* Why do we linger thus ? I cannot rest,  
 \* Until the white rose, that I wear, be died  
 \* Even in the lukewarm blood of Henry’s heart.  
   ‘ *York.* Richard, enough ; I will be king, or die.—  
 ‘ Brother, thou shalt to London presently,  
 ‘ And whet on Warwick to this enterprize.—  
 ‘ Thou, Richard, shalt unto the duke of Norfolk,  
 ‘ And tell him privily of our intent.  
 ‘ You, Edward, shall unto my lord Cobham,  
 With whom the Kentish men will willingly rise :  
 ‘ In them I trust : for they are soldiers,  
 ‘ Witty, courteous, liberal, full of spirit.—  
 ‘ While you are thus employ’d, what resteth more,  
 ‘ But that I seek occasion how to rise ;  
 ‘ And yet the king not privy to my drift,  
 ‘ Nor any of the house of Lancaster ?

*Enter a Messenger.*

‘ But, stay ; What news ? why com’st thou in such post ?  
   ‘ *Mess.* The queen, with all the northern earls and  
   lords,  
 ‘ Intend here to besiege you in your castle :  
 ‘ She is hard by with twenty thousand men ;  
 ‘ And therefore fortify your hold, my lord.  
   \* *York.* Ay, with my sword. What ! think’st thou,  
   that we fear them ?—  
 ‘ Edward and Richard, you shall stay with me ;—  
 ‘ My brother Montague shall post to London :  
 \* Let noble Warwick, Cobham, and the rest,  
 \* Whom we have left protectors of the king,  
 \* With powerful policy strengthen themselves,  
 \* And trust not simple Henry, nor his oaths.

\* *Mont.* Brother, I go ; I'll win them, fear it not :  
 \* And thus most humbly I do take my leave.      [*Exit.*]

*Enter Sir JOHN and Sir HUGH MORTIMER.*

*York.* Sir John, and sir Hugh Mortimer, mine uncles!  
 ' You are come to Sandal in a happy hour ;  
 The army of the queen mean to besiege us.

*Sir John.* She shall not need, we'll meet her in the field.

' *York.* What, with five thousand men ?

*Rich.* Ay, with five hundred, father, for a need.

A woman's general ; what should we fear ?

[*A March afar off.*]

' *Edw.* I hear their drums ; let's set our men in order ;  
 ' And issue forth, and bid them battle straight.

' *York.* Five men to twenty !—though the odds be great,  
 ' I doubt not, uncle, of our victory.

' Many a battle have I won in France,

' When as the enemy hath been ten to one ;

' Why should I not now have the like success ?

[*Alarum. Exeunt.*]

### SCENE III.

*Plains near Sandal Castle.*

*Alarums : Excursions. Enter RUTLAND, and his Tutor.*<sup>s</sup>

' *Rut.* Ah, whither shall I fly to 'scape their hands !  
 Ah, tutor ! look, where bloody Clifford comes !

*Enter CLIFFORD, and Soldiers.*

*Clif.* Chaplain, away ! thy priesthood saves thy life.  
 As for the brat of this accursed duke,  
 Whose father slew my father,—he shall die.

*Tut.* And I, my lord, will bear him company.

*Clif.* Soldiers, away with him.

' *Tut.* Ah, Clifford ! murder not this innocent child,  
 ' Lest thou be hated both of God and man.

[*Exit, forced off by Soldiers.*]

<sup>s</sup> — *Tutor.*] A priest called Sir Robert Aspoll. The subject of this scene is from Hall's Chronicle.

*Clif.* How now! is he dead already? Or, is it fear,  
That makes him close his eyes?—I'll open them.

' *Rut.* So looks the pent-up lion o'er the wretch<sup>t</sup>  
That trembles under his devouring paws:  
And so he walks, insulting o'er his prey;  
' And so he comes, to rend his limbs asunder.—  
' Ah, gentle Clifford, kill me with thy sword,  
And not with such a cruel threat'ning look.  
Sweet Clifford, hear me speak before I die;—  
I am too mean a subject for thy wrath,  
Be thou reveng'd on men, and let me live.

*Clif.* In vain thou speak'st, poor boy; my father's blood  
Hath stopp'd the passage where thy words should enter.

*Rut.* Then let my father's blood open it again;  
He is a man, and, Clifford, cope with him.

*Clif.* Had I thy brethren here, their lives, and thine  
Were not revenge sufficient for me;  
No, if I digg'd up thy forefathers' graves,  
And hung their rotten coffins up in chains,  
It could not slake mine ire, nor ease my heart.  
The sight of any of the house of York  
Is as a fury to torment my soul;  
' And till I root out their accursed line,  
' And leave not one alive, I live in hell.  
Therefore——

[*Lifting his hand.*]

*Rut.* O, let me pray before I take my death:—  
To thee I pray; Sweet Clifford, pity me!

*Clif.* Such pity as my rapier's point affords.

' *Rut.* I never did thee harm; Why wilt thou slay me?

*Clif.* Thy father hath.

*Rut.* But 'twas ere I was born.

Thou hast one son, for his sake pity me;  
Lest in revenge thereof,—sith<sup>u</sup> God is just,—  
He be as miserably slain as I.  
Ah, let me live in prison all my days;  
And when I give occasion of offence,  
Then let me die, for now thou hast no cause.

<sup>t</sup> — the pent-up lion—] i. e. The lion that had long been confined without food, and is let out to devour a man condemned.—JOHNSON.

<sup>u</sup> — sith—] i. e. Since.

*Clif.* No cause?

Thy father slew my father ; therefore, die.

[*CLIFFORD stabs him.*

*Rut.* *Dii faciant, laudis summa sit ista tuæ!* [Dies.

*Clif.* Plantagenet! I come, Plantagenet!

And this thy son's blood, cleaving to my blade,

Shall rust upon my weapon, till thy blood,

Congeval'd with this, do make me wipe off both. [*Exit.*

#### SCENE IV.

*The same.*

*Alarum. Enter YORK.*

' *York.* The army of the queen hath got the field :

' My uncles both<sup>x</sup> are slain in rescuing me ;

' And all my followers to the eager foe

' Turn back, and fly, like ships before the wind,

' Or lambs pursu'd by hungry-starved wolves.

' My sons—God knows, what hath bechanced them :

But this I know,—they have demean'd themselves

Like men born to renown, by life, or death.

' Three times did Richard make a lane to me ;

And thrice cried,—*Courage, father! fight it out!*

' And full as oft came Edward to my side,

With purple faulchion, painted to the hilt

' In blood of those that had encounter'd him :

' And when the hardiest warriors did retire,

' Richard cried,—*Charge! and give no foot of ground!*

' And cried, *A crown, or else a glorious tomb!*

' *A sceptre, or an earthly sepulchre!*

With this, we charg'd again : but, out, alas!

' We bodg'd<sup>y</sup> again ; as I have seen a swan

' With bootless labour swim against the tide,

And spend her strength with over-matching waves.

[*A short Alarum within.*

' Ah, hark ! the fatal followers do pursue ;

' And I am faint, and cannot fly their fury ;

<sup>x</sup> *My uncles both*—] These were two bastard uncles by the mother's side, Sir John and Sir Hugh Mortimer.—PERCY.

<sup>y</sup> — *bodg'd*—] i. e. *Stopped, failed.*



‘ And, were I strong, I would not shun their fury;  
 The sands are number’d, that make up my life;  
 ‘ Here must I stay, and here my life must end.

*Enter Queen MARGARET, CLIFFORD, NORTHUMBERLAND, and Soldiers.*

‘ Come, bloody Clifford,—rough Northumberland,—  
 ‘ I dare your quenchless fury to more rage;  
 ‘ I am your butt, and I abide your shot.

*North.* Yield to our mercy, proud Plantagenet.

*Clif.* Ay, to such mercy, as his ruthless arm,  
 With downright payment, show’d unto my father.  
 Now Phaeton hath tumbled from his car,  
 And made an evening at the noontide prick.<sup>z</sup>

*York.* My ashes, as the phoenix, may bring forth

‘ A bird that will revenge upon you all:  
 ‘ And, in that hope, I throw mine eyes to heaven,  
 Scorning whate’er you can afflict me with.

‘ Why come you not! what! multitudes, and fear?

*Clif.* So cowards fight, when they can fly no further;

‘ So doves do peck the falcon’s piercing talons;  
 So desperate thieves, all hopeless of their lives,  
 Breathe out invectives ’gainst the officers.

*York.* O, Clifford, but bethink thee once again,

‘ And in thy thought o’er-run my former time:  
 \* And, if thou canst for blushing, view this face;  
 And bite thy tongue, that slanders him with cowardice,  
 ‘ Whose frown hath made thee faint and fly ere this.

*Clif.* I will not bandy with thee word for word;  
 But buckle with thee blows, twice two for one. [*Draws.*

*Q. Mar.* Hold, valiant Clifford! for a thousand causes,  
 I would prolong awhile the traitor’s life:—

Wrath makes him deaf: speak thou, Northumberland.

*North.* Hold, Clifford; do not honour him so much,  
 To prick thy finger, though to wound his heart:  
 What valour were it, when a cur doth grin,  
 For one to thrust his hand between his teeth,  
 When he might spurn him with his foot away?

<sup>z</sup> — *noontide prick.*] Or, noontide point on the dial.—JOHNSON.

It is war's prize to take all vantages ;

‘ And ten to one is no impeach of valour.

[*They lay hands on YORK, who struggles.*

*Clif.* Ay, ay, so strives the woodcock with the gin.

*North.* So doth the coney struggle in the net.

[*YORK is taken prisoner.*

*York.* So triumph thieves upon their conquer'd booty ;  
So true men<sup>a</sup> yield, with robbers so o'er-match'd.

*North.* What would your grace have done unto him  
now ?

*Q. Mar.* Brave warriors, Clifford and Northumberland,  
Come make him stand upon this molehill here ;

‘ That raught<sup>b</sup> at mountains with outstretched arms,  
Yet parted but the shadow with his hand.—

\* What! was it you, that would be England's king?

Was't you, that revell'd in our parliament,

And made a preachment of your high descent ?

Where are your mess of sons, to back you now ?

The wanton Edward, and the lusty George ?

‘ And where's that valiant crook-back prodigy,

Dicky your boy, that, with his grumbling voice,

Was wont to cheer his dad in mutinies ?

Or, with the rest, where is your darling Rutland ?

Look, York ; I stain'd this napkin with the blood

That valiant Clifford, with his rapier's point,

Made issue from the bosom of the boy :

And, if thine eyes can water for his death,

I give thee this to dry thy cheeks withal.

‘ Alas, poor York ! but that I hate thee deadly,

I should lament thy miserable state.

I pr'ythee, grieve, to make me merry, York ;

Stamp, rave, and fret, that I may sing and dance.

What, hath thy fiery heart so parch'd thine entrails,

That not a tear can fall for Rutland's death ?

\* Why art thou patient, man ? thou should'st be mad ;

\* And I, to make thee mad ; do mock thee thus.

Thou would'st be fee'd, I see, to make me sport ;

<sup>a</sup> — true men—] i. e. *Honest men*, as opposed to thieves.

<sup>b</sup>*That raught—*] i. e. *That reach'd*. The ancient preterite and participle passive of *reach*.—STEEVENS.

York cannot speak, unless he wear a crown.—  
A crown for York ;—and, lords, bow low to him.  
Hold you his hands, whilst I do set it on.—

[*Putting a paper Crown on his Head.*<sup>c</sup>

Ay, marry, sir, now looks he like a king !  
Ay, this is he that took king Henry's chair ;  
And this is he was his adopted heir.—  
But how is it, that great Plantagenet  
Is crown'd so soon, and broke his solemn oath ?  
As I bethink me, you should not be king,  
Till our king Henry had shook hands with death.<sup>d</sup>  
And will you pale<sup>e</sup> your head in Henry's glory,  
And rob his temples of the diadem,  
Now in his life, against your holy oath ?  
O, 'tis a fault too too unpardonable !—  
Off with the crown ; and, with the crown, his head ;  
And, whilst we breathe, take time to do him dead.<sup>f</sup>

*Clif.* That is my office, for my father's sake.

*Q. Mar.* Nay, stay ; let's hear the orisons he makes.

*York.* She-wolf of France, but worse than wolves of  
France,

' Whose tongue more poisons than the adder's tooth !  
How ill-beseeming is it in thy sex,  
To triumph like an Amazonian trull,  
' Upon their woes, whom fortune captivates ?  
But that thy face is, visor-like, unchanging,  
Made impudent with use of evil deeds,  
I would assay, proud queen, to make thee blush :  
To tell thee whence thou cam'st, of whom deriv'd,

<sup>c</sup> *Putting a paper Crown on his Head.*] According to Hall, the paper crown was not placed on York's head till after he was dead : but Holinshed, after repeating Hall's narration of this business, adds, "Some write, that the duke was taken alive, and in derision caused to stand upon a mole-hill ; on whose head they put a garland instead of a crowne, which they had fashioned and made of sedges and bulrushes, and having so crowned him with that garlande, they kneeled down afore him, as the Jews did to Christ in scorne, saying to him, hayle king without rule, hayle king without heritage, hayle duke and prince without people or possessions. And at length having thus scorned him with these and dyverse other the like despiteful wordes, they stroke off his heade, which, as you have heard, they presented to the queen."—MALONE.

<sup>d</sup> *Till our king Henry had shook hands with death.*] On York's return from Ireland, at a meeting of parliament it was settled, that king Henry should enjoy the throne during his life, and that York should succeed him.—MALONE.

<sup>e</sup> — pale—] i. e. *Impale, encircle with a crown.*

<sup>f</sup> — to do him dead.] *To kill him.*

Were shame enough to shame thee, wert thou not  
shameless.

Thy father bears the type<sup>g</sup> of king of Naples,  
Of both the Sicils, and Jerusalem ;  
Yet not so wealthy as an English yeoman.  
Hath that poor monarch taught thee to insult ?  
It needs not, nor it boots thee not, proud queen ;  
Unless the adage must be verified,—  
That beggars, mounted, run their horse to death.  
'Tis beauty, that doth oft make women proud ;  
But, God he knows, thy share thereof is small :  
'Tis virtue, that doth make them most admir'd ;  
The contrary doth make thee wonder'd at :  
'Tis government, that makes them seem divine ;<sup>h</sup>  
The want thereof makes thee abominable :  
Thou art as opposite to every good,  
As the antipodes are unto us,  
Or as the south to the septentrion.<sup>i</sup>  
O, tiger's heart, wrapp'd in a woman's hide !  
How could'st thou drain the life-blood of the child,  
To bid the father wipe his eyes withal,  
And yet be seen to bear a woman's face ?  
Women are soft, mild, pitiful, and flexible ;  
' Thou stern, obdurate, flinty, rough, remorseless.  
' Bid'st thou me rage ? why now thou hast thy wish :  
' Would'st have me weep ? why, now thou hast thy will :  
' For raging wind blows up incessant showers,  
And, when the rage allays, the rain begins.  
These tears are my sweet Rutland's obsequies ;  
' And every drop cries vengeance for his death,—  
' 'Gainst thee, fell Clifford,—and thee, false French-  
woman.

*North.* Beshrew me, but his passions move me so,  
That hardly can I check my eyes from tears.

*York.* That face of his the hungry cannibals

<sup>g</sup> — *the type*—] i. e. *The distinguishing mark* ; an obsolete use of the word.—STEEVENS.

<sup>h</sup> 'Tis *government*, that makes them seem divine ;] *Government*, in the language of that time, signified evenness of temper, and decency of manners.—JOHNSON.

<sup>i</sup> — *septentrion*.] i. e. *The north*. From the Latin *Septentrio*.

Would not have touch'd, would not have stain'd with  
blood :

But you are more inhuman, more inexorable,—  
O, ten times more,—than tygers of Hyrcania.—  
See, ruthless queen, a hapless father's tears :  
This cloth thou dipp'dst in blood of my sweet boy,  
And I with tears do wash the blood away.  
Keep thou the napkin, and go boast of this :

[*He gives back the Handkerchief.*]

And, if thou tell'st the heavy story right,  
Upon my soul, the hearers will shed tears ;  
Yea, even my foes will shed fast-falling tears,  
And say,—Alas, it was a piteous deed !  
There, take the crown, and, with the crown, my curse ;  
And, in thy need, such comfort come to thee,  
As now I reap at thy too cruel hand !—  
Hard-hearted Clifford, take me from the world ;  
My soul to heaven, my blood upon your heads !

*North.* Had he been slaughterman to all my kin,  
' I should not for my life but weep with him,  
To see how inly sorrow gripes his soul.

*Q. Mar.* What, weeping-ripe, my lord Northumberland?  
Think but upon the wrong he did us all,  
And that will quickly dry thy melting tears.

*Clif.* Here's for my oath, here's for my father's death.  
[*Stabbing him.*]

*Q. Mar.* And here's to right our gentle-hearted king.  
[*Stabbing him.*]

*York.* Open thy gate of mercy, gracious God !  
' My soul flies through these wounds to seek out thee.  
[*Dies.*]

*Q. Mar.* Off with his head, and set it on York gates ;  
So York may overlook the town of York. [*Exeunt.*]

## ACT II.

SCENE I.—*A Plain near Mortimer's Cross in Herefordshire.*

*Drums. Enter EDWARD and RICHARD, with their Forces, marching.*

\* *Edw.* I wonder, how our princely father 'scap'd;  
 \* Or whether he be 'scap'd away, or no,  
 \* From Clifford's and Northumberland's pursuit;  
 \* Had he been ta'en, we should have heard the news;  
 Had he been slain, we should have heard the news;  
 \* Or, had he 'scap'd, methinks, we should have heard  
 \* The happy tidings of his good escape.—  
 ' How fares my brother? why is he so sad?  
*Rich.* I cannot joy, until I be resolv'd  
 Where our right valiant father is become.  
 ' I saw him in the battle range about;  
 ' And watch'd him, how he singled Clifford forth.  
 ' Methought, he bore him in the thickest troop,  
 As doth a lion in a herd of neat:  
 \* Or as a bear, encompass'd round with dogs;  
 \* Who having pinch'd a few, and made them cry,  
 \* The rest stand all aloof, and bark at him.  
 \* So far'd our father with his enemies;  
 ' So fled his enemies my warlike father;  
 ' Methinks, 'tis prize enough to be his son.  
 See, how the morning opes her golden gates,  
 And takes her farewell of the glorious sun!<sup>k</sup>  
 \* How well resembles it the prime of youth,  
 \* Trimm'd like a younker, prancing to his love!  
*Edw.* Dazzle mine eyes, or do I see three suns?<sup>l</sup>

<sup>k</sup> *And takes her farewell of the glorious sun!*] Aurora takes for a time her farewell of the sun, when she dismisses him to his diurnal course.—JOHNSON.  
<sup>l</sup> — *do I see three suns?*] This circumstance is mentioned both by Hall and Holinshed: "—— at which tyme the son (as some write) appeared to the earle of March like three sunnes, and sodainely joyned altogether in one, uppon whiche sight hee tooke such courage, that he fiercely setting on his enemyes put them to flighte, and for this cause menne'ymagined that he gave the sun in his full bryghtnesse for his badge or cognisance." These are the words of Holinshed.—MALONE.

*Rich.* Three glorious suns, each one a perfect sun :  
 Not separated with the racking clouds,<sup>m</sup>  
 But sever'd in a pale clear-shining sky.  
 See, see ! they join, embrace, and seem to kiss,  
 As if they vow'd some league inviolable :  
 Now are they but one lamp, one light, one sun.  
 In this the heaven figures some event.

\* *Edw.* 'Tis wondrous strange, the like yet never heard  
 I think, it cites us, brother, to the field ; [of.  
 That we, the sons of brave Plantagenet,  
 ' Each one already blazing by our meeds,<sup>n</sup>  
 Should, notwithstanding, join our lights together,  
 ' And over-shine the earth, as this the world.  
 ' Whate'er it bodes, henceforward will I bear  
 Upon my target three fair shining suns.

\* *Rich.* Nay, bear three daughters ;—by your leave I  
 speak it,

\* You love the breeder better than the male.

*Enter a Messenger.*

' But what art thou, whose heavy looks foretel  
 ' Some dreadful story hanging on thy tongue ?

*Mess.* Ah, one that was a woful looker on,  
 When as the noble duke of York was slain,

\* Your princely father, and my loving lord.

' *Edw.* O, speak no more !<sup>o</sup> for I have heard too much.

' *Rich.* Say how he died, for I will hear it all.

' *Mess.* Environed he was with many foes ;

' And stood against them, as the hope of Troy<sup>p</sup>

' Against the Greeks, that would have enter'd Troy.

But Hercules himself must yield to odds ;

' And many strokes, though with a little axe,

' Hew down and fell the hardest-timber'd oak.

' By many hands your father was subdu'd ;

<sup>m</sup> — the racking clouds,] i. e. The clouds in rapid, tumultuary motion.—  
 STEEVENS.

<sup>n</sup> — by our meeds,] i. e. By our merits.

<sup>o</sup> O, speak no more!] The generous tenderness of Edward, and savage fortitude of Richard, are well distinguished by their different reception of their father's death.—JOHNSON.

<sup>p</sup> — the hope of Troy—] Hector.—MALONE.

' But only slaughter'd by the ireful arm  
 ' Of unrelenting Clifford, and the queen :  
 ' Who crown'd the gracious duke, in high despite ;  
 ' Laugh'd in his face ; and, when with grief he wept,  
 ' The ruthless queen gave him, to dry his cheeks,  
 ' A napkin steeped in the harmless blood  
 ' Of sweet young Rutland, by rough Clifford slain :  
 ' And, after many scorns, many foul taunts,  
 ' They took his head, and on the gates of York  
 ' They set the same ; and there it doth remain,  
 ' The saddest spectacle that e'er I view'd.

*Edw.* Sweet duke of York, our prop to lean upon ;

' Now thou art gone, we have no staff, no stay !—

\* O Clifford, boist'rous Clifford, thou hast slain

\* The flower of Europe for his chivalry ;

\* And treacherously hast thou vanquish'd him,

\* For, hand to hand, he would have vanquish'd thee !—

Now my soul's palace is become a prison :

Ah, would she break from hence ! that this my body

' Might in the ground be closed up in rest :

' For never henceforth shall I joy again,

' Never, O never, shall I see more joy.

' *Rich.* I cannot weep ; for all my body's moisture  
 Scarce serves to quench my furnace-burning heart :

\* Nor can my tongue unload my heart's great burden ;

\* For self-same wind, that I should speak withal,

\* Is kindling coals, that fire all my breast,

\* And burn me up with flames, that tears would quench.

\* To weep, is to make less the depth of grief :

\* Tears, then, for babes ; blows, and revenge, for me !—

' Richard, I bear thy name, I'll venge thy death,

' Or die renowned by attempting it.

*Edw.* His name that valiant duke hath left with  
 thee ;

' His dukedom and his chair with me is left.

*Rich.* Nay, if thou be that princely eagle's bird,

Show thy descent by gazing 'gainst the sun :

For chair and dukedom, throne and kingdom say ;

Either that is thine, or else thou wert not his.



*March.* Enter WARWICK and MONTAGUE, with Forces.<sup>9</sup>

*War.* How now, fair lords? What fare? what news abroad?

*Rich.* Great lord of Warwick, if we should recount  
Our baleful news, and, at each word's deliverance,  
Stab poniards in our flesh, till all were told,  
The words would add more anguish than the wounds.  
O valiant lord, the duke of York is slain.

*Edw.* O Warwick! Warwick! that Plantagenet,  
Which held thee dearly, as his soul's redemption,  
Is by the stern lord Clifford done to death.

*War.* Ten days ago I drown'd these news in tears:  
And now, to add more measure to your woes,  
I come to tell you things since then befall'n.  
After the bloody fray at Wakefield fought,  
Where your brave father breath'd his latest gasp,  
Tidings, as swiftly as the posts could run,  
Were brought me of your loss, and his depart.  
I then in London, keeper of the king,  
Muster'd my soldiers, gather'd flocks of friends,  
And very well appointed, as I thought,  
March'd towards Saint Albans' to intercept the queen,  
Bearing the king in my behalf along:  
For by my scouts I was advertis'd,  
That she was coming with a full intent  
To dash our late decree in parliament,  
' Touching king Henry's oath, and your succession.  
Short tale to make,—we at Saint Albans' met,  
Our battles join'd, and both sides fiercely fought:  
But, whether 'twas the coldness of the king,  
Who look'd full gently on his warlike queen,  
That robb'd my soldiers of their hated spleen;  
Or whether 'twas report of her success;  
Or more than common fear of Clifford's rigour,  
' Who thunders to his captives—blood and death,  
I cannot judge: but, to conclude with truth,  
Their weapons like to lightning came and went;  
Our soldiers'—like the night-owl's lazy flight,

<sup>9</sup> Enter Warwick, &c.] This meeting was at Chipping Norton.—RITSON.

‘ Or like a lazy thrasher with a flail,—  
 Fell gently down, as if they struck their friends.  
 I cheer’d them up with justice of our cause,  
 With promise of high pay, and great rewards :  
 But all in vain ; they had no heart to fight,  
 And we, in them, no hope to win the day,  
 So that we fled : the king, unto the queen ;  
 Lord George your brother,<sup>r</sup> Norfolk, and myself,  
 In haste, post-haste, are come to join with you ;  
 For in the marches here, we heard you were,  
 Making another head to fight again.

‘ *Edw.* Where is the duke of Norfolk, gentle Warwick ?  
 And when came George from Burgundy to England ?

‘ *War.* Some six miles off the duke is with the soldiers :  
 And for your brother, he was lately sent  
 From your kind aunt, duchess of Burgundy,  
 ‘ With aid of soldiers to this needful war.

*Rich.* ’Twas odds, belike, when valiant Warwick fled :  
 Oft have I heard his praises in pursuit,  
 But ne’er, till now, his scandal of retire.

*War.* Nor now my scandal, Richard, dost thou hear ;  
 For thou shalt know, this strong right hand of mine  
 Can pluck the diadem from faint Henry’s head,  
 And wring the awful scepter from his fist ;  
 Were he as famous and as bold in war,  
 As he is fam’d for mildness, peace, and prayer.

*Rich.* I know it well, lord Warwick : blame me not :  
 ’Tis love, I bear thy glories, makes me speak.  
 But, in this troublous time, what’s to be done ?  
 Shall we go throw away our coats of steel,  
 And wrap our bodies in black mourning gowns,  
 Numb’ring our Ave-Maries with our beads ?

<sup>r</sup> *Lord George your brother,*] The ages of the duke of York’s children introduced in this play, will best show how far our author has deviated from historical truth. The battle of Wakefield was fought the 29th of December 1460, when Edward was in his *nineteenth* year, Rutland in his *eighteenth*, George in his *twelfth*, and Richard in his *ninth*.

Clarence and Gloucester, as George and Richard were afterwards created, were sent into Flanders, immediately after the battle of Wakefield, and did not return until their brother Edward got possession of the crown. The duchess of Burgundy, whom Shakspeare calls their aunt, was daughter of Philippa of Lancaster, queen of Portugal, eldest daughter of John of Gaunt. She was therefore no more than their third cousin.—RITSON.

Or shall we on the helmets of our foes  
Tell our devotion with revengeful arms?  
If for the last, say,—Ay, and to it, lords.

*War.* Why, therefore Warwick came to seek you out:  
And therefore comes my brother Montague.  
Attend me, lords. The proud insulting queen,  
With Clifford, and the haught<sup>s</sup> Northumberland,  
And of their feather, many more proud birds,  
Have wrought the easy melting king like wax.  
He swore consent to your succession,  
His oath enroll'd in the parliament;  
And now to London all the crew are gone,  
To frustrate both his oath, and what beside  
May make against the house of Lancaster.  
' Their power, I think, is thirty thousand strong:  
Now, if the help of Norfolk, and myself,  
With all the friends that thou, brave earl of March,  
Amongst the loving Welshmen canst procure,  
' Will but amount to five and twenty thousand,  
Why, *Via!* to London will we march amain;  
And once again bestride our foaming steeds,  
' And once again cry—Charge upon our foes!  
But never once again turn back and fly.

*Rich.* Ay, now, methinks, I hear great Warwick speak:  
Ne'er may he live to see a sunshine day,  
' That cries—Retire, if Warwick bid him stay.

*Edw.* Lord Warwick, on thy shoulder will I lean;  
' And when thou fall'st, (as God forbid the hour!)  
Must Edward fall, which peril heaven forefend!

*War.* No longer earl of March, but duke of York;  
' The next degree is, England's royal throne:  
For king of England shalt thou be proclaim'd  
In every borough as we pass along;  
And he that throws not up his cap for joy,  
' Shall for the fault make forfeit of his head.  
King Edward,—valiant Richard,—Montague,—  
Stay we no longer dreaming of renown,  
' But sound the trumpets, and about our task.

\* *Rich.* Then, Clifford, were thy heart as heard as steel,

<sup>s</sup> — haught—] i. e. Proud, haughty, insolent.

\* (As thou hast shown it flinty by thy deeds,)

\* I come to pierce it,—or to give thee mine.

\* *Edw.* Then strike up, drums;—God, and Saint George  
for us !

*Enter a Messenger.*

*War.* How now ? what news ?

*Mess.* The duke of Norfolk sends you word by me,  
The queen is coming with a puissant host ;  
And craves your company for speedy counsel.

‘ *War.* Why then it sorts,† brave warriors : Let’s away.

[*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE II.

*Before York.*

*Enter King HENRY, Queen MARGARET, the Prince of  
Wales, CLIFFORD, and NORTHUMBERLAND, with  
Forces.*

*Q. Mar.* Welcome, my lord, to this brave town of York.  
Yonder’s the head of that arch-enemy,  
That sought to be encompass’d with your crown :  
‘ Doth not the object cheer your heart, my lord ?

‘ *K. Hen.* Ay, as rocks cheer them that fear their  
To see this sight, it irks my very soul.— [wreck ;—  
Withhold revenge, dear God ! ’tis not my fault,  
Not wittingly have I infring’d my vow.

*Clif.* My gracious liege, this too much lenity  
And harmful pity, must be laid aside.

To whom do lions cast their gentle looks ?

Not to the beast that would usurp their den.

Whose hand is that, the forest bear doth lick ?

Not his, that spoils her young before her face.

Who ’scapes the lurking serpent’s mortal sting ?

Not he, that sets his foot upon her back.

The smallest worm will turn, being trodden on ;

‘ And doves will peck, in safeguard of their brood.

Ambitious York did level at thy crown,

† *Why then it sorts,*] Why then things are as they should be.—JOHNSON.

Thou smiling, while he knit his angry brows :  
 He, but a duke, would have his son a king,  
 And raise his issue, like a loving sire ;  
 Thou, being a king, bless'd with a goodly son,  
 Didst yield consent to disinherit him,  
 ' Which argued thee a most unloving father.  
 Unreasonable creatures feed their young :  
 And though man's face be fearful to their eyes,  
 Yet, in protection of their tender ones,  
 Who hath not seen them (even with those wings  
 ' Which sometime they have us'd with fearful flight,)  
 Make war with him that climb'd unto their nest,  
 Offering their own lives in their young's defence?  
 For shame, my liege, make them your precedent !  
 Were it not pity, that this goodly boy  
 Should lose his birthright by his father's fault ;  
 And long hereafter say unto his child,—  
*What my great-grandfather and grandsire got,  
 My careless father fondly<sup>t</sup> gave away?*  
 Ah, what a shame were this ! Look on the boy ;  
 And let his manly face, which promiseth  
 Successful fortune, steel thy melting heart,  
 To hold thine own, and leave thine own with him.

*K. Hen.* Full well hath Clifford play'd the orator,  
 Inferring arguments of mighty force.

' But, Clifford, tell me, did'st thou never hear,—  
 That things ill got had ever bad success ?  
 And happy always was it for that son,  
 Whose father<sup>u</sup> for his hoarding went to hell ?  
 I'll leave my son my virtuous deeds behind ;  
 And 'would, my father had left me no more !  
 For all the rest is held at such a rate,  
 ' As brings a thousand-fold more care to keep,  
 ' Than in possession any jot of pleasure.  
 Ah, cousin York ! 'would thy best friends did know,  
 ' How it doth grieve me that thy head is here !

' *Q. Mar.* My lord, cheer up your spirits ; our foes are  
 nigh,

<sup>t</sup> — *fondly*—] i. e. *Foolishly*.

<sup>u</sup> *Whose father, &c.*] Alluding to a common proverb :

"Happy the child whose father went to the devil."—*JOHNSON*.

‘ And this soft courage makes your followers faint.  
 ‘ You promis’d knighthood to our forward son ;  
 ‘ Unsheath your sword, and dub him presently.—  
 Edward, kneel down.

*K. Hen.* Edward Plantagenet, arise a knight ;  
 And learn this lesson,—Draw thy sword in right.

*Prince.* My gracious father, by your kingly leave,  
 I’ll draw it as apparent to the crown,  
 And in that quarrel use it to the death.

*Clif.* Why, that is spoken like a toward prince.

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* Royal commanders, be in readiness :  
 ‘ For, with a band of thirty thousand men,  
 Comes Warwick, backing of the duke of York ;  
 And, in the towns as they do march along,  
 Proclaims him king, and many fly to him :  
 ‘ Darraign<sup>s</sup> your battle, for they are at hand.

*Clif.* I would your highness would depart the field ;  
 The queen hath best success when your are absent.<sup>y</sup>

*Q. Mar.* Ay, good my lord, and leave us to our fortune.

*K. Hen.* Why, that’s my fortune too ; therefore I’ll stay.

*North.* Be it with resolution then to fight.

*Prince.* My royal father, cheer these noble lords,  
 And hearten those that fight in your defence :  
 Unsheath your sword, good father ; cry, *Saint George!*

*March.* *Enter EDWARD, GEORGE, RICHARD, WARWICK,  
 NORFOLK, MONTAGUE, and Soldiers.*

‘ *Edw.* Now, perjurd Henry ! wilt thou kneel for grace,  
 ‘ And set thy diadem upon my head :

\* Or bide the mortal fortune<sup>z</sup> of the field ?

*Q. Mar.* Go, rate thy minions, proud insulting boy !  
 ‘ Becomes it thee to be thus bold in terms,  
 ‘ Before thy sovereign, and thy lawful king ?

<sup>s</sup> *Darraign*—] That is, *Range* your host, put your host in order.—JOHNSON.

<sup>y</sup> *The queen hath best success when you are absent.*] Happy was the queen in her two battayls, but unfortunate was the king in al his enterprises ; for when his person was present, the victorie fledde ever from him to the other parte.”  
*Hall’s Chronicles.*—MALONE.

*Edw.* I am his king,<sup>z</sup> and he should bow his knee ;  
I was adopted heir by his consent :  
Since when, his oath is broke ; for, as I hear,  
You—that are king, though he do wear the crown,—  
Have caus'd him, by new act of parliament,  
‘ To blot out me, and put his own son in.

‘ *Clif.* And reason too ;  
Who should succeed the father, but the son ?

‘ *Rich.* Are you there, butcher ?—O, I cannot speak !

‘ *Clif.* Ay, crook-back ; here I stand, to answer thee,  
‘ Or any he the proudest of thy sort.

*Rich.* ’Twas you that kill’d young Rutland, was it not ?

*Clif.* Ay, and old York, and yet not satisfy’d.

*Rich.* For God’s sake, lords, give signal to the fight.

*War.* What say’st thou, Henry, wilt thou yield the  
crown ?

‘ *Q. Mar.* Why, how now, long-tongu’d Warwick ? dare  
you speak ?

When you and I met at Saint Albans’ last,  
Your legs did better service than your hands.

*War.* Then ’twas my turn to fly, and now ’tis thine.

*Clif.* You said so much before, and yet you fled.

*War.* ’Twas not your valour, Clifford, drove me thence.

‘ *North.* No, nor your manhood, that durst make you  
stay.

*Rich.* Northumberland, I hold thee reverently ;  
Break off the parle ; for scarce I can refrain  
The execution of my big-swoln heart  
Upon that Clifford, that cruel child-killer.

*Clif.* I slew thy father : Call’st thou him a child ?

*Rich.* Ay, like a dastard, and a treacherous coward,  
As thou didst kill our tender brother Rutland ;  
But, ere sun-set, I’ll make thee curse the deed.

<sup>z</sup> *I am his king,*] Edward founds his claim on the following article in the compact entered into by Henry and the duke of York, which the author found in Hall, but which I believe made no part of the agreement. “ Provided alwaye, that if the king did closely or apertly studye or go about to breake or alter this agreement, or to compass or imagine the death or destruction of the sayde duke, or his blood, then he to *forjet the crowne*, and the duke of Yorke to take it.” If this had been one of the articles of the compact, the duke having been killed at Wakefield, his eldest son would have now a title to the crown.  
—MALONE.

*K. Hen.* Have done with words, my lords, and hear me speak.

*Q. Mar.* Defy them then, or else hold close thy lips.

*K. Hen.* I pr'ythee, give no limits to my tongue ;  
I am a king, and privileg'd to speak.

*Clif.* My liege, the wound, that bred this meeting here,  
Cannot be cur'd by words; therefore be still.

*Rich.* Then, executioner, unsheath thy sword :  
By him that made us all, I am resolv'd,<sup>a</sup>  
' That Clifford's manhood lies upon his tongue.

' *Edw.* Say, Henry, shall I have my right, or no ?  
A thousand men have broke their fasts to-day,  
That ne'er shall dine, unless thou yield the crown.

*War.* If thou deny, their blood upon thy head ;  
For York in justice puts his armour on.

' *Prince.* If that be right, which Warwick says is right,  
There is no wrong, but every thing is right.

*Rich.* Whoever got thee, there thy mother stands ;  
For, well I wot, thou hast thy mother's tongue.

*Q. Mar.* But thou art neither like thy sire, nor dam ;  
But like a foul misshapen stigmatick,<sup>b</sup>  
Mark'd by the destinies to be avoided,  
' As venom toads, or lizards' dreadful stings.<sup>c</sup>

*Rich.* Iron of Naples, hid with English gilt,  
Whose father bears the title of a king,  
(As if a channel should be call'd the sea),<sup>d</sup>  
' Sham'st thou not, knowing whence thou art extraught,  
' To let thy tongue detect<sup>e</sup> thy base-born heart ?

*Edw.* A wisp of straw<sup>f</sup> were worth a thousand crowns,

<sup>a</sup> — *I am resolv'd,*] It is my firm persuasion ; I am no longer in doubt.—  
JOHNSON.

<sup>b</sup> — *stigmatick,*] “ A stigmatic” says T. Bullokar in his *English Expositor*, 1616, “ is a notorious lewd fellow, which hath been burnt with a hot iron, or beareth other marks about him as a token of his punishment.—STEEVENS.”

<sup>c</sup> — *lizards' dreadful stings.*] This error is not yet eradicated, that *lizards*, the most harmless of reptiles, are venomous. The English lizards, the *eft* and the *newt*, in many places lie under this slander.

<sup>d</sup> (*As if a channel should be call'd the sea,*)] A *channel*, in our author's time, signified what we now call a *kennel*.—MALONE.

<sup>e</sup> *To let thy tongue detect*—] To show thy meanness of birth by the indecency of language with which thou railest at my deformity.—JOHNSON.

<sup>f</sup> *A wisp of straw*—] A *wisp*, or small twist, of straw or hay, was often applied as a mark of opprobrium to an immodest woman, a scold, or similar offenders. A *wisp* appears to have been one badge of the scolding woman,



To make this shameless callet<sup>s</sup> know herself.—

\* Helen of Greece was fairer far than thou,

\* Although thy husband may be Menelaus;<sup>h</sup>

\* And ne'er was Agamemnon's brother wrong'd

\* By that false woman, as this king by thee.

‘ His father revell'd in the heart of France,

And tam'd the king, and made the Dauphin stoop;

And, had he match'd according to his state,

He might have kept that glory to this day:

But, when he took a beggar to his bed,

And grac'd thy poor sire with his bridal day;

‘ Even then that sunshine brew'd a shower for him,

‘ That wash'd his father's fortunes forth of France,

And heap'd sedition on his crown at home.

‘ For what hath broach'd this tumult, but thy pride?

Hadst thou been meek, our title still had slept:

And we, in pity of the gentle king,

Had slipp'd our claim until another age.

‘ *Geo.* But, when we saw our sunshine made thy spring,

‘ And that thy summer bred us no increase,<sup>i</sup>

We set the axe to thy usurping root;

And though the edge hath something hit ourselves,

‘ Yet, know thou, since we have begun to strike,

‘ We'll never leave, till we have hewn thee down.

Or bath'd thy growing with our heated bloods.

*Edw.* And, in this resolution, I defy thee;

Not willing any longer conference,

Since thou deny'st the gentle king to speak.—

Sound trumpets!—let our bloody colours wave!—

And either victory, or else a grave.

in the ceremony of SKIMMINGTON, which was a burlesque ceremony, performed by our merry ancestors, in ridicule of a man beaten by his wife.—NARES' *Glossary*.

<sup>s</sup> — *callet*—] A scold; *calleting* housewife is still used in the north of England for scold.—TODD'S *Johnson*.

<sup>h</sup> — *Menelaus*;] i. e. A cuckold.

<sup>i</sup> — *we saw our sunshine made thy spring*,

*And that thy summer bred us no increase,*] When we saw that by favouring thee we made thee grow in fortune, but that we received no advantage from thy fortune flourishing by our favour, we then resolved to destroy thee, and determined to try some other means, though our first efforts have failed.—JOHNSON.

Q. *Mar.* Stay, Edward.

*Edw.* No, wrangling woman; we'll no longer stay;  
These words will cost ten thousand lives to-day. [*Exeunt.*]

### SCENE III.

*A Field of Battle<sup>k</sup> between Towton and Saxton in  
Yorkshire.*

*Alarums: Excursions. Enter WARWICK.*

‘ *War.* Forspent with toil, as runners with a race,  
I lay me down a little while to breathe:  
For strokes receiv’d, and many blows repaid,  
Have robb’d my strong-knit sinews of their strength,  
‘ And, spite of spite, needs must I rest awhile.

*Enter EDWARD, running.*

*Edw.* Smile, gentle heaven! or strike, ungentle death!  
‘ For this world frowns, and Edward’s sun is clouded.

*War.* How now, my lord? what hap? what hope of  
good?

*Enter GEORGE.*

\* *Geo.* Our hap is loss, our hope but sad despair;  
‘ Our ranks are broke, and ruin follows us:  
‘ What counsel give you, whither shall we fly?

‘ *Edw.* Bootless is flight, they follow us with wings;  
‘ And weak we are, and cannot shun pursuit.

*Enter RICHARD.*

‘ *Rich.* Ah, Warwick, why hast thou withdrawn thy-  
self?  
‘ Thy brother’s blood the thirsty earth hath drunk,  
‘ Broach’d with the steely point of Clifford’s lance:  
‘ And, in the very pangs of death, he cry’d,—  
‘ Like to a dismal clangor heard from far,—  
‘ *Warwick, revenge! brother, revenge my death!*

<sup>k</sup> *A Field of Battle, &c.*] We should read *near* Towton. Shakspeare has here, perhaps, intentionally thrown three different actions into one.—RITSON.

‘ So underneath the belly of their steeds,  
 ‘ That stain’d their fetlocks in his smoking blood,  
 ‘ The noble gentleman gave up the ghost.<sup>1</sup>

‘ *War.* Then let the earth be drunken with our blood:  
 I’ll kill my horse, because I will not fly.<sup>m</sup>

\* Why stand we like soft-hearted women here,

\* Wailing our losses, whiles the foe doth rage,

\* And look upon,<sup>n</sup> as if the tragedy

\* Were play’d in jest by counterfeiting actors ?

‘ Here on my knee I vow to God above,

‘ I’ll never pause again, never stand still,

‘ Till either death hath clos’d these eyes of mine,

‘ Or fortune given me measure of revenge.

*Edw.* O Warwick, I do bend my knee with thine ;

‘ And, in this vow, do chain my soul to thine.—

\* And, ere my knee rise from the earth’s cold face,

\* I throw my hands, mine eyes, my heart to thee,

Thou setter up and plucker down of kings !

‘ Beseeching thee,—if with thy will it stands,

‘ That to my foes this body must be prey,—

‘ Yet that thy brazen gates of heaven may ope,

‘ And give sweet passage to my sinful soul !—

‘ Now, lords, take leave until we meet again,

Where’er it be, in heaven, or on earth.

‘ *Rich.* Brother, give me thy hand ;—and, gentle

‘ Let me embrace thee in my weary arms :— [*Warwick,*

‘ I, that did never weep, now melt with woe,

‘ That winter should cut off our spring-time so.

‘ *War.* Away, away ! Once more, sweet lords, fare-  
 well.

‘ *Geo.* Yet let us all together to our troops,

‘ And give them leave to fly that will not stay ;

And call them pillars, that will stand to us ;

‘ And, if we thrive, promise them such rewards

<sup>1</sup> *The noble gentleman gave up the ghost.*] The brother here mentioned is no person in the drama, and his death is only an accidental piece of history. Consulting the Chronicles upon this action at Ferrybridge, I find him to have been a natural son of Salisbury, (in that respect a brother to Warwick), and esteemed a valiant young gentleman.—THEOBALD.

<sup>m</sup> *I’ll kill my horse, &c.*] This circumstance occurred at the battle of Ferrybridge, the day before the battle of Towton.

<sup>n</sup> *And look upon,*] And are mere spectators.—MALONE.

- ‘ As victors wear at the Olympian games :  
 \* This may plant courage in their quailing<sup>o</sup> breasts ;  
 \* For yet is hope of life, and victory.—  
 \* Fore-slow<sup>p</sup> no longer, make we hence amain. [Exeunt.

## SCENE IV.

*The same. Another Part of the Field*

*Excursions, Enter RICHARD and CLIFFORD.*

- ‘ *Rich.* Now, Clifford, I have singled thee alone :  
 ‘ Suppose, this arm is for the duke of York,  
 ‘ And this for Rutland ; both bound to revenge,  
 ‘ Wert thou environ’d with a brazen wall.

*Clif.* Now, Richard, I am with thee here alone :  
 This is the hand, that stabb’d thy father York ;  
 And this the hand, that slew thy brother Rutland ;  
 And here’s the heart, that triumphs in their death,  
 And cheers these hands, that slew thy sire and brother,  
 To execute the like upon thyself ;  
 And so, have at thee.

[*They fight. WARWICK enters ; CLIFFORD flies.*

- ‘ *Rich.* Nay, Warwick, single out some other chase ;  
 ‘ For I myself will hunt this wolf to death. [Exeunt.

## SCENE V.

*Another Part of the Field.*

*Alarum. Enter King HENRY.*

- \* *K. Hen.* This battle fares like to the morning’s war,  
 \* When dying clouds contend with growing light ;  
 \* What time the shepherd, blowing of his nails,  
 \* Can neither call it perfect day, nor night.  
 ‘ Now sways it this way, like a mighty sea,  
 ‘ Forc’d by the tide to combat with the wind ;  
 ‘ Now sways it that way, like the self-same sea

<sup>o</sup> ——— quailing—] i. e. *Sinking into dejection.*

<sup>p</sup> Fore-slow—] i. e. *Slacken or delay.*

- ‘ Forc’d to retire by fury of the wind :  
 ‘ Sometime, the flood prevails ; and then, the wind :  
 ‘ Now, one the better ; then, another, best ;  
 ‘ Both tugging to be victors, breast to breast,  
 ‘ Yet neither conqueror, nor conquered :  
 ‘ So is the equal poise of this fell war.  
 \* Here on this molehill will I sit me down.  
 \* To whom God will, there be the victory !  
 ‘ For Margaret my queen, and Clifford too,  
 ‘ Have chid me from the battle ; swearing both,  
 ‘ They prosper best of all when I am thence.  
 ‘ ‘Would I were dead ! if God’s good will were so :  
 ‘ For what is in this world, but grief and woe ?  
 \* O God ! methinks, it were a happy life,<sup>a</sup>  
 ‘ To be no better than a homely swain ;  
 \* To sit upon a hill, as I do now,  
 \* To carve out dials quaintly, point by point,  
 \* Thereby to see the minutes how they run :  
 \* How many make the hour full complete,  
 \* How many hours bring about the day,  
 \* How many days will finish up the year,  
 \* How many years a mortal man may live.  
 \* When this is known, then to divide the times :  
 \* So many hours must I tend my flock ;  
 \* So many hours must I take my rest ;  
 \* So many hours must I cóntemplate ;  
 \* So many hours must I sport myself ;  
 \* So many days my ewes have been with young ;  
 \* So many weeks ere the poor fools will yean ;  
 \* So many years ere I shall sheer the fleece ;  
 \* So minutes, hours, days, weeks, months, and years,  
 \* Pass’d over to the end they were created,  
 \* Would bring white hairs unto a quiet grave.  
 \* Ah, what a life were this ! how sweet ! how lovely !  
 \* Gives not the hawthorn bush a sweeter shade  
 \* To shepherds, looking on their silly sheep,

<sup>a</sup> —methinks it were a happy life,] This speech is mournful and soft, exquisitely suited to the character of the king, and makes a pleasing interchange, by affording, amidst the tumult and horror of the battle, an unexpected glimpse of rural innocence and pastoral tranquillity.—JOHNSON.

- \* Than doth a rich embroider'd canopy
- \* To kings, that fear their subjects' treachery?
- \* O, yes it doth; a thousand fold it doth.
- \* And to conclude,—the shepherd's homely curds,
- \* His cold thin drink out of his leather bottle,
- \* His wonted sleep under a fresh tree's shade,
- \* All which secure and sweetly he enjoys,
- \* Is far beyond a prince's delicates,
- \* His viands sparkling in a golden cup.
- \* His body couched in a curious bed,
- \* When care, mistrust, and treason wait on him.

*Alarum. Enter a Son that has killed his Father,† dragging in the dead Body.*

*Son.* Ill blows the wind, that profits nobody.—  
 ' This man, whom hand to hand I slew in fight,  
 ' May be possessed with some store of crowns:  
 \* And I, that haply take them from him now,  
 \* May yet ere night yield both my life and them  
 \* To some man else, as this dead man doth me.—  
 ' Who's this?—O God! it is my father's face,  
 ' Whom in this conflict I unawares have kill'd.  
 ' O heavy times, begetting such events!  
 ' From London by the king was I press'd forth;  
 ' My father, being the earl of Warwick's man,  
 ' Came on the part of York, press'd by his master;  
 ' And I, who at his hands receiv'd my life,  
 ' Have by my hands of life bereaved him.—  
 ' Pardon me, God, I knew not what I did!—  
 And pardon, father, for I knew not thee!—  
 \* My tears shall wipe away these bloody marks;  
 \* And no more words, till they have flow'd their fill.  
 ' *K. Hen.* O piteous spectacle! O bloody times!  
 Whilst lions war, and battle for their dens,  
 ' Poor harmless lambs abide their enmity,—  
 \* Weep, wretched man, I'll aid thee tear for tear;

† — *Enter a Son, &c.*] These two horrible incidents are selected to show the innumerable calamities of civil war.—JOHNSON.

In the battle of Constantine and Maxentius, by Raphael, the second of these incidents is introduced on a similar occasion.—STEEVENS.

- \* And let our hearts and eyes, like civil war,  
 \* Be blind with tears, and break o'ercharg'd with grief.<sup>s</sup>

*Enter a Father who has killed his Son, bearing the Body  
 in his Arms.*

- ' *Fath.* Thou that so stoutly hast resisted me,  
 ' Give me thy gold, if thou hast any gold ;  
 ' For I have bought it with an hundred blows,—  
 ' But let me see :—is this our foeman's face ?  
 ' Ah, no, no, no, it is mine only son !—  
 \* Ah, boy, if any life be left in thee,  
 \* Throw up thine eye ; see, see, what showers arise,  
 \* Blown with the windy tempest of my heart,  
 \* Upon thy wounds, that kill mine eye and heart !—  
 ' O, pity, God, this miserable age !—  
 ' What stratagems,<sup>t</sup> how fell, how butcherly,  
 ' Erroneous, mutinous, and unnatural,  
 ' This deadly quarrel, daily doth beget !—  
 ' O boy, thy father gave thee life too soon,  
 ' And hath bereft thee of thy life too late !<sup>u</sup>  
*K. Hen.* Woe above woe ! grief more than common  
 grief !  
 ' O, that my death would stay these ruthful deeds !—  
 \* O pity, pity, gentle heaven, pity !—  
 The red rose and the white are on his face,  
 The fatal colours of our striving houses :  
 \* The one, his purple blood right well resembles ;  
 \* The other, his pale cheeks, methinks, present :  
 Wither one rose, and let the other flourish !  
 ' If you contend, a thousand lives must wither.

<sup>s</sup> *And let our hearts and eyes, like civil war,  
 Be blind with tears, and break o'ercharg'd with grief.*] The meaning is here in-  
 accurately expressed. The king intends to say that the state of their *hearts*  
*and eyes* shall be like that of the kingdom in a *civil war*, all shall be destroyed  
 by power formed within themselves.—JOHNSON.

<sup>t</sup> — *stratagems*,] The word is used by Shakspeare not merely to express  
 the events and surprises of war. The word means in this place some *dreadful*  
 events.—M. MASON.

<sup>u</sup> *O boy, thy father gave thee life too soon,  
 And hath bereft thee of thy life too late!*] Had he been born later, he would  
 not have been of years to engage in this quarrel. *And hath bereft thee of thy*  
*life too late!* because he should have done it by not bringing thee into being, to  
 make both father and son thus miserable.—WARBURTON.

*Son.* How will my mother, for a father's death,  
Take on with me,<sup>x</sup> and ne'er be satisfied?

*Fath.* How will my wife, for slaughter of my son,  
' Shed seas of tears, and ne'er be satisfied?

' *K. Hen.* How will the country, for these woeful  
' Misthink<sup>y</sup> the king, and not be satisfied? [chances,

' *Son.* Was ever son, so ru'd a father's death?

' *Fath.* Was ever father, so bemoan'd a son?

' *K. Hen.* Was ever king, so griev'd for subjects' woe?  
' Much is your sorrow; mine, ten times so much.

' *Son.* I'll bear thee hence, where I may weep my fill.

[*Exit, with the Body.*]

\* *Fath.* These arms of mine shall be thy winding-sheet;  
\* My heart, sweet boy, shall be thy sepulchre;

\* For from my heart thine image ne'er shall go.

\* My sighing breast shall be thy funeral bell;

\* And so obsequious<sup>z</sup> will thy father be,

\* Sad for the loss of thee, having no more,

\* As Priam was for all his valiant sons.

I'll bear thee hence; and let them fight that will,

For I have murder'd where I should not kill.

[*Exit, with the Body.*]

' *K. Hen.* Sad-hearted men, much overgone with care,  
' Here sits a king more woful than you are.

*Alarums: Excursions. Enter Queen MARGARET, Prince  
of Wales, and EXETER.*

' *Prince.* Fly, father, fly! for all your friends are fled,  
' And Warwick rages like a chafed bull:

' Away! for death doth hold us in pursuit.

' *Q. Mar.* Mount you, my lord; towards Berwick post  
again:

' Edward and Richard, like a brace of greyhounds

' Having the fearful flying hare in sight,

' With fiery eyes, sparkling for very wrath,

' And bloody steel grasp'd in their ireful hands,

' Are at our backs; and therefore hence again.

<sup>x</sup> *Take on*—] This phrase is still in use among the vulgar, and signifies—  
to persist in clamorous lamentation.—STEEVENS.

<sup>y</sup> *Misthink*—] i. e. *Think ill of*.

<sup>z</sup> — *obsequious*—] i. e. *Careful of obsequies, or of funeral rites.*—JOHNSON.



‘ *Exe.* Away! for vengeance comes along with them :  
 ‘ Nay, stay not to expostulate, make speed ;  
 Or else come after, I’ll away before.

‘ *K. Hen.* Nay, take me with thee, good sweet Exeter ;  
 ‘ Not that I fear to stay, but love to go  
 ‘ Whither the queen intends. Forward ; away ! [*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE VI.

*The same.*

*A loud Alarum. Enter CLIFFORD, wounded.*

‘ *Clif.* Here burns my candle out, ay, here it dies,  
 Which, while it lasted, gave king Henry light.  
 O, Lancaster ! I fear thy overthrow,  
 More than my body’s parting with my soul.  
 My love, and fear, glew’d many friends to thee ;  
 ‘ And, now I fall, thy tough commixtures melt.  
 Impairing Henry, strength’ning mis-proud York,  
 The common people swarm like summer flies :  
 And whither fly the gnats, but to the sun ?  
 And who shines now but Henry’s enemies ?  
 O Phœbus ! hadst thou never given consent<sup>a</sup>  
 That Phaeton should check thy fiery steeds,  
 Thy burning car never had scorched the earth :  
 And Henry, had’st thou sway’d as kings should do,  
 Or as thy father, and his father, did,  
 Giving no ground unto the house of York,  
 \* They never then had sprung like summer flies ;  
 ‘ I, and ten thousand in this luckless realm,  
 Had left no mourning widows for our death,  
 And thou this day hadst kept thy chair in peace.  
 For what doth cherish weeds, but gentle air ?  
 ‘ And what makes robbers bold, but too much lenity ?  
 Bootless are complaints, and cureless are my wounds :  
 ‘ No way to fly, nor strength to hold out flight ;  
 The foe is merciless, and will not pity ;

<sup>a</sup> O Phœbus ! hadst thou never given consent—] The duke of York had been entrusted by Henry with the reins of government both in Ireland and France and hence, perhaps, was thought to aspire to the throne.—MALONE.

For, at their hands, I have deserv'd no pity.

' The air hath got into my deadly wounds,  
And much effuse of blood doth make me faint :—  
Come, York, and Richard, Warwick, and the rest ;  
' I stabb'd your fathers' bosoms, split my breast.

[*He faints.*]

*Alarum and Retreat.* Enter EDWARD, GEORGE, RICHARD,  
MONTAGUE, WARWICK, and Soldiers.

' *Edw.* Now breathe we, lords ;<sup>b</sup> good fortune bids us  
pause,

' And smooth the frowns of war with peaceful looks.—  
Some troops pursue the bloody-minded queen ;—

' That led calm Henry, though he were a king,

' As doth a sail, fill'd with a fretting gust,

' Command an argosy to stem the waves.

' But think you, lords, that Clifford fled with them ?

*War.* No, 'tis impossible he should escape :  
For, though before his face I speak the words,  
Your brother Richard mark'd him for the grave :

' And, wheresoe'er he is, he's surely dead.

[*CLIFFORD groans, and dies.*]

*Edw.* Whose soul is that which takes her heavy leave ?

*Rich.* A deadly groan, like life and death's departing.<sup>c</sup>

*Edw.* See who it is : and now the battle's ended,

If friend, or foe, let him be gently us'd.

' *Rich.* Revoke that doom of mercy, for 'tis Clifford ;

' Who not contented that he lopp'd the branch

In hewing Rutland when his leaves put forth,<sup>d</sup>

' But set his murdering knife unto the root

<sup>b</sup> *Now breathe we, lords ;* ] This battle, in which the house of York was victorious, was fought on a plain between Towton and Saxton, on the 29th of March, (Palm Sunday,) 1461. The loyal army consisted, according to Hall, of about 40,000 men ; and the young duke of York's forces were 48,760. In this combat, which lasted fourteen hours, and in the actions of the two following days, 36,776, persons are said to have been killed : the greater part of whom were undoubtedly Lancastrians.—MALONE.

<sup>c</sup> ——— *departing,* ] i. e. *Separation.*

<sup>d</sup> *In hewing Rutland when his leaves put forth,* ] It is manifest, from this and many other passages, that the author of this play imagined Rutland was younger than George and Richard, whereas he was in fact older than them both, being the duke of York's second son ; in consequence of which he bore a title by courtesy.—MALONE.

‘ From whence that tender spray did sweetly spring,  
 ‘ I mean, our princely father, duke of York.

*War.* From off the gates of York fetch down the head,  
 Your father’s head, which Clifford placed there:

‘ Instead whereof, let this supply the room;  
 Measure for measure must be answered.

*Edw.* Bring forth that fatal screech-owl to our house,  
 ‘ That nothing sung but death to us and ours:  
 ‘ Now death shall stop his dismal threatening sound,  
 ‘ And his ill-boding tongue no more shall speak.

[*Attendants bring the Body forward.*]

*War.* I think his understanding is bereft:—  
 Speak, Clifford, dost thou know who speaks to thee?—  
 Dark cloudy death o’ershades his beams of life,  
 And he nor sees, nor hears us what we say.

*Rich.* O, would he did! and so, perhaps, he doth;  
 ‘ ’Tis but his policy to counterfeit,  
 ‘ Because he would avoid such bitter taunts  
 ‘ Which in the time of death he gave our father.

*Geo.* If so thou think’st, vex him with eager words.<sup>e</sup>

*Rich.* Clifford, ask mercy, and obtain no grace.

*Edw.* Clifford, repent in bootless penitence.

*War.* Clifford, devise excuses for thy faults.

*Geo.* While we devise fell tortures for thy faults.

‘ *Rich.* Thou didst love York, and I am son to York.

*Edw.* Thou pitied’st Rutland, I will pity thee.

*Geo.* Where’s captain Margaret, to fence you now?

*War.* They mock thee, Clifford! swear as thou wast  
 wont.

‘ *Rich.* What, not an oath? nay, then the world goes  
 hard,  
 ‘ When Clifford cannot spare his friends an oath:—  
 I know by that, he’s dead; And, by my soul,  
 ‘ If this right hand would buy two hours’ life,  
 That I in all despite might rail at him,  
 ‘ This hand should chop it off; and with the issuing  
 blood

Stifle the villain, whose unstaunched thirst  
 York and young Rutland could not satisfy.

<sup>e</sup> — eager words.] i. e. Sour words, words of asperity; from *aigre*, Fr.

*War.* Ay, but he's dead: Off with the traitor's head,  
 And rear it in the place your father's stands.—  
 And now to London with triumphant march,  
 There to be crowned England's royal king.  
 ' From whence shall Warwick cut the sea to France,  
 And ask the lady Bona for thy queen:  
 So shalt thou sinew both these lands together;  
 ' And, having France thy friend, thou shalt not dread  
 The scatter'd foe, that hopes to rise again;  
 For though they cannot greatly sting to hurt,  
 Yet look to have them buz, to offend thine ears.  
 First, will I see the coronation;  
 ' And then to Brittany I'll cross the sea,  
 To effect this marriage, so it please my lord.

*Edw.* Even as thou wilt, sweet Warwick, let it be:  
 \* For on thy shoulder do I build my seat;  
 \* And never will I undertake the thing,  
 \* Wherein thy counsel and consent is wanting.—  
 ' Richard, I will create thee duke of Gloster;—  
 ' And George, of Clarence;—Warwick, as ourself,  
 ' Shall do, and undo, as him pleaseth best.

*Rich.* Let me be duke of Clarence; George, of Gloster;  
 For Gloster's dukedom is too ominous.<sup>f</sup>

*War.* Tut, that's a foolish observation;  
 Richard, be duke of Gloster; Now to London,  
 To see these honours in possession. [Exeunt.]

### ACT III.

SCENE I.—*A Chace in the North of England.*

*Enter two Keepers, with Cross-bows in their Hands.*

' 1 *Keep.* Under this thick-grown brake<sup>g</sup> we'll shroud  
 ourselves;  
 ' For through this laund<sup>h</sup> anon the deer will come;

<sup>f</sup> — *too ominous.*] Alluding, perhaps, to the deaths of Thomas of Woodstock, and Humphrey, dukes of Gloster.—STEEVENS.

<sup>g</sup> — *brake*—] i. e. *Thicket*.

<sup>h</sup> — *laund*—] This word was synonymous with *lawn*: a plain extended between woods.—STEEVENS.

- ‘ And in this covert will we make our stand,  
 ‘ Culling the principal of all the deer.  
 \* 2 *Keep.* I’ll stay above the hill, so both may shoot.  
 \* 1 *Keep.* That cannot be; the noise of thy cross-bow  
 \* Will scare the herd, and so my shoot is lost.  
 \* Here stand we both, and aim we at the best:  
 \* And, for the time shall not seem tedious,  
 \* I’ll tell thee what befell me on a day,  
 \* In this self-place where now we mean to stand.  
 ‘ 2 *Keep.* Here comes a man, let’s stay till he be past.

*Enter King HENRY, disguised, with a Prayer-book.*

- K. Hen.* From Scotland am I stol’n, even of pure love,  
 ‘ To greet mine own land with my wishful sight.  
 ‘ No, Harry, Harry, ’tis no land of thine;  
 \* Thy place is fill’d, thy sceptre wrung from thee,  
 \* Thy balm wash’d off, wherewith thou wast anointed:  
 No bending knee will call thee Cæsar now,  
 ‘ No humble suitors press to speak for right,  
 \* No, not a man comes for redress of thee;  
 For how can I help them, and not myself?  
 ‘ 1 *Keep.* Ay, here’s a deer whose skin’s a keeper’s fee:  
 ‘ This is the *quondam* king; let’s seize upon him.  
 \* *K. Hen.* Let me embrace these sour adversities;  
 \* For wise men say, it is the wisest course.  
 \* 2 *Keep.* Why linger we? let us lay hands upon him.  
 \* 1 *Keep.* Forbear a while; we’ll hear a little more.  
*K. Hen.* My queen, and son, are gone to France for  
 aid;

- And, as I hear, the great commanding Warwick  
 ‘ Is thither gone, to crave the French king’s sister  
 ‘ To wife for Edward: If this news be true,  
 ‘ Poor queen, and son, your labour is but lost;  
 ‘ For Warwick is a subtle orator,  
 ‘ And Lewis a prince soon won with moving words.  
 ‘ By this account, then, Margaret may win him;  
 ‘ For she’s a woman to be pity’d much:  
 \* Her sighs will make a battery in his breast:

— *quondam*—] This word had not in Shakspeare’s time acquired its present uniformly ludicrous sense.—HOLT WHITE.

- \* Her tears will pierce into a marble heart ;  
 \* The tiger will be mild, while she doth mourn ;  
 \* And Nero will be tainted with remorse,  
 \* To hear, and see, her plaints, her brinish tears.  
 \* Ay, but she's come to beg ; Warwick, to give :  
 She, on his left side, craving aid for Henry ;  
 He, on his right, asking a wife for Edward.  
 She weeps, and says—her Henry is depos'd ;  
 He smiles, and says—his Edward is install'd ;  
 \* That she, poor wretch, for grief can speak no more :  
 \* Whiles Warwick tells his title, smooths the wrong,  
 \* Inferreth arguments of mighty strength ;  
 \* And, in conclusion, wins the king from her,  
 \* With promise of his sister, and what else,  
 \* To strengthen and support king Edward's place.  
 \* O Margaret, thus 'twill be ; and thou, poor soul,  
 \* Art then-forsaken, as thou went'st forlorn.
- 2 *Keep.* Say, what art thou, that talk'st of kings and queens ?
- ‘ *K. Hen.* More than I seem, and less than I was born to :  
 ‘ A man at least, for less I should not be ;  
 And men may talk of kings, and why not I ?
- ‘ 2 *Keep.* Ay, but thou talk'st as if thou wert a king.
- ‘ *K. Hen.* Why, so I am, in mind ; and that's enough.
- 2 *Keep.* But, if thou be a king, where is thy crown ?
- K. Hen.* My crown is in my heart, not on my head ;  
 \* Not deck'd with diamonds, and Indian stones,  
 \* Nor to be seen : ‘ my crown is call'd, content ;  
 ‘ A crown it is, that seldom kings enjoy.
- ‘ 2 *Keep.* Well, if you be a king crown'd with content,  
 Your crown content, and you must be contented  
 ‘ To go along with us : for, as we think,  
 ‘ You are the king, king Edward hath depos'd ;  
 ‘ And we his subjects, sworn in all allegiance,  
 ‘ Will apprehend you as his enemy.
- \* *K. Hen.* But did you never swear, and break an oath ?  
 \* 2 *Keep.* No never such an oath ; nor will not now.
- \* *K. Hen.* Where did you dwell, when I was king of  
 England ?
- \* 2 *Keep.* Here in this country, where we now remain.

- \* *K. Hen.* I was anointed king at nine months old ;
- \* My father, and my grandfather, were kings ;
- \* And you were sworn true subjects unto me :
- \* And tell me then, have you not broke your oaths ?

\* *I Keep.* No ;

For we were subjects, but while you were king.

\* *K. Hen.* Why, am I dead ? do I not breathe a man ?

\* Ah, simple men, you know not what you swear.

\* Look, as I blow this feather from my face,

\* And as the air blows it to me again,

\* Obeying with my wind when I do blow,

\* And yielding to another when it blows,

\* Commanded always by the greatest gust ;

\* Such is the lightness of you common men.

\* But do not break your oaths ; for, of that sin

\* My mild entreaty shall not make you guilty.

\* Go where you will, the king shall be commanded ;

\* And be you kings ; command, and I'll obey.

\* *I Keep.* We are true subjects to the king, king  
Edward.

\* *K. Hen.* So would you be again to Henry,

\* If he were seated as king Edward is.

*I Keep.* We charge you, in God's name, and in the king's,  
To go with us unto the officers.

\* *K. Hen.* In God's name, lead ; your king's name be  
obey'd :

\* And what God will, then let your king perform ;

\* And what he will, I humbly yield unto. [*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE II.

London. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter* King EDWARD, GLOSTER, CLARENCE, and  
Lady GREY.

- \* *K. Edw.* Brother of Gloster, at Saint Albans' field
- \* This lady's husband, sir John Grey was slain,
- His lands then seiz'd on by the conqueror :
- Her suit is now to repossess those lands ;
- \* Which we in justice, cannot well deny,

Because in quarrel of the house of York

‘ The worthy gentleman did lose his life.<sup>k</sup>

*Glo.* Your highness shall do well to grant her suit ;

\* It were dishonour to deny it her.

*K. Edw.* It were no less ; but yet I’ll make a pause.

‘ *Glo.* Yea ! is it so ?

I see, the lady hath a thing to grant,

Before the king will grant her humble suit.

*Clar.* He knows the game ; How true he keeps the wind !

[*Aside.*

*Glo.* Silence !

[*Aside.*

‘ *K. Edw.* Widow, we will consider<sup>l</sup> of your suit ;

‘ And come some other time, to know our mind.

‘ *L. Grey.* Right gracious lord, I cannot brook delay :

‘ May it please your highness to resolve me now ;

‘ And what your pleasure is shall satisfy me.

‘ *Glo.* [*aside.*] Ay, widow ? then I’ll warrant you all  
your lands,

‘ An if what pleases him, shall pleasure you.

‘ Fight closer, or, good faith, you’ll catch a blow.

\* *Clar.* I fear her not, unless she chance to fall. [*Aside.*

\* *Glo.* God forbid that ! for he’ll take vantages.

[*Aside.*

‘ *K. Edw.* How many children hast thou, widow ? tell  
me.

*Clar.* I think he means to beg a child of her. [*Aside.*

*Glo.* Nay, whip me then ; he’ll rather give her two.

[*Aside.*

*L. Grey.* Three, my most gracious lord.

*Glo.* You shall have four, if you’ll be rul’d by him.

[*Aside.*

‘ *K. Edw.* ’Twere pity, they should lose their father’s  
land.

<sup>k</sup> This is in every particular a falsification of history. Sir John Grey fell in the second battle of St. Alban’s, which was fought on Shrove-Tuesday, Feb. 17, 1460–1, fighting on the side of King Henry ; and so far is it from being true that his lands were seized by the conqueror, (Queen Margaret,) that they were in fact seized by the very person that now speaks, after his great victory at Towton, on the 29th of March, 1461. The present scene is laid in 1464.—MALONE.

<sup>l</sup> [*Widow, we will consider—*] This is a very lively and spritely dialogue ; the reciprocation is quicker than is common in Shakspeare.—JOHNSON.



*L. Grey.* Be pitiful, dread lord, and grant it then.

*K. Edw.* Lords, give us leave; I'll try this widow's wit.

*Glo.* Ay, good leave have you, for you will have leave,  
Till youth take leave, and leave you to the crutch.

[*GLOSTER and CLARENCE retire to the other side.*]

\* *K. Edw.* Now tell me, madam, do you love your children?

\* *L. Grey.* Ay, full as dearly as I love myself.

\* *K. Edw.* And would you not do much, to do them good?

\* *L. Grey.* To do them good, I would sustain some harm.

\* *K. Edw.* Then get your husband's lands, to do them good.

\* *L. Grey.* Therefore I came unto your majesty.

*K. Edw.* I'll tell you how these lands are to be got.

\* *L. Grey.* So shall you bind me to your highness' service.

\* *K. Edw.* What service wilt thou do me, if I give them?

\* *L. Grey.* What you command, that rests in me to do.

\* *K. Edw.* But you will take exceptions to my boon.

\* *L. Grey.* No, gracious lord, except I cannot do it.

\* *K. Edw.* Ay, but thou canst do what I mean to ask.

\* *L. Grey.* Why, then I will do what your grace commands.

\* *Glo.* He plies her hard; and much rain wears the marble. [Aside.]

\* *Clar.* As red as fire! nay, then her wax must melt. [Aside.]

*L. Grey.* Why stops my lord? shall I not hear my task?

*K. Edw.* An easy task; 'tis but to love a king.

*L. Grey.* That's soon perform'd, because I am a subject.

*K. Edw.* Why then, thy husband's lands I freely give thee.

*L. Grey.* I take my leave, with many thousand thanks.

*Glo.* The match is made; she seals it with a curt'sy.

\* *K. Edw.* But stay thee, 'tis the fruits of love I mean.

\* *L. Grey.* The fruits of love I mean, my loving liege.

\* *K. Edw.* Ay, but, I fear me, in another sense.

What love think'st thou, I sue so much to get?

‘ *L. Grey.* My love till death, my humble thanks, my prayers;

‘ That love, which virtue begs, and virtue grants.

*K. Edw.* No, by my troth, I did not mean such love.

\* *L. Grey.* Why, then you mean not as I thought you did.

*K. Edw.* But now you partly may perceive my mind.

\* *L. Grey.* My mind will never grant what I perceive

\* Your highness aims at, if I aim aright.

*K. Edw.* To tell thee plain, I aim to lie with thee.

\* *L. Grey.* To tell you plain, I had rather lie in prison.

*K. Edw.* Why, then thou shalt not have thy husband’s lands.

*L. Grey.* Why, then mine honesty shall be my dower;  
For by that loss I will not purchase them.

‘ *K. Edw.* Therein thou wrong’st thy children mightily.

*L. Grey.* Herein your highness wrongs both them and  
But, mighty lord, this merry inclination [me.

‘ Accords not with the sadness of my suit;

Please you dismiss me, either with ay, or no.

*K. Edw.* Ay; if thou wilt say ay, to my request:

No; if thou dost say no, to my demand.

*L. Grey.* Then, no, my lord. My suit is at an end.

‘ *Glo.* The widow likes him not, she knits her brows.

[*Aside.*

*Clar.* He is the bluntest wooer in Christendom. [*Aside.*

‘ *K. Edw.* [*aside.*] Her looks do argue her replete with  
modesty;

\* Her words do show her wit incomparable;

\* All her perfections challenge sovereignty:

One way, or other, she is for a king;

And she shall be my love, or else my queen.—

Say, that king Edward take thee for his queen?

*L. Grey.* ’Tis better said than done, my gracious lord:  
I am a subject fit to jest withal,

But far unfit to be a sovereign.

*K. Edw.* Sweet widow, by my state I swear to thee,  
I speak no more than what my soul intends;

And that is, to enjoy thee for my love.

*L. Grey.* And that is more than I will yield unto:

' I know, I am too mean to be your queen :  
And yet too good to be your concubine.<sup>m</sup>

*K. Edw.* You cavil, widow ; I did mean, my queen.

*L. Grey.* 'Twill grieve your grace, my sons should call  
you—father.

*K. Edw.* No more, than when thy daughters call thee  
Thou art a widow, and thou hast some children : [mother.  
And, by God's mother, I, being but a bachelor,  
Have other some : why, 'tis a happy thing  
To be the father unto many sons.

' Answer no more, for thou shalt be my queen.

*Glo.* The ghostly father now hath done his shrift.

[*Aside.*

*Clar.* When he was made a shriver, 'twas for shift.

[*Aside.*

*K. Edw.* Brothers, you muse what chat we two have  
had.

\* *Glo.* The widow likes it not, for she looks sad.

*K. Edw.* You'd think it strange, if I should marry her.

*Clar.* To whom, my lord ?

*K. Edw.* Why, Clarence, to myself.

*Glo.* That would be ten days' wonder, at the least.

*Clar.* That's a day longer than a wonder lasts.

' *Glo.* By so much is the wonder in extremes.

*K. Edw.* Well, jest on, brothers : I can tell you both,  
Her suit is granted for her husband's lands.

*Enter a Nobleman.*

*Nob.* My gracious lord, Henry your foe is taken,

' And brought your prisoner to your palace gate.

*K. Edw.* See, that he be convey'd unto the Tower :—

' And go we, brothers, to the man that took him,

' To question of his apprehension.—

' Widow, go you along ;—Lords, use her honourable.

[*Exeunt* King EDWARD, Lady GREY,  
CLARENCE, and Lord.

<sup>m</sup> *And yet too good, &c.]* " Which demaund she so wysely and with so covert  
speeche aunswered and repugnend, affyrmyng that as she was for his honour far  
unable to be his spouse and bedfellowe, so for her awne poor honestie she was too  
good to be either his concubine, or soveraigne lady ;" *Hall's Chronicle.*—  
MALONE.

*Glo.* Ay, Edward will use women honourably.  
 'Would he were wasted, marrow, bones, and all,  
 'That from his loins no hopeful branch may spring,  
 'To cross me from the golden time I look for!  
 'And yet, between my soul's desire, and me,  
 \* (The lustful Edward's title buried,)  
 'Is Clarence, Henry, and his son young Edward,  
 'And all the unlook'd-for issue of their bodies,  
 'To take their rooms, ere I can place myself:  
 A cold premeditation for my purpose!  
 \* Why, then I do but dream on sovereignty;  
 \* Like one that stands upon a promontory,  
 \* And spies a far-off shore where he would tread,  
 \* Wishing his foot were equal with his eye;  
 \* And chides the sea that sunders him from thence,  
 \* Saying—he'll lade it dry to have his way:  
 \* So do I wish the crown, being so far off;  
 \* And so I chide the means that keep me from it;  
 \* And so I say—I'll cut the causes off,  
 \* Flattering me with impossibilities.—  
 \* My eye's too quick, my heart o'erweens too much,  
 \* Unless my hand and strength could equal them.  
 \* Well, say there is no kingdom then for Richard;  
 \* What other pleasure can the world afford?  
 'I'll make my heaven in a lady's lap,  
 'And deck my body in gay ornaments,  
 And witch sweet ladies with my words and looks.  
 'O miserable thought! and more unlikely,  
 'Than to accomplish twenty golden crowns!  
 Why, love forswore me in my mother's womb:  
 'And, for I should not deal in her soft laws,  
 'She did corrupt frail nature with some bribe  
 'To shrink mine arm up like a wither'd shrub;  
 'To make an envious mountain on my back,  
 Where sits deformity to mock my body;  
 'To shape my legs of an unequal size;  
 \* To disproportion me in every part,  
 \* Like to a chaos, or an unlick'd bear-whelp,<sup>n</sup>

<sup>n</sup> ——— *unlick'd bear-whelp,*] It was an opinion which, in spite of its absurdity, prevailed long, that the bear brings forth only shapeless lumps of ani-

- \* That carries no impression like the dam.  
 And am I then a man to be belov'd?  
 ° O, monstrous fault, to harbour such a thought!  
 \* Then, since this earth affords no joy to me,  
 \* But to command, to check, to o'erbear such  
 \* As are of better person than myself,<sup>o</sup>  
 \* I'll make my heaven—to dream upon the crown;  
 \* And, whiles I live, to account this world but hell,  
 \* Until my head, that this mis-shap'd trunk bears,<sup>p</sup>  
 \* Be round impaled with a glorious crown.  
 \* And yet I know not how to get the crown,  
 \* For many lives stand between me and home:  
 \* And I,—like one lost in a thorny wood,  
 \* That rents the thorns, and is rent with the thorns;  
 \* Seeking a way, and straying from the way:  
 \* Not knowing how to find the open air,  
 \* But toiling desperately to find it out,—  
 \* Torment myself to catch the English crown:  
 \* And from that torment I will free myself,  
 \* Or hew my way out with a bloody axe.  
 Why, I can smile, and murder while I smile:  
 And cry, content, to that which grieves my heart;  
 \* And wet my cheeks with artificial tears,  
 \* And frame my face to all occasions.  
 \* I'll drown more sailors than the mermaid shall;  
 \* I'll slay more gazers than the basilisk;  
 \* I'll play the orator as well as Nestor,  
 \* Deceive more slyly than Ulysses could,

mated flesh, which she licks into the form of bears. It is now well known that the whelps of the bear are produced in the same state with those of other creatures.—JOHNSON.

° ————— to o'erbear such

*As are of better person than myself,*] Richard speaks here the language of nature. Whoever is stigmatized with deformity has a constant source of envy in his mind, and would counterbalance, by some other superiority, those advantages which he feels himself to want. Bacon remarks that the deformed are commonly daring; and it is almost proverbially observed that they are ill-natured. The truth is, that the deformed, like all other men, are displeased with inferiority, and endeavour to gain ground by good or bad means, as they are virtuous or corrupt.—JOHNSON.

<sup>p</sup> *Until my head, &c.*] The old copy falsely reads:

“Until my mis-shap'd trunk that bears this head,  
 Be round impaled, &c.”

which represents the *body* and not the *head* as *impaled* or *encircled* with the crown. The emendation of the text is Steevens'.

\* And, like a Simon, take another Troy:

I can add colours to the cameleon;

‘ Change shapes, with Proteus, for advantages,

‘ And set the murd’rous Machiavel to school.

Can I do this, and cannot get a crown?

‘ Tut! were it further off, I’ll pluck it down.

[*Exit*

### SCENE III.

France. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Flourish. Enter LEWIS the French King, and Lady BONA, attended; the King takes his State. Then enter Queen MARGARET, Prince EDWARD her Son, and the Earl of OXFORD.*

‘ *K. Lew.* Fair queen of England, worthy Margaret,

[*Rising.*

‘ Sit down with us; it ill befits thy state,

‘ And birth, that thou should’st stand, while Lewis doth sit.

\* *Q. Mar.* No, mighty king of France; now Margaret

\* Must strike her sail, and learn awhile to serve,

\* Where kings command. I was, I must confess,

\* Great Albion’s queen in former golden days:

\* But now mischance hath trod my title down,

\* And with dishonour laid me on the ground;

\* Where I must take like seat unto my fortune,

\* And to my humble seat conform myself.

\* *K. Lew.* Why, say, fair queen, whence springs this deep despair?

\* *Q. Mar.* From such a cause as fills mine eyes with tears,

\* And stops my tongue, while heart is drown’d in cares.

\* *K. Lew.* Whate’er it be, be thou still like thyself,

\* And sit thee by our side: yield not thy neck

[*Seats her by him.*

\* To fortune’s yoke, but let thy dauntless mind

\* Still ride in triumph over all mischance.

\* Be plain, queen Margaret, and tell thy grief;

\* It shall be eas’d, if France can yield relief.

- \* *Q. Mar.* Those gracious words revive my drooping thoughts,  
 \* And give my tongue-tied sorrows leave to speak.  
 \* Now, therefore, be it known to noble Lewis,—  
 \* That Henry, sole possessor of my love,  
 \* Is, of a king, become a banish'd man,  
 \* And forc'd to live in Scotland a forlorn ;  
 \* While proud ambitious Edward, duke of York,  
 \* Usurps the regal title, and the seat  
 \* Of England's true-anointed lawful king.  
 \* This is the cause, that I, poor Margaret,—  
 \* With this my son, prince Edward, Henry's heir,—  
 \* Am come to crave thy just and lawful aid ;  
 ' And, if thou fail us, all our hope is done :  
 \* Scotland hath will to help, but cannot help :  
 \* Our people and our peers are both misled,  
 \* Our treasure seiz'd, our soldiers put to flight,  
 \* And, as thou see'st, ourselves in heavy plight.  
 \* *K. Lew.* Renowned queen, with patience calm the storm,  
 \* While we bethink a means to break it off.  
 \* *Q. Mar.* The more we stay, the stronger grows our foe.  
 \* *K. Lew.* The more I stay, the more I'll succour thee.  
 \* *Q. Mar.* O, but impatience waiteth on true sorrow :  
 \* And see, where comes the breeder of my sorrow.

*Enter WARWICK, attended.*<sup>a</sup>

' *K. Lew.* What's he, approacheth boldly to our presence ?

*Q. Mar.* Our earl of Warwick, Edward's greatest friend.

<sup>a</sup> *Enter Warwick, attended.*] There needs no further proof how little our common histories are to be depended upon, than this fabulous story of Warwick and the Lady Bona. This nobleman's embassy and commission, the insult he receives by the king's hasty marriage, and his consequent resolution to avenge it, though given in Hall and Holinshed, are entirely without foundation. The fact is, that the king was privately married to Lady Elizabeth Widville, in 1463, and in February 1465, Warwick actually stood sponsor to the Princess Elizabeth their first child. What surely displeased Warwick was the heaping favours and offices on the queen's family.—RITSON.

*K. Lew.* Welcome, brave Warwick! What brings thee to France?

[*Descending from his State.* Queen MARGARET rises.]

\* *Q. Mar.* Ay, now begins a second storm to rise;  
 \* For this is he, that moves both wind and tide.  
 ‘ *War.* From worthy Edward, king of Albion,  
 My lord and sovereign, and thy vowed friend,  
 I come,—in kindness, and unfeigned love,—  
 First, to do greetings to thy royal person;  
 And, then, to crave a league of amity;  
 And, lastly, to confirm that amity  
 With nuptial knot, if thou vouchsafe to grant  
 That virtuous lady Bona, thy fair sister,  
 To England’s king in lawful marriage.

‘ *Q. Mar.* If that go forward, Henry’s hope is done.

*War.* And, gracious madam, [*to BONA,*] in our king’s behalf,

‘ I am commanded, with your leave and favour,  
 Humbly to kiss your hand, and with my tongue  
 To tell the passion of my sovereign’s heart;  
 Where fame, late entering at his heedful ears,  
 Hath plac’d thy beauty’s image, and thy virtue.

*Q. Mar.* King Lewis,—and lady Bona,—hear me speak,  
 ‘ Before you answer Warwick. His demand  
 \* Springs not from Edward’s well-meant honest love,  
 \* But from deceit, bred by necessity;  
 \* For how can tyrants safely govern home,  
 \* Unless abroad they purchase great alliance?  
 \* To prove him tyrant, this reason may suffice,—  
 \* That Henry liveth still: but were he dead,  
 \* Yet here prince Edward stands, king Henry’s son.  
 \* Look therefore, Lewis, that by this league and marriage  
 \* Thou draw not on thy danger and dishonour:  
 \* For though usurpers sway the rule a while,  
 \* Yet heavens are just, and time suppresseth wrongs.

*War.* Injurious Margaret!

*Prince.* And why not queen?

*War.* Because thy father Henry did usurp;  
 And thou no more art prince, than she is queen.



*Oxf.* Then Warwick disannuls great John of Gaunt,  
Which did subdue the greatest part of Spain;  
And, after John of Gaunt, Henry the fourth,  
' Whose wisdom was a mirror to the wisest;  
And, after that wise prince, Henry the fifth,  
Who by his prowess conquered all France:  
From these our Henry lineally descends.

*War.* Oxford, how haps it, in this smooth discourse,  
You told not, how Henry the sixth hath lost  
All that which Henry the fifth had gotten?  
Methinks, these peers of France should smile at that.  
But for the rest,—You tell a pedigree  
Of threescore and two years; a silly time  
To make prescription for a kingdom's worth.

' *Oxf.* Why, Warwick, canst thou speak against thy  
liege,  
' Whom thou obey'dst thirty and six years,  
And not bewray thy treason with a blush?

*War.* Can Oxford, that did ever fence the right,  
Now buckler falsehood with a pedigree?  
For shame, leave Henry, and call Edward king.

' *Oxf.* Call him my king, by whose injurious doom  
' My elder brother, the lord Aubrey Vere,  
Was done to death? and more than so, my father,  
Even in the downfall of his mellow'd years,  
' When nature brought him to the door of death?  
No, Warwick, no; while life upholds this arm,  
This arm upholds the house of Lancaster.

*War.* And I the house of York.

*K. Lew.* Queen Margaret, prince Edward, and Oxford,  
' Vouchsafe, at our request, to stand aside,  
' While I use further conference with Warwick.

\* *Q. Mar.* Heaven grant, that Warwick's words be-  
witch him not!

[Retiring with the Prince and OXFORD.]

' *K. Lew.* Now, Warwick, tell me, even upon thy  
conscience,

' Is Edward your true king? for I were loath,  
' To link with him that were not lawful chosen.

*War.* Thereon I pawn my credit and mine honour.

*K. Lew.* But is he gracious in the people's eye?

*War.* The more, that Henry was unfortunate.<sup>r</sup>

*K. Lew.* Then further,—all dissembling set aside,  
' Tell me for truth the measure of his love  
' Unto our sister Bona.

*War.* Such it seems,  
As may beseem a monarch like himself.  
Myself have often heard him say, and swear,—  
That this his love was an eternal plant;<sup>s</sup>  
Whereof the root was fix'd in virtue's ground,  
The leaves and fruits maintain'd with beauty's sun;  
Exempt from envy, but not from disdain,<sup>t</sup>  
Unless the lady Bona quit his pain.

*K. Lew.* Now, sister, let us hear your firm resolve.

*Bona.* Your grant, or your denial, shall be mine:  
Yet I confess, [*to WAR.*] that often ere this day,  
When I have heard your king's desert recounted,  
Mine ear hath tempted judgment to desire.

\* *K. Lew.* Then, Warwick, thus,—Our sister shall be  
\* And now forthwith shall articles be drawn [*Edward's* ;  
\* Touching the jointure that your king must make,  
\* Which with her dowry shall be counterpois'd:—  
Draw near, Queen Margaret, and be a witness,  
That Bona shall be wife to the English king.

*Prince.* To Edward, but not to the English king.

\* *Q. Mar.* Deceitful Warwick! it was thy device  
\* By this alliance to make void my suit;  
\* Before thy coming, Lewis was Henry's friend.

\* *K. Lew.* And still is friend to him and Margaret:  
\* But if your title to the crown be weak,—  
\* As may appear by Edward's good success,—  
\* Then 'tis but reason, that I be releas'd  
\* From giving aid, which late I promised.  
\* Yet shall you have all kindness at my hand,  
\* That your estate requires, and mine can yield.

<sup>r</sup> — that *Henry was unfortunate.*] He means, that Henry was unsuccessful in war, having lost his dominions in France, &c.—MALONE.

<sup>s</sup> — an *eternal plant* ;] i. e. *A perennial plant* ; such was the language of Shakspeare's time.—STEEVENS.

<sup>t</sup> *Exempt from envy, but not from disdain,*] *Envy* is in this place, as in many others, put for *malice* or *hatred*. His situation places him above these, though it cannot secure him from female disdain.—STEEVENS.

*War.* Henry now lives in Scotland, at his ease;  
Where having nothing, nothing he can lose.  
And as for you yourself, our *quondam* queen,—  
You have a father able<sup>u</sup> to maintain you;  
And better 'twere, you troubled him than France.

\* *Q. Mar.* Peace, impudent and shameless Warwick,  
peace;

\* Proud setter-up and puller-down of kings!

\* I will not hence, till with my talk and tears,

\* Both full of truth, I make king Lewis behold

\* Thy sly conveyance,<sup>x</sup> and my lord's false love;

\* For both of you are birds of self-same feather.

[*A Horn sounded within.*]

*K. Lew.* Warwick, this is some post to us, or thee.

*Enter a Messenger.*

*Mess.* My lord ambassador, these letters are for you;  
Sent from your brother, marquis Montague.

These from our king unto your majesty.—

And, madam, these for you; from whom, I know not.

[*To MARGARET. They all read their letters.*]

*Oxf.* I like it well, that our fair queen and mistress  
Smiles at her news, while Warwick frowns at his.

*Prince.* Nay, mark, how Lewis stamps as he were  
nettled:

\* I hope, all's for the best.

*K. Lew.* Warwick, what are thy news? and yours, fair  
queen?

' *Q. Mar.* Mine, such as fill my heart with unhop'd  
joys.

*War.* Mine, full of sorrow and heart's discontent.

*K. Lew.* What! has your king married the lady Grey?  
And now, to sooth your forgery and his,<sup>y</sup>

' Sends me a paper to persuade me patience?

<sup>u</sup> *You have a father able—*] This seems ironical. The poverty of Margaret's father is a very frequent topick of reproach.—JOHNSON.

<sup>x</sup> *Thy sly conveyance,*] Conveyance is juggling, and thence is taken for artifice and fraud.—JOHNSON.

<sup>y</sup> — *to sooth your forgery and his,*] i. e. *To soften it, to make it more endurable:* or perhaps, to sooth us, and to prevent our being exasperated by your forgery and his.—MALONE.

‘ Is this the alliance that he seeks with France ?

‘ Dare he presume to scorn us in this manner ?

\* *Q. Mar.* I told your majesty as much before :  
This proveth Edward’s love, and Warwick’s honesty.

*War.* King Lewis, I here protest,—in sight of heaven,  
And by the hope I have of heavenly bliss,—

That I am clear from this misdeed of Edward’s ;

No more my king, for he dishonours me ;

But most himself, if he could see his shame.—

Did I forget, that by the house of York

My father came untimely to his death ?<sup>z</sup>

Did I let pass the abuse done to my niece ?

Did I impale him with the regal crown ?

Did I put Henry from his native right ;

‘ And am I guerdon’d<sup>a</sup> at the last with shame ?

\* Shame on himself ! for my desert is honour.

\* And, to repair my honour lost for him,

\* I here renounce him, and return to Henry :

‘ My noble queen, let former grudges pass,

And henceforth I am thy true servitor ;

I will revenge his wrong to lady Bona,

And replant Henry in his former state.

*Q. Mar.* Warwick, these words have turn’d my hate to  
love ;

‘ And I forgive and quite forget old faults,

‘ And joy that thou becom’st king Henry’s friend

*War.* So much his friend, ay, his unfeigned friend,

That, if king Lewis vouchsafe to furnish us

With some few bands of chosen soldiers,

I’ll undertake to land them on our coast,

And force the tyrant from his seat by war.

’Tis not his new-made bride shall succour him :

\* And as for Clarence,—as my letters tell me,

\* He’s very likely now to fall from him ;

<sup>z</sup> *My father came untimely, &c.]* Warwick’s father, being taken at the battle of Wakefield, was beheaded at Pomfret. Of the abuse done to his niece, Holinshed says, “ King Edward did attempt a thing once in the earles house, which was much against the earles honestie, whether he would have deflowered his daughter or his niece, the certaintie was not for both their honours revealed, for surely such a thing was attempted by king Edward.”—MALONE and STEEVENS.

<sup>a</sup> ——— *guerdon’d—] i. e. Rewarded.*

\* For matching more for wanton lust than honour,

\* Or than for strength and safety of our country.

\* *Bona.* Dear brother, how shall Bona be reveng'd.

\* But by thy help to this distressed queen ?

\* *Q. Mar.* Renowned prince, how shall poor Henry live,

\* Unless thou rescue him from foul despair ?

\* *Bona.* My quarrel, and this English queen's, are one.

\* *War.* And mine, fair lady Bona, joins with yours.

\* *K. Lew.* And mine, with hers, and thine, and Margaret's.

Therefore, at last, I firmly am resolv'd,

You shall have aid.

\* *Q. Mar.* Let me give humble thanks for all at once.

*K. Lew.* Then England's messenger, return in post ;

And tell false Edward, thy supposed king,—

That Lewis of France is sending over maskers,

To revel it with him and his new bride :

\* Thou seest what's past, go fear thy king<sup>b</sup> withal.

*Bona.* Tell him, In hope he'll prove a widower, shortly,  
I'll wear the willow garland for his sake.

*Q. Mar.* Tell him, My mourning weeds are laid aside,  
And I am ready to put armour on.<sup>c</sup>

*War.* Tell him from me, That he hath done me wrong :  
And therefore I'll uncrown him, ere't be long.

There's thy reward ;<sup>d</sup> be gone. [*Exit Mess.*]

*K. Lew.* But, Warwick, thou,

And Oxford, with five thousand men,

Shall cross the seas, and bid false Edward battle :

\* And, as occasion serves, this noble queen

\* And prince shall follow with a fresh supply.

‘ Yet, ere thou go, but answer me one doubt ;—

‘ What pledge have we of thy firm loyalty ?

*War.* This shall assure my constant loyalty :—  
That if our queen and this young prince agree,

<sup>b</sup> — *fear thy king*—] That is, *fright thy king*.

<sup>c</sup> — *to put armour on*.] It was once no unusual thing for queens themselves to appear in armour at the head of their forces. The suit which Elizabeth wore, when she rode through the lines at Tilbury to encourage the troops, on the approach of the armada, may be still seen in the Tower.—STEVENS.

<sup>d</sup> — *thy reward* ;] Here we are to suppose that, according to ancient custom, Warwick makes a present to the herald or messenger, whom the original copies call— *a post*.—STEVENS.

I'll join mine eldest daughter, and my joy,  
To him forthwith in holy wedlock bands.<sup>e</sup>

Q. Mar. Yes, I agree, and thank you for your mo-  
' Son Edward, she is fair and virtuous, [tion:—  
' Therefore delay not, give thy hand to Warwick;  
' And, with thy hand, thy faith irrevocable,  
' That only Warwick's daughter shall be thine.

\* Prince. Yes, I accept her, for she well deserves it;

\* And here, to pledge my vow, I give my hand.

[He gives his hand to WARWICK.

' K. Lew. Why stay we now? These soldiers shall be  
' And thou, lord Bourbon, our high admiral, [levied,  
' Shall waft them over with our royal fleet.—  
' I long, till Edward fall by war's mischance,  
' For mocking marriage with a dame of France.

[Exeunt all but WARWICK.

War. I came from Edward as ambassador,  
But I return his sworn and mortal foe:  
Matter of marriage was the charge he gave me,  
But dreadful war shall answer his demand.  
Had he none else to make a stale,<sup>f</sup> but me?  
Then none but I shall turn his jest to sorrow.  
I was the chief that rais'd him to the crown,  
And I'll be chief to bring him down again:  
Not that I pity Henry's misery,  
But seek revenge on Edward's mockery. [Exit.

## ACT IV.

SCENE I.—London. *A Room in the Palace.*

Enter GLOSTER, CLARENCE, SOMERSET, MONTAGUE,  
and others.

' Glo. Now tell me, brother Clarence, what think you  
' Of this new marriage with the lady Grey?

\* Hath not our brother made a worthy choice!

<sup>e</sup> To him forthwith in holy wedlock bands.] This is a departure from the truth of history, for Edward prince of Wales (as Mr. Theobald has observed,) was married to Anne, second daughter of the earl of Warwick.—MALONE.

<sup>f</sup> — to make a stale,—] i. e. Stalking-horse, pretence.

\* *Clar.* Alas, you know, 'tis far from hence to France;

\* How could he stay till Warwick made return?

\* *Som.* My lords, forbear this talk; here comes the king.

*Flourish.* Enter King EDWARD attended; Lady GREY, as Queen; PEMBROKE, STAFFORD, HASTINGS, and others.

\* *Glo.* And his well-chosen bride.

\* *Clar.* I mind to tell him plainly what I think.

' *K. Edw.* Now, brother of Clarence, how like you our choice,

' That you stand pensive, as half malcontent?

' *Clar.* As well as Lewis of France, or the earl of War-

' Which are so weak of courage, and in judgment, [wick;

' That they'll take no offence at our abuse.

' *K. Edw.* Suppose, they take offence without a cause,

' They are but Lewis and Warwick; I am Edward,

' Your king and Warwick's, and must have my will.

' *Glo.* And you shall have your will, because our king:

' Yet hasty marriage seldom proveth well.

' *K. Edw.* Yea, brother Richard, are you offended too?

' *Glo.* Not I:

' No; God forbid, that I should wish them sever'd

' Whom God hath join'd together: ay, and 'twere pity,

To sunder them that yoke so well together.

' *K. Edw.* Setting your scorns, and your mislike, aside,

' Tell me some reason, why the lady Grey

' Should not become my wife, and England's queen:—

' And you too, Somerset, and Montague,

' Speak freely what you think.

' *Clar.* Then this is my opinion,—that king Lewis

' Becomes your enemy, for mocking him

' About the marriage of the lady Bona.

' *Glo.* And Warwick, doing what you gave in charge,

' Is now dishonoured by this new marriage.

' *K. Edw.* What, if both Lewis and Warwick be ap-

' By such invention as I can devise? [peas'd,

*Mont.* Yet to have join'd with France in such alliance,  
Would more have strengthen'd this our commonwealth

' 'Gainst foreign storm, than any home-bred marriage.

‘ *Hast.* Why, knows not Montague, that of itself,  
‘ England is safe, if true within itself?

\* *Mont.* Yes; but the safer, when it is back’d with  
France.

\* *Hast.* ’Tis better using France, than trusting France;  
\* Let us be back’d with God, and with the seas,<sup>g</sup>  
\* Which he hath given for fence impregnable,  
\* And with their helps only defend ourselves;  
\* In them, and in ourselves, our safety lies.

*Clar.* For this one speech, lord Hastings well deserves,  
To have the heir of the lord Hungerford.

‘ *K. Edw.* Ay, what of that? it was my will, and grant;  
\* And, for this once, my will shall stand for law.

‘ *Glo.* And yet, methinks, your grace hath not done  
‘ To give the heir and daughter of lord Scales [well],  
‘ Unto the brother of your loving bride;  
‘ She better would have fitted me, or Clarence:  
‘ But in your bride you bury brotherhood.

‘ *Clar.* Or else you would not have bestow’d the heir<sup>h</sup>  
‘ Of the lord Bonville on your new wife’s son,  
‘ And leave your brothers to go speed elsewhere.

*K. Edw.* Alas, poor Clarence! is it for a wife,  
‘ That thou art malcontent? I will provide thee.

‘ *Clar.* In choosing for yourself, you show’d your  
judgment;  
‘ Which being shallow, you shall give me leave  
‘ To play the broker in mine own behalf;  
‘ And, to that end, I shortly mind to leave you.

‘ *K. Edw.* Leave me, or tarry, Edward will be king,  
‘ And not be tied unto his brother’s will.

‘ *Q. Eliz.* My lords, before it pleas’d his majesty  
To raise my state to title of a queen,  
‘ Do me but right, and you must all confess  
‘ That I was not ignoble of descent,<sup>i</sup>

<sup>g</sup> — *with the seas,*] This has been the advice of every man who in any age understood and favoured the interest of England.—JOHNSON.

<sup>h</sup> — *you would not have bestow’d the heir—*] It must be remembered, that till the Restoration, the heiresses of great estates were in the wardship of the king, who in their minority gave them up to plunder, and afterwards matched them to his favourites. I know not when liberty gained more than by the abolition of the court of wards.—JOHNSON.

<sup>i</sup> — *I was not ignoble of descent,*] Her father was sir Richard Widville,



\* And meaner than myself have had like fortune.

\* But as this title honours me and mine,

\* So your dislikes, to whom I would be pleasing,

\* Do cloud my joys with danger and with sorrow.

‘ *K. Edw.* My love, forbear to fawn upon their frowns :

‘ What danger, or what sorrow can befall thee,

‘ So long as Edward is thy constant friend,

‘ And their true sovereign, whom they must obey ?

‘ Nay, whom they shall obey, and love thee too,

‘ Unless they seek for hatred at my hands :

‘ Which if they do, yet will I keep thee safe,

‘ And they shall feel the vengeance of my wrath.

\* *Glo.* I hear, yet say not much, but think the more.

[*Aside.*]

*Enter a Messenger.*

‘ *K. Edw.* Now, messenger, what letters, or what news,  
From France ?

‘ *Mess.* My sovereign liege, no letters ; and few words,

‘ But such as I, without your special pardon,

Dare not relate.

‘ *K. Edw.* Go to, we pardon thee : therefore, in brief,

‘ Tell me their words as near as thou canst guess them.

What answer makes king Lewis unto our letters ?

*Mess.* At my depart, these were his very words ;

*Go tell false Edward, thy supposed king,—*

*That Lewis of France is sending over maskers,*

*To revel it with him and his new bride.*

*K. Edw.* Is Lewis so brave ? belike, he thinks me Henry.

‘ But what said lady Bona to my marriage ?

*Mess.* These were her words, utter’d with mild disdain ;

*Tell him, in hope he’ll prove a widower shortly,*

*I’ll wear the willow garland for his sake.*

*K. Edw.* I blame not her, she could say little less ;

‘ She had the wrong. But what said Henry’s queen ?

‘ For I have heard that she was there in place.<sup>k</sup>

knight, afterwards earl of Rivers ; her mother, Jaqueline, duchess dowager of Bedford, who was daughter of Peter of Luxemburgh, earl of St. Paul, and widow of John duke of Bedford, brother to king Henry V.—MALONE.

<sup>k</sup> — *there in place.*] This expression, signifying, she was there *present*, occurs frequently in old English writers.—MALONE.

Mess. *Tell him, quoth she, my mourning weeds are done,<sup>1</sup>  
And I am ready to put armour on.*

K. Edw. Belike, she minds to play the Amazon.  
But what said Warwick to these injuries?

‘ *Mess.* He, more incens’d against your majesty  
‘ Than all the rest, discharg’d me with these words;  
*Tell him from me, that he hath done me wrong,  
And therefore I’ll uncrown him, ere’t be long.*

K. Edw. Ha! durst the traitor breathe out so proud  
words?

‘ Well, I will arm me, being thus forwarn’d:  
‘ They shall have wars, and pay for their presumption.  
‘ But say, is Warwick friends with Margaret?

*Mess.* Ay, gracious sovereign; they are so link’d in  
friendship,  
‘ That young prince Edward marries Warwick’s daughter.

*Clar.* Belike, the elder; Clarence will have the younger.

\* Now, brother king, farewell, and sit you fast,  
\* For I will hence to Warwick’s other daughter;  
\* That, though I want a kingdom, yet in marriage  
\* I may not prove inferior to yourself.—

You, that love me and Warwick, follow me.

[*Exit CLARENCE and SOMERSET follows.*

\* *Glo.* Not I.

\* My thoughts aim at a further matter; I  
\* Stay not for love of Edward, but the crown. [*Aside.*

K. Edw. Clarence and Somerset both gone to Warwick!

\* Yet am I arm’d against the worst can happen;  
\* And haste is needful in this desperate case.—

‘ Pembroke, and Stafford, you in our behalf  
‘ Go levy men, and make prepare for war.  
‘ They are all ready, or quickly will be landed:  
‘ Myself in person will straight follow you.

[*Exeunt PEMBROKE and STAFFORD.*

‘ But, ere I go, Hastings,—and Montague,—  
‘ Resolve my doubt. You twain, of all the rest,  
‘ Are near to Warwick, by blood, and by alliance:  
‘ Tell me, if you love Warwick more than me?

<sup>1</sup> — are done.] i. e. *Are consumed, thrown off.* The word is often used in this sense by the writers of our author’s age.—MALONE.

- ‘ If it be so, then both depart to him ;  
 ‘ I rather wish you foes than hollow friends ;  
 ‘ But if you mind to hold your true obedience,  
 ‘ Give me assurance with some friendly vow,  
 ‘ That I may never have you in suspect.  
*Mont.* So God help Montague, as he proves true !  
*Hast.* And Hastings, as he favours Edward’s cause !  
 ‘ *K. Edw.* Now, brother Richard, will you stand by us ?  
*Glo.* Ay, in despite of all that shall withstand you.  
*K. Edw.* Why so ; then I am sure of victory.  
 ‘ Now therefore let us hence ; and lose no hour,  
 ‘ Till we meet Warwick with his foreign power. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE II.

*A Plain in Warwickshire.*

*Enter WARWICK and OXFORD, with French and other Forces.*

*War.* Trust me, my lord, all hitherto goes well ;  
The common people by numbers swarm to us.

*Enter CLARENCE and SOMERSET.*

But see, where Somerset and Clarence come ;—  
Speak suddenly, my lords, are we all friends ?

*Clar.* Fear not that, my lord.

*War.* Then, gentle Clarence, welcome unto Warwick ;  
And welcome, Somerset :—I hold it cowardice,  
To rest mistrustful where a noble heart  
Hath pawn’d an open hand in sign of love ;  
Else might I think, that Clarence, Edward’s brother,  
Were but a feigned friend to our proceedings :  
But welcome, Clarence ; my daughter shall be thine.  
And now what rests, but, in night’s coverture,  
Thy brother being carelessly encamp’d,  
His soldiers lurking in the towns about,  
And but attended by a single guard,  
We may surprise and take him at our pleasure ?  
Our scouts have found the adventure very easy :

- \* That as Ulysses, and stout Diomede,
- \* With slight and manhood stole to Rhesus' tents,
- \* And brought from thence the Thracian fatal steeds;<sup>m</sup>
- \* So we, well cover'd with the night's black mantle,
- \* At unawares may beat down Edward's guard,
- \* And seize himself; I say not—slaughter him,
- \* For I intend but only to surprize him.—
- ' You, that will follow me to this attempt,
- ' Applaud the name of Henry, with your leader.

[*They all cry, HENRY!*

Why, then, let's on our way in silent sort :

For Warwick and his friends, God and Saint George !

[*Exeunt.*

### SCENE III.

Edward's *Camp near Warwick.*

*Enter certain Watchmen, to guard the King's Tent.*

- \* 1 *Watch.* Come on, my masters, each man take his stand ;
- \* The king, by this, is set him down to sleep.
- \* 2 *Watch.* What, will he not to bed ?
- \* 1 *Watch.* Why, no: for he hath made a solemn vow
- \* Never to lie and take his natural rest,
- \* Till Warwick, or himself, be quite suppress'd.
- \* 2 *Watch.* To-morrow then, belike, shall be the day,
- \* If Warwick be so near as men report.
- \* 3 *Watch.* But say, I pray, what nobleman is that,
- \* That with the king here resteth in his tent ?
- \* 1 *Watch.* 'Tis the lord Hastings, the king's chiefest friend.
- \* 3 *Watch.* O, is it so ? But why commands the king,
- \* That his chief followers lodge in towns about him,
- \* While he himself keepeth in the cold field ?
- \* 2 *Watch.* 'Tis the more honour, because more dangerous.
- \* 3 *Watch.* Ay ; but give me worship, and quietness,

<sup>m</sup> — the Thracian *fatal* steeds ;] We are told by some of the writers on the Trojan story, that the capture of these horses was one of the necessary preliminaries to the fate of Troy.—STEEVENS.

- \* I like it better than a dangerous honour,
- \* If Warwick knew in what estate he stands,
- \* 'Tis to be doubted, he would waken him.
- \* 1 *Watch*. Unless our halberds did shut up his passage.
- \* 2 *Watch*. Ay; wherefore else guard we his royal tent,
- \* But to defend his person from night-foes?

*Enter WARWICK, CLARENCE, OXFORD, SOMERSET, and Forces.*

- *War*. This is his tent; and see, where stand his guard.
- Courage, my masters: honour now, or never!
- But follow me, and Edward shall be ours.
- 1 *Watch*. Who goes there?
- 2 *Watch*. Stay, or thou diest.
- [WARWICK, and the rest, cry all—Warwick! Warwick!  
and set upon the Guard; who fly, crying—Arm! Arm!  
WARWICK, and the rest, following them.

*The Drum beating, and Trumpets sounding, Re-enter WARWICK, and the rest, bringing the King out in a Gown, sitting in a Chair: GLOSTER and HASTINGS fly.*

- Som*. What are they that fly there?
- *War*. Richard, and Hastings: let them go, here's the duke.
- K. Edw*. The duke! why, Warwick, when we parted last,  
Thou call'dst me king?
- War*. Ay, but the case is alter'd:
- When you disgrac'd me in my embassy,
- Then I degraded you from being king,  
And come now to create you duke of York.  
Alas! how shall you govern any kingdom,  
That know not how to use ambassadors;  
Nor how to be contented with one wife;  
Nor how to use your brothers brotherly;  
\* Nor how to study for the people's welfare;  
Nor how to shrowd yourself from enemies?
- \* *K. Edw*. Yea, brother of Clarence, art thou here too?
- \* Nay, then I see, that Edward needs must down.—

- ‘ Yet, Warwick, in despite of all mischance,  
 ‘ Of thee thyself, and all thy complices,  
 ‘ Edward will always bear himself as king :  
 \* Though fortune’s malice overthrow my state,  
 \* My mind exceeds the compass of her wheel.

*War.* Then, for his mind, be Edward England’s king :<sup>u</sup>

[*Takes off his Crown.*]

- But Henry now shall wear the English crown,  
 \* And be true king indeed ; thou but the shadow.—  
 ‘ My lord of Somerset, at my request,  
 ‘ See that forthwith duke Edward be convey’d  
 ‘ Unto my brother, archbishop of York.  
 ‘ When I have fought with Pembroke and his fellows,  
 ‘ I’ll follow you, and tell what answer  
 ‘ Lewis, and the lady Bona, send to him :—  
 Now, for a while, farewell, good duke of York.

\* *K. Edw.* What fates impose, that men must needs  
 abide ;

- \* It boots not to resist both wind and tide.

[*Exit King EDWARD, led out ; SOMERSET  
 with him.*]

\* *Oxf.* What now remains, my lords, for us to do,

- \* But march to London with our soldiers ?

*War.* Ay, that’s the first thing that we have to do ;

- ‘ To free king Henry from imprisonment,  
 And see him seated in the regal throne. [*Exeunt.*]

#### SCENE IV.

London. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter Queen ELIZABETH and RIVERS.*

- ‘ *Riv.* Madam, what makes you in this sudden change ?  
 ‘ *Q. Eliz.* Why, brother Rivers, are you yet to learn,  
 ‘ What late misfortunes is befall’n king Edward ?  
*Riv.* What, loss of some pitch’d battle against Warwick ?  
 ‘ *Q. Eliz.* No, but the loss of his own royal person.  
 ‘ *Riv.* Then is my sovereign slain ?

<sup>u</sup> Then, for his mind be Edward England’s king :] That is, in his mind ; as far as his own mind goes.—M. MASON.

‘ *Q. Eliz.* Ay, almost slain, for he is taken prisoner;  
 ‘ Either betray’d by falsehood of his guard,  
 ‘ Or by his foe surpriz’d at unawares :  
 ‘ And, as I further have to understand,  
 ‘ Is now committed to the bishop of York,  
 ‘ Fell Warwick’s brother, and by that our foe.

‘ *Riv.* These news, I must confess, are full of grief :  
 ‘ Yet, gracious madam, bear it as you may ;  
 ‘ Warwick may lose, that now hath won the day.

\* *Q. Eliz.* Till then, fair hope must hinder life’s decay.  
 \* And I the rather wean me from despair,  
 \* For love of Edward’s offspring in my womb :  
 \* This is it that makes me bridle passion,  
 \* And bear with mildness my misfortune’s cross ;  
 \* Ay, ay, for this I draw in many a tear,  
 \* And stop the rising of blood-sucking sighs,  
 \* Lest with my sighs or tears I blast or drown  
 King Edward’s fruit, true heir to the English crown.

\* *Riv.* But madam, where is Warwick then become ?

*Q. Eliz.* I am informed, that he comes towards London,  
 \* To set the crown once more on Henry’s head :  
 \* Guess thou the rest ; king Edward’s friends must down.  
 ‘ But to prevent the tyrant’s violence,  
 ‘ (For trust not him that hath once broken faith,)  
 ‘ I’ll hence forthwith unto the sanctuary,  
 ‘ To save at least the heir of Edward’s right ;  
 ‘ There shall I rest secure from force, and fraud.  
 ‘ Come therefore, let us fly, while we may fly ;  
 ‘ If Warwick take us, we are sure to die. [Exeunt.

## SCENE V.

*A Park near Middleham° Castle in Yorkshire.*

*Enter GLOSTER, HASTINGS, Sir WILLIAM STANLEY,  
 and others.*

‘ *Glo.* Now, my lord Hastings, and sir William Stanley,

° *A Park near Middleham*—] Shakspeare follows his authority, Holinshed, in the representation here given of King Edward’s capture and imprisonment ; but the whole is untrue. Edward never was in the hands of Warwick.—  
 RITSON.

- ‘ Leave off to wonder, why I drew you hither,
- ‘ Into this chiefest thicket of the park.
- ‘ Thus stands the case: You know, our king, my brother,
- ‘ Is prisoner to the bishop here, at whose hands
- ‘ He hath good usage and great liberty;
- ‘ And often, but attended with weak guard,
- ‘ Comes hunting this way to disport himself.
- ‘ I have advértis’d him by secret means,
- ‘ That if, about this hour, he make this way,
- ‘ Under the colour of his usual game,
- ‘ He shall here find his friends, with horse and men,
- ‘ To set him free from his captivity.

*Enter King EDWARD, and a Huntsman.*

- ‘ *Hunt.* This way, my lord; for this way lies the game.
- ‘ *K. Edw.* Nay, this way, man; see, where the huntsmen stand.—
- ‘ Now, brother of Gloster, lord Hastings, and the rest,
- ‘ Stand you thus close, to steal the bishop’s deer?
- ‘ *Glo.* Brother, the time and case requireth haste;
- ‘ Your horse stands ready at the park corner.
- ‘ *K. Edw.* But whither shall we then?
- ‘ *Hast.* To Lynn, my lord; and ship from thence to Flanders.
- ‘ *Glo.* Well guess’d, believe me; for that was my meaning.
- ‘ *K. Edw.* Stanley, I will requite thy forwardness.
- \* *Glo.* But wherefore stay we? ’tis no time to talk.
- ‘ *K. Edw.* Huntsman, what say’st thou? wilt thou go along?
- ‘ *Hunt.* Better do so, than tarry and be hang’d.
- \* *Glo.* Come then, away; let’s have no more ado.
- ‘ *K. Edw.* Bishop, farewell: shield thee from Warwick’s frown;

And pray that I may repossess the crown.

[*Exeunt.*



## SCENE VI.

*A Room in the Tower.*

*Enter King HENRY, CLARENCE, WARWICK, SOMERSET, young RICHMOND, OXFORD, MONTAGUE, Lieutenant of the Tower, and Attendants.*

\* *K. Hen.* Master lieutenant, now that God and friends  
\* Have shaken Edward from the regal seat ;  
\* And turn'd my captive state to liberty,  
\* My fear to hope, my sorrows unto joys ;  
\* At our enlargement what are thy due fees ?

\* *Lieu.* Subjects may challenge nothing of their  
sovereigns ;

\* But, if an humble prayer may prevail,  
\* I then crave pardon of your majesty.

\* *K. Hen.* For what, lieutenant ? for well using me ?

\* Nay, be thou sure, I'll well requite thy kindness,  
\* For that it made my imprisonment a pleasure :

\* Ay, such a pleasure as incaged birds

\* Conceive, when, after many moody thoughts,

\* At last, by notes of household harmony,

\* They quite forget their loss of liberty.—

\* But, Warwick, after God, thou set'st me free,

\* And chiefly therefore, I thank God, and thee ;

\* He was the author, thou the instrument.

\* Therefore, that I may conquer fortune's spite,

\* By living low, where fortune cannot hurt me ;

\* And that the people of this blessed land

\* May not be punish'd with my thwarting stars ;

‘ Warwick, although my head still wear the crown,

‘ I here resign my government to thee,

‘ For thou art fortunate in all thy deeds.

\* *War.* Your grace hath still been fam'd for virtuous ;

\* And now may seem as wise as virtuous,

\* By spying, and avoiding, fortune's malice,

\* For few men rightly temper with the stars :<sup>p</sup>

<sup>p</sup> — *few men rightly temper with the stars :*] I suppose the meaning is, that few men conform their *temper* to their destiny ; which King Henry did, when finding himself unfortunate he gave the management of public affairs to more prosperous hands.—JOHNSON.

- \* Yet in this one thing let me blame your grace,  
 \* For choosing me, when Clarence is in place.<sup>a</sup>  
 \* *Clar.* No, Warwick, thou art worthy of the sway,  
 \* To whom the heavens, in thy nativity,  
 \* Adjudg'd an olive branch, and laurel crown,  
 \* As likely to be blest in peace, and war ;  
 \* And therefore I yield thee my free consent.  
 \* *War.* And I choose Clarence only for protector.  
 \* *K. Hen.* Warwick, and Clarence, give me both your  
     hands ;  
 \* Now join your hands, and, with your hands, your  
     hearts,  
 \* That no dissention hinder government :  
 ' I make you both protectors of this land ;  
 ' While I myself will lead a private life,  
 ' And in devotion spend my latter days,  
 To sin's rebuke, and my Creator's praise.  
 \* *War.* What answers Clarence to his sovereign's will ?  
 \* *Clar.* That he consents, if Warwick yield consent ;  
 \* For on thy fortune I repose myself.  
 \* *War.* Why then, though loath, yet must I be  
     content :  
 \* We'll yoke together, like a double shadow  
 \* To Henry's body, and supply his place ;  
 \* I mean, in bearing weight of government,  
 \* While he enjoys the honour, and his ease.  
 \* And, Clarence, now then it is more than needful,  
 \* Forthwith that Edward be pronounc'd a traitor,  
 \* And all his lands and goods be confiscate.  
 \* *Clar.* What else ? and that succession be determin'd.  
 \* *War.* Ay, therein Clarence shall not want his part.  
 \* *K. Hen.* But, with the first of all your chief affairs,  
 \* Let me entreat, (for I command no more,)  
 \* That Margaret your queen, and my son Edward,  
 \* Be sent for, to return from France with speed ;  
 \* For, till I see them here, by doubtful fear  
 \* My joy of liberty is half eclips'd.  
 \* *Clar.* It shall be done, my sovereign, with all speed.

<sup>a</sup> — in place.] i. e. Here present.

' *K. Hen.* My lord of Somerset, what youth is that,  
' Of whom you seem to have so tender care?

' *Som.* My liege, it is young Henry, earl of Richmond.

' *K. Hen.* Come hither, England's hope: If secret powers  
[*Lays his hand on his head.*

' Suggest but truth to my divining thoughts,

' This pretty lad<sup>r</sup> will prove our country's bliss.

' His looks are full of peaceful majesty;

' His head by nature fram'd to wear a crown,

' His hand to wield a sceptre; and himself

' Likely, in time, to bless a regal throne.

Make much of him, my lords; for this is he,

' Must help you more than you are hurt by me.

*Enter a Messenger.*

\* *War.* What news, my friend?

\* *Mess.* That Edward is escaped from your brother,

\* And fled, as he hears since, to Burgundy.

\* *War.* Unsavoury news: But how made he escape?

\* *Mess.* He was convey'd by Richard duke of Gloster,

\* And the lord Hastings, who attended him<sup>s</sup>

\* In secret ambush on the forest side,

\* And from the bishop's huntsmen rescued him;

\* For hunting was his daily exercise.

\* *War.* My brother was too careless of his charge.—

\* But let us hence, my sovereign, to provide

\* A salve for any sore that may betide.

[*Exeunt King HENRY, WAR. CLAR. Lieut.  
and Attendants.*

\* *Som.* My lord, I like not of this flight of Edward's:

\* For, doubtless, Burgundy will yield him help;

\* And we shall have more wars, before't be long.

\* As Henry's late presaging prophecy

\* Did glad my heart, with hope of this young Richmond;

<sup>r</sup> *This pretty lad—*] He was afterwards Henry VII.; a man who put an end to the civil war of the two houses, but no otherwise remarkable for virtue. Shakspeare knew his trade. Henry VII. was grandfather to queen Elizabeth, and the king from whom James inherited.—JOHNSON. The incident is copied from Holinshed.

<sup>s</sup> — attended him—] i. e. Waited for him.

- \* So doth my heart misgive me in these conflicts
- \* What may befall him to his harm and ours :
- \* Therefore, lord Oxford, to prevent the worst,
- \* Forthwith we'll send him hence to Britany,
- \* Till storms be past of civil enmity.
- \* *Oxf.* Ay; for, if Edward repossess the crown,
- \* 'Tis like that Richmond with the rest shall down.
- \* *Som.* It shall be so; he shall to Britany.
- \* Come, therefore, let's about it speedily. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE VII.

*Before York.**Enter King EDWARD, GLOSTER, HASTINGS, and Forces.*

- ‘ *K. Edw.* Now, brother Richard, lord Hastings, and
- ‘ Yet thus far fortune maketh us amends, [the rest;
- ‘ And says—that once more I shall interchange
- ‘ My waned state for Henry's regal crown.
- ‘ Well have we pass'd, and now repass'd the seas,
- ‘ And brought desired help from Burgundy:
- ‘ What then remains, we being thus arriv'd
- ‘ From Ravenspurgh haven before the gates of York,
- ‘ But that we enter, as into our dukedom?
- ‘ *Glo.* The gates made fast!—Brother, I like not this;
- \* For many men, that stumble at the threshold,
- \* Are well foretold—that danger lurks within.
- ‘ *K. Edw.* Tush, man! abodements must not now af-
- \* By fair or foul means we must enter in, [fright us:
- \* For hither will our friends repair to us.
- ‘ *Hast.* My liege, I'll knock once more, to summon  
them.

*Enter, on the Walls, the Mayor of York, and his Brethren.*

- ‘ *May.* My lords, we were forewarned of your coming,
- ‘ And shut the gates for safety of ourselves;
- ‘ For now we owe allegiance unto Henry.
- ‘ *K. Edw.* But, master mayor, if Henry be your king,
- ‘ Yet Edward, at the least, is duke of York.
- ‘ *May.* True, my good lord; I know you for no less.

‘ *K. Edw.* Why, and I challenge nothing but my duke-  
\* As being well content with that alone. [dom;

‘ *Glo.* But when the fox hath once got in his nose,  
‘ He’ll soon find means to make the body follow.

[*Aside.*

‘ *Hast.* Why, master mayor, why stand you in a doubt?  
Open the gates, we are king Henry’s friends.

‘ *May.* Ay, say you so? the gates shall then be open’d.  
[*Exeunt from above.*

‘ *Glo.* A wise stout captain, and persuaded soon!

\* *Hast.* The good old man would fain that all were well,<sup>†</sup>

\* So ’twere not ’long of him: but, being enter’d,

\* I doubt not, I, but we shall soon persuade

\* Both him, and all his brothers, unto reason.

*Re-enter the Mayor and Two Aldermen, below.*

‘ *K. Edw.* So, master mayor, these gates must not be  
‘ But in the night, or in the time of war. [shut,

‘ What! fear not, man, but yield me up the keys:

[*Takes his keys.*

‘ For Edward will defend the town, and thee,

‘ And all those friends that deign to follow me.

*Drum.* Enter MONTGOMERY, and Forces, marching.

*Glo.* Brother, this is sir John Montgomery,  
Our trusty friend, unless I be deceiv’d.

‘ *K. Edw.* Welcome, sir John! But why come you in  
arms?

*Mont.* To help king Edward in his time of storm,  
As every loyal subject ought to do.

‘ *K. Edw.* Thanks, good Montgomery: But we now  
forget

‘ Our title to the crown; and only claim

‘ Our dukedom, till God please to send the rest.

‘ *Mont.* Then fare you well, for I will hence again;  
I came to serve a king, and not a duke,—

‘ Drummer, strike up, and let us march away.

[*A March begun.*

<sup>†</sup> *The good old man would fain that all were well,*] The mayor is willing we should enter, so he may not be blamed.—JOHNSON.

‘ *K. Edw.* Nay, stay, sir John, a while; and we’ll debate,  
 ‘ By what safe means the crown may be recover’d.

‘ *Mont.* What talk you of debating? in few words,  
 ‘ If you’ll not here proclaim yourself our king,  
 ‘ I’ll leave you to your fortune; and be gone,  
 To keep them back that come to succour you:  
 Why should we fight, if you pretend no title?

‘ *Glo.* Why, brother, wherefore stand you on nice  
 points?

\* *K. Edw.* When we grow stronger, then we’ll make  
 our claim:

\* Till then, ’tis wisdom to conceal our meaning.

\* *Hast.* Away with scrupulous wit! now arms must  
 rule.

\* *Glo.* And fearless minds climb soonest unto crowns.

\* Brother, we will proclaim you out of hand;

\* The bruit<sup>u</sup> thereof will bring you many friends.

\* *K. Edw.* Then be it as you will: for ’tis my right,

\* And Henry but usurps the diadem.

*Mont.* Ay, now my sovereign speaketh like himself;  
 And now will I be Edward’s champion.

*Hast.* Sound, trumpet; Edward shall be here pro-  
 claim’d:—

\* Come, fellow-soldier, make thou proclamation.

[*Gives him a Paper. Flourish.*]

*Sold.* [*reads.*] *Edward the fourth, by the grace of God,  
 king of England and France, and lord of Ireland, &c.*

*Mont.* And whosoe’er gainsays king Edward’s right,  
 By this I challenge him to single fight.

[*Throws down his Gauntlet.*]

*All.* Long live Edward the fourth!

‘ *K. Edw.* Thanks, brave Montgomery;—and thanks  
 unto you all.

‘ If fortune serve me, I’ll requite this kindness.

‘ Now, for this night, let’s harbour here in York:

‘ And, when the morning sun shall raise his car

‘ Above the border of this horizon,

‘ We’ll forward towards Warwick, and his mates;

‘ For, well I wot, that Henry is no soldier.—

<sup>u</sup> — bruit—] i. e. Noise, report.

- \* Ah, froward Clarence !—how evil it beseems thee,
- \* To flatter Henry, and forsake thy brother !
- \* Yet, as we may, we'll meet both thee and Warwick.—
- \* Come on, brave soldiers ; doubt not of the day ;
- \* And, that once gotten, doubt not of large pay. [*Exeunt.*]

## SCENE VIII.

London. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter* King HENRY, WARWICK, CLARENCE, MONTAGUE, EXETER, and OXFORD.

*War.* What counsel, lords ? Edward from Belgia,  
With hasty Germans, and blunt Hollanders,  
Hath pass'd in safety through the narrow seas,  
And with his troops doth march amain to London ;  
' And many giddy people flock to him.

\* *Oxf.* Let's levy men, and beat him back again.\*

*Clar.* A little fire is quickly trodden out ;  
Which, being suffer'd, rivers cannot quench.

*War.* In Warwickshire I have true-hearted friends,  
Not mutinous in peace, yet bold in war ;  
Those will I muster up :—and thou, son Clarence,  
' Shalt stir, in Suffolk, Norfolk, and in Kent,  
' The knights and gentlemen to come with thee :—  
' Thou, brother Montague, in Buckingham,  
' Northampton, and in Leicestershire, shalt find  
' Men well inclin'd to hear what thou command'st :—  
And thou, brave Oxford, wondrous well belov'd,  
In Oxfordshire shalt muster up thy friends.—  
My sovereign, with the loving citizens,—  
\* Like to his island, girt in with the ocean,  
\* Or modest Dian, circled with her nymphs,—  
Shall rest in London, till we come to him.  
Fair lords, take leave, and stand not to reply.—  
Farewell, my sovereign.

*K. Hen.* Farewell, my Hector, and my Troy's true hope.

\* *Let's levy men, &c.*] In the folio this line is spoken by Henry, but the modern editors have attributed it to Oxford, supposing it too spirited for the king.

\* *Clar.* In sign of truth, I kiss your highness' hand.

\* *K. Hen.* Well-minded Clarence, be thou fortunate!

\* *Mont.* Comfort, my lord;—and so I take my leave.

\* *Oxf.* And thus [*kissing HENRY'S hand.*] I seal my truth, and bid adieu.

\* *K. Hen.* Sweet Oxford, and my loving Montague,

\* And all at once, once more a happy farewell.

*War.* Farewell, sweet lords; let's meet at Coventry.

[*Exeunt WAR. CLAR. OXF. and MONT.*]

\* *K. Hen.* Here at the palace will I rest a while.

\* Cousin of Exeter, what thinks your lordship?

\* Methinks, the power, that Edward hath in field,

\* Should not be able to encounter mine.

\* *Exe.* The doubt is, that he will seduce the rest.

\* *K. Hen.* That's not my fear, my meed<sup>y</sup> hath got me

\* I have not stopp'd mine ears to their demands, [*fame.*]

\* Nor posted off their suits with slow delays;

\* My pity hath been balm to heal their wounds,

\* My mildness hath allay'd their swelling griefs,

\* My mercy dried their water-flowing tears:

\* I have not been desirous of their wealth,

\* Nor much oppress'd them with great subsidies,

\* Nor forward of revenge, though they much err'd;

\* Then why should they love Edward more than me?

\* No, Exeter, these graces challenge grace:

\* And, when the lion fawns upon the lamb,

\* The lamb will never cease to follow him.

[*Shout within.* A Lancaster! A Lancaster!

*Exe.* Hark, hark, my lord! what shouts are these?

*Enter King EDWARD, GLOSTER, and Soldiers.*

' *Edw.* Seize on the shame-fac'd Henry, bear him hence,

' And once again proclaim us king of England.—

\* You are the fount, that makes small brooks to flow,

\* Now stops thy spring; my sea shall suck them dry,

\* And swell so much the higher by their ebb.—

' Hence with him to the Tower; let him not speak.

[*Exeunt some with King HENRY.*]



- ‘ And, lords, towards Coventry bend we our course,  
 ‘ Where peremptory Warwick now remains :  
 ‘ The sun shines hot, and, if we use delay,  
 ‘ Cold-biting winter mars our hop’d-for hay.<sup>2</sup>  
 \* *Glo.* Away betimes, before his forces join,  
 \* And take the great-grown traitor unawares :  
 \* Brave warriors, march amain towards Coventry.

[*Exeunt.*

## ACT V.

## SCENE I.—Coventry.

*Enter, upon the Walls, WARWICK, the Mayor of Coventry,  
 Two Messengers, and others.*

*War.* Where is the post, that came from valiant Oxford?  
 How far hence is thy Lord, mine honest fellow?

‘ *1 Mess.* By this at Dunsmore, marching hitherward.

*War.* How far off is our brother Montague?—  
 Where is the post that came from Montague?

‘ *2 Mess.* By this at Daintry, with a puissant troop.

*Enter Sir JOHN SOMERVILLE.*

‘ *War.* Say, Somerville, what says my loving son?  
 ‘ And, by the guess, how nigh is Clarence now?

‘ *Som.* At Southam I did leave him with his forces,  
 ‘ And do expect him here some two hours hence.

[*Drum heard.*

‘ *War.* Then Clarence is at hand, I hear his drum.

\* *Som.* It is not his, my lord; here Southam lies;  
 \* The drum your honour hears, marcheth from Warwick.

\* *War.* Who should that be? belike, unlook’d-for  
 friends.

\* *Som.* They are at hand, and you shall quickly know.

*Drums. Enter King EDWARD, GLOSTER, and Forces,  
 marching.*

*K. Edw.* Go, trumpet, to the walls, and sound a parle.

<sup>2</sup> *The sun shines hot, &c.*] The allusion is to a well-known proverb—“ Make hay while the sun shines.”—STEVENS.

*Glo.* See, how the surly Warwick mans the wall.

*War.* O, unbid spite! is sportful Edward come?

Where slept our scouts, or how are they seduc'd,  
That we could hear no news of his repair?

\* *K. Edw.* Now, Warwick, wilt thou ope the city gates,  
' Speak gentle words, and humbly bend thy knee?—  
' Call Edward—king, and at his hands beg mercy,  
' And he shall pardon thee these outrages.

' *War.* Nay, rather, wilt thou draw thy forces hence,  
Confess who set thee up and pluck'd thee down?  
Call Warwick—patron, and be penitent,  
And thou shalt still remain the duke of York.

*Glo.* I thought, at least, he would have said—the king;  
Or did he make the jest against his will?

\* *War.* Is not a dukedom, sir, a goodly gift?

\* *Glo.* Ay, by my faith, for a poor earl to give;

\* I'll do thee service for so good a gift.

' *War.* 'Twas I, that gave the kingdom to thy brother.

*K. Edw.* Why, then, 'tis mine, if but by Warwick's gift.

' *War.* Thou art no Atlas for so great a weight:

And, weakling, Warwick takes his gift again;  
And Henry is my king, Warwick his subject.

\* *K. Edw.* But Warwick's king is Edward's prisoner:  
' And, gallant Warwick, do but answer this,—  
What is the body, when the head is off?

' *Glo.* Alas, that Warwick had no more forecast,  
But, whiles he thought to steal the single ten,  
' The king was slyly finger'd from the deck!<sup>a</sup>  
You left poor Henry at the bishop's palace,<sup>b</sup>  
And, ten to one, you'll meet him in the Tower.

*K. Edw.* 'Tis even so; yet you are Warwick still.

\* *Glo.* Come, Warwick, take the time, kneel down,  
kneel down:

\* Nay, when? strike now, or else the iron cools.

\* *War.* I had rather chop his hand off at a blow,

\* And with the other fling it at thy face,

\* Than bear so low a sail, to strike to thee.

<sup>a</sup> — from the deck! An instance, of a pack of cards being called a deck, occurs in the *sessions paper*, for January 1788. So that the term appears to be still in use.—RITSON.

<sup>b</sup> — at the bishop's palace.] The palace of the bishop of London.—MALONE.

\* *K. Edw.* Sail how thou canst, have wind and tide  
thy friend ;

\* This hand, fast wound about thy coal-black hair,

\* Shall, whiles the head is warm, and new cut off,

\* Write in the dust this sentence with thy blood,—

‘ *Wind-changing Warwick now can change no more.*

*Enter OXFORD, with Drum and Colours.*

\* *War.* O cheerful colours ! see, where Oxford comes !

*Oxf.* Oxford, Oxford, for Lancaster !

[*OXFORD and his Forces enter the City.*

‘ *Glo.* The gates are open, let us enter too.

‘ *K. Edw.* So other foes may set upon our backs.

\* Stand we in good array ; for they, no doubt,

\* Will issue out again, and bid us battle :

‘ If not, the city, being but of small defence,

‘ We’ll quickly rouse the traitors in the same.

*War.* O, Welcome, Oxford ! for we want thy help.

*Enter MONTAGUE, with Drum and Colours.*

*Mont.* Montague, Montague, for Lancaster !

[*He and his Forces enter the City.*

*Glo.* Thou and thy brother both shall buy this treason

‘ Even with the dearest blood your bodies bear.

\* *K. Edw.* The harder match’d, the greater victory :

\* My mind presageth happy gain, and conquest.

*Enter SOMERSET, with Drum and Colours.*

*Som.* Somerset, Somerset, for Lancaster !

[*He and his Forces enter the City.*

*Glo.* Two of thy name, both dukes of Somerset,

Have sold their lives unto the house of York ;<sup>c</sup>

And thou shalt be the third, if this sword hold.

*Enter CLARENCE, with Drum and Colours.*

*War.* And lo, where George of Clarence sweeps along,  
Of force enough to bid his brother battle ;

<sup>c</sup> *Two of thy name, both dukes of Somerset,*

*Have sold their lives unto the house of York ;*] The first of these noblemen was Edmund, slain at the battle of Saint Albans, 1455. The second was Henry his son, beheaded after the battle of Hexham, 1463. The present duke Edmund, brother to Henry, was taken prisoner at Tewksbury, 1474, and there beheaded, his brother John losing his life in the same fight.—RITSON.

\* With whom an upright zeal to right prevails,

\* More than the nature of a brother's love :—

\* Come, Clarence, come ; thou wilt, if Warwick calls.

*Clar.* Father of Warwick, know you what this means ?

[*Taking the red Rose out of his Cap.*

‘ Look here, I throw my infamy at thee :

I will not ruinate my father's house,

Who gave his blood to lime the stones<sup>d</sup> together,

‘ And set up Lancaster. Why, trow'st thou, Warwick,

‘ That Clarence is so harsh, so blunt, unnatural,

‘ To bend the fatal instruments of war

‘ Against his brother and his lawful king ?

\* Perhaps, thou wilt object my holy oath :

\* To keep that oath, were more impiety

\* Than Jephtha's, when he sacrific'd his daughter.

\* I am so sorry for my trespass made,

\* That, to deserve well at my brother's hands,

\* I here proclaim myself thy mortal foe ;

\* With resolution, wheresoe'er I meet thee,

\* (As I will meet thee, if thou stir abroad),

\* To plague thee for thy foul misleading me.

And so, proud-hearted Warwick, I defy thee,

And to my brother turn my blushing cheeks.—

‘ Pardon me, Edward, I will make amends ;

‘ And, Richard, do not frown upon my faults,

‘ For I will henceforth be no more unconstant.

‘ *K. Edw.* Now welcome more, and ten times more be-  
Than if thou never hadst deserv'd our hate. [lov'd,

‘ *Glo.* Welcome, good Clarence ; this is brother-like.

*War.* O passing traitor,<sup>e</sup> perjurd, and unjust !

*K. Edw.* What, Warwick, wilt thou leave the town, and  
Or shall we beat the stones about thine ears ? [fight ?

‘ *War.* Alas, I am not coop'd here for defence :

I will away towards Barnet presently,

And bid thee battle, Edward, if thou dar'st.

*K. Edw.* Yes, Warwick, Edward dares, and leads the  
Lords, to the field ; Saint George, and victory. [way :—

[*March. Exeunt.*

<sup>d</sup> ——— to lime the stones —] That is, to cement the stones.

<sup>e</sup> ——— passing traitor,] i. e. Traitorous beyond the common track of treason.—

## SCENE II.

*A Field of Battle near Barnet.*

*Alarums, and Excursions. Enter King EDWARD, bringing in WARWICK wounded.*

- \* *K. Edw.* So, lie thou there: die thou, and die our fear;  
 \* For Warwick was a bug, that fear'd us all.—<sup>f</sup>  
 \* Now, Montague, sit fast: I seek for thee,  
 \* That Warwick's bones may keep thine company.  
[Exit.]

*War.* Ah, who is nigh! come to me, friend, or foe,  
 And tell me who is victor, York, or Warwick?  
 Why ask I that? my mangled body shows,  
 \* My blood, my want of strength, my sick heart shows,  
 That I must yield my body to the earth,  
 And, by my fall, the conquest to my foe.  
 Thus yields the cedar to the axe's edge,  
 Whose arms gave shelter to the princely eagle,  
 Under whose shade the ramping lion slept;  
 Whose top-branch over-peer'd Jove's spreading tree,  
 \* And kept low shrubs from winter's powerful wind.  
 \* These eyes, that now are dimm'd with death's black veil,  
 \* Have been as piercing as the mid-day sun,  
 \* To search the secret treasons of the world:  
 The wrinkles in my brows, now fill'd with blood,  
 Were liken'd oft to kingly sepulchres;  
 For who liv'd king, but I could dig his grave?  
 And who durst smile, when Warwick bent his brow?  
 Lo, now my glory smear'd in dust and blood!  
 My parks,<sup>g</sup> my walks, my manors that I had,  
 Even now forsake me; and, of all my lands,  
 Is nothing left me, but my body's length!  
 Why, what is pomp, rule, reign, but earth and dust?  
 And, live we how we can, yet die we must.

<sup>f</sup> — *a bug, that fear'd us all.*] Bug is a bugbear, a terrific being.—JOHNSON.  
 To fear, in old language, frequently signifies to terrify.—MALONE.

<sup>g</sup> *My parks, &c.*] This mention of his parks and manors diminishes the pathetic effect of the foregoing lines.—JOHNSON.

*Enter OXFORD and SOMERSET.*

\* *Som.* Ah, Warwick, Warwick ! wert thou as we are,  
\* We might recover all our loss again !  
' The queen from France hath brought a puissant power ;  
' Even now we heard the news : Ah, could'st thou fly !

' *War.* Why, then I would not fly.—Ah, Montague,  
\* If thou be there, sweet brother, take my hand,  
\* And with thy lips keep in my soul a while !  
\* Thou lov'st me not ; for, brother, if thou did'st  
\* Thy tears would wash this cold congealed blood,  
\* That glews my lips, and will not let me speak.  
\* Come quickly, Montague, or I am dead.

' *Som.* Ah, Warwick, Montague hath breath'd his last ;  
' And to the latest gasp, cried out for Warwick,  
' And said—Commend me to my valiant brother.  
' And more he would have said ; and more he spoke,  
' Which sounded like a cannon in a vault,  
' That might not be distinguish'd ;<sup>h</sup> but, at last,  
' I well might hear deliver'd with a groan,—  
' O, farewell, Warwick !

*War.* Sweet rest to his soul !—  
Fly, lords, and save yourselves ; for Warwick bids  
You all farewell, to meet again in heaven. [*Dies.*

*Oxf.* Away, away, to meet the queen's great power !  
[*Exeunt, bearing off WARWICK'S Body.*

### SCENE III.

*Another Part of the Field.*

*Flourish.* Enter KING EDWARD, in triumph ; with  
CLARENCE, GLOSTER, and the rest.

' *K. Edw.* Thus far our fortune keeps an upward course,  
' And we are grac'd with wreaths of victory.  
' But, in the midst of this bright-shining day,

<sup>h</sup> Which sounded like a cannon in a vault,  
That might not be distinguish'd ;] That is, like the noise of a cannon in a  
vault, which, &c. Shakspeare's alteration here is perhaps not so judicious  
as many others that he has made. In the old play, instead of *cannon*, we have  
*clamour*.—MALONE.

‘ I spy a black, suspicious, threat’ning cloud,  
 ‘ That will encounter with our glorious sun,  
 ‘ Ere he attain his easeful western bed :  
 ‘ I mean, my lords,—those powers, that the queen  
 ‘ Hath rais’d in Gallia, have arriv’d our coast,  
 ‘ And, as we hear, march on to fight with us.

\* *Clar.* A little gale will soon disperse that cloud,  
 \* And blow it to the source from whence it came :  
 \* Thy very beams will dry those vapours up ;  
 \* For every cloud engenders not a storm.

\* *Glo.* The queen is valu’d thirty thousand strong,  
 ‘ And Somerset, with Oxford, fled to her ;  
 ‘ If she have time to breathe, be well assur’d,  
 Her faction will be full as strong as ours.

*K. Edw.* We are advértis’d by our loving friends,  
 That they do hold their course toward Tewksbury ;  
 ‘ We, having now the best at Barnet field,  
 ‘ Will thither straight, For willingness rids way :  
 ‘ And, as we march, our strength will be augmented  
 In every county as we go along.—  
 Strike up the drum ; cry—Courage ! and away. [*Exeunt.*

## SCENE IV.

*Plains near Tewksbury.*

*March.* *Enter* QUEEN MARGARET, PRINCE EDWARD,  
 SOMERSET, OXFORD, *and* Soldiers.

\* *Q. Mar.* Great lords, wise men ne’er sit and wail their  
 \* But cheerly seek how to redress their harms. [loss,  
 ‘ What though the mast be now blown over-board,  
 ‘ The cable broke, the holding anchor lost,  
 ‘ And half our sailors swallow’d in the flood ;  
 ‘ Yet lives our pilot still : Is’t meet, that he  
 ‘ Should leave the helm, and like a fearful lad,  
 \* With tearful eyes add water to the sea,  
 \* And give more strength to that which hath too much :  
 \* Whiles, in his moan, the ship splits on the rock,  
 \* Which industry and courage might have sav’d ?  
 \* Ah, what a shame ! ah, what a fault were this !

- ‘ Say, Warwick was our anchor ; What of that ?  
 ‘ And Montague our top-mast ; What of him ?  
 ‘ Our slaughter’d friends the tackles ; What of these ?  
 ‘ Why, is not Oxford here another anchor ?  
 ‘ And Somerset another goodly mast ?  
 ‘ The friends of France our shrouds and tacklings ?  
 ‘ And, though unskilful, why not Ned and I  
 ‘ For once allow’d the skilful pilot’s charge ?  
 ‘ We will not from the helm, to sit and weep ;  
 \* But keep our course, though the rough wind say—no,  
 \* From shelves and rocks that threaten us with wreck.  
 \* As good to chide the waves, as speak them fair.  
 \* And what is Edward, but a ruthless sea ?  
 \* What Clarence, but a quicksand of deceit ?  
 \* And Richard, but a ragged fatal rock ?  
 \* All these the enemies to our poor bark.  
 \* Say, you can swim ; alas, ’tis but a while :  
 \* Tread on the sand ; why, there you quickly sink :  
 \* Bestride the rock ; the tide will wash you off,  
 \* Or else you famish, that’s a threefold death.  
 \* This speak I, lords, to let you understand,  
 \* In case some one of you would fly from us,  
 \* That there’s no hop’d-for mercy with the brothers,  
 \* More than with ruthless waves, with sands, and rocks.  
 \* Why, courage, then ! what cannot be avoided,  
 \* ’Twere childish weakness to lament, or fear.  
 \* *Prince.* Methinks, a woman of this valiant spirit  
 \* Should, if a coward heard her speak these words,  
 \* Infuse his breast with magnanimity,  
 \* And make him, naked, foil a man at arms.  
 ‘ I speak not this, as doubting any here :  
 ‘ For, did I but suspect a fearful man,  
 ‘ He should have leave to go away betimes ;  
 ‘ Lest, in our need, he might infect another,  
 ‘ And make him of like spirit to himself.  
 ‘ If any such be here, as God forbid !  
 ‘ Let him depart, before we need his help.  
 ‘ *Oxf.* Women and children of so high a courage !  
 And warriors faint ! why, ’twere perpetual shame.—  
 ‘ O, brave young prince ! thy famous grandfather



Doth live again in thee; Long may'st thou live,  
To bear his image, and renew his glories!

‘ *Som.* And he, that will not fight for such a hope,  
‘ Go home to bed, and like the owl by day,  
‘ If he arise, be mock'd and wonder'd at.

\* *Q. Mar.* Thanks, gentle Somerset; sweet Oxford,  
thanks.

\* *Prince.* And take his thanks, that yet hath nothing  
else.

*Enter a Messenger.*

‘ *Mess.* Prepare you, lords, for Edward is at hand,  
‘ Ready to fight; therefore be resolute.

‘ *Oxf.* I thought no less: it is his policy,  
‘ To haste thus fast, to find us unprovided.

*Som.* But he's deceiv'd, we are in readiness.

*Q. Mar.* This cheers my heart, to see your forwardness.

*Oxf.* Here pitch our battle; hence we will not budge.

*March.* *Enter, at a distance, King EDWARD, CLARENCE,  
GLOSTER, and Forces.*

‘ *K. Edw.* Brave followers, yonder stands the thorny  
wood,

‘ Which, by the heavens' assistance, and your strength,  
‘ Must by the roots be hewn up yet ere night.

\* I need not add more fuel to your fire,

\* For, well I wot, ye blaze to burn them out:

\* Give signal to the fight, and to it lords.

*Q. Mar.* Lords, knights, and gentlemen, what I should  
‘ My tears gainsay;<sup>i</sup> for every word I speak, [say,

‘ Ye see, I drink the water of mine eyes.

‘ Therefore, no more but this:—Henry, your sovereign,

‘ Is prisoner to the foe; his state usurp'd,

‘ His realm a slaughterhouse, his subjects slain,

‘ His statutes cancell'd, and his treasure spent;

‘ And yonder is the wolf, that makes this spoil.

‘ You fight in justice; then, in God's name, lords,

‘ Be valiant, and give signal to the fight.

*[Exeunt both Armies.]*

<sup>i</sup> — gainsay;] i. e. *Unsay, deny, contradict.*—STEEVENS.

## SCENE V.

*Another Part of the same.*

*Alarums: Excursions: and afterwards a Retreat. Then enter King EDWARD, CLARENCE, GLOSTER, and Forces: with Queen MARGARET, OXFORD, and SOMERSET, Prisoners.*

‘ *K. Edw.* Now, here a period of tumultuous broils.  
Away with Oxford to Hammes’ castle<sup>k</sup> straight:

For Somerset,<sup>l</sup> off with his guilty head.

‘ Go, bear them hence; I will not hear them speak.

*Oxf.* For my part, I’ll not trouble thee with words.

‘ *Som.* Nor I, but stoop with patience to my fortune.

[*Exeunt OXFORD and SOMERSET, guarded.*]

\* *Q. Mar.* So part we sadly in this troublous world,

\* To meet with joy in sweet Jerusalem.

\* *K. Edw.* Is proclamation made,—that, who finds Ed-

\* Shall have a high reward, and he his life? [ward,

\* *Glo.* It is: and, lo, where youthful Edward comes.

*Enter Soldiers, with Prince EDWARD.*

\* *K. Edw.* Bring forth the gallant, let us hear him  
speak:

\* What! can so young a thorn begin to prick?

‘ Edward, what satisfaction canst thou make,

‘ For bearing arms, for stirring up my subjects,

\* And all the trouble thou hast turn’d me to?

*Prince.* Speak like a subject, proud ambitious York!

Suppose, that I am now my father’s mouth;

Resign thy chair, and, where I stand, kneel thou,

Whilst I propose the self-same words to thee,

Which, traitor, thou would’st have me answer to.

*Q. Mar.* Ah, that thy father had been so resolv’d!

‘ *Glo.* That you might still have worn the petticoat,  
And ne’er have stol’n the breech from Lancaster.

<sup>k</sup> — to Hammes’ castle—] A castle in Picardy, where Oxford was confined for many years.—MALONE.

<sup>l</sup> — Somerset,] Edmund Beaufort, duke of Somerset, the second son of Edmund duke of Somerset, who was killed at the battle of St. Albans.—MALONE.

*Prince.* Let Æsop<sup>m</sup> fable in a winter's night ;  
His currish riddles sort not with this place.

*Glo.* By heaven, brat, I'll plague you for that word.

*Q. Mar.* Ay, thou wast born to be a plague to men.

*Glo.* For God's sake, take away this captive scold.

*Prince.* Nay, take away this scolding crook-back rather.

' *K. Edw.* Peace, wilful boy, or I will charm your  
tongue.

*Clar.* Untutor'd lad, thou art too malapert.

*Prince.* I know my duty, you are all undutiful :  
Lascivious Edward,—and thou perjur'd George,—  
And thou misshapen Dick,—I tell ye all,  
I am your better, traitors as ye are ;—

\* And thou usurp'st my father's right and mine.

*K. Edw.* Take that, the likeness of this railer here.<sup>n</sup>

[*Stabs him.*

\* *Glo.* Sprawl'st thou ? take that, to end thy agony.

[*GLO. stabs him.*

\* *Clar.* And there's for twitting me with perjury.

[*CLA. stabs him.*

*Q. Mar.* O, kill me too!

*Glo.* Marry, and shall. [*Offers to kill her.*

' *K. Edw.* Hold, Richard, hold, for we have done too  
much.

*Glo.* Why should she live, to fill the world with words ?<sup>o</sup>

' *K. Edw.* What ! doth she swoon ? use means for her  
recovery.

*Glo.* Clarence, excuse me to the king my brother ;

' I'll hence to London on a serious matter :

' Ere ye come there, be sure to hear some news.

*Clar.* What ? what ?

' *Glo.* The Tower ! the Tower ! [*Exit.*

' *Q. Mar.* O, Ned, sweet Ned ! speak to thy mother,  
boy !

' Canst thou not speak ?—O traitors ! murderers !—

<sup>m</sup> *Let Æsop, &c.]* The prince calls Richard for his crookedness, *Æsop* ; and the poet, following nature, makes Richard highly incensed at the reproach.—  
JOHNSON.

<sup>n</sup> ——— *likeness of this railer here, &c.]* That thou resemblest thy railing mother.  
JOHNSON.

<sup>o</sup> ——— *words?] i. e. Contention.*

They, that stabb'd Cæsar, shed no blood at all,  
Did not offend, nor were not worthy blame,

\* If this foul deed were by to equal it.

' He was a man: this, in respect, a child:

' And men ne'er spend their fury on a child.

' What's worse than murderer, that I may name it?

\* No, no; my heart will burst, an if I speak:—

\* And I will speak, that so my heart may burst.—

' Butchers and villains, bloody cannibals!

\* How sweet a plant have you untimely cropp'd!

' You have no children, butchers! if you had,

' The thought of them would have stirr'd up remorse:

' But, if you ever chance to have a child,

Look in his youth to have him so cut off,

' As deathsmen! you have rid this sweet young prince!

*K. Edw.* Away with her; go, bear her hence perforce.

*Q. Mar.* Nay, never bear me hence, despatch me here;  
Here sheath thy sword, I'll pardon thee my death:

What! wilt thou not?—then, Clarence, do it thou.

*Clar.* By heaven, I will not do thee so much ease.

*Q. Mar.* Good Clarence, do; sweet Clarence, do thou  
do it.

*Clar.* Didst thou not hear me swear, I would not do it?

*Q. Mar.* Ay, but thou usest to forswear thyself;

'Twas sin before,<sup>p</sup> but now 'tis charity.

' What! wilt thou not? where is that devil's butcher,<sup>q</sup>

Hard-favour'd Richard? Richard, where art thou?

Thou art not here: Murder is thy alms-deed;

Petitioners for blood thou ne'er put'st back.

' *K. Edw.* Away, I say; I charge ye, bear her hence.

*Q. Mar.* So come to you, and yours, as to this prince!

[*Exit, led out forcibly.*]

*K. Edw.* Where's Richard gone?

' *Clar.* To London, all in post: and, as I guess,

To make a bloody supper in the Tower.

*K. Edw.* He's sudden, if a thing comes in his head.

' Now march we hence: discharge the common sort

' With pay and thanks, and let's away to London,

<sup>p</sup> 'Twas sin before,] She alludes to the desertion of Clarence.—*JOHNSON.*

<sup>q</sup> — devil's butcher,] i. e. A butcher set on by the devil.—*JOHNSON.*

‘ And see our gentle queen how well she fares ;  
 ‘ By this, I hope, she hath a son for me. [Exeunt.

## SCENE VI.

London. *A Room in the Tower.*

King HENRY is discovered sitting with a Book in his Hand,  
 the Lieutenant attending. Enter GLOSTER.

*Glo.* Good day, my lord ! What, at your book so hard ?

*K. Hen.* Ay, my good lord : My lord, I should say  
 ’Tis sin to flatter, good was little better : [rather :  
 Good Gloster, and good devil, were alike,

\* And both preposterous ; therefore, not good lord.

\* *Glo.* Sirrah, leave us to ourselves : we must confer.

[Exit Lieutenant.

\* *K. Hen.* So flies the reckless shepherd from the wolf :

\* So first the harmless sheep doth yield his fleece,

\* And next his throat unto the butcher’s knife.—

What scene of death hath Roscius now to act ?

*Glo.* Suspicion always haunts the guilty mind ;  
 The thief doth fear each bush an officer.

‘ *K. Hen.* The bird that hath been limed in a bush,

‘ With trembling wings misdoubteth<sup>r</sup> every bush :

And I the hapless male<sup>s</sup> to one sweet bird,

Have now the fatal object in my eye,

Where my poor young was lim’d, was caught, and kill’d.

‘ *Glo.* Why, what a peevish<sup>t</sup> fool was that of Crete,

‘ That taught his son the office of a fowl ?

‘ And yet, for all his wings, the fool was drown’d.

‘ *K. Hen.* I, Dædalus ; my poor boy, Icarus ;

Thy father, Minos, that denied our course ;

‘ The sun that sear’d the wings of my sweet boy,

‘ Thy brother Edward ; and thyself the sea,

‘ Whose envious gulf did swallow up his life.

<sup>r</sup> — misdoubteth—] i. e. Suspecteth.

<sup>s</sup> — hapless male—] The word *male* is here used in a very common sense, not for the male of the female, but for the male parent: the sweet bird is evidently his son prince Edward.—M. MASON.

<sup>t</sup> — peevish—] i. e. Silly, childish.

\* Ah, kill me with thy weapon, not thy words!

‘ My breast can better brook thy dagger’s point,  
Than can my ears that tragick history.—

\* But wherefore dost thou come? is’t for my life?

‘ *Glo.* Think’st thou, I am an executioner?

*K. Hen.* A persecuter, I am sure thou art;

‘ If murdering innocents be executing,

‘ Why, then thou art an executioner.

*Glo.* Thy son I kill’d for his presumption.

*K. Hen.* Hadst thou been kill’d, when first thou didst  
presume,

Thou hadst not liv’d to kill a son of mine.

‘ And thus I prophecy,—that many a thousand,

‘ Which now mistrust no parcel of my fear;”

‘ And many an old man’s sigh, and many a widow’s,

‘ And many an orphan’s water-standing eye,—

‘ Men for their sons, wives for their husbands’ fate,

‘ And orphans for their parents’ timeless death,—

‘ Shall rue the hour that ever thou wast born.

The owl shriek’d at thy birth, an evil sign;

‘ The night-crow cried, aboding luckless time;

Dogs howl’d, and hideous tempests shook down trees;

The raven rook’d<sup>x</sup> her on the chimney’s top,

And chattering pies in dismal discords sung.

Thy mother felt more than a mother’s pain,

And yet brought forth less than a mother’s hope;

‘ To wit,—an indigest deformed lump,

Not like the fruit of such a goodly tree.

Teeth hadst thou in thy head, when thou wast born,

To signify, thou cam’st to bite the world:

And, if the rest be true which I have heard,

‘ Thou cam’st—

*Glo.* I’ll hear no more;—Die, prophēt, in thy speech:

[*Stabs him.*]

For this, amongst the rest, was I ordain’d.

*K. Hen.* Ay, and for much more slaughter after this.

O God! forgive my sins, and pardon thee! [Dies.]

<sup>u</sup> Which now mistrust no parcel of my fear;] Who suspect no part of what my fears presage.—JOHNSON.

<sup>x</sup> — rook’d—] To rook, or rather to ruck, is a north country word, signifying to squat down, or lodge, on any thing.—STEEVENS.

*Glo.* What, will the aspiring blood of Lancaster  
Sink in the ground? I thought it would have mounted.  
See, how my sword weeps for the poor king's death!

' O, may such purple tears be always shed  
' From those that wish the downfall of our house!—  
' If any spark of life be yet remaining,  
Down, down to hell; and say—I sent thee hither,

[*Stabs him again.*]

I, that have neither pity, love, nor fear.—

Indeed, 'tis true, that Henry told me of;

For I have often heard my mother say,

I came into the world with my legs forward:

Had I not reason, think ye, to make haste,

' And seek their ruin that usurp'd our right?

The midwife wonder'd: and the women cried,

*O, Jesus bless us, he is born with teeth!*

' And so I was; which plainly signified—

That I should snarl, and bite, and play the dog.

' Then, since the heavens have shap'd my body so,

Let hell make crook'd my mind to answer it.

I have no brother, I am like no brother:

' And this word—love, which greybeards call divine,

Be resident in men like one another,

And not in me; I am myself alone.

Clarence, beware; thou keep'st me from the light;

But I will sort a pitchy day for thee:<sup>y</sup>

For I will buz abroad such prophecies,

' That Edward shall be fearful of his life;

And then, to purge his fear, I'll be thy death.

' King Henry, and the prince his son, are gone:

' Clarence, thy turn is next, and then the rest;

Counting myself but bad, till I be best.—

' I'll throw thy body in another room,

And triumph, Henry, in thy day of doom.

[*Exit.*]

<sup>y</sup> *But I will sort a pitchy day for thee:*] But I will choose out an hour whose gloom shall be as fatal to you. To sort is to select—STEEVENS.

## SCENE VII.

*The same. A Room in the Palace.*

King EDWARD *is discovered sitting on his Throne*; Queen ELIZABETH *with the infant Prince*, CLARENCE, GLOSTER, HASTINGS, *and others, near him.*

*K. Edw.* Once more we sit in England's royal throne,  
Re-purchas'd with the blood of enemies.  
What valiant foe-men, like to autumn's corn,  
Have we mow'd down, in tops of all their pride?  
Three dukes of Somerset, threefold renown'd  
For hardy and undoubted champions:  
Two Cliffords, as the father and the son,  
And two Northumberlands: two braver men  
Ne'er spurr'd their coursers at the trumpet's sound:  
' With them, the two brave bears, Warwick and Montague,  
That in their chains fetter'd the kingly lion,  
And made the forest tremble when they roar'd.  
Thus have we swept suspicion from our seat,  
And made our footstool of security.—  
Come hither, Bess, and let me kiss my boy:—  
Young Ned, for thee, thine uncles, and myself,  
Have in our armours watch'd the winter's night;  
' Went all a foot in summer's scalding heat,  
That thou might'st repossess the crown in peace;  
And of our labours thou shalt reap the gain.

*Glo.* I'll blast his harvest, if your head were laid;  
For yet I am not look'd on in the world.  
This shoulder was ordain'd so thick, to heave;  
And heave it shall some weight, or break my back:—  
Work thou the way,—and thou shalt execute.<sup>2</sup> [*Aside.*

*K. Edw.* Clarence, and Gloster, love my lovely queen;  
And kiss your princely nephew, brothers both.

*Clar.* The duty, that I owe unto your majesty,  
I seal upon the lips of this sweet babe.

<sup>2</sup> *Work thou the way,—and thou shalt execute.*] I suppose he speaks this line, first touching his head, and then looking on his hand.—SLEEVENS.



K. *Edw.* Thanks, noble Clarence; worthy brother,  
thanks.<sup>a</sup>

‘ *Glo.* And, that I love the tree from whence thou  
‘ Witness the loving kiss I give the fruit:— [sprang’st,  
To say the truth, so Judas kiss’d his master; }  
And cried—all hail! when as he meant— } *Aside.*  
all harm.

K. *Edw.* Now am I seated as my soul delights,  
Having my country’s peace, and brothers’ loves.

*Clar.* What will your grace have done with Margaret?  
Reignier, her father, to the king of France  
Hath pawn’d the Sicils and Jerusalem,  
And hither have they sent it for her ransome.

K. *Edw.* Away with her, and waft her hence to France.  
And now what rests, but that we spend the time  
With stately triumphs,<sup>b</sup> mirthful comick shows,  
Such as befit the pleasures of the court?—  
Sound, drums and trampets!—farewell, sour annoy!  
For here, I hope, begins our lasting joy. [*Exeunt.*<sup>c</sup>

<sup>a</sup> *Thanks, noble Clarence; worthy brother, thanks.*] In my copy of the second folio, which had belonged to king Charles the first, his majesty has erased—*Cl.* and written *King*, in its stead. Shakspeare, therefore, in the catalogue of his restorers, may boast of a royal name.—STEEVENS.

<sup>b</sup> — triumphs,] i. e. *Publick shows.*

<sup>c</sup> Of the three parts of *King Henry the Sixth*, it is now agreed that the first part is entirely spurious, or at most does not contain above ten or twelve lines from the hand of Shakspeare: and that of the two last parts he was not the author, but merely the improver and enlarger. The total number of lines contained in these two plays is, according to Malone, six thousand and forty-three; of these, one thousand seven hundred and seventy-one were written by Marlowe, or by Marlowe and his associates: two thousand three hundred and seventy-three were framed by Shakspeare, on the foundation laid by his predecessors: one thousand eight hundred and ninety-nine were entirely his own composition.<sup>a</sup>

Of the three plays, the first is indeed, as Mr. Morgan has justly described it, “a drum-and-trumpet thing;” the second and third have some very beautiful passages. “They have not,” says Dr. Johnson, “sufficient variety of action, for the incidents are too often of the same kind; yet many of the characters are well discriminated.” King Henry and his queen, king Edward, the duke of Gloster, and the earl of Warwick, are very strongly and distinctly painted.”

<sup>a</sup> See Malone’s Dissertation, Boswell’s Shakspeare, vol. xviii. p. 572.







PR            Shakespeare, William  
2753           Dramatic works  
H3  
v.5

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

